Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396

Junjie Xiao *Editor*

Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases

Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology

Volume 1396

Series Editors

Wim E. Crusio, Institut de Neurosciences Cognitives et Intégratives d'Aquitaine, CNRS and University of Bordeaux, Pessac Cedex, France

Haidong Dong, Departments of Urology and Immunology, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN, USA

Heinfried H. Radeke, Institute of Pharmacology & Toxicology, Clinic of the Goethe University Frankfurt Main, Frankfurt am Main, Hessen, Germany

Nima Rezaei, Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Ortrud Steinlein, Institute of Human Genetics, LMU University Hospital, Munich, Germany

Junjie Xiao, Cardiac Regeneration and Ageing Lab, Institute of Cardiovascular Sciences, School of Life Science, Shanghai University, Shanghai, China

Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology provides a platform for scientific contributions in the main disciplines of the biomedicine and the life sciences. This series publishes thematic volumes on contemporary research in the areas of microbiology, immunology, neurosciences, biochemistry, biomedical engineering, genetics, physiology, and cancer research. Covering emerging topics and techniques in basic and clinical science, it brings together clinicians and researchers from various fields.

Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology has been publishing exceptional works in the field for over 40 years, and is indexed in SCOPUS, Medline (PubMed), EMBASE, BIOSIS, Reaxys, EMBiology, the Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS), and Pathway Studio.

2021 Impact Factor: 3.650 (no longer indexed in SCIE as of 2022)

Junjie Xiao
Editor

Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases

Editor
Junjie Xiao
Institute of Cardiovascular
Sciences, Shanghai Engineering Research
Center of Organ Repair, School of Life Science
Shanghai University
Shanghai, China

ISSN 0065-2598 ISSN 2214-8019 (electronic)
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology
ISBN 978-981-19-5641-6 ISBN 978-981-19-5642-3 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023
This work is subject to copyright. All rights are solely and exclusively licensed by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.
The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.
The publisher, the authors, and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Contents

Part I Overview

An Overview of Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases 3
Kiran Musunuru

Part II Bioinformatics

Online Databases of Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases 19
Paula Carrillo-Rodriguez, Javier Martinez-Lopez, Laura Gómez-Hernández, Luis Boraita-Morales, Maria Uceda-Molina, Irene Cuenca-Bermejo, Juan P. Valencia-Aguirre, Marahy Mora-López, and Julio Plaza-Diaz

Part III Genome Editing in Cardiovascular Disease

Genome Editing and Cardiac Regeneration 37
Rayhaan Bassawon, Kashif Khan, Ateeque Siddique, and Dominique Shum-Tim

Genome Editing and Myocardial Development 53
Sifa Turan, J. Richard Chaillet, Margaret C. Stapleton, and Yijen L. Wu

Genome Editing and Heart Failure 75
Daniele Masarone, Martina Caiazza, Federica Amodio, Enrico Melillo, Roberta Pacileo, Giuseppe Limongelli, and Giuseppe Pacileo

Genome Editing and Pathological Cardiac Hypertrophy 87
Takao Kato

Genome Editing and Diabetic Cardiomyopathy 103
Tyler N. Kambis and Paras K. Mishra

Genome Editing and Inherited Cardiac Arrhythmias 115
Laura Lalaguna, Laura Ramos-Hernández, Silvia G. Priori, and Enrique Lara-Pezzi

Genome Editing and Atrial Fibrillation 129
Michael Spartalis

Genome Editing in Dyslipidemia and Atherosclerosis 139
Zhifen Chen, Constanze Lehertshuber, and Heribert Schunkert

Genome Editing to Abrogate Muscle Atrophy 157
Tingting Yang, Priyanka Gokulnath, Xinxiu Meng, Guoping Li, and Junjie Xiao

Part IV Genome Editing in Metabolic Diseases

Genome Editing and Obesity 179
Davide Masi, Rossella Tozzi, and Mikiko Watanabe

Genome Editing and Fatty Liver 191
Umar Hayat, Ali A. Siddiqui, Muhammad L. Farhan, Ahmed Haris, and Nasir Hameed

Genomic Editing and Diabetes 207
Parth Shah

Genome Editing and Protein Energy Malnutrition 215
Sergio Moreno-Nombela, Javier Romero-Parra, Francisco Javier Ruiz-Ojeda, Patricio Solis-Urra, Aiman Tariq Baig, and Julio Plaza-Diaz

Part V Therapeutic Implications

Gene Therapy and Cardiovascular Diseases 235
Dongchao Lu, Sarah Cushman, Thomas Thum, and Christian Bär

Therapeutics in Metabolic Diseases 255
Vijayakumar Natesan

Gene Editing and Human iPSCs in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases 275
Sebastiano Giallongo, Oriana Lo Re, Igor Resnick, Marco Raffaele, and Manlio Vinciguerra

Part VI Future Prospects

Prospective Advances in Genome Editing Investigation 301
Gaetano Isola

Enabling Precision Medicine with CRISPR-Cas Genome Editing Technology: A Translational Perspective 315
Nazma F. Ilahibaks, Maike J. Hulsbos, Zhiyong Lei, Pieter Vader, and Joost P. G. Sluijter

Contributors

Federica Amodio Department of Translational Medical Sciences, University of Campania 'Luigi Vanvitelli', Naples, Italy

Aiman Tariq Baig Children's Hospital of Eastern Ontario Research Institute, Ottawa, ON, Canada
Department of Cellular Molecular Medicine, University of Ottawa, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Christian Bär Institute of Molecular and Translational Therapeutic Strategies, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany
REBIRTH Center for Translational Regenerative Medicine, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany

Rayhaan Bassawon Division of Cardiac Surgery, Royal Victoria Hospital, McGill University Health Centre, Montreal, QC, Canada

Luis Boraita-Morales Instituto de Parasitología y Biomedicina "López-Neyra"—CSIC, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Martina Caiazza Department of Translational Medical Sciences, University of Campania 'Luigi Vanvitelli', Naples, Italy

Paula Carrillo-Rodriguez Research and Advances in Molecular and Cellular Immunology, Center of Biomedical Research, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

J. Richard Chaillet Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA
Magee-Womens Research Institute, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Zhifen Chen Department of Cardiology, Deutsches Herzzentrum München, Technische Universität München, Munich, Germany
Deutsches Zentrum für Herz- und Kreislaufforschung (DZHK), Munich Heart Alliance, Munich, Germany

Irene Cuenca-Bermejo Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria IBS, Complejo Hospitalario Universitario de Granada, Granada, Spain

Sarah Cushman Institute of Molecular and Translational Therapeutic Strategies, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany

Muhammad L. Farhan Hospital Medicine United Regional Hospital, Wichita Falls, TX, USA

Sebastiano Giallongo Epigenetics, Metabolism and Aging Unit, Center for Translational Medicine, International Clinical Research Center, St'Anne University Hospital, Brno, Czech Republic

Priyanka Gokulnath Cardiovascular Division of the Massachusetts General Hospital and Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Laura Gómez-Hernández Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology III and Immunology, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Nasir Hameed Guthrie Robert Packer Hospital, Sayre, PA, USA

Ahmed Haris Hospital Medicine Wesley Medical Center, Wichita, KS, USA

Umar Hayat Department of Population and Public Health, University of Kansas, Wichita, KS, USA

Maike J. Hulsbos Laboratory of Experimental Cardiology, Department of Cardiology, University Medical Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Nazma F. Ilahibaks Laboratory of Experimental Cardiology, Department of Cardiology, University Medical Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Gaetano Isola Department of General Surgery and Surgical-Medical Specialties, School of Dentistry, University of Catania, Catania, Italy

Tyler N. Kambis Department of Cellular and Integrative Physiology, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Takao Kato Department of Cardiovascular Medicine, Kyoto University Graduate School of Medicine, Kyoto, Japan

Kashif Khan Division of Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Laura Lalaguna Myocardial Biology Area, Centro Nacional de Investigaciones Cardiovasculares (CNIC), Madrid, Spain

Enrique Lara-Pezzi Myocardial Biology Area, Centro Nacional de Investigaciones Cardiovasculares (CNIC), Madrid, Spain
Centro de Investigación Biomédica en Red Cardiovascular (CIBERCV), Madrid, Spain

Constanze Lehertshuber Department of Cardiology, Deutsches Herzzentrum München, Technische Universität München, Munich, Germany
Deutsches Zentrum für Herz- und Kreislaufforschung (DZHK), Munich Heart Alliance, Munich, Germany

Zhiyong Lei Laboratory of Experimental Cardiology, Department of Cardiology, University Medical Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands
CDL Research, University Medical Center Utrecht, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Guoping Li Cardiovascular Division of the Massachusetts General Hospital and Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Giuseppe Limongelli Department of Translational Medical Sciences, University of Campania 'Luigi Vanvitelli', Naples, Italy

Dongchao Lu Institute of Molecular and Translational Therapeutic Strategies, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany

Javier Martinez-Lopez Research and Advances in Molecular and Cellular Immunology, Center of Biomedical Research, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Daniele Masarone Heart Failure Unit, Department of Cardiology, AORN dei Colli, Monaldi Hospital, Naples, Italy

Davide Masi Department of Experimental Medicine, Section of Medical Pathophysiology, Food Science and Endocrinology, Sapienza University of Rome, Rome, Italy

Enrico Melillo Heart Failure Unit, Department of Cardiology, AORN dei Colli, Monaldi Hospital, Naples, Italy

Xinxiu Meng Institute of Geriatrics (Shanghai University), Affiliated Nantong Hospital of Shanghai University (The Sixth People's Hospital of Nantong), School of Medicine, Shanghai University, Nantong, China
Cardiac Regeneration and Ageing Lab, Institute of Cardiovascular Sciences, Shanghai Engineering Research Center of Organ Repair, School of Life Science, Shanghai University, Shanghai, China

Paras K. Mishra Department of Cellular and Integrative Physiology, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Marahy Mora-López Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology III and Immunology, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Sergio Moreno Institute of Nutrition and Food Technology "José Mataix", Center of Biomedical Research, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Kiran Musunuru Department of Medicine, Cardiovascular Institute, Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA
Department of Genetics, Cardiovascular Institute, Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA
Smilow Center for Translational Research, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Vijayakumar Natesan Department of Biochemistry and Biotechnology, Faculty of Science, Annamalai University, Chidambaram, Tamil Nadu, India

Giuseppe Pacileo Heart Failure Unit, Department of Cardiology, AORN dei Colli, Monaldi Hospital, Naples, Italy

Roberta Pacileo Department of Translational Medical Sciences, University of Campania 'Luigi Vanvitelli', Naples, Italy

Julio Plaza-Diaz Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria IBS, Complejo Hospitalario Universitario de Granada, Granada, Spain
Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology II, School of Pharmacy, University of Granada, Granada, Spain
Children's Hospital of Eastern Ontario Research Institute, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Silvia G. Priori Myocardial Biology Area, Centro Nacional de Investigaciones Cardiovasculares (CNIC), Madrid, Spain
Università di Pavia, Istituti Clinici Scientifici Maugeri, Pavia, Italy

Marco Raffaele Epigenetics, Metabolism and Aging Unit, Center for Translational Medicine, International Clinical Research Center, St'Anne University Hospital, Brno, Czech Republic

Laura Ramos-Hernández Myocardial Biology Area, Centro Nacional de Investigaciones Cardiovasculares (CNIC), Madrid, Spain

Oriana Lo Re Epigenetics, Metabolism and Aging Unit, Center for Translational Medicine, International Clinical Research Center, St'Anne University Hospital, Brno, Czech Republic

Igor Resnick Department of Stem Cell Biology and Transplantology, Research Institute of the Medical University – Varna, Varna, Bulgaria
Department of Hematology, Bone Marrow Transplantation and Cell Therapy of St. Marina University Hospital, Varna, Bulgaria

Javier Romero-Parra Departamento de Química Orgánica y Fisicoquímica, Facultad de Ciencias Químicas y Farmacéuticas, Universidad de Chile, Santiago, Chile

Francisco Javier Ruiz-Ojeda Institute of Nutrition and Food Technology "José Mataix", Center of Biomedical Research, University of Granada, Granada, Spain
Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology II, School of Pharmacy, University of Granada, Granada, Spain
Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria IBS.GRANADA, Complejo Hospitalario Universitario de Granada, Granada, Spain
RG Adipocytes and Metabolism, Institute for Diabetes and Obesity, Helmholtz Diabetes Center at Helmholtz Center Munich, Munich, Germany

Heribert Schunkert Department of Cardiology, Deutsches Herzzentrum München, Technische Universität München, Munich, Germany
Deutsches Zentrum für Herz- und Kreislaufforschung (DZHK), Munich Heart Alliance, Munich, Germany

Parth Shah ObvioHealth, Orlando, FL, USA

Dominique Shum-Tim Division of Cardiac Surgery, Royal Victoria Hospital, McGill University Health Centre, Montreal, QC, Canada
Division of Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada
Department of Experimental Surgery, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Ateeque Siddique Department of Experimental Surgery, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Ali A. Siddiqui Rocky Vista University College of Osteopathic Medicine, Denver, CO, USA

Joost P. G. Sluijter Laboratory of Experimental Cardiology, Department of Cardiology, University Medical Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands
Experimental Cardiology Laboratory, Cardiology, Division Heart and Lung, Circulatory Health Laboratory, Regenerative Medicine Center, University Medical Center Utrecht, University Utrecht, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Patricio Solis-Urra Faculty of Education and Social Sciences, Universidad Andres Bello, Viña del Mar, Chile

Michael Spartalis Arrhythmia Unit, San Raffaele University Hospital, Milan, Italy
ESC Working Group on Cardiac Cellular Electrophysiology, Sophia Antipolis, Cannes, France

Margaret C. Stapleton Department of Developmental Biology, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA
Rangos Research Center Animal Imaging Core, Children's Hospital of Pittsburgh of UPMC, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Thomas Thum Institute of Molecular and Translational Therapeutic Strategies, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany
REBIRTH Center for Translational Regenerative Medicine, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany
Fraunhofer Institute for Toxicology and Experimental Medicine (ITEM), Hannover, Germany

Rossella Tozzi Department of Molecular Medicine, Sapienza University of Rome, Rome, Italy

Sifa Turan Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Maria Uceda-Molina Research and Advances in Molecular and Cellular Immunology, Center of Biomedical Research, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Pieter Vader Laboratory of Experimental Cardiology, Department of Cardiology, University Medical Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands
CDL Research, University Medical Center Utrecht, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Juan P. Valencia-Aguirre GENYO, Centre for Genomics and Oncological Research—Pfizer, University of Granada, Andalusian Regional Government, Granada, Spain

Manlio Vinciguerra Epigenetics, Metabolism and Aging Unit, Center for Translational Medicine, International Clinical Research Center, St'Anne University Hospital, Brno, Czech Republic
Department of Stem Cell Biology and Transplantology, Research Institute of the Medical University – Varna, Varna, Bulgaria

Mikiko Watanabe Department of Experimental Medicine, Section of Medical Pathophysiology, Food Science and Endocrinology, Sapienza University of Rome, Rome, Italy

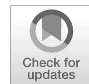
Yijen L. Wu Department of Developmental Biology, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA
Rangos Research Center Animal Imaging Core, Children's Hospital of Pittsburgh of UPMC, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Junjie Xiao Institute of Cardiovascular Sciences, Shanghai Engineering Research Center of Organ Repair, School of Life Science, Shanghai University, Shanghai, China

Tingting Yang Institute of Geriatrics (Shanghai University), Affiliated Nantong Hospital of Shanghai University (The Sixth People's Hospital of Nantong), School of Medicine, Shanghai University, Nantong, China
Cardiac Regeneration and Ageing Lab, Institute of Cardiovascular Sciences, Shanghai Engineering Research Center of Organ Repair, School of Life Science, Shanghai University, Shanghai, China

Part I

Overview



An Overview of Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases

Kiran Musunuru

Abstract

This chapter summarizes the definition, classification, and function of genome editing and highlights the breakthroughs of genome editing in cardiovascular and metabolic diseases for disease modeling, diagnostics, and therapeutics, with a particular focus on clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR)-CRISPR-associated 9 (Cas9) technology as applied to nuclease editing, base editing, and epigenome editing.

Keywords

Genome editing · Base editing · Epigenome editing · Nonhomologous end joining · Homology-directed repair · CRISPR · Cardiovascular disease · Disease modeling · Diagnostics · Therapeutics

1 Genome-Editing Technologies

Any extended discussion of genome editing invariably begins with an introduction to the panoply of genome-editing technologies that are now available to biomedical investigators. The first applications of genome editing involved an approach that prevailed for decades and remains in broad use—homologous recombination. In homologous recombination, a DNA sequence in the genome in a cell is replaced with a synthetic version of the same DNA sequence in which a desired alteration has been made [1, 2]. The synthetic DNA sequence is typically carried in a double-strand DNA vector that is introduced into the cell by transfection or another method. If there is sufficient matching between the cellular DNA sequence and the synthetic DNA sequence—within two homology arms flanking the altered sequence—a spontaneous swapping can occur, incorporating the alteration into the cell's genome. Homologous recombination has been exploited to generate thousands of genetically modified mouse models, as well as other animal models and cellular models.

Yet homologous recombination is extremely inefficient, with far below 1% of cells acquiring the alteration. The reason for this inefficiency is the need for an initiating event, namely, a spontaneous double-strand break in the chromosome within the target cellular DNA sequence, which is a rare event. Modern genome-editing tools emerged from efforts to deliberately introduce double-strand breaks into target sites in the genome, greatly boosting the efficiency of homologous recombination at those sites [3]. Perforce, these tools have two types of functionality, the ability to search out and specifically bind to a target site—typically a unique location within the entire genome—and the ability to generate a

K. Musunuru (✉)
Department of Medicine, Cardiovascular Institute, Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_1

double-strand break at that site. Collectively, these tools are known as engineered nucleases. After the development of a variety of engineered nucleases, it became possible to separate the two types of functionality and pair the search-and-bind ability with any of a variety of different kinds of gene-modifying activity, including chemical modification of DNA bases (base editing), modification of gene expression (epigenome editing), and reverse transcription to introduce new DNA sequences from RNA templates (prime editing). Each of these genome-editing technologies is briefly described in the following sections. A more comprehensive discussion of genome-editing technologies and their applications can be found elsewhere [4].

1.1 Nuclease Editing

There are four major types of engineered nucleases in use for research and clinical applications: zinc finger nucleases (ZFNs), transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs), meganucleases, and clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR)-CRISPR-associated (Cas) systems. All have the ability to seek out specific genomic sites and to introduce double-strand breaks at those sites, although the mechanisms by which they carry out these tasks are quite distinct.

ZFNs use arrays of zinc fingers, which are DNA-binding motifs found in numerous proteins in species across the entire phylogenetic tree [5]. Each zinc finger typically recognizes and binds three consecutive DNA base pairs. Accordingly, zinc finger arrays will specify stretches of DNA with lengths that are multiples of three. A ZFN comprises a zinc finger array fused to a cleavage domain adapted from the bacterial restriction enzyme *Fok* I. The *Fok* I cleavage domain cannot make a double-strand break in DNA as a monomer, but only as a dimer. As such, ZFNs are typically used as pairs, wherein 1 ZFN binds a DNA sequence along 1 strand (typically 9–18 base pairs in length) and the other ZFN binds a separate DNA sequence along the other strand, with the binding sites juxtaposed such that the *Fok* I cleavage domains of the 2 ZFNs are in proximity, can dimerize, and can then produce a double-strand break between 2 ZFN binding sites.

TALENs work much the same way as ZFNs, except that they use an entirely different DNA-binding motif, the TAL repeat [6]. Unlike zinc fingers, TAL repeats naturally occur only in a group of plant pathogens, and each TAL repeat recognizes and binds a single DNA base pair. Arrays of TAL repeats can bind sequences as long as dozens of base pairs in length. Similar to ZFNs, each TALEN comprises a TAL-repeat array fused to the *Fok* I cleavage domain, and TALEN pairs are used to specify target sites and produce double-strand breaks there.

Meganucleases, despite their name, are actually quite small compared to the other engineered nucleases [7]. They are based on naturally occurring nucleases—I-*Cre*I being the prototypic one, identified in an algae species—that can specifically bind and cleave DNA sequences as long as dozens of base pairs in length. Altering key amino acids allows for the reprogramming of nucleases like I-*Cre*I to bind and cleave different DNA sequences.

ZFNs, TALENs, and meganucleases are all protein-based genome-editing tools. As such, changing the target specificity of any of these nucleases requires at least some degree of protein engineering, which can limit their use as research tools since such engineering lies beyond the practical reach of most academic laboratories. In contrast, the CRISPR-Cas systems of bacterial origin that are widely used for genome editing—CRISPR-Cas9 and CRISPR-Cas12—each have two components, a Cas protein and a guide RNA, which each has a distinct functionality [8]. The guide RNA provides the search-and-bind capacity, encoded within a stretch of nucleotides within the guide RNA itself, and the Cas protein has the inherent ability to produce a double-strand break, using either one or two cleavage domains to cut the two DNA strands.

Streptococcus pyogenes Cas9 (SpCas9) was the first CRISPR-Cas system to be adapted for use in genome editing of mammalian cells (Fig. 1) [9–13]. Its guide RNA, about

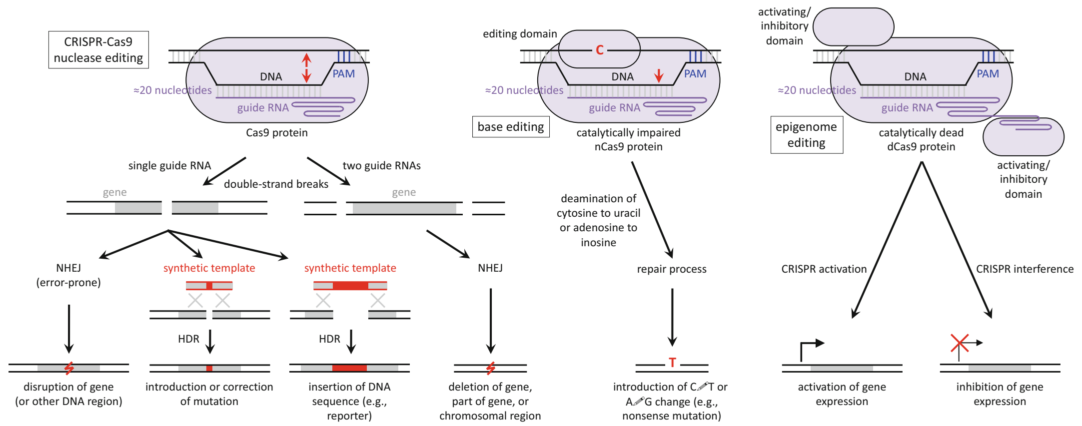


Fig. 1 Genome-editing technologies. *HDR* homology-directed repair, *NHEJ* nonhomologous end joining, *PAM* protospacer-adjacent motif

100 nucleotides in length, encodes the DNA targeting specificity in its first 20 nucleotides, known as the spacer. SpCas9 binds to the remaining portion of the guide RNA, and the protein-RNA complex scans along any double-strand DNA molecule into which it comes in contact—in the nucleus of a human cell, the entire human genome. SpCas9 unwinds DNA as it scans, searching for an NGG motif (N being any nucleotide), whereupon it will position the spacer portion of the guide RNA opposite the DNA strand that does not contain the NGG motif, called the target strand. If there is perfect (or, in some cases, near-perfect) complementarity of the spacer sequence and the target strand sequence, there will be extensive Watson–Crick base pairing between the RNA and DNA that will cause SpCas9 to make a double-strand break three positions upstream of the NGG motif. The DNA sequence on the non-target strand corresponding to the RNA spacer sequence is called the protospacer sequence, which is the 20-nucleotide sequence just upstream of the NGG motif, which itself is called the protospacer-adjacent motif (PAM).

Redirecting SpCas9 to a different sequence in the genome merely entails finding a protospacer/PAM sequence at the desired target site and changing the guide RNA's spacer sequence to match. Since it is very straightforward to change the spacer sequence, by simply altering the DNA template from which the guide RNA is transcribed—far easier than the protein engineering needed for ZFNs, TALENs, and meganucleases—SpCas9 was quickly and broadly adopted by laboratories after its introduction as a genome-editing tool in early 2013. Furthermore, SpCas9 generally shows higher rates of editing efficiency at target sites than other genome-editing tools [14], which has only increased its popularity.

Although SpCas9 is by far the most commonly used CRISPR-Cas system, Cas9 proteins adapted from other bacterial species are also employed for genome editing, most notably *Staphylococcus aureus* Cas9 (SaCas9), which has the advantage of being smaller than SpCas9; it recognizes a different PAM sequence, NNGRRT (R is either G or A), which gives it a different targeting range than SpCas9 [15]. Rational mutagenesis of SpCas9 and SaCas9 have yielded versions that recognize different PAM sequences [16, 17]. At least three other Cas proteins, all of the Cas12 family, have proven to be efficient genome editors—Cas12a (also known as Cpf1) [18], Cas12b (also known as C2c1) [19], and Cas12e (also known as CasX) [20]. Although their properties are somewhat different from Cas9 (different PAM sequences, different guide RNA configurations, etc.), they are similar in that they too are two-component, protein-RNA systems that offer ease of use.

Regardless of the genome-editing tool used, the result is (hopefully) a double-strand break at the desired target site. The final outcomes of nuclease editing depend on how the cell repairs the double-strand break and are largely unrelated to the tool used. The most common repair mechanism is nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ), in which the free ends are ligated together (Fig. 1) [3, 21]. Often, the original pre-cleavage sequence is restored, but occasionally an error occurs with NHEJ, typically a small insertion or deletion (indel mutation) of one or a few base pairs, though the indels can be much larger, in some cases dozens, hundreds, or even thousands of base pairs. Different cells will acquire different indels, since the mutations occur in semi-random (not fully random) fashion. If the objective is to simply disrupt a gene or a noncoding regulatory element, NHEJ serves the purpose well, since the exact nature of the indel is not important, and NHEJ editing can achieve up to 100% editing efficiency in some contexts.

If the objective is to make a precise change, such as the introduction or correction of a disease-causing mutation, or the insertion of a sequence, then one must rely on a second cellular repair mechanism, homology-directed repair (HDR) (Fig. 1) [3, 22]. Ordinarily, HDR uses a perfectly matched DNA repair template that is already present in the cell—a sister chromatid or sister chromosome—and mimics the process of homologous recombination to achieve accurate repair of the double-strand break. If a synthetic DNA repair template bearing a mutation or sequence insertion is introduced into the cell, HDR can use the synthetic template instead and thereby integrate the altered sequence into the genome. The synthetic template can be in the form of a double-strand DNA vector or a single-strand DNA oligonucleotide. Although precise, HDR editing has significant limitations that make it far less efficient than NHEJ editing (usually not exceeding a few percent); besides requiring an extra piece of DNA, HDR is active only in proliferating cells, and only during the S and G2 phases of the cell cycle in those cells. Fortunately, there are other genome-editing technologies that can make precise yet efficient changes, free of the limitations of HDR.

Nuclease editing can have undesirable consequences of two kinds, particularly in the context of therapeutic applications. First is unintended on-target editing: very large indel mutations, in some cases affecting entire chromosomal regions, and even chromosomal rearrangements can occur. Second is off-target editing: each nuclease has the potential to occasionally bind to sites that are an imperfect match to the target site specified by the nuclease, resulting in indel mutagenesis elsewhere in the genome. Though it is unlikely for any given off-target edit to be deleterious, there is a theoretical possibility that an off-target edit could occur in a tumor suppressor gene or oncogene, predisposing cells to tumorigenesis and conferring an increased risk of cancer. Alterations of the Cas9 protein or the guide RNA can reduce the risk of off-target editing, though usually at the cost of reduced on-target editing [23–25].

1.2 Base Editing

Base editing (and other types of editing described in subsequent sections) takes advantage of the fact that CRISPR-Cas9 can be directed to a desired site in the genome (via the spacer sequence of the guide RNA) independently of the ability to make double-strand DNA breaks (inherent in the Cas9 protein). If the two cleavage domains of Cas9 are mutated so that they can no longer cut the two DNA strands—known as catalytically dead Cas9, or dCas9—the protein-RNA complex will nonetheless search out and bind to the target genomic site. This phenomenon offers the opportunity to fuse additional domains to the Cas9 protein and add different types of functionality to the CRISPR-Cas9 system.

There are two types of base editors, cytosine base editors that can cause C on a DNA strand to be replaced by another base (typically T) [26] and adenine base editors that can cause A to be replaced by G [27]. The editing is achieved by a deaminase domain that directly chemically modifies DNA bases (Fig. 1). If CRISPR-Cas9 is fused to any of a variety of naturally occurring cytidine deaminase domains (e.g., from the APOBEC1 protein or the AID protein), the

deaminase has the potential to act upon any C within an editing window on the non-target DNA strand, which is accessible as a single strand due to hybridization of the target strand with the guide RNA. The deaminase converts C to U (uracil), which ordinarily would be repaired back to C; the U would be removed, and due to the presence of G in the complementary position in the other strand, the cell would replace the removed nucleotide with C. Two mechanisms typically used in cytosine base editors act to prevent this repair. First, an additional domain, an inhibitor of the enzyme responsible for uracil repair, is added to Cas9. Second, Cas9 is mutated so that it can cut, or "nick," the target DNA strand (nickase Cas9, or nCas9) but not the non-target strand. After the cytosine base editor moves on from the site, the cell's nick repair machinery acts by stripping away nucleotides around the site of the nick on the target strand and then replaces the nucleotides via complementarity to the non-target strand. For any U present in the non-target strand, an A is introduced into the complementary position in the target strand. After nick repair is completed, the cell eventually removes the U, but instead of replacing it with the original C, it replaces it with a T due to complementarity with the A now present in the target strand. Thus, a C-G base pair is edited to a T-A base pair.

Adenine base editing works in much the same way, except that an evolved adenosine deaminase domain (there is no naturally occurring adenosine deaminase that acts on single-strand DNA, hence the use of protein evolution to create a novel one in the laboratory) is fused to nCas9. Within the editing window on the non-target strand, A is converted to I (inosine), nick repair occurs on the target strand, a C is placed in the target strand opposite the I, and eventually the I is replaced with a G to complement the C in the target strand—and so a A-T base pair is edited to a G-C base pair.

The key to base editing is to ensure that the target C or A to be edited lies within the editing window of the non-target strand, with the window's range being set by the distance from the PAM sequence (e.g., 13–17 bases upstream of the PAM). However, any C or A within the window has the potential to be edited, even if such editing would be undesirable. These so-called bystander edits can be minimized by switching the Cas9 protein, the guide RNA, or the deaminase domain used in the editor.

Although cytosine and adenine base editors are limited with respect to the types of edits that can be made—single-nucleotide changes, largely transition mutations—if a desired edit is feasible with base editing, it can occur with very high efficiency, rivaling the efficiency of NHEJ editing while maintaining the precision of HDR editing. Indel mutations can occur at a low rate (typically $<1\%$) at the target site with a base editor, and off-target editing can occur as well, although off-target edits tend to be restricted to single-nucleotide changes consistent with the base-editing mechanism.

1.3 Epigenome Editing

If dCas9 is deployed to a site in the genome, with no extra domains fused to it, it has the potential to interfere with factors that ordinarily interact with that site via steric interference [28]. If the targeted site is regulatory in nature, e.g., in a promoter or transcriptional enhancer, then dCas9 can interfere with gene expression. This so-called CRISPR interference has been exploited to knock down the expression of specific genes, reminiscent of but quite distinct from RNA interference mediated by short hairpin RNAs. CRISPR interference is potentiated further if dCas9 is fused to a domain, such as the KRAB (Krüppel-associated box) domain, that actively represses gene expression via modulation of chromatin structure around the genomic site (Fig. 1) [29]. Because no change is made to the DNA sequence itself, the interference is reversible—once dCas9 is no longer present at the site, gene expression returns to normal. The opposite phenomenon, CRISPR activation, can be achieved by either fusing domains that enhance gene expression (such as the transcriptional activator VP16) to dCas9 or by extending the sequence of the guide RNA on its 3′

end with RNA aptamers that can recruit activator domains to the complex (Fig. 1) [29]. CRISPR interference and CRISPR activation have proven to be so generalizable across the genome that they can be used to do large-scale, genome-wide functional screens to identify individual genes that modulate a cellular phenotype of interest [30].

A different type of epigenome editing entails alteration of the methylation state of DNA sequences, particularly at cytosine bases in CpG dinucleotide sequences. Methylation around the transcription start site usually is linked to gene silencing, whereas non-methylation is linked to gene activation. Fusions of engineered nucleases to demethylase or methyltransferase domains can modulate gene expression in either direction [31, 32], though the permanence of the methylation changes introduced by these epigenome editors remains to be established.

1.4 Other Types of Editing

Like base editing and epigenome editing, prime editing takes advantage of the search-and-bind capacity of catalytically impaired Cas9 to bind a target site specified by a guide RNA. Prime editing was recently developed in an attempt to overcome the limitations in the types of changes that can be made by base editing, as well as the limitations in efficiency of HDR editing [33]. It entails two modifications to a CRISPR-Cas9 complex. The first is a fusion of nCas9 to a reverse transcriptase that can build a DNA strand complementary to a single-strand RNA substrate. The second is extension of the guide RNA on its 3′ end to add an RNA sequence that is complementary to the non-target DNA strand but also includes a desired mutation; this extended guide RNA is called the pegRNA. The prime editor's nCas9 nicks the non-target strand (unlike base editors, which nick the target strand), and the 3′ end of the pegRNA hybridizes with the non-target strand on one side of the nick (5′ direction), which creates an RNA-DNA duplex that serves as a template for reverse transcriptase, which builds a DNA sequence (including the mutation) on the middle portion of the pegRNA. When the reverse transcriptase completes its job, and the prime editor moves on from the site, there is a new, extra DNA strand that can replace part of the non-target strand, resulting in permanent incorporation of the mutation after DNA repair is complete. Although this process is complex, and the efficiency is not high (though typically higher than that of HDR), prime editing can precisely introduce a wide variety of mutations at the target site: single-nucleotide changes, whether transition or transversion mutations, and indel mutations of various sizes up to dozens of base pairs in length.

The final type of editing is RNA editing, which takes advantage of the Cas13 family of proteins [34]. As with Cas9 and Cas12, CRISPR-Cas13 systems comprise two-component, protein-RNA complexes, but they bind and act upon RNA molecules, not DNA molecules. RNA editors can be used to either degrade target RNAs [34] or to catalyze base edits (A-to-I edits or C-to-U edits) in target RNAs [35, 36]. Because RNA molecules are labile, unlike DNA, the persistence of the RNA effects depends on the continual presence of the RNA editor and its acting on any newly transcribed RNA molecules.

2 Disease Modeling and Diagnostics

The predominant use of genome-editing technology has been to generate animal and cellular models of disease. As recounted above, homologous recombination has been exploited to generate thousands of genetically modified mouse models, many of which have been useful in understanding the pathobiology of various cardiovascular and metabolic disorders. The development of modern genome-editing tools has only accelerated the pace of model-based discovery. Whereas homologous recombination involves a substantial amount of work over 1–2 years to develop mouse models—modification of mouse embryonic stem cells, addition of modified stem cells into mouse blastocysts, derivation of chimeric mice in which (hopefully) the genetic modification is present in germ cells, and breeding of

subsequent generations to eventually obtain knockout or knock-in mice with the desired genotypes—engineered nucleases, particularly CRISPR-Cas9, have made it possible to reduce the time needed to generate mouse models to a matter of weeks. The genome-editing tool is injected directly into single-cell mouse embryos of any genetic background—either as DNA vectors, RNA, or protein—with the result that any edits made in the zygote will be present in the entire animal following birth. CRISPR-Cas9 has proven especially potent in both knocking out genes and knocking in specific alterations [37, 38]. The technique has been applied across many species, including large animals that recapitulate human cardiovascular and metabolic diseases more faithfully than mice.

Genome editing has proven highly advantageous in facilitating the use of human pluripotent stem cells (hPSCs) for disease modeling. Early hPSC-based modeling studies used non-matched induced pluripotent stem cell (iPSC) lines from patients with disease and from healthy individuals, ignoring differences in sex, ethnicity, genetic backgrounds, epigenetics, iPSC derivation technique, cellular source, etc., meaning that any differences observed between somatic cells differentiated from the iPSC lines were subject to severe confounding. Genome editing permits the generation of matched, isogenic hPSC lines with and without a disease-associated mutation, making any observed differences much more reflective of disease pathogenesis. In the first study that used isogenic hPSC lines to dissect cardiovascular and metabolic traits, TALENs were used to edit knockout and knock-in mutations into hPSCs, which were then differentiated into somatic cell types like hepatocytes and adipocytes that were used to clarify the roles of the *SORT1*, *AKT2*, and *PLIN1* genes in lipoprotein metabolism, hypoinsulinemic hypoglycemia with hemihypertrophy, and lipodystrophy, respectively [39]. Since then, numerous studies of cardiovascular and metabolic traits with isogenic cell lines have been undertaken [40].

As an offshoot of disease modeling studies, isogenic iPSC lines are now being used to ascertain the pathogenicity of genetic variants of "uncertain significance" identified in patients suspected to have inherited cardiovascular diseases, like cardiomyopathies and rhythm disorders. These studies entail either (1) starting with an iPSC line derived from a healthy individual, following by editing in of the variant into the iPSC line, or (2) generating an iPSC line from the patient, and correction of the variant in the iPSC line. In one of the first demonstrations of this diagnostic approach, the process of generating iPSCs with and without a variant of uncertain significance identified in a patient with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, followed by phenotyping of iPSC-cardiomyocytes, was completed in less than 3 months and found the variant to be benign, allowing for the patient to be informed of the results at her regularly scheduled follow-up clinic visit [41].

3 Therapeutic Genome Editing

There have been a number of exciting advances in therapeutic genome editing in the past decade. With respect to cardiovascular and metabolic diseases, virtually all therapeutic genome-editing applications that are currently envisioned would take place in vivo (within the bodies of living patients) rather than ex vivo (in cells taken from the body, treated outside of the body, and then transplanted back into the body). As it happens, many of the proof-of-concept studies on in vivo therapeutic genome editing have focused on a gene of outstanding significance for cardiovascular disease, *PCSK9*—due to the ease of assessing the pharmacodynamic effects of *PCSK9* editing, reduction of blood PCSK9 and cholesterol levels—and a review of just those *PCSK9* studies provides a comprehensive overview of the progress in the field.

PCSK9 is a key regulator of the metabolism of low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C). People with naturally occurring *PCSK9* nonsense mutations have substantially reduced LDL-C levels as well as up to 88% reduction in risk of coronary heart disease [42], and a few individuals with complete knockout of *PCSK9* have been

identified [43, 44]. These observations have made *PCSK9* one of the most compelling therapeutic targets for the treatment and prevention of coronary heart disease, with a number of PCSK9-targeting drugs either approved for use in patients or being evaluated in clinical trials.

In the first demonstration of highly efficient in vivo mammalian genome editing, an adenoviral vector encoding SpCas9 and a guide RNA targeting exon 1 of the mouse *Pcsk9* gene were used to knock down *Pcsk9* in the liver by introducing loss-of-function mutations via NHEJ [45]. Adenoviral vectors are generally not used in patients due to the risk of severe and possibly fatal immune responses to the vectors; adeno-associated viral (AAV) vectors are better tolerated and preferred for clinical use. A disadvantage of AAV vectors is that they have a limited cargo capacity (<5 kilobases) that cannot accommodate most genome-editing tools in a single vector, e.g., SpCas9 (the gene alone being ≈4.2 kilobases) and a guide RNA expression cassette (≈500 base pairs). Adenoviral vectors have a much large cargo capacity that can easily fit any genome-editing tool. In this study, the investigators administered the CRISPR adenoviral vector or a control adenoviral vector to wild-type mice. After several days, the livers of mice receiving the CRISPR vector had >50% editing at the *PCSK9* target site. The most common edits were one-base pair or two-base pair deletions or insertions, with bigger edits as large as dozens of base pairs in size occurring much less frequently. The editing was accompanied by reductions of blood PCSK9 protein of ≈90% and blood cholesterol levels of 35–40%, almost as much as the 36–52% reduction of cholesterol observed in germline *Pcsk9* knockout mice [46]. This initial study showed no evidence of mutagenesis at a handful of candidate off-target sites.

In a later study by a different group of investigators, the same editing results were reproduced in mice treated with a similar adenoviral vector with SpCas9 and the same *Pcsk9* guide RNA [47]. The investigators rigorously assessed for off-target mutagenesis within the liver through a two-step approach. They first screened for potential off-target sites using a biochemical technique called CIRCLE-seq, in which circularized mouse genomic DNA fragments were exposed to SpCas9 protein and the *Pcsk9* guide RNA in vitro, followed by next-generation sequencing to identify linearized DNA fragments, yielding a list of 182 candidate sites. PCR amplification of the candidate sites and deep next-generation sequencing of the amplicons from liver genomic DNA samples from the CRISPR-treated mice found no evidence of off-target mutagenesis.

Despite the encouraging results suggesting that it was possible to perform genome editing in a manner that was both efficient and safe (with respect to off-target mutagenesis), they were not directly relevant to what might happen with *PCSK9* editing in human beings, due to three major differences between mice and humans. First, there are substantial differences between the mouse *Pcsk9* sequence and the human *PCSK9* sequence, making it almost impossible to identify an efficient guide RNA matching both species. Second, there are substantial differences between the mouse genome and the human genome, meaning that off-target profiling in the context of the mouse genome is not predictive of off-target editing in the human genome. Third, there are substantial physiological differences between mouse hepatocytes and human hepatocytes, and editing outcomes might differ significantly between the two cell types.

In order to better assess the efficacy and safety of a potential human *PCSK9*-editing therapy, a study was undertaken in chimeric liver-humanized mice, a model system in which a mouse's own hepatocytes have been replaced with transplanted primary human hepatocytes [48]. Liver-humanized mice were treated with an adenoviral vector encoding SpCas9 and a guide RNA targeting exon 1 of the human *PCSK9* gene. There was ≈50% NHEJ editing of the human *PCSK9* alleles present in the humanized liver, with no mutagenesis observed at a handful of candidate off-target sites. The editing was accompanied by ≈50% reduction of the amount of human PCSK9 protein in the blood. Although the adenoviral vector would not be appropriate for use in patients, the results of this study speak

to the possible efficacy and safety of *PCSK9*-editing therapy in humans.

The next set of advances entailed moving away from adenoviral vectors to delivery approaches more amenable to clinical translation. In the first study to use AAV to achieve highly efficient in vivo mammalian genome editing, SaCas9—which is significantly smaller than SpCas9—along with either of two guide RNAs targeting the mouse *Pcsk9* gene was encoded in a single AAV vector [15]. Either AAV vector, upon administration to wild-type mice, resulted in 40–50% editing of the *Pcsk9* gene in the liver, with corresponding reductions of blood PCSK9 protein of >90% and blood cholesterol levels of ≈40%, very similar to the results seen in the earlier studies with adenoviral delivery of SpCas9.

The successful use of AAV was followed by the demonstration of nonviral methods to deliver CRISPR-Cas9 into the liver in vivo. The best proven nonviral vehicle is the lipid nanoparticle (LNP). In the first study with CRISPR-Cas9 delivered into the liver solely via a nonviral method, LNPs, formulated either with the SpCas9 messenger RNA or with a synthesized guide RNA targeting *Pcsk9*, were serially injected into wild-type mice, resulting in moderate reduction of the liver PCSK9 protein level, by 40–50% [49]. In a subsequent study, LNPs formulated either with the SpCas9 messenger RNA or with two synthesized guide RNAs targeting *Pcsk9*, with chemical modifications to enhance stability of the RNAs in vivo, were administered together into wild-type mice as a one-shot therapy [50]. LNP treatment resulted in >80% editing of the gene in the liver—the very high editing rate resulting from NHEJ-mediated deletion between the sites targeted by the two guide RNAs (Fig. 1), which typically is more efficient than NHEJ editing at a single site—as well as an absence of PCSK9 protein in the blood and 35–40% reduction of blood cholesterol levels. No editing was observed in the lungs or spleen, suggesting that either the LNPs were taken up specifically by the liver or that the *Pcsk9* locus was accessible to SpCas9 only in liver cells.

After the various demonstrations of efficacy of in vivo genome editing using CRISPR-Cas9 nucleases, the next advance was the development of base editing as a therapeutic approach. Exploiting the ability of cytosine base editors to introduce nonsense mutations into genes via C-to-T changes or G-to-A changes (the latter resulting from C-to-T edits on the antisense strand) in specific codons, a proof-of-concept study used an adenoviral vector to deliver the cytosine base editor BE3 along with a guide RNA targeting *Pcsk9* into the livers of wild-type mice [51]. The guide RNA targeted tryptophan-159, with the codon TGG, for which editing of either or both guanines to adenines results in a stop codon. Mice treated with the adenoviral vector displayed ≈30% edited alleles, mostly the expected stop codons but with some bystander edits resulting in missense mutations, as well as indel mutations at a rate of 1–2%. There were corresponding reductions of blood PCSK9 protein of ≈60% and blood cholesterol levels of ≈30%. These were smaller reductions than observed in the previous mouse studies with CRISPR-Cas9 nucleases, though this reflects the use of early, non-optimized base-editing technology.

The same *Pcsk9* base-editing strategy was used in one of the first demonstrations of fetal genome editing in mice. Whereas with fetal surgery, life-threatening anatomical defects are treated while patients are still in the womb, fetal genome editing would be reserved for patients with severe genetic disorders already causing damage at the prenatal stage and resulting in high morbidity and mortality after birth. An adenoviral vector expressing the BE3 base editor targeting *Pcsk9* was administered to the livers of fetal mice via injection into the vitelline vein, the precursor to the portal vein [52]. This procedure performed before birth resulted in permanently reduced blood PCSK9 and cholesterol levels after birth. (Of note, hypercholesterolemia is not a condition that under any circumstances would require prenatal treatment, and the experiment was performed only as a proof of concept of fetal genome editing.)

Other types of genome-editing technologies have been employed to knock down *Pcsk9* in mice, although their prospects for long-term therapeutic use are unclear. In a demonstration of epigenome editing, catalytically dead SaCas9

was fused to a KRAB repressor domain; the editor and a guide RNA targeting the *Pcsk9* promoter were encoded in two separate AAV vectors [53]. The AAV vectors were co-administered to mice, resulting in ≈50% reduction in hepatic *Pcsk9* gene expression and ≈80% reduction in blood PCSK9 protein levels, along with a corresponding reduction in blood LDL-C levels. However, the therapeutic effects weakened over the course of a few months, suggesting that as expression of the epigenome editor waned, so too did the repression of *Pcsk9*. A different study successfully demonstrated the use of an RNA editor, specifically CasRx (Cas13d) delivered by an AAV vector, to knock down *Pcsk9* expression [54], though as with epigenome editing, the therapeutic effect would be expected to last only as long as the expression of the editor persisted. Both epigenome editing and RNA editing would likely require repeated administrations of the treatment in order to maintain a chronic therapeutic effect, unlike nuclease editing or base editing, which could provide "one-and-done" treatment options.

A key step toward translation of therapeutic genome editing to human patients is the demonstration of efficacy and safety in nonhuman primates. One of the first such studies used meganucleases rather than CRISPR-Cas9 to target the *PCSK9* gene [55]. The investigators used an AAV vector encoding a meganuclease specific for a sequence in exon 7 of *PCSK9* and expressed from a strong liver-specific promoter. When administered to rhesus macaques via intravenous injection at various doses, a very high dose of the AAV vector resulted in 46% editing of *PCSK9* in the liver, with corresponding reductions of blood PCSK9 protein of 85% and blood LDL cholesterol levels of 56%. (Lower AAV doses produced substantially lower editing rates.) In this ongoing study, the reductions have persisted to more than 3 years so far [56]. However, several serious shortcomings have emerged from this study. First, there was on-target editing of an unexpected nature. Although the intent was to disrupt *PCSK9* via NHEJ, there was substantial integration of AAV vector sequences at the site of the double-strand break, at such a high rate that in fact the most frequent editing event was viral sequence insertion—with unknown safety consequences. Second, there was significant off-target mutagenesis from the meganuclease at numerous genomic sites both in the monkeys and in human hepatocytes. Third, there were substantial T-cell immune responses against both the AAV vector and the meganuclease, resulting in surges in blood transaminase levels in all treated monkeys several weeks after treatment, consistent with immune-mediated hepatocyte death, though the surges spontaneously resolved over the course of several weeks to months without any apparent lasting effects. Despite these shortcomings, this study established the feasibility of "one-and-done" genome editing with therapeutic effects lasting for years and, likely, for the lifetimes of the treated animals.

In a more recent nonhuman primate study, the investigators used adenine base editing to knock down *PCSK9* in cynomolgus monkeys [57]. LNPs encapsulating both the adenine base editor messenger RNA and a synthetic guide RNA targeting *PCSK9* were used to deliver the editor into the liver, resulting in ≈66% editing of *PCSK9*, ≈90% reduction of blood PCSK9 levels, and ≈60% reduction of blood LDL-C levels persisting more than 8 months in an ongoing study. This study contrasted with the meganuclease study in several important ways. The editing rates were consistently and substantially higher with LNP-delivered adenine base editor compared to AAV-delivered meganuclease. Due to the LNP approach not using any DNA components, there was no risk of vector sequence integration into the genome, and the use of base editing resulted in a specific base pair change in *PCSK9*, in contrast to the semi-random indels from NHEJ induced by the meganuclease. With base editing, there was no discernible off-target editing at a large number of candidate sites in human hepatocytes, and low-level off-target editing at just a single candidate site in monkey liver, with the off-target editing being confined to single-base pair changes (rather than indels). Finally, the LNP treatment resulted in immediate, transient rises in blood transaminase levels that spontaneously resolved in 1–2 weeks, with no subsequent transaminitis or other signs of immune responses.

On the strength of all of the aforementioned studies, *PCSK9* editing appears to be poised to enter clinical trials for patients with hypercholesterolemia and coronary heart disease. The therapeutic potential for genome editing in cardiovascular and metabolic diseases, of course, extends beyond *PCSK9*. Preclinical studies have established the prospects for the treatment of homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia by targeting the *ANGPTL3* gene in the liver [58] and the treatment of Duchenne muscular dystrophy-associated cardiomyopathy by targeting the *DMD* gene in the heart [59]. A clinical trial in which genome editing is being used to treat transthyretin cardiac amyloidosis by targeting the *TTR* gene in the liver [60] is already underway, with patients dosed as of late 2020.

4 Outlook

Genome editing is already having a transformative effect on research on cardiovascular and metabolic diseases, and it has the potential to have a similar impact on the practice of cardiovascular medicine as therapeutic applications begin to reach the clinic. Remarkably, almost all of the work described in this chapter has unfolded in just the last decade, and we can undoubtedly expect the next decade to see just as extraordinary a rate of progress of development of genome-editing technologies.

Note Portions of this chapter were adapted from reference [61] in accordance with the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License: https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/.

Competing Financial Interests The author is a co-founder of and advisor to Verve Therapeutics and Variant Bio.

References

1. Smithies O, Gregg RG, Boggs SS, Koralewski MA, Kucherlapati RS (1985) Insertion of DNA sequences into the human chromosomal beta-globin locus by homologous recombination. Nature 317(6034): 230–234
2. Thomas KR, Folger KR, Capecchi MR (1986) High frequency targeting of genes to specific sites in the mammalian genome. Cell 44(3):419–428
3. Rouet P, Smih F, Jasin M (1994) Introduction of double-strand breaks into the genome of mouse cells by expression of a rare-cutting endonuclease. Mol Cell Biol 14(12):8096–8106
4. Musunuru K (2021) Genome editing: a practical guide to research and clinical applications. Academic Press, London
5. Kim YG, Cha J, Chandrasegaran S (1996) Hybrid restriction enzymes: zinc finger fusions to Fok I cleavage domain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93(3): 1156–1160
6. Christian M, Cermak T, Doyle EL, Schmidt C, Zhang F, Hummel A, Bogdanove AJ, Voytas DF (2010) Targeting DNA double-strand breaks with TAL effector nucleases. Genetics 186(2):757–761
7. Epinat JC, Arnould S, Chames P, Rochaix P, Desfontaines D, Puzin C, Patin A, Zanghellini A, Paques F, Lacroix E (2003) A novel engineered meganuclease induces homologous recombination in yeast and mammalian cells. Nucleic Acids Res 31(11): 2952–2962
8. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
9. Cong L, Ran FA, Cox D, Lin S, Barretto R, Habib N, Hsu PD, Wu X, Jiang W, Marraffini LA, Zhang F (2013) Multiplex genome engineering using CRISPR/Cas systems. Science 339(6121):819–823
10. Mali P, Yang L, Esvelt KM, Aach J, Guell M, DiCarlo JE, Norville JE, Church GM (2013) RNA-guided human genome engineering via Cas9. Science 339(6121):823–826
11. Cho SW, Kim S, Kim JM, Kim JS (2013) Targeted genome engineering in human cells with the Cas9 RNA-guided endonuclease. Nat Biotechnol 31(3): 230–232
12. Hwang WY, Fu Y, Reyon D, Maeder ML, Tsai SQ, Sander JD, Peterson RT, Yeh JR, Joung JK (2013) Efficient genome editing in zebrafish using a CRISPR-Cas system. Nat Biotechnol 31(3):227–229
13. Jinek M, East A, Cheng A, Lin S, Ma E, Doudna J (2013) RNA-programmed genome editing in human cells. Elife 2:e00471
14. Ding Q, Regan SN, Xia Y, Oostrom LA, Cowan CA, Musunuru K (2013) Enhanced efficiency of human pluripotent stem cell genome editing through replacing TALENs with CRISPRs. Cell Stem Cell 12(4): 393–394
15. Ran FA, Cong L, Yan WX, Scott DA, Gootenberg JS, Kriz AJ, Zetsche B, Shalem O, Wu X, Makarova KS, Koonin EV, Sharp PA, Zhang F (2015) In vivo genome editing using Staphylococcus aureus Cas9. Nature 520(7546):186–191

16. Kleinstiver BP, Prew MS, Tsai SQ, Topkar VV, Nguyen NT, Zheng Z, Gonzales AP, Li Z, Peterson RT, Yeh JR, Aryee MJ, Joung JK (2015) Engineered CRISPR-Cas9 nucleases with altered PAM specificities. Nature 523(7561):481–485
17. Kleinstiver BP, Prew MS, Tsai SQ, Nguyen NT, Topkar VV, Zheng Z, Joung JK (2015) Broadening the targeting range of Staphylococcus aureus CRISPR-Cas9 by modifying PAM recognition. Nat Biotechnol 33(12):1293–1298
18. Zetsche B, Gootenberg JS, Abudayyeh OO, Slaymaker IM, Makarova KS, Essletzbichler P, Volz SE, Joung J, van der Oost J, Regev A, Koonin EV, Zhang F (2015) Cpf1 is a single RNA-guided endonuclease of a class 2 CRISPR-Cas system. Cell 163(3): 759–771
19. Strecker J, Jones S, Koopal B, Schmid-Burgk J, Zetsche B, Gao L, Makarova KS, Koonin EV, Zhang F (2019) Engineering of CRISPR-Cas12b for human genome editing. Nat Commun 10(1):212
20. Liu JJ, Orlova N, Oakes BL, Ma E, Spinner HB, Baney KLM, Chuck J, Tan D, Knott GJ, Harrington LB, Al-Shayeb B, Wagner A, Brotzmann J, Staahl BT, Taylor KL, Desmarais J, Nogales E, Doudna JA (2019) CasX enzymes comprise a distinct family of RNA-guided genome editors. Nature 566(7743): 218–223
21. Bibikova M, Golic M, Golic KG, Carroll D (2002) Targeted chromosomal cleavage and mutagenesis in Drosophila using zinc-finger nucleases. Genetics 161(3):1169–1175
22. Bibikova M, Beumer K, Trautman JK, Carroll D (2003) Enhancing gene targeting with designed zinc finger nucleases. Science 300(5620):764
23. Kleinstiver BP, Pattanayak V, Prew MS, Tsai SQ, Nguyen NT, Zheng Z, Joung JK (2016) High-fidelity CRISPR-Cas9 nucleases with no detectable genome-wide off-target effects. Nature 529(7587):490–495
24. Slaymaker IM, Gao L, Zetsche B, Scott DA, Yan WX, Zhang F (2016) Rationally engineered Cas9 nucleases with improved specificity. Science 351(6268):84–88
25. Fu Y, Sander JD, Reyon D, Cascio VM, Joung JK (2014) Improving CRISPR-Cas nuclease specificity using truncated guide RNAs. Nat Biotechnol 32(3): 279–284
26. Komor AC, Kim YB, Packer MS, Zuris JA, Liu DR (2016) Programmable editing of a target base in genomic DNA without double-stranded DNA cleavage. Nature 533(7603):420–424
27. Gaudelli NM, Komor AC, Rees HA, Packer MS, Badran AH, Bryson DI, Liu DL (2017) Programmable base editing of A•T to G•C in genomic DNA without DNA cleavage. Nature 551(7681):464–471
28. Qi LS, Larson MH, Gilbert LA, Doudna JA, Weissman JS, Arkin AP, Lim WA (2013) Repurposing CRISPR as an RNA-guided platform for sequence-specific control of gene expression. Cell 152(5):1173–1183
29. Gilbert LA, Larson MH, Morsut L, Liu Z, Brar GA, Torres SE, Stern-Ginossar N, Brandman O, Whitehead EH, Doudna JA, Lim WA, Weissman JS, Qi LS (2013) CRISPR-mediated modular RNA-guided regulation of transcription in eukaryotes. Cell 154(2):442–451
30. Gilbert LA, Horlbeck MA, Adamson B, Villalta JE, Chen Y, Whitehead EH, Guimaraes C, Panning B, Ploegh HL, Bassik MC, Qi LS, Kampmann M, Weissman JS (2014) Genome-scale CRISPR-mediated control of gene repression and activation. Cell 159(3): 647–661
31. Maeder ML, Angstman JF, Richardson ME, Linder SJ, Cascio VM, Tsai SQ, Ho QH, Sander JD, Reyon D, Bernstein BE, Costello JF, Wilkinson MF, Joung JK (2013) Targeted DNA demethylation and activation of endogenous genes using programmable TALE-TET1 fusion proteins. Nat Biotechnol 31(12):1137–1142
32. Bernstein DL, Le Lay JE, Ruano EG, Kaestner KH (2015) TALE-mediated epigenetic suppression of CDKN2A increases replication in human fibroblasts. J Clin Investig 125(5):1998–2006
33. Anzalone AV, Randolph PB, Davis JR, Sousa AA, Koblan LW, Levy JM, Chen PJ, Wilson C, Newby GA, Raguram A, Liu DR (2019) Search-and-replace genome editing without double-strand breaks or donor DNA. Nature 576(7785):149–157
34. Abudayyeh OO, Gootenberg JS, Essletzbichler P, Han S, Joung J, Belanto JJ, Verdine V, Cox DBT, Kellner MJ, Regev A, Lander ES, Voytas DF, Ting AY, Zhang F (2017) RNA targeting with CRISPR-Cas13. Nature 550(7675):280–284
35. Cox DBT, Gootenberg JS, Abudayyeh OO, Franklin B, Kellner MJ, Joung J, Zhang F (2017) RNA editing with CRISPR-Cas13. Science 358(6366):1019–1027
36. Abudayyeh OO, Gootenberg JS, Franklin B, Koob J, Kellner MJ, Ladha A, Joung J, Kirchgatterer P, Cox DBT, Zhang F (2019) A cytosine deaminase for programmable single-base RNA editing. Science 365(6451):382–386
37. Wang H, Yang H, Shivalila CS, Dawlaty MM, Cheng AW, Zhang F, Jaenisch R (2013) One-step generation of mice carrying mutations in multiple genes by CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome engineering. Cell 153(4):910–918
38. Yang H, Wang H, Shivalila CS, Cheng AW, Shi L, Jaenisch R (2013) One-step generation of mice carrying reporter and conditional alleles by CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome engineering. Cell 154(6):1370–1379
39. Ding Q, Lee YK, Schaefer EA, Peters DT, Veres A, Kim K, Kuperwasser N, Motola DL, Meissner TB, Hendriks WT, Trevisan M, Gupta RM, Moisan A, Banks E, Friesen M, Schinzel RT, Xia F, Tang A, Xia Y, Figueroa E, Wann A, Ahfeldt T, Daheron L, Zhang F, Rubin LL, Peng LF, Chung RT, Musunuru K, Cowan CA (2013) A TALEN genome-editing system for generating human stem cell-based disease models. Cell Stem Cell 12(2):238–251

40. Musunuru K, Sheikh F, Gupta RM, Houser SR, Maher KO, Milan DJ, Terzic A, Wu JC, American Heart Association Council on Functional Genomics and Translational Biology, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, Council on Cardiovascular and Stroke Nursing (2018) Induced pluripotent stem cells for cardiovascular disease modeling and precision medicine: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circ Genom Precis Med 11(1): e000043
41. Lv W, Qiao L, Petrenko N, Li W, Owens AT, McDermott-Roe C, Musunuru K (2018) Functional annotation of TNNT2 variants of uncertain significance with genome-edited cardiomyocytes. Circulation 138(24):2852–2854
42. Cohen JC, Boerwinkle E, Mosley TH Jr, Hobbs HH (2006) Sequence variations in PCSK9, low LDL, and protection against coronary heart disease. N Engl J Med 354(12):1264–1272
43. Zhao Z, Tuakli-Wosornu Y, Lagace TA, Kinch L, Grishin NV, Horton JD, Cohen JC, Hobbs HH (2006) Molecular characterization of loss-of-function mutations in PCSK9 and identification of a compound heterozygote. Am J Hum Genet 79(3):514–523
44. Hooper AJ, Marais AD, Tanyanyiwa DM, Burnett JR (2007) The C679X mutation in PCSK9 is present and lowers blood cholesterol in a southern African population. Atherosclerosis 193(2):445–448
45. Ding Q, Strong A, Patel KM, Ng SL, Gosis BS, Regan SN, Cowan CA, Rader DJ, Musunuru K (2014) Permanent alteration of PCSK9 with in vivo CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing. Circ Res 115(5):488–492
46. Rashid S, Curtis DE, Garuti R, Anderson NN, Bashmakov Y, Ho YK, Hammer RE, Moon YA, Horton JD (2005) Decreased plasma cholesterol and hypersensitivity to statins in mice lacking Pcsk9. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102(15):5374–5379
47. Akcakaya P, Bobbin ML, Guo JA, Malagon-Lopez J, Clement K, Garcia SP, Fellows MD, Porritt MJ, Firth MA, Carreras A, Baccega T, Seeliger F, Bjursell M, Tsai SQ, Nguyen NT, Nitsch R, Mayr LM, Pinello L, Bohlooly-Y M, Aryee MJ, Maresca M, Joung JK (2018) In vivo CRISPR editing with no detectable genome-wide off-target mutations. Nature 561(7723): 416–419
48. Wang X, Raghavan A, Chen T, Qiao L, Zhang Y, Ding Q, Musunuru K (2016) CRISPR-Cas9 targeting of PCSK9 in human hepatocytes in vivo. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 36(5):783–786
49. Jiang C, Mei M, Li B, Zhu X, Zu W, Tian Y, Wang Q, Guo Y, Dong Y, Tan X (2017) A non-viral CRISPR/Cas9 delivery system for therapeutically targeting HBV DNA and pcsk9 in vivo. Cell Res 27(3):440–443
50. Yin H, Song CQ, Suresh S, Wu Q, Walsh S, Rhym LH, Mintzer E, Bolukbasi MF, Zhu LJ, Kauffman K, Mou H, Oberholzer A, Ding J, Kwan SY, Bogorad RL, Zatsepin T, Koteliansky V, Wolfe SA, Xue W, Langer R, Anderson DG (2017) Structure-guided chemical modification of guide RNA enables potent non-viral in vivo genome editing. Nat Biotechnol 35(12):1179–1187
51. Chadwick AC, Wang X, Musunuru K (2017) In vivo base editing of PCSK9 (proprotein convertase subtilisin/kexin type 9) as a therapeutic alternative to genome editing. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 37(9): 1741–1747
52. Rossidis AC, Stratigis JD, Chadwick AC, Hartman HA, Ahn NJ, Li H, Singh K, Coons BE, Li L, Lv W, Zoltick PW, Alapati D, Zacharias W, Jain R, Morrisey EE, Musunuru K, Peranteau WH (2018) In utero CRISPR-mediated therapeutic editing of metabolic genes. Nat Med 24(10):1513–1518
53. Thakore PI, Kwon JB, Nelson CE, Rouse DC, Gemberling MP, Oliver ML, Gersbach CA (2018) RNA-guided transcriptional silencing in vivo with S. aureus CRISPR-Cas9 repressors. Nat Commun 9(1):1674
54. He B, Peng W, Huang J, Zhang H, Zhou Y, Yang X, Liu J, Li Z, Xu C, Xue M, Yang H, Huang P (2020) Modulation of metabolic functions through Cas13d-mediated gene knockdown in liver. Protein Cell 11(7): 518–524
55. Wang L, Smith J, Breton C, Clark P, Zhang J, Ying L, Che Y, Lape J, Bell P, Calcedo R, Buza EL, Saveliev A, Bartsevich VV, He Z, White J, Li M, Jantz D, Wilson JM (2018) Meganuclease targeting of PCSK9 in macaque liver leads to stable reduction in serum cholesterol. Nat Biotechnol 36(8):717–725
56. Wang L, Breton C, Warzecha CC, Bell P, Yan H, He Z, White J, Zhu Y, Li M, Buza EL, Jantz D, Wilson JM (2021) Long-term stable reduction of low-density lipoprotein in nonhuman primates following in vivo genome editing of PCSK9. Mol Ther 29(6): 2019–2029. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ymthe.2021.02.020. Epub ahead of print
57. Musunuru K, Chadwick AC, Mizoguchi T, Garcia SP, DeNizio JE, Reiss CW, Wang K, Iyer S, Dutta C, Clendaniel V, Amaonye M, Beach A, Berth K, Biswas S, Braun MC, Chen HM, Colace TV, Ganey JD, Gangopadhyay SA, Garrity R, Kasiewicz LN, Lavoie J, Madsen JA, Matsumoto Y, Mazzola AM, Nasrullah YS, Nneji J, Ren H, Sanjeev A, Shay M, Stahley MR, Fan SHY, Tam YK, Gaudelli NM, Ciaramella G, Stolz LE, Malyala P, Cheng CJ, Rajeev KG, Rohde E, Bellinger AM, Kathiresan S (2021) In vivo CRISPR base editing of PCSK9 durably lowers cholesterol in primates. Nature 593(7859):429–434
58. Chadwick AC, Evitt NH, Lv W, Musunuru K (2018) Reduced blood lipid levels with in vivo CRISPR-Cas9 base editing of ANGPTL3. Circulation 137(9): 975–977
59. Moretti A, Fonteyne L, Giesert F, Hoppmann P, Meier AB, Bozoglu T, Baehr A, Schneider CM, Sinnecker D, Klett K, Fröhlich T, Rahman FA, Haufe T, Sun S, Jurisch V, Kessler B, Hinkel R, Dirschinger R, Martens E, Jilek C, Graf A, Krebs S, Santamaria G, Kurome M, Zakhartchenko V, Campbell B, Voelse K, Wolf A, Ziegler T, Reichert S, Lee S, Flenkenthaler F,

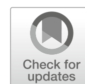
Dorn T, Jeremias I, Blum H, Dendorfer A, Schnieke A, Krause S, Walter MC, Klymiuk N, Laugwitz KL, Wolf E, Wurst W, Kupatt C (2020) Somatic gene editing ameliorates skeletal and cardiac muscle failure in pig and human models of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Nat Med 26(2):207–214

60. Finn JD, Smith AR, Patel MC, Shaw L, Youniss MR, van Heteren J, Dirstine T, Ciullo C, Lescarbeau R, Seitzer J, Shah RR, Shah A, Ling D, Growe J, Pink M, Rohde E, Wood KM, Salomon WE, Harrington WF, Dombrowski C, Strapps WR, Chang Y, Morrissey DV (2018) A single administration of CRISPR/Cas9 lipid nanoparticles achieves robust and persistent in vivo genome editing. Cell Rep 22(9):2227–2235

61. Musunuru K (2022) Moving toward genome-editing therapies for cardiovascular diseases. J Clin Invest 132(1):e148555

Part II

Bioinformatics



Online Databases of Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases

Paula Carrillo-Rodriguez, Javier Martinez-Lopez, Laura Gómez-Hernández, Luis Boraita-Morales, Maria Uceda-Molina, Irene Cuenca-Bermejo, Juan P. Valencia-Aguirre, Marahy Mora-López, and Julio Plaza-Diaz

Abstract

Metabolic and cardiovascular diseases are world-concerning pathologies that affect an important percentage of the population. Nowadays, advances in the genetic background of these diseases allow new approaches to models and therapies, as well as different gene edition trials. Furthermore, technological improvements in gene editing go along with the development of new online and biocomputational tools that provide us alternative ways to explore pathologies. In this chapter, historical gene editing methods are discussed but focusing on CRISPR-Cas system in detail and also online resources available to perform these types of experiments. Here, the different strategies for gene editing and their online tools are gathered, putting the light on its application in the study and treatment of cardiovascular and metabolic diseases.

Keywords

Cardiovascular disease · Metabolic disease · Gene editing · CRISPR-Cas systems

1 Cardiovascular and Metabolic Disease Genetic Basis

New genomic techniques have transformed our knowledge of the sources of congenital heart disease and have permitted a more rigorous pathogenesis definition of congenital heart disease in all ages of patients and even prenatal stages of life [1]. Numerous genes are associated in the propensity to arrhythmogenic syndromes as well as cardiomyopathies [2]. Cardiac arrhythmias are

Paula Carrillo-Rodriguez and Javier Martinez-Lopez contributed equally with all other contributors.

P. Carrillo-Rodriguez · J. Martinez-Lopez · M. Uceda-Molina
Research and Advances in Molecular and Cellular Immunology, Center of Biomedical Research, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

L. Gómez-Hernández · M. Mora-López
Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology III and Immunology, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

L. Boraita-Morales
Instituto de Parasitología y Biomedicina "López-Neyra"—CSIC, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

I. Cuenca-Bermejo
Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria IBS, Complejo Hospitalario Universitario de Granada, Granada, Spain

J. P. Valencia-Aguirre
GENYO, Centre for Genomics and Oncological Research—Pfizer, University of Granada, Andalusian Regional Government, Granada, Spain

J. Plaza-Diaz (✉)
Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria IBS, Complejo Hospitalario Universitario de Granada, Granada, Spain

Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology II, School of Pharmacy, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Children's Hospital of Eastern Ontario Research Institute, Ottawa, ON, Canada
e-mail: jrplaza@ugr.es

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_2

common and hereditary cardiomyopathies; sodium voltage-gated channel alpha subunit 5 mutations are the main causes of inherited arrhythmia syndromes, affecting myocyte structural proteins [2].

Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy and dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM) are genetic disorders that lead to life-threatening arrhythmia and heart failure, ultimately needing cardiac device implantation or heart transplantation [3]. Alpha 1-3-galactosyltransferase and metallopeptidase with thrombospondin type 1 motif 7 genes and alpha 1-3-N-acetylgalactosaminyltransferase are associated with angiographically confirmed coronary atherosclerosis, while cyclin and CBS domain divalent metal cation transport mediator 2 and apolipoprotein A5 genes were associated with hypertension and hypertriglyceridemia [4].

Conduction defects, including atrioventricular, atrial, and left bundle branch blocks, ventricular arrhythmias, and supraventricular tachycardia, are frequently detected in patients with dilated cardiomyopathy produced by the lamin A/C (LMNA) mutations. These mutations in LMNA interrelate with the genome and affect the several gene expressions. Mutations in titin and desmosome genes are related to an elevated incidence of atrial and ventricular arrhythmias. Functional genetic variants in genes encoding protein constituents of ion channels might influence to develop patients with cardiac arrhythmias with hereditary cardiomyopathies [2].

DNA sequencing technology advances have discovered numerous causative genes for hereditary thoracic aortic aneurysms and dissections, including Marfan syndrome (MFS), a heritable disorder of the tissues that connect the skeletal, cardiovascular, ocular, and pulmonary organ systems, cardiovascular manifestations (aortic root aneurysm and/or dissection), and ectopia lentis and offered molecular genetic testing of fibrillin 1 (FBN1) [5]. Filamin C gene pathogenic variants were initially described in myofibrillar myopathy. Mutations in the ryanodine receptor 2 gene are connected with cardiac arrhythmias as well as cardiomyopathies. Mutations in the phospholamban (PLN) gene cause arrhythmogenic cardiomyopathy (ACM) and DCM. The phenotype is described by heart failure with refractory characteristic and a fairly elevated prevalence of ventricular arrhythmias [2]. Plakophilin 2 (PKP2) gene mutations are the primary bases of ACM. Among genes coding for the desmosome proteins, only the PKP2 gene has been related to develop cardiac arrhythmias, with independency of cardiomyopathy [2].

Cystic fibrosis (CF) is an autosomal recessive genetic disorder that is produced by CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene inherited mutations and is an important lung genetic disorder that primarily causes severe injury of normal lung functions [6]. The CFTR gene encodes a protein that mostly controls ion and fluid homeostasis across epithelial barriers and, when the gene mutates, transports chloride and bicarbonate in the epithelial tissues of the lung developing abnormal features [7], leading to reduced mucociliary clearance and distorted hydration of airway surface fluid. In addition to lungs, the CFTR gene is similarly expressed in the epithelium of many organs including the kidney, liver, and pancreas [8]. The main population of CF patients have a defect in the gene characterized by the absence of three nucleotides in the in-frame deletion of a phenylalanine residue at position 508 of the polypeptide chain (ΔF508) [7]. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is a usual inflammatory disease with elevated global morbidity and mortality, and it is now expected to be the third largest cause of related death and chronic illness [7]. The main replicated and most important genome-wide association studies single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) at the 17q12-21 locus are associated with asthma symptoms in early life [9].

Lung cancer is growing as one of the main malignancies with excessive mortality and morbidity worldwide. Lung cancer progression includes multiple gene mutations and signaling pathways [7]. Mutations of genes include B-Raf proto-oncogene, KRAS proto-oncogene (K-RAS), epidermal growth factor receptor, Ret proto-oncogene, and MET proto-oncogene that are related to lung cancer prognosis [10].

Proto-oncogenes related to lung cancer comprise insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor, catenin

delta 2, remodeling and spacing factor 1, SRC proto-oncogene, protein tyrosine kinase 2, CD38, ROS proto-oncogene 1, and Fos proto-oncogene, among others. The aforementioned genes might act as oncogenes to increase the metastatic and invasive ability of cancer cells and might also stimulate progression of lung cancer [7].

The Runx3 inactivation is a critical event in the lung adenocarcinoma development. Targeted Runx3 inactivation provokes lung adenomas and distinctly reduces the adenocarcinoma formation latency induced by oncogenic K-RAS. Abnormal RUNX3 inactivation is commonly discovered in lung cancer tissue and is also related to lowly prognosis in lung cancer patients [10]. The tumor suppressor gene inactivation also has an important role in the lung cancer progression. These genes include cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A and tumor protein P53, among others. The protein expression of these tumor suppressor genes can reduce cell proliferation and colony formation, avoid migration and cell invasion, and display tumor regression during tumorigenesis [7].

Huntington's disease (HD), a neurodegenerative disorder, is produced by CAG trinucleotide repeat expansion that encodes a polyglutamine (poly Q) tract in the huntingtin (HTT) gene [11]. The mutation is an extended CAG trinucleotide repeat in the gene encoding the HTT protein, which produces a polyglutamine stretch at the N-terminus of the protein [12]. Those who inherit 36–40 repeats in the gene have a less developed form of the disease; even they never become symptomatic or may progress symptoms of HD in older age [13].

Chorea is increasingly observed in patients with pathogenic mutations in genes linked to cerebellar ataxia. Different types of disease mechanisms can affect medium spiny neuron cells and clinically lead to chorea, including degenerative processes (e.g., HD and HD-like), developmental abnormalities (e.g., NKX2-1- and FOXG1-related choreas), and disrupted post-receptor intracellular signaling (ADCY5- and PDE10A-related choreas) [14].

2 Significance of Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases

The possibility of DNA manipulating has permitted many advances in cardiovascular and metabolic diseases [15]. Genome editing technologies include transcription activator-like effector nuclease (TALEN), zinc finger nuclease (ZFN), and clustered regulatory interspaced short palindromic repeats. The clustered regulatory interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR)/CRISPR-associated protein 9 (CRISPR/Cas9) system has been starting up a new era of management throughout precision genome surgery [16].

Genome editing technology is developing and being useful into cardiovascular medicine and research to accelerate a greater understanding of the cardiovascular pathogenesis and the development of novel therapies. Genome editing-based therapy comprises the addition of therapeutic genes to specific sites in the genome, correction or inactivation of deleterious mutations that cause cardiovascular diseases, and the deletion of detrimental genes. Genome editing can be used for therapeutics in monogenic cardiovascular diseases (i.e., sudden cardiac death, familial hypercholesterolemia, and MFS) or prevention of polygenic cardiovascular diseases (i.e., hypertension) [4].

3 Lung Genetic Disorders and Therapeutic Options

CRISPR-Cas is evolving as an innovative technology for the management of various genetic diseases. Genome editing biomacromolecule delivery through viral or nonviral vectors has been suggested as new therapeutic options for CF and α-1 antitrypsin deficiency [17]. While traditional gene therapy pursues to transport a new functional gene into targeted cells to fix the genetic defect, genome editing can exactly remove and insert targeted genes to treat genetic defects in a site-specific manner [7]. CRISPR-Cas9-based genome editing approaches have

been projected for the therapy of lung cancers, including editing tumor suppressor genes, proto-oncogenes, or chemotherapy resistance-related genes [8]. CRISPR-Cas9 technology has edited some genes such as mitofusion 2, tumor suppressor miR1304, and Kelch-like ECH-associated protein 1 [7].

Genome editing by CRISPR-Cas9 in COPD and asthma denotes an auspicious method to reversal corticosteroid resistance. The disruption of corticosteroid resistance-related genes which are overexpressed or overactivated in the airways and alveolar sacs via CRISPR-Cas9 technology may deliver better therapeutic results [8]. HTT dropping by gene silencing is a methodology that has comprehended immense progresses in recent years. Mutant HTT is recognized to mainly source disease by a dominant toxic effect. Zinc finger proteins can be synthetically influenced to bind *HTT* DNA, fused to a functional domain such as a nuclease [13]. The future comes with delivery technologies for genome editing, nonviral delivery of genome editing systems, viral delivery of genome editing systems, nanoparticle-mediated delivery, delivery routes for genome editing of the lung genetic disorders, intratracheal/intranasal instillation, and inhalation delivery [8].

4 History and Genome Editing at Present

Traditionally, genetic studies were based on the discovery and analysis of spontaneous mutations and attempts to improve mutagenesis through the use of radiation or chemical treatment. Subsequently, the technique of inserting transposons was introduced in certain organisms; however, in the case of the aforementioned procedures, they originate in changes in random areas of the genome [18]. It is worth mentioning because of its huge importance that the first targeted genomic changes were in organisms such as yeast and mice in the 1970s and 1980s. To develop this technique, homologous recombination was used in the process of gene selection. Although this method, namely, gene targeting, was accurate in mouse cells, the same was not true when it was applied to other species [18].

Thanks to new genome editing techniques, targeted genetic manipulations can be performed in most organisms and cells. Highly efficient genome editing methods are based on making a directed DNA double-strand break (DSB) in the sequence of the pointed chromosome. There are also extremely specific nucleases capable of promoting homologous restoration in mammalian cells, among others, as has been demonstrated in numerous studies. This fact has enabled their use in programmable genome editing. Therefore, today, three main classes of programmable nucleases are used in genome editing to produce the aforementioned DSB, and these are TALENs, ZFNs, and CRISPR-Cas (this technique is the most widely used in research worldwide in recent years) [18, 19].

ZFNs are characterized by combining a DNA excision domain of a bacterial protein and a cluster of zinc fingers (discovered in sequence-specific eukaryotic transcription factors). TALEN, for its part, is similar to ZFN in that it uses the same bacterial excision domain; however, it is associated with DNA recognition zones through transcription factors originating from a specific type of bacteria, namely, phytopathogenic bacteria. On the other hand, CRISPR-Cas is defined as a prokaryotic system of acquired immunity to invading DNA or RNA [18].

CRISPR was discovered in the *Escherichia coli* genome as uncommon repeat segments. Subsequently, CRISPR was shown to have certain repeat spacer sequences from attacking bacteriophages. Also noteworthy is the presence of a cluster of *cas* genes within this set, which is of great importance for the excision of foreign genetic material. The type II CRISPR-Cas system from the bacterium *Streptococcus pyogenes* was suggested as a potent tool for gene editing of various organisms [19].

The enormous importance of CRISPR-Cas system use lies in the correction of genetic disorders such as Duchenne muscular dystrophy and beta-thalassemia. It can also be used in the inactivation of certain viruses such as hepatitis B virus, human papillomavirus, human

immunodeficiency virus 1, and virulent phages [19]. In summary, the CRISPR-Cas system has become an innovative technology that has transformed genome engineering as well as genome editing techniques [20].

5 How to Perform a Genome Editing Experiment Nowadays (CRISPR-Cas)

5.1 Molecular Mechanism and Components of the CRISPR-Cas System

CRISPR is a system displayed by most archaea and some bacteria that allows them to develop an antivirus response based on the distinction between self and nonself [21]. This system has spacers between the repeated sequences, which are DNA fragments derived from infecting viruses or plasmids that are processed by Cas nucleases. When there is another infection from this virus, the spacers act as transcriptional templates and are transcribed and processed to create a guide CRISPR-RNA (crRNA). The function of the crRNA is to guide Cas to cleave target DNA sequences of the attacking viruses [22]. CRISPR has transformed the field of gene edition and genome engineering, as it permits scientists to target and alter genes in a very specific way. It can also be used to regulate transcription and to develop gene therapy. However, it has some challenges to overcome, such as off-target mutations, protospacer adjacent motif (PAM) dependency, the fabrication of gRNA, and delivery methods [22].

The principal components of the CRISPR-Cas system are as follows:

- Cas protein, which has nuclease domains used to cleave determined sequences of the genome.
- Noncoding RNA: transactivating crRNA (tracrRNA), CRISPR-RNA (crRNA), and artificial fusion of both called single guide (gRNA). They target specific sequences and can include templates to add new sequences to the genome [23].

To accomplish genome edition, we need to create a DSB, so that the DNA repair process can follow and change the sequence. First, the gRNA binds the Cas, forming a ribonucleoprotein complex, and leads the nuclease to a selected spot of the genome [22]. The gRNA will recognize this site because it includes a sequence match to the crRNA part of this molecule and a PAM after the target sequence [24]. Then, Cas cleaves the single DNA strand upstream of the PAM and the opposite strand, in a way that forms a blunt end DNA DSB in the selected place [22]. This break will activate the DNA repair procedure, which can take place in two different processes: nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ) and homology-directed repair (HDR); and they will determine the type of alteration in the gene. The NHEJ pathway repairs the DSB but leads to short insertions or deletions close to the cutting site, so it is useful to knockout genes. HDR, which is a more difficult process, can insert specific sequences into the cutting place, when you add an exogenous template DNA in the system [24].

Customizable nucleases, like Cas for CRISPR-Cas system, open new doors to incorporate their use in other application, including fields beyond genome editing and gene and cell therapies, such as to change the epigenome, to perform genome imaging in live cells, or even to use them as a diagnostic method to detect nucleic acids [25]. It is also worth mentioning that to improve the characteristics of Cas nucleases, scientists are currently developing engineered variants with an expanded targeting scope and with higher DNA specificity [26].

6 How to Prepare a CRISPR-Cas Experiment

1. Choose the appropriate CRISPR system for the experiment aim, the cell line, the target species [27, 28], and the repair DBS (HDR for repair/insert genes and NHEJ for indels) [29].
2. Select single-guide RNA (sgRNA) target sequence of 120 nucleotides approximately and design the repair mechanism. This step

requires the identification of one PAM sequence in the targeted gene and his 20-nt upstream sequence to direct the nuclease activity. Furthermore, it is important to scan the genome of the species, looking for off-target effects nearly of the problem sequence [27, 30].
3. Produce sgRNA and transfect, cloning it in a plasmid-based system co-expressed with Cas protein or amplifying the sequence for PCR in vitro and, afterward, his insertion in the cell [27, 30].
4. Test the sgRNA to see if the sgRNA can create the DSB for the NHEJ successfully by PCR [27, 30].
5. Design donor RNA, one single- or double-strand oligonucleotide sequence of 100 bp approximately that contains the changes to repair the DNA or introduce the mutations in the target gene. This donor sequence has to have in its extremes cohesive ends homologous to the DSB (HA_L and HA_R), causing the adequate repair and orientation of the sequence [30].
6. Reduce off-target effects, doing the system precisely, efficiently, and permanently to gene editing [29].
7. Clonally select edited cells with markers that can be removed or with PCR-based strategies. Moreover, it's important to assure the gene modification and the changes in protein and transcript levels [28, 30].

7 Different Types of CRISPR-Cas-Based System

There exist two principal classes of CRISPR-Cas system in the function of the structure and number of Cas in the complex: Class I with a multi-protein Cas complex and II, with single multi-domain Cas protein [29, 31, 32]. Moreover, these classes have three subtypes: I, III, and IV for class I and II, V, and VI for class II.

- Type I: Six different Cas proteins take part in this system. They are encoded in one or more operons, forming a CRISPR-associated complex called cascade that makes large gaps in the complementary strand of target sequence [32].
- Type II: This system consists of monomeric Cas9 protein (with target PAM 5′-NGG-3′) [33], tracrRNA, and crRNA, both in a sgRNA. The nuclease activity of Cas9 can make cleavages in the same and complementary strand of the target sequence for the crRNA. The DBS leaves blunt ends, facilitating the HNH or NHEJ repair of the DNA [32]. Despite that, this system is more efficient in cells with low or without p53 [15].
- Type III: It seems like type I, but the difference is that this system can cleave DNA or RNA with Cas10 protein according to the complex subunits [34].
- Type V: The complex only has a nuclease (Cas12a in this case, called as Cpf1 too) and a crRNA and recognizes AT-rich PAM sequences. This endonuclease makes cohesive ends in the target RNA sequence, cutting both strands with Nuc and RuvC activities [32, 35, 36]. Besides that, it doesn't need the RNase III activity to process pre-crRNA. For all this, Cpf1 is more efficient than the CRISPR-Cas9 system [32, 36].
- Type VI: The system only needs a Cas13 protein and a crRNA molecule. Unlike the other Cas proteins, Cas13 has two higher eukaryotes and prokaryotes nucleotide-binding domains that cleave the target RNA [37].

Type II and V systems are less complex and, because of that, more popular in gene editing experiments. Although these systems are useful by themselves, a lot of modifications have been made in the Cas nucleases to improve their functions or implement others. For example, SNPs in one HNH/Nuc otrr RuvC nuclease sites in Cas result in a protein (nickase Ca or nCas) that only cuts one strand and forces the HDR repair [32]. On the other hand, the SNPs in both nuclease activity sites achieve the production of dead Cas9 (dCas). The mutated protein lost its nuclease activity, making possible her fusion with different

complements to modify the transcription activity of DNA target like CRISPRa (activation) system or CRISPRi (inhibition) system or even nucleotide/epigenetic conversion by fusion with other activity domains like deaminases [33, 32, 38] or KRAB or KRAB-MeCP2 fusion protein [15]. Also, modifications of Cas endonuclease with nuclear location signal are implemented to maximize the expression in mammals' single-cell embryos [30].

While the major CRISPR-Cas systems have as target DNA, development systems that are RNA-targeted are relevant nowadays. For example, the type III-based CRISPR-Cas system has an ribonucleoprotein complex with different nuclease and ribonuclease activities by distinct Cas proteins [37].

8 Off-Target Effect, Predictive Tools, and Strategies to Avoid Them

The specificity of the CRISPR-Cas9 method depends both on the segment of the target DNA within the gene to be disrupted and on the nuclease and guide RNA with the corresponding PAM sequence. This RNAg will produce the desired effects on the target sequence, called on-targets. However, the possible binding of the guide RNA to other genomic locations can produce off-target effects [39]. These off-target effects can lead to genomic modifications, unwanted mutations, and risk of genetic mosaicism [40, 41]. Therefore, one of the most important requirements of genomic editing experiments currently is that the number of off-targets should be kept to a minimum, as these effects are unacceptable in medicine [42].

The off-target effects vary greatly depending on where the mismatch is and the number of mismatches. On the one hand, if the mismatch is at the 5′ end of the target, with less than 8–12 base pairs upstream of the PAM sequence, this defect is tolerated. On the other hand, if there are three mismatches outside the 5′ end or in an amount of up to five nucleotides, these mutations can even match the modifications on the target [43]. In addition to off-target effects, they are not the only problem, as there may also be alterations (deletions or rearrangements) in the proximal or distal regions, unspecific polymorphisms, or deregulation of the tumor suppressor protein P53 [40, 41].

To assess off-target gRNA activity, we can divide the study into two main steps. First, it consists of a bioinformatic search for off-target sites. For this purpose, a wide range of tools is available, such as conventional alignment algorithms among them bowtie2, bowtie, TagScan, bwa, or CUSHAW. However, these programs have limitations, as they have a restricted number of mismatches and use a fixed MAP. Therefore, new custom prediction algorithms have been designed for CRISPR-Cas systems to predict off-target sites such as Cas-OFFinder, FlashFry, dsNickFury, CRISPOR, GUIDE-seq, DISCOVER-seq, or CRISPRdirect [44–46].

The algorithms mentioned above will predict mutations, and these predictions can be compared by the latest generation methods. That is, once the off-target sites are searched, scoring methods based on rankings and selections are used. Some of them are the MIT server, which estimates the off-target score by a formula that considers the quantity of mismatched nucleotides and the distance between them. Another is cutoff frequency determination used to calculate the off-target score by multiplying the occurrence of the bases at each position of the guide RNA spacer sequence. Others include CNN_Std, DeepCRISPR, CCTop, CROPIT, preCRISPR, CRISTA, and elevation. And some, such as CCTOP, focus more on the position of the mismatches at the target site, while CROPIT takes more into account the number of mismatches and uses the information of the chromatin state of the whole genome. In addition, modern genomic analysis platforms such as NGS or ddPCR can also identify off-target effects [44].

The use of these tools is intended to simplify the selection of guide RNAs with low off-target effects. But it should also be noted that the differences between off-target effects in certain cell types also depend on epigenomics and

chromatin structure [47]. Because of these obstacles produced by CRISPR technology, CRISPR-Cas9 design strategies are being designed to avoid the production of off-targets. Some of these include the Sniper Cas9 technique, which is a directed evolution method based on *E. coli* to obtain a Cas9 variant with optimized specificity and activity on the target [47]; others include modifying Cas9 to act as a nickase and only generate one cut of the DNA strands [48] or the fusion of Fok I nucleases to Cas9 enzymes forming the fCas9 complex, a dimerization that allows increasing fourfold the specificity of nickases and 140 plus the specificity of conventional Cas9 [49].

9 Guide RNA Designing and Available Online Tools and Databases

The design of the gRNA is a determinant factor for the outcomes of the experiment. Bacterial gRNA is composed of two kinds of RNA: crRNA, which recognizes the target sequence, and tracrRNA, which helps the first to bind the DNA in the correct orientation for the Cas protein [50]. Nevertheless, they can be synthesized together in a sgRNA that is fully functional for genome editing [23]. However, not all Cas-type nuclease requirements are the same; Cas12a protein does only need a single 40-nucleotide crRNA [51].

As it has been described before, it's clear that three-dimensional structure is determined. Formation of the R-loop once the DNA is bound to the gRNA is a crucial step that could disrupt the efficiency of the process and can be estimated [52]. Other chemical modifications can involve changes in CRISPR-Cas activity potentiating the strong interaction between the molecules involved [53, 54]. For instance, it has been reported an increased CRISPR-Cas system efficiency due to the addition of functional groups (i.e., methyl, fluor, or thiol) in the ribose molecule [55]. Other modifications in the phosphate group and the nucleic acid can lead to an improvement in stability, CRISPR-Cas activity, or immune response [54]. Length variation of gRNA also makes a quantitative difference. Thus, truncated gRNA can be as efficient as a non-truncated gRNA, although some cell lines like stem cells seem to be less potent [56]. Additionally, extending the length of the gRNA at 5′ also led to a good response to in vitro and in vivo gene editing [57]. The tertiary structure of the gRNA can also be modified to improve or implement protein recruitment in the catalytic zone, add enzymatic activities, or even carry the substrate for a catalytic reaction [54]. Finally, the gRNA can also be modified by conjugating the donor DNA leading to or facilitating an HDR-mediated gene repair [58].

Off-target effects are determinant in designing the experiment, but on-target efficiency can be also calculated. There are several gRNA designing online tools; some of the most popular are E-CRISP (http://www.e-crisp.org/E-CRISP/), CHOPCHOP (https://chopchop.cbu.uib.no/), and CRISPOR (http://crispor.tefor.net/). On-target efficiency can be measured by a wide variety of web resources, but the methods used differ between them [59]. The most extended ones are from Doench et al., Xu et al., and Ruleset2 [60–62]. All three studies share some conclusions and strategies predicting on-target efficiency. They assessed that certain nucleotides at specific positions of the target DNA sequence would increase on-target efficiency, so as in the gRNA, where GC content is determinant in this efficiency score [60–62]. Nevertheless, there are some limitations to these methods. The main drawback is the molecular context surrounding both the target sequence and the sgRNA. Local chromatin structure [60] or secondary structure of the gRNA [61] can decrease the predictive power of these models, preventing and detecting about 40% of inefficient gRNA. Other tools like Ruleset2 have implemented new parameters such as melting temperature to improve the predictive power [62]. Another miscalculation occurs when the target sequence belongs to a low-expressed exon. This setback can be corrected by using GUIDES (http://guides.sanjanalab.org/#/), which is connected to the tissue genetic expression database GTEx (https://www.gtexportal.org/home/).

Some of the online resources available use multiple of these methods; this is the case of CHOPCHOP (all three), CRISPOR (all three), and E-CRISP [59–62]. However, other tools only use one method: sgRNA Designer (https://portals.broadinstitute.org/gpp/public/analysis-tools/sgrna-design) only uses Ruleset2, whereas SSC (http://cistrome.org/SSC/) calculates the on-target efficiency using the method designed by Doench et al. [60].

There are other features to be considered when using these online tools. One of them is the input: you may need to include a list of target genes with their gene symbols like in CRISPRscan (https://www.crisprscan.org/), or you might need to input the target sequence in a text file like in Cas-OFFinder (http://www.rgenome.net/cas-offinder/). Another important consideration is the experiment type. As it has been described before, CRISPR-Cas system doesn't limit to gene editing, and there are some tools to design gRNA for these new applications such as CASPER (https://github.com/TrinhLab/CASPER), which could be very useful in epigenomic and genome imaging [31]. At last, many of these online resources let you work with multiple species, but some of them are specific in one, for example, fly (https://www.flyrnai.org/crispr/) and mosquito (https://www.flyrnai.org/tools/fly2mosquito/web/) tools.

Ultimately, the gRNA synthesis can be made by different methods; two main strategies can be distinguished: extracellular gRNA production, for example, amplifying by PCR and transfecting the RNA via delivery systems as liposomes, and gRNA manufactured by the machinery of the cell, based on gRNA cloned onto a vector such as a plasmid [63].

10 Transfection Mechanisms

To enable the access of the interest proteins (the system CRISPR itself) and Cas9, the host cell must be treated to accept these exogenous molecules. One of the most used methods is electroporation [64], consisting of the electrical stimulation of the cell to open the most carrier proteins as possible and even to open up pores [65]. Also, for producing the plasmid, electroporation is the method used, allowing the incorporation of gRNA or cassette [66]. Another mechanism for the introduction of the ribonucleoproteins inside the cell is the use of lipid vesicles [67]. These vesicles fuse with the membrane of the cell, introducing their content in the cell.

Depending on the CRISPR system that is being used, this process may not be necessary, since the introduction of constitutive expressing Cas9 protein is mediated by adenoviruses, making the hosting cell produce continually the protein (being only necessary the gRNA to activate the system). This mechanism has been proved to generate much cellular toxicity [68] requiring many molecular control mechanisms, most times, making this design inviable.

The use of inteins is being studied, since they are proteins (naturally found in *Archaea*) that are transcribed among their proteins, as normal introns but can auto-excite themselves and control the activity (even the splicing) of other proteins [68]. It has been proposed as a solution for the low capacity of adenoviruses, since protein Cas9 could be split in two, and the inteins could re-form this protein entirely [68]. The main problem of this method is the irreversibility and possible off-targets generated [68].

The Golden Gate assembly method [69] is one of the solutions for the variable simultaneous target gene limitation of the CRISPR-Cas9 system. It consists in the construction of plasmids, containing up to 30 different gRNA. To that the assembly is properly done in the plasmid [69]; the ampicillin resistance gene is used to only survive the plasmids with those cassettes. One of the drawbacks of this method is the low percentage of success in the entrance in the cell and transfection [69], around 30%, but this is the best option when we want to modify several genes at once. The Gibson Assembly or isothermal in vitro recombination is one of the other mechanisms used for the DNA ligation of diverse fragments

with overlapping ends [70]. Both showed promising plasmid activities.

When the inserted sequence is in the nucleus inside the cell, the gRNA leads the complex to the single-stranded DNA, where both PAM and gRNA sequences recognize their binding site [71]. Using the Cas' nuclease activity, the recognized sequence is cut, and, from this point on, the natural systems of DNA reparation act by reconstructing the complementary sequence of the gRNA and changing this way the cell's genome (https://www.chilebio.cl/edicion-de-genomas/crispr/).

There are sequences such as cis-regulatory elements [72], where the mechanism of the action itself is still exactly unknown but indications are showing that the PAM sequence is related to those elements [72]. The trans-regulatory elements (sequences encoding for transcription factors) may be highly affected, since the "new" inserted sequence could be recognized better, allowing better control of trans-regulatory elements [72].

The use of libraries is one of the most important tools, since they allow finding and using models of sequences, generating the highest efficiencies. Databases, such as BLAST (https://blast.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Blast.cgi), provide trustful aligning sequences to compare with other groups. Libraries, like GeCKO and GeCKOv2 [73], Thermo Fisher Scientific (https://www.thermofisher.com/es/es/home/life-science/genome-editing/geneart-crispr.html?SID=fr-crispr-main), and Cultek (https://www.cultek.com/molecular/edicion-genica/librerias-crispr-cas9-crrna.html?___store=default&___from_store=default) provide base sequences and information for future developments of gRNA, PAM, or some other interesting sequences. Even some commercial houses have tools to design and improve sequences, using already existing oligonucleotides, showing the reading frame, mRNA, codons, etc. Table 1 summarizes the main online databases for gene editing in cardiovascular and metabolic diseases.

11 Cardiovascular and Metabolic Disease Genome Editing in the Field

Several models have been used in the genomic edition tools, leading to a variety of approaches varying on the target cell type, their differentiation state, the persistence of the modification, and the gene modification itself [15]. Up next, we describe some experimental studies that show the efficiency of different tools and systems in the context of genetic cardiopathies and metabolic diseases.

12 Experiments Using CRISPR-Cas9

12.1 PRKAG2 Cardiac Syndrome

PRKAG2 cardiac syndrome is produced by a dominant autosomal mutation in the H530 locus of the PRKAG2 gene, manifesting in arrhythmia, fast heartbeat, syncope, and chances of cardiac arrest [74]. A single dose of non-integrative gene therapy carrying AAV9-Cas9/sgRNA designed by Xie et al. [75] can effectively restore cardiac function in mice with a *PRKAG2* pathogenic variation. sgRNAs targeting the DNA sequence which leads to the H530R allele were designed using Benchling (https://www.benchling.com/crispr/), constructed in an AVV9-Cas9 carrier and administered on mice on a postnatal day (P) 4 and P42. Mice of different ages improved their cardiac function, suggesting the success of editing both splitting and non-splitting heart cells. The experimental model also considered off-targets of the candidate sgRNAs, analyzed by Jefferson's Computational Medicine Center's Off-Spotter (https://cm.jefferson.edu/Off-Spotter/). The off-target deep sequencing analysis demonstrated a low yield of off-targets by using AAV9-Cas9/sgRNA, suggesting that this non-integrative gene therapy can safely disrupt the H530R pathogenic variant without causing major side effects [75].

Table 1 Available online tools and database for gene editing

Available online tools	
Off-target effects	
Cas-OFFinder	https://www.rgenome.net/cas-offinder/
FlashFry	[44]
dsNickFury	[44]
CRISPOR	http://crispor.tefor.net/
GUIDE-Seq	[44]
DISCOVER-Seq	[45]
CRISPRdirect	[46]
Off-Spotter	https://cm.jefferson.edu/Off-Spotter/
Guide RNA designing	
CHOPCHOP	https://chopchop.cbu.uib.no/
E-CRISPR	http://www.e-crisp.org/E-CRISP/
CRISPOR	http://crispor.tefor.net/
GUIDES	http://guides.sanjanalab.org/#/
sgRNA Designer	https://portals.broadinstitute.org/gpp/public/analysis-tools/sgrna-design
SSC	http://cistrome.org/SSC/
CRISPRscan	https://www.crisprscan.org/
Cas-OFFinder	https://www.crisprscan.org/
CASPER	https://github.com/TrinhLab/CASPER
Benchling	https://www.benchling.com/
Sequence libraries	
BLAST	https://blast.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Blast.cgi
GeCKO	[73]
Thermo Fisher Scientific	https://www.thermofisher.com/es/es/home/life-science/genome-editing/geneart-crispr.html?SID=fr-crispr-main
Cultek	https://www.cultek.com/molecular/edicion-genica/librerias-crispr-cas9-crrna.html?___store=default&___from_store=default

12.2 MYH7 Dysfunction

MYH7 gene encodes a protein that mediates myosin-actin interaction, allowing cardiomyocytes to contract properly to perform heart functionality [76]. Mosqueira et al. [77] have used human pluripotent stem cell (PSC) to induce pathogenic variants on the MYH7 gene with a CRISPR/gRNA/Cas9-nickase system along with a flippase excision, generating nine different variants of the mutated MYH7 gene to study each polymorphism effect in cell metabolism and proper myosin-actin mediation.

Obtention of human PSC was assessed by somatic dedifferentiation of the dental pulp and skin punch biopsies via lentiviral transduction with Yamanaka factors Sox2, Oct3/4, Klf4, and c-Myc [78], while the CRISPR/gRNA/Cas9-nickase system was designed using pUC57 vectors and gRNA prediction tools from Zang Lab's Guide Design Resources (http://crispr.mit.edu). The result analysis yielded different cellular metabolic processes such as ROS increase, energy depletion, fetal gene expression, reduced filament contraction, and multinucleation in cardiomyocytes, interesting for drug repositioning [77].

13 Experiments Using TALENs

13.1 PLN-Associated Hereditary Heart Failure

Dilated cardiomyopathy triggered by the R14del variant in the PLN gene is characterized by arrhythmia and cardiac dysfunction due to an impairment in the Ca^{2+} influx between the

sarcoplasmic reticulum and the cytosol of myocardial cells [78]. In a study by Karakikes et al. [79], they have used induced PSC-derived cardiomyocytes of heterozygous patients, AAV6 vectors carrying miRNA targeting the PLN R14del variant, and a TALEN system in order to correct the R14del variant to a wild type non-pathologic allele, showing efficiency by Ca^{2+} influx recovery phenotype when the nucleases were administered.

TALEN was designed using TALEN Hit Software (Cellectis Bioresearch, http://talen-hit.cellectis-bioresearch.com/search) and delivered by electroporation, while AVV6-miRNAs were cocultured with cardiomyocytes after being fully differentiated from induced PSCs and miRNA selection using BLASTn.

13.2 Obesity and LepR

Chen et al. [80] successfully generated an obesity disease model by using a TALEN editing system that induced a premature stop codon in the leptin receptor (LepR) gene. Rat zygotes that were given the TALEN system in vitro showed shorter PCR products of LepR gene and lower mRNA expression and greater body weight. TALEN was designed with Cornell University's TALE-NT software (https://tale-nt.cac.cornell.edu/) and cloned into vectors described by Huang et al. [81], which comprise a pMD18T-simple vector and pCS2-TALEN expression vectors.

14 Experiments Using ZFN

14.1 FBN1 and Marfan Syndrome

Marfanism is an autosomal dominant disorder in which the skeletal and cardiovascular systems present abnormalities due to an unusual arrangement of extracellular microfibrils, composed of FBN1 protein. MFS patients are prone to fatal aortic rupture, being an interesting model for genome edition in cardiovascular pathologies of more complex disease onset. Fetal fibroblasts were electroporated with ZFNs targeting FBN1 exon 10, and pigs were cloned by somatic cell nuclear transfer of the former cells, creating piglets with connective tissue abnormalities. FBNIZFN05 nuclease was designed based on Sscrofa9 DNA database (http://feb2012.archive.ensembl.org/Sus_scrofa/Info/Index), recognizing a long 18-nucleotide motif to reduce off-target probability. Analysis of the cloned piglet's genome revealed no off-targets by the ZFN system.

Acknowledgments Julio Plaza-Diaz is part of the "UGR Plan Propio de Investigación 2016" and the "Excellence actions: Unit of Excellence on Exercise and Health (UCEES), University of Granada." Julio Plaza-Diaz is supported by a grant awarded to postdoctoral researchers at foreign universities and research centers from the "Fundación Ramón Areces," Madrid, Spain.

Competing Financial Interests The authors declare no competing financial interests.

Funding This research received no external funding.

References

1. Pierpont ME, Brueckner M, Chung WK, Garg V, Lacro RV, McGuire AL, Mital S, Priest JR, Pu WT, Roberts A, Ware SM, Gelb BD, Russell MW, American Heart Association Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young; Council on Cardiovascular and Stroke Nursing; and Council on Genomic and Precision Medicine (2018) Genetic basis for congenital heart disease: revisited: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation 138(21): e653–e711
2. Marian AJ, Asatryan B, Wehrens XHT (2020) Genetic basis and molecular biology of cardiac arrhythmias in cardiomyopathies. Cardiovasc Res 116(9):1600–1619
3. Tobita T, Nomura S, Fujita T, Morita H, Asano Y, Onoue K, Ito M, Imai Y, Suzuki A, Ko T, Satoh M, Fujita K, Naito AT, Furutani Y, Toko H, Harada M, Amiya E, Hatano M, Takimoto E, Shiga T, Nakanishi T, Sakata Y, Ono M, Saito Y, Takashima S, Hagiwara N, Aburatani H, Komuro I (2018) Genetic basis of cardiomyopathy and the genotypes involved in prognosis and left ventricular reverse remodeling. Sci Rep 8(1):1998
4. Krittanawong C, Sun T, Herzog E (2017) Big data and genome editing technology: a new paradigm of cardiovascular genomics. Curr Cardiol Rev 13(4):301–304
5. Takeda N, Komuro I (2019) Genetic basis of hereditary thoracic aortic aneurysms and dissections. J Cardiol 74(2):136–143

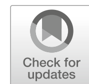
6. Maule G, Arosio D, Cereseto A (2020) Gene therapy for cystic fibrosis: progress and challenges of genome editing. Int J Mol Sci 21(11):3903
7. Kreindler JL (2010) Cystic fibrosis: exploiting its genetic basis in the hunt for new therapies. J Clin Pharm Ther 125(2):219–229
8. Wan T, Ping Y (2020) Delivery of genome-editing biomacromolecules for treatment of lung genetic disorders. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 168:196–216
9. Pividori M, Schoettler N, Nicolae DL, Ober C, Im HK (2019) Shared and distinct genetic risk factors for childhood-onset and adult-onset asthma: genome-wide and transcriptome-wide studies. Lancet Respir Med 7(6):509–522
10. Kim D, Lee YS, Kim DH, Bae SC (2020) Lung cancer staging and associated genetic and epigenetic events. Mol Cells 43(1):1–9
11. Xu X, Ng B, Sim B, Radulescu CI, Yusof NABM, Goh WI, Lin S, Lim JSY, Cha Y, Kusko R (2020) pS421 huntingtin modulates mitochondrial phenotypes and confers neuroprotection in an HD hiPSC model. Cell Death Dis 11(9):1–12
12. Ghosh R, Tabrizi SJ (2018) Clinical features of Huntington's disease. Adv Exp Med Biol 1049:1–28
13. Ghosh R, Tabrizi SJ (2018) Huntington disease. Handb Clin Neurol 147:255–278
14. Mencacci NE, Carecchio M (2016) Recent advances in genetics of chorea. Curr Opin Neurol 29(4):486–495
15. Vermersch E, Jouve C, Hulot JS (2020) CRISPR/Cas9 gene-editing strategies in cardiovascular cells. Cardiovasc Res 116(5):894–907
16. Chow MT, Chang RYK, Chan H-K (2020) Inhalation delivery technology for genome-editing of respiratory diseases. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 168:217–228
17. Xu X, Wan T, Xin H, Li D, Pan H, Wu J, Ping Y (2019) Delivery of CRISPR/Cas9 for therapeutic genome editing. J Gene Med 21(7):e3107
18. Carroll D (2017) Genome editing: past, present, and future. Yale J Biol Med 90(4):653–659
19. Kaur K, Tandon H, Gupta AK, Kumar M (2015) CrisprGE: a central hub of CRISPR/Cas-based genome editing. Database (Oxford) 2015:bav055
20. Sledzinski P, Nowaczyk M, Olejniczak M (2020) Computational tools and resources supporting CRISPR-Cas experiments. Cells 9(5):1288
21. Makarova KS, Wolf YI, Koonin EV (2013) Comparative genomics of defense systems in archaea and bacteria. Nucleic Acids Res 41(8):4360–4377
22. Zhang F, Wen Y, Guo X (2014) CRISPR/Cas9 for genome editing: progress, implications and challenges. Hum Mol Genet 23(R1):R40–R46
23. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
24. Wu X, Kriz AJ, Sharp PA (2014) Target specificity of the CRISPR-Cas9 system. Quant Biol 2(2):59–70
25. Reddy P, Vilella F, Izpisua Belmonte JC, Simon C (2020) Use of customizable nucleases for gene editing and other novel applications. Genes (Basel) 11(9):976
26. Anzalone AV, Koblan LW, Liu DR (2020) Genome editing with CRISPR-Cas nucleases, base editors, transposases and prime editors. Nat Biotechnol 38(7):824–844
27. Ran FA, Hsu PD, Wright J, Agarwala V, Scott DA, Zhang F (2013) Genome engineering using the CRISPR-Cas9 system. Nat Protoc 8(11):2281–2308
28. Miles LA, Garippa RJ, Poirier JT (2016) Design, execution, and analysis of pooled in vitro CRISPR/Cas9 screens. FEBS J 283(17):3170–3180
29. Moon SB, Kim DY, Ko JH, Kim YS (2019) Recent advances in the CRISPR genome editing tool set. Exp Mol Med 51(11):1–11
30. Harrison PT, Hart S (2018) A beginner's guide to gene editing. Exp Physiol 103(4):439–448
31. Alkhnbashi OS, Meier T, Mitrofanov A, Backofen R, Voss B (2020) CRISPR-Cas bioinformatics. Methods 172:3–11
32. Liu Z, Dong H, Cui Y, Cong L, Zhang D (2020) Application of different types of CRISPR/Cas-based systems in bacteria. Microb Cell Fact 19(1):172
33. Nishida K, Kondo A (2021) CRISPR-derived genome editing technologies for metabolic engineering. Metab Eng 63:141–147
34. Liu T, Pan S, Li Y, Peng N, She Q (2018) Type III CRISPR-Cas system: introduction and its application for genetic manipulations. Curr Issues Mol Biol 26:1–14
35. Koonin EV, Makarova KS, Zhang F (2017) Diversity, classification and evolution of CRISPR-Cas systems. Curr Opin Microbiol 37:67–78
36. Li B, Zeng C, Dong Y (2018) Design and assessment of engineered CRISPR-Cpf1 and its use for genome editing. Nat Protoc 13(5):899–914
37. Burmistrz M, Krakowski K, Krawczyk-Balska A (2020) RNA-targeting CRISPR-Cas systems and their applications. Int J Mol Sci 21(3):1122
38. Manghwar H, Li B, Ding X, Hussain A, Lindsey K, Zhang X, Jin S (2020) CRISPR/Cas systems in genome editing: methodologies and tools for sgRNA design, off-target evaluation, and strategies to mitigate off-target effects. Adv Sci (Weinh) 7(6):1902312
39. Zhang JH, Adikaram P, Pandey M, Genis A, Simonds WF (2016) Optimization of genome editing through CRISPR-Cas9 engineering. Bioengineered 7(3):166–174
40. Ma Y, Zhang L, Huang X (2014) Genome modification by CRISPR/Cas9. FEBS J 281(23):5186–5193
41. Fung K (2019) Detection of sickle cell disease-associated single nucleotide polymorphism using a graphene field effect transistor. Keck Science Department of Claremont McKenna, Pitzer, and Scripps Colleges. CMC Senior Theses. 2262. https://scholarship.claremont.edu/cmc_theses/2262

42. Schaefer KA, Wu WH, Colgan DF, Tsang SH, Bassuk AG, Mahajan VB (2017) Unexpected mutations after CRISPR-Cas9 editing in vivo. Nat Methods 14(6): 547–548
43. Cong L, Ran FA, Cox D, Lin S, Barretto R, Habib N, Hsu PD, Wu X, Jiang W, Marraffini LA, Zhang F (2013) Multiplex genome engineering using CRISPR/Cas systems. Science 339(6121):819–823
44. Wang J, Zhang X, Cheng L, Luo Y (2020) An overview and metanalysis of machine and deep learning-based CRISPR gRNA design tools. RNA Biol 17(1): 13–22
45. Wienert B, Wyman SK, Richardson CD, Yeh CD, Akcakaya P, Porritt MJ, Morlock M, Vu JT, Kazane KR, Watry HL, Judge LM, Conklin BR, Maresca M, Corn JE (2019) Unbiased detection of CRISPR off-targets in vivo using DISCOVER-Seq. Science 364(6437):286–289
46. Naito Y, Hino K, Bono H, Ui-Tei K (2015) CRISPRdirect: software for designing CRISPR/Cas guide RNA with reduced off-target sites. Bioinformatics 31(7):1120–1123
47. Lee J, Jung MH, Jeong E, Lee JK (2019) Using Sniper-Cas9 to minimize off-target effects of CRISPR-Cas9 without the loss of on-target activity via directed evolution. J Vis Exp 144:doi:10.3791/59202
48. Yang L, Yang JL, Byrne S, Pan J, Church GM (2014) CRISPR/Cas9-directed genome editing of cultured cells. Curr Protoc Mol Biol 107:31.1.1–31.117
49. Guilinger JP, Thompson DB, Liu DR (2014) Fusion of catalytically inactive Cas9 to FokI nuclease improves the specificity of genome modification. Nat Biotechnol 32(6):577–582
50. Hanna RE, Doench JG (2020) Design and analysis of CRISPR-Cas experiments. Nat Biotechnol 38(7): 813–823
51. Kleinstiver BP, Sousa AA, Walton RT, Tak YE, Hsu JY, Clement K, Welch MM, Horng JE, Malagon-Lopez J, Scarfo I, Maus MV, Pinello L, Aryee MJ, Joung JK (2019) Engineered CRISPR-Cas12a variants with increased activities and improved targeting ranges for gene, epigenetic and base editing. Nat Biotechnol 37(3):276–282
52. Xu X, Duan D, Chen SJ (2017) CRISPR-Cas9 cleavage efficiency correlates strongly with target-sgRNA folding stability: from physical mechanism to off-target assessment. Sci Rep 7(1):143
53. Filippova J, Matveeva A, Zhuravlev E, Stepanov G (2019) Guide RNA modification as a way to improve CRISPR/Cas9-based genome-editing systems. Biochimie 167:49–60
54. Moon SB, Kim DY, Ko JH, Kim JS, Kim YS (2019) Improving CRISPR genome editing by engineering guide RNAs. Trends Biotechnol 37(8):870–881
55. Mir A, Alterman JF, Hassler MR, Debacker AJ, Hudgens E, Echeverria D, Brodsky MH, Khvorova A, Watts JK, Sontheimer EJ (2018) Heavily and fully modified RNAs guide efficient SpyCas9-mediated genome editing. Nat Commun 9(1):2641
56. Zhang JP, Li XL, Neises A, Chen W, Hu LP, Ji GZ, Yu JY, Xu J, Yuan WP, Cheng T, Zhang XB (2016) Different effects of sgRNA length on CRISPR-mediated gene knockout efficiency. Sci Rep 6:28566
57. Ryu SM, Koo T, Kim K, Lim K, Baek G, Kim ST, Kim HS, Kim DE, Lee H, Chung E, Kim JS (2018) Adenine base editing in mouse embryos and an adult mouse model of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Nat Biotechnol 36(6):536–539
58. Lee K, Mackley VA, Rao A, Chong AT, Dewitt MA, Corn JE, Murthy N (2017) Synthetically modified guide RNA and donor DNA are a versatile platform for CRISPR-Cas9 engineering. Elife 6:e25312
59. Cui Y, Xu J, Cheng M, Liao X, Peng S (2018) Review of CRISPR/Cas9 sgRNA design tools. Interdiscip Sci 10(2):455–465
60. Doench JG, Hartenian E, Graham DB, Tothova Z, Hegde M, Smith I, Sullender M, Ebert BL, Xavier RJ, Root DE (2014) Rational design of highly active sgRNAs for CRISPR-Cas9-mediated gene inactivation. Nat Biotechnol 32(12):1262–1267
61. Xu H, Xiao T, Chen CH, Li W, Meyer CA, Wu Q, Wu D, Cong L, Zhang F, Liu JS, Brown M, Liu XS (2015) Sequence determinants of improved CRISPR sgRNA design. Genome Res 25(8):1147–1157
62. Doench JG, Fusi N, Sullender M, Hegde M, Vaimberg EW, Donovan KF, Smith I, Tothova Z, Wilen C, Orchard R, Virgin HW, Listgarten J, Root DE (2016) Optimized sgRNA design to maximize activity and minimize off-target effects of CRISPR-Cas9. Nat Biotechnol 34(2):184–191
63. Pallares Masmitja M, Knodlseder N, Guell M (2019) CRISPR-gRNA Design. Methods Mol Biol 1961:3–11
64. Seki A, Rutz S (2018) Optimized RNP transfection for highly efficient CRISPR/Cas9-mediated gene knockout in primary T cells. J Exp Med 215(3):985–997
65. Laughery MF, Hunter T, Brown A, Hoopes J, Ostbye T, Shumaker T, Wyrick JJ (2015) New vectors for simple and streamlined CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing in Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Yeast 32(12): 711–720
66. DiCarlo JE, Norville JE, Mali P, Rios X, Aach J, Church GM (2013) Genome engineering in Saccharomyces cerevisiae using CRISPR-Cas systems. Nucleic Acids Res 41(7):4336–4343
67. Farooq R, Hussain K, Tariq M, Farooq A, Mustafa M (2020) CRISPR/Cas9: targeted genome editing for the treatment of hereditary hearing loss. J Appl Genet 61(1):51–65
68. Zhang J, Chen L, Zhang J, Wang Y (2019) Drug inducible CRISPR/Cas Systems. Comput Struct Biotechnol J 17:1171–1177
69. Vad-Nielsen J, Lin L, Bolund L, Nielsen AL, Luo Y (2016) Golden gate assembly of CRISPR gRNA expression array for simultaneously targeting multiple genes. Cell Mol Life Sci 73(22):4315–4325
70. Ma X, Zhang Q, Zhu Q, Liu W, Chen Y, Qiu R, Wang B, Yang Z, Li H, Lin Y, Xie Y, Shen R, Chen S, Wang Z, Chen Y, Guo J, Chen L, Zhao X,

Dong Z, Liu YG (2015) A Robust CRISPR/Cas9 system for convenient, high-efficiency multiplex genome editing in monocot and dicot plants. Mol Plant 8(8):1274–1284
71. Li Y, Li S, Wang J, Liu G (2019) CRISPR/Cas systems towards next-generation biosensing. Trends Biotechnol 37(7):730–743
72. Wolter F, Puchta H (2018) Application of CRISPR/Cas to understand Cis- and trans-regulatory elements in plants. Methods Mol Biol 1830:23–40
73. Sanjana NE, Shalem O, Zhang F (2014) Improved vectors and genome-wide libraries for CRISPR screening. Nat Methods 11(8):783–784
74. Bhatia A, Sra J, Akhtar M (2016) Preexcitation syndromes. Curr Prob Cardiol 41(3):99–137
75. Xie C, Zhang YP, Song L, Luo J, Qi W, Hu J, Lu D, Yang Z, Zhang J, Xiao J, Zhou B, Du JL, Jing N, Liu Y, Wang Y, Li BL, Song BL, Yan Y (2016) Genome editing with CRISPR/Cas9 in postnatal mice corrects PRKAG2 cardiac syndrome. Cell Res 26(10): 1099–1111
76. Stehle R, Iorga B (2010) Kinetics of cardiac sarcomeric processes and rate-limiting steps in contraction and relaxation. J Mol Cell Cardiol 48(5): 843–850
77. Mosqueira D, Mannhardt I, Bhagwan JR, Lis-Slimak K, Katili P, Scott E, Hassan M, Prondzynski M, Harmer SC, Tinker A, Smith JGW, Carrier L, Williams PM, Gaffney D, Eschenhagen T, Hansen A, Denning C (2018) CRISPR/Cas9 editing in human pluripotent stem cell-cardiomyocytes highlights arrhythmias, hypocontractility, and energy depletion as potential therapeutic targets for hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Eur Heart J 39(43):3879–3892
78. Dick E, Matsa E, Young LE, Darling D, Denning C (2011) Faster generation of hiPSCs by coupling high-titer lentivirus and column-based positive selection. Nat Protoc 6(6):701–714
79. Karakikes I, Stillitano F, Nonnenmacher M, Tzimas C, Sanoudou D, Termglinchan V, Kong CW, Rushing S, Hansen J, Ceholski D, Kolokathis F, Kremastinos D, Katoulis A, Ren L, Cohen N, Gho J, Tsiapras D, Vink A, Wu JC, Asselbergs FW, Li RA, Hulot JS, Kranias EG, Hajjar RJ (2015) Correction of human phospholamban R14del mutation associated with cardiomyopathy using targeted nucleases and combination therapy. Nat Commun 6:6955
80. Chen Y, Lu W, Gao N, Long Y, Shao Y, Liu M, Chen H, Ye S, Ma X, Liu M, Li D (2017) Generation of obese rat model by transcription activator-like effector nucleases targeting the leptin receptor gene. Sci China Life Sci 60(2):152–157
81. Huang P, Xiao A, Zhou M, Zhu Z, Lin S, Zhang B (2011) Heritable gene targeting in zebrafish using customized TALENs. Nat Biotechnol 29(8): 699–700

Part III

Genome Editing in Cardiovascular Disease



Genome Editing and Cardiac Regeneration

Rayhaan Bassawon, Kashif Khan, Ateeque Siddique, and Dominique Shum-Tim

Abstract

Although the field of cardiac regeneration is relatively young, it is progressing rapidly with technological advancements. Genome editing tools are allowing researchers to creatively influence signaling pathways to be able to shed light on them and are important for addressing certain issues and limitations associated with in vitro and in vivo aspects of cardiac regeneration, such as imaging and immune rejection. In this chapter, the pathways involved in cardiac regeneration will be highlighted, and the role of gene-editing tools in endogenous and exogenous approaches to regenerate injured myocardium is discussed.

Keywords

Ischemic heart disease · Cardiomyocytes · iPSCs · CRISPR/Cas9 · Adeno-associated virus

1 Background

Despite the development of sophisticated stenting techniques and arduous monitoring of door-to-balloon times, long-term effects of myocardial infarction (MI) are often unavoidable, and heart failure ensues, accounting for most hospitalizations in the United States and affecting more than 23 million people worldwide [1]. The condition is characterized by the inability of the heart to provide the necessary metabolites and nutrients to the rest of the body from the increased cardiac workload [2]. Of the several conditions that contribute to heart failure, ischemic heart disease (IHD) remains the most common cause globally. In an acute MI, the left ventricle is deprived of oxygen, causing irreversible loss of cardiomyocytes (CMs) and resulting in maladaptive left ventricular remodeling. Patients suffering

R. Bassawon
Division of Cardiac Surgery, Royal Victoria Hospital, McGill University Health Centre, Montreal, QC, Canada

K. Khan
Division of Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

A. Siddique
Division of Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Department of Experimental Surgery, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

D. Shum-Tim (✉)
Division of Cardiac Surgery, Royal Victoria Hospital, McGill University Health Centre, Montreal, QC, Canada

Division of Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Department of Experimental Surgery, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023
J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_3

from heart failure have a very poor prognosis, with only half surviving 5 years beyond the time of diagnosis [3].

Although its prevalence continues to rise, current medical therapies consist for the most part of damage control measures, with only renin-angiotensin system drugs and beta-blockers showing humble mortality benefits [1]. Mechanical assist devices also exist but are again limited in their contribution to tackle tissue remodeling [4]. The patient's ultimate hope lies in cardiac transplantation. Unfortunately, access to this is limited by the number of available donor hearts. To cater to the millions suffering from IHD, new therapeutic avenues are therefore required.

One such avenue is that of cardiac regeneration. The terminally differentiated adult CM was once thought to lack regenerative capabilities after injury; however this view has drastically changed over time [5, 6]. Stem cells in the heart, known as cardiac progenitor cells (CPCs), have been suggested to play a role in repair [7, 8]. CPCs were first discovered in 2003, but their characterization remains controversial [9]. Furthermore, the exact mechanism by which CPCs regenerate the myocardium after injury is not well understood, but is likely to occur through paracrine release of cytokines, chemokines, and regulatory factors that aid in anti-apoptosis, immunoregulation, neovascularization, and resident cell fusion [10].

Over the past three decades, the use of stem cells to induce cardiac regeneration has evolved from a theoretical consideration to a pragmatic player in the arena of IHD. Models have been developed to study the phenomenon, and different approaches have come about to reproduce this phenomenon in patients with the goal of mending the failing ventricle. Several of these techniques have been under clinical investigation; however only subtle improvements in cardiac function have been reported [11, 12]. This may be in part due to the lack of stem cell engraftment into the native myocardium, or failure to trans-differentiate into adult postmitotic CMs [13–15]. A promising strategy to circumvent these limitations is the use of genome editing of these exogenous stem cell sources, or of the residing cells in the peri-infarct region, to initiate a proliferative response that improves function in hopes of propelling the field toward clinical success.

2 Scope of Cardiac Regeneration

The field of cardiac regeneration is highly experimental and innovative, aiming to undo damage secondary to infarction. To that effect, research efforts follow a three-pronged approach. The first focus is on understanding the phenomenon of myocardial regeneration as it occurs in the natural world. The second objective is to influence the cellular response after injury in view of favoring myocardial restoration. Finally, studies assess the efficacy of these approaches on cardiac function of affected patients.

The adult human heart possesses little ability to spontaneously rehabilitate itself after an insult. Therefore, external interventions are necessary to make this process possible [16]. While the traditional paradigm has been to identify defective genes and edit them out in an attempt to restore physiological phenotypes [17], the field of cardiac regeneration has employed genome editing tools in creative ways. The development and manipulation of animal and cellular models using genome editing enabled us to highlight pathways involved in heart regeneration to further our comprehension of how the myocardium regenerates after injury [18, 19].

2.1 Understanding Cardiac Regeneration from Animal Models

Intrinsic, spontaneous restoration of the myocardium following an insult is well known to happen in discrete organisms. For instance, the zebrafish has been extensively studied for its ability to trigger cellular proliferation from existing CMs [20]. Interestingly, one of the early uses of gene-editing technologies in zebrafish models was to cause ventricular damage through an inducible recombineering approach, so-called genetic ablation [21]. This allowed for subsequent identification of the factors involved in the post-injury

response [22, 23]. More recently, CRISPR/Cas9 methodology has been applied to knock out genes from somatic zebrafish cells and highlight the role of macrophages in the fibrotic process [24, 25]. TALEN technology has also proved practical in finding proteins necessary for repair such as caveolin-1 [26]. Similarly, the neonatal mouse was found to possess myocardial regenerative capacity, specifically up to 7 days after birth [27]. Again, Cas9-engineered mice were a versatile tool in delineating regulators of rehabilitation in the mammalian heart through knock-in and knock-out protocols [28, 29].

2.2 Developing Approaches for Cardiac Regeneration

The general mechanism behind the failure of the infarcted myocardium is the death of CMs and their replacement by scar tissue. Two main methods have been explored to replenish the myocardium. The first approach is to trigger myocardial rejuvenation in vivo by causing viable CMs to reenter the cell cycle and divide, or by causing surrounding fibrotic tissue to transdifferentiate into functional myocardium [30]. The second method employs external sources of CMs or stem cells to be transplanted to the site of injury through various strategies including injections and application of patches [31]. Although these exogenous sources mostly consist of stem cells reprogrammed into CMs [32], the importance of supplying supportive vascular and structural tissue was also recognized, and concomitant injection of different cell types has been attempted [33, 34]. Furthermore, exogenous approaches to mending the myocardium have benefited from scaffolding, 3D printing, and various other bioengineering advancements which are beyond the scope of this chapter [35, 36].

3 Pathways and Regulators of Cardiac Regeneration

Several molecular pathways play a critical role in myocardial development, regulation of organ size and growth, and cell cycle re-entry. Of these mechanisms, the Hippo, Wingless (Wnt), and phosphoinositide 3-kinase-protein kinase B (PI3K-AKT) pathways are the most widely studied. Given their complexity, it comes as no surprise that these pathways communicate to control cardiac organ size and growth as depicted in Fig. 1. Genetic manipulation of these pathways is a promising tool for generating useful cardiac regeneration models in vitro and in vivo.

3.1 Hippo Signaling Pathway

Originally described in *Drosophila melanogaster*, the Hippo cell signaling pathway is a conserved cascade of kinases and effector proteins that regulate cell proliferation, tissue development, homeostasis, organ size, and tissue regeneration [37–40]. The pathway activation signals include G protein-coupled receptors, cell-cell interactions, and disruptions in cytoskeletal dynamics [41–45]. Mammalian sterile 20-like kinases 1/2 (Mst1/2) are the orthologs of Hippo kinase in *Drosophila*. When the signaling pathway is in the *on* state, Mst1/2 form a complex with the Salvador homolog 1 (Sav1) adaptor protein, and the resulting complex allows for the phosphorylation and activation of the C-terminal hydrophobic motif of the large tumor suppressor homolog kinase 1/2 (Lats1/2), as well as Mob1a/b kinase adaptors that coactivate Lats1/2. Following activation, Lats1/2 phosphorylate two transcription cofactors, Yes-associated protein (YAP) and tafazzin (TAZ), thereby preventing their translocation to the nucleus and leading to their degradation [46–48]. In the *off* state, inactive Mst1/2 and Lats1/2 allow for the nuclear localization of YAP and TAZ where they interact with TEA domain (TEAD1-4) transcription factors to promote the expression of genes involved in cell proliferation, inhibition of apoptosis, angiogenesis, and anti-fibrogenesis [49, 50].

In addition to its role in cardiac organogenesis, the Hippo pathway is also dysregulated post-MI. Patients with compromised cardiac function showed significantly increased phosphorylated Lats/Lats protein expression ratio in their left ventricles, while YAP/phosphorylated YAP

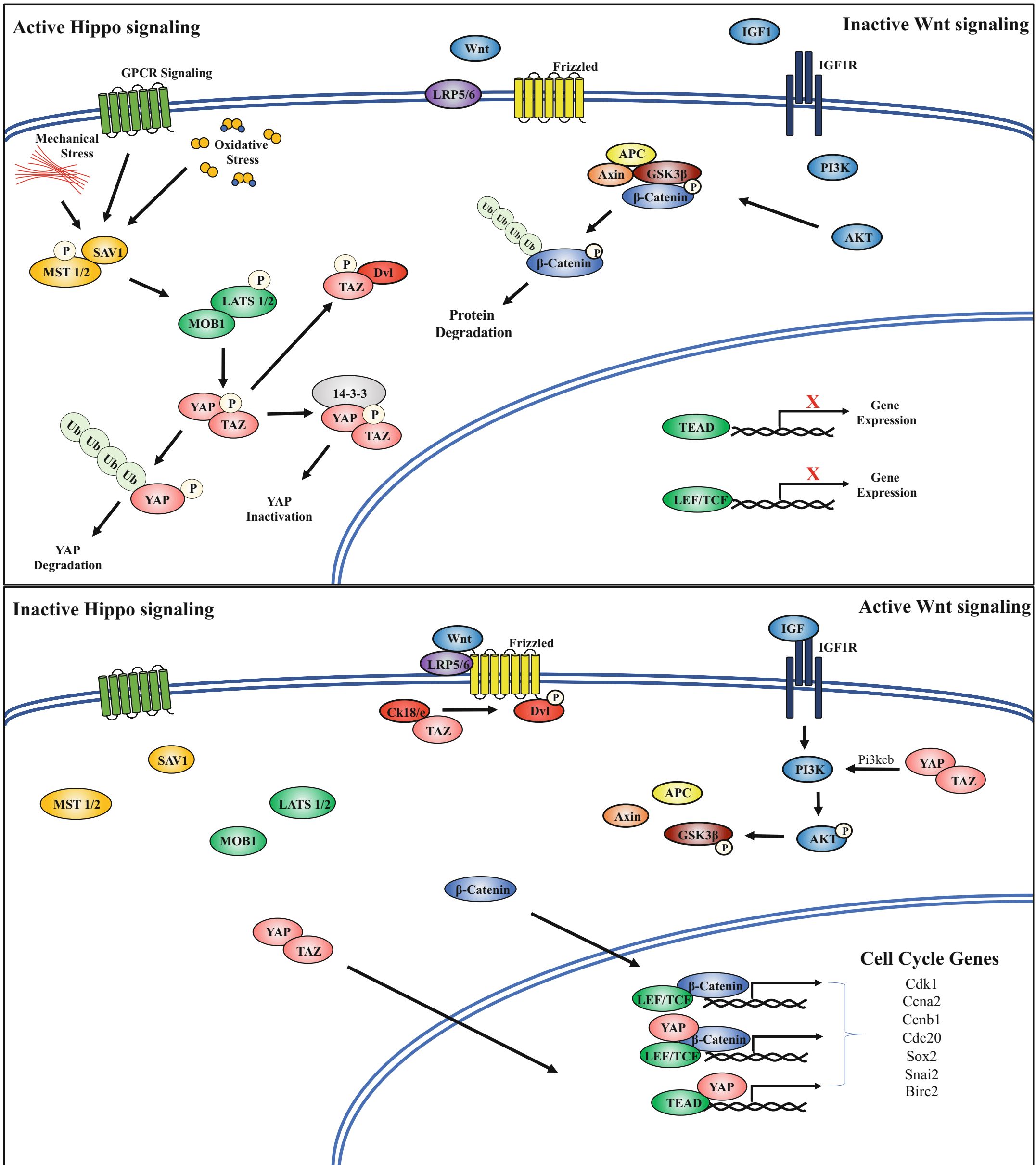


Fig. 1 Schematic of Hippo, Wnt and PI3K-AKT cross-talk in cardiomyocytes to initiate cell cycle re-entry and repair the injured myocardium

ratios were decreased, suggesting activation of the Hippo pathway and degradation of YAP [51]. This may in part be due to the role of YAP in modulating the inflammatory and immune response. For example, epicardial-specific deletion of YAP and TAZ in a mouse model showed increased inflammation and myocardial fibrosis with less T-regulatory cells in the infarcted myocardium [52]. Interestingly however, patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy were found to have decreased YAP expression, while Mst1 expression was increased [53]. These results are corroborated by CM-specific expression of YAP in a murine model of induced hypertrophy.

Therefore, Hippo dysregulation post-MI is highly dependent on the type of remodeling taking place. Careful understanding of these mechanisms will be important in determining whether targeting the Hippo pathway will prove beneficial for patients.

3.2 Wnt Signaling Pathway

The Wnt signaling pathway is essential for proper embryonic development, cell fate determination, and tissue homeostasis [54, 55]. At least 19 Wnt genes exist in humans, encoding for secreted glycoproteins that bind to 1 of 10 Frizzled (Fz) membrane receptor isoforms. Three main Wnt signaling branches are described: the canonical Wnt/β-catenin-dependent pathway, the noncanonical planar cell polarity (PCP) pathway, and the noncanonical Wnt/Ca^{2+} pathway. The canonical pathway is the most related to cardiac regeneration [56]. Canonical Wnt ligands bind to the Fz membrane receptor, activating the intracellular dishevelled protein and subsequently dissociating the β-catenin destruction complex made of glycogen synthase kinase 3β (GSK3β), Axin, and adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) [57]. When this complex is intact, β-catenin is targeted for ubiquitination and degradation. However, activation of this pathway allows β-catenin to localize to the nucleus and activate the T-cell factor/lymphoid enhancer factor (TCF/LEF) which triggers a pro-proliferation, migration, and differentiation gene expression profile. A study performed on human embryonic stem cells (hESCs) using CRISPR/Cas9 determined that YAP maintains hESC pluripotency by preventing the expression of WNT3 in response to activin, a TGF-β family ligand [58]. This demonstrates not only the interplay between the Hippo and Wnt pathways but also the utility of gene editing in unraveling these links. Furthermore, CRISPR/Cas9-mediated deletion of disabled homolog 2 (DAB2), a regulator of cardiac development, negatively regulates Wnt/β-catenin signaling and promotes differentiation in the developing heart [59].

Following an MI, there is an increased activation of Wnt signaling in CMs neighboring the border zone and several resident stem cell populations, as depicted by LacZ expression under control of the TCF/LEF promoter [60, 61]. Surviving endothelial cells also increase β-catenin expression to induce cell proliferation and neoangiogenesis [62, 63]. In addition, the release of the noncanonical Wnt-5a from CMs after MI promotes interleukin expression by mononuclear cells and differentiation of stem cells toward cardiac lineage [64]. Finally, increased expression of Wnt-1, β-catenin, and GSK3β was found in the rat myocardium during fibrosis following infarction [65]. Given the complexity of the Wnt signaling pathway and its role in multiple cell types within the myocardial tissue, there has been some discrepancy in its exact role in the pathogenesis of heart failure and regeneration.

3.3 PI3K-AKT Signaling Pathway

The PI3K-AKT pathway is a prominent intracellular signaling axis governing processes such as glucose regulation, energy metabolism, and cell cycle progression that has been shown to function abnormally in many human diseases [66, 67]. A variety of stimuli, such as growth factors binding to receptor tyrosine kinases at the cell surface, can initiate a downstream cascade to activate PI3K. Active PI3K phosphorylates phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (IP2) into phosphatidylinositol 3,4,5-trisphosphate (IP3) which recruits phosphoinositide-dependent kinase-1 (PDK-1) in order to phosphorylate AKT [68, 69]. Once active, AKT can then turn on other axes, including mTOR, FoxO, and p21/p27 signaling to induce cell growth, survival, and cell cycle progression, respectively [66]. Using targeted gene editing, the FoxO3 gene in human mesenchymal progenitor cells underwent S253A and S315A serine-to-alanine replacements, unable to be phosphorylated by AKT and thereby constitutively active. Mice transplanted with these cells after an induced MI exhibited significant cardiac repair [70]. AKT can have an inhibitory effect on pathways such as mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) and c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) to attenuate apoptosis [71]. Nevertheless,

the role of the PI3K-AKT pathway in cardiac regeneration is mainly through its ability to induce cell cycle re-entry and promote G2/M phase progression [72]. Moreover, it is involved in the migration of cardiac stem cells through vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and regulates cardiac autophagy through microRNA (miRNA) cluster miR302-367 [73, 74]. After ischemia-reperfusion injury, rat hearts were shown to have reduced phosphorylated AKT/AKT ratio, which was reversed by insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF1) administration further indicating the role of the pathway in injury and repair [75]. Another study noted that improvement in functional recovery was associated with increased AKT activation and reversed by the PI3K inhibitor, wortmannin [76]. AKT also plays a significant role in the phosphorylation and regulation of GSK3β, which is a strong molecular candidate for myocardial repair therapies [77]. Taken together, these results indicate a cardioprotective role for the PI3K-AKT pathway.

4 Approaches to Cardiac Regeneration

Current avenues to achieve cardiac regeneration include in situ genetic engineering of host cells to generate new CMs. Additionally, administration of stem cells manipulated ex vivo is under substantial investigation. These approaches summarized in Fig. 2 make use of genome editing technologies to varying degrees.

4.1 Genome Editing of Endogenous Cells to Initiate Cardiac Repair

Endogenous cardiac repair is currently being explored through two paradigms: promotion of cell cycle re-entry in host CMs and trans-differentiation of host fibroblasts into CMs.

4.1.1 In Situ Promotion of Proliferation and Cell Cycle Re-entry

Using Cre-Lox gene manipulation, it has been demonstrated that deletion of YAP impaired the regenerative ability of CMs in neonatal mice, whereas mice with constitutively overexpressed YAP have more CMs and smaller scars with improved cardiac function after infarction [39]. Furthermore, the inactivation of Sav1 and Lats1/2 in transgenic mice promoted cardiac regeneration in both postnatal and adult MI models [78]. Cardiac-specific activation of YAP using the adeno-associated virus 9 (AAV9) delivery vector stimulated adult mouse CM proliferation after MI using a doxycycline-inducible system [79]. Transcriptional profiling of the YAP-induced regenerating apices revealed enrichments of pathways involved in cell cycle re-entry and response to inflammation. These results are corroborated by a lentiviral infection model of YAP activation in human CMs, where YAP-infected cells exposed to ischemia-reperfusion injury showed significant attenuation of apoptosis, DNA damage, and cellular hypertrophy [80].

Genome editing has been employed to trigger repair through cell cycle re-entry by exploiting

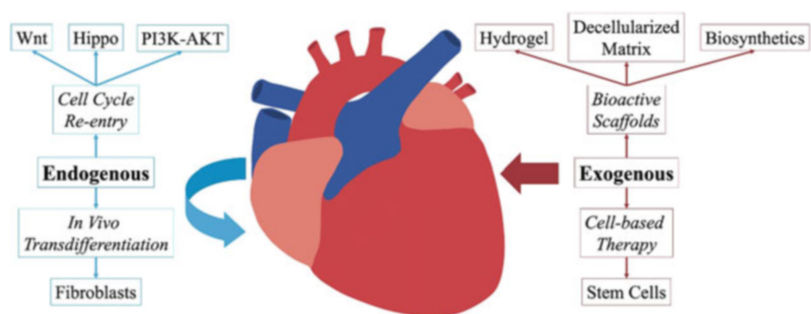


Fig. 2 Components of potential therapeutic approaches to cardiac regeneration

miRNA pathways, and there is evidence to suggest convergence with the Hippo pathway. A large-scale screening study revealed that 96 miRNAs are capable of increasing human-induced pluripotent stem cell-derived CM (iPSC-CM) proliferation, and 67 of them increased the ratio of nuclear to cytosolic YAP [81]. In mice, the postnatal expression of miR302-367 enabled CM cell cycle re-entry, which resulted in decreased scar tissue formation after MI simulation [82]. Similarly, miR19a/b were shown to be necessary and sufficient for in vitro proliferation of CMs isolated from embryonic, neonatal, and adult mouse hearts [83]. Furthermore, the intracardiac or systemic delivery of miR19a/b using AAV9 reduced cardiac injury following MI while preserving cardiac function [84].

With regard to the Wnt pathway, modulation of signaling to induce tissue regeneration remains controversial. Adenovirus-mediated overexpression of β-catenin in CMs resulted in anti-apoptosis, cellular hypertrophy, and reductions in infarct size [85]. In addition to this, YAP-overexpressing CMs increased β-catenin nuclear localization, resulting in synergistic improvements in cellular hypertrophy and apoptosis after ischemia-reperfusion injury [80]. However, other studies suggest that β-catenin plays the opposite role, where depletion of β-catenin improves cardiac function [86, 87]. In a mouse MI model, conditional knockout of GSK3β under tamoxifen control showed increased CM proliferation and attenuated cardiac remodelling after pressure overload [88]. Similar results were obtained in a following study, showing that CM-specific conditional GSK3β deletion preserves cardiac function post-MI, which may be in part due to activation of cyclin E1 and E2F1 [89]. Interestingly, cell cycle progression was also shown to occur spontaneously in CM-specific tamoxifen-inducible GSK3β knockout mouse model, along with significant DNA damage and apoptotic cell death [90]. Although promising, further investigation should proceed carefully, as targeting GSK3β can have unwanted side effects due to its role in other signaling cascades [91].

The PI3K-AKT pathway has also been investigated as a target to increase proliferation. Adenovirus-mediated induction of a constitutively active form of YAP increased CM proliferation in vitro, and this was associated with increased expression of IGF1 receptor, p-AKT, p-GSK3β, and active β-catenin. Furthermore, gene expression of YAPS112A (constitutively active form of YAP)-infected neonatal CMs showed increased expression of IGF-signaling genes including *IGF1*, *IGFBP2*, and *IGFBP3*. siRNA knockdown of either IGF1 or β-catenin resulted in an attenuation of the increased proliferation seen in YAPS112A-infected CMs [92]. In a later study by the same group, transgenic mice, with a CM-specific single nucleotide mutation of YAP that prevents its phosphorylation, underwent ligation of the left anterior descending artery to induce a MI and were found to have enhanced cardiac regeneration and improved fractional shortening. This was associated with increased protein expression of the IGF1 receptor and p-AKT [39]. The field was expanded by the identification of a strong relationship between YAP and PI3K in the context of cardiac regeneration [93]. First, a genetic screen of AAV9-mediated YAP-overexpressing mice identified 13 genes that were directly activated by YAP, one of which was phosphatidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate 3-kinase catalytic subunit beta (*PI3KCB*). Second, AAV9-mediated gain of function mice showed significant activation of the PI3K-AKT pathway, including increased expression of *PI3KCB*. This was in part mediated by modulation of the cell cycle inhibitor p27, a target of AKT. Lastly, YAP-mediated activation of CM proliferation in vivo was mediated through Pi3kcb. This was corroborated by using AAV9 to deliver *PI3KCB* to attenuate the cardiac dysfunction seen in a CM-specific YAP conditional knockout model. Together, these results suggest a relationship between YAP and β-catenin

through a YAP-IGF1-PI3K-AKT-β-catenin signaling axis and can be taken advantage of using gene editing to promote cardiac repair.

4.1.2 In Vivo Trans-differentiation of Cardiac Fibroblasts

The advantages of converting fibroblasts to myocytes are clear. First, there would be no need to manipulate cells outside of their physiological milieu. Any change would be brought in situ through the delivery of factors currently under investigation. Second, the off-target effects of such a therapy would be minimal given the targeted delivery systems available nowadays. Despite the alluring thought of a pool of fibroblasts ready to serve as replacement for dead CMs at the administration of a simple injection, thought needs to be given to the consequence of depleting the myocardium of seemingly detrimental cells. Cardiac fibroblasts are by no means an unnecessary component of cardiac physiology. In fact, they are the most common non-CM cells in the healthy heart. Their function in extracellular matrix (ECM) synthesis is crucial. Besides providing structure to what would otherwise be entangled muscle sheets, the ECM serves as a nurturing environment for CMs. It is well known that absence of functional cardiac fibroblasts results in lethality [94].

Attempts to transform scar tissue into myocardial tissue go back to the late nineteenth century when cardiac fibroblasts were transduced with copies of the myogenic differentiation 1 gene (*MYOD1*) using adenoviruses [95]. Subsequently, viral delivery of three transcription factors (Gata4, Mef2c, Tbx5) was found to trigger genetic reprogramming of fibroblasts into cells possessing phenotypes and a genetic landscape characteristic of CMs [96]. This approach was later refined with additional transcription factors and showed promise in vivo [97]. However, the efficiency of reprogramming was consistently suboptimal with hardly 10% of fibroblasts showing CM-like traits [98]. Using a modified CRISPR/Cas9 approach, it was demonstrated that transcription factors were not enough to complete reprogramming and combining them with miRNA yielded substantially better maturation, although the percentage of successfully transformed cells was still inadequate [99]. This led to the exploration of "non-integrative" chemical reprogramming techniques. Delivery of small molecules to inhibit TGF-β resulted in more efficacious reprogramming and other studies followed using various compounds [100]. Regulators of molecular reprogramming such as DNA methyltransferase 1-associated protein 1 (Dmap1) have also been identified thanks to systematic CRISPR knockout strategies [29].

Whereas most of the aforementioned studies use viral transduction or transient transfection of genetic material to trigger the observed phenotypic changes, mainstream genome editing is partially being used for reprogramming purposes. Part of the TALEN system has been used to reprogram epiblast stem cells into iPSCs [101]. In a simpler way, deactivated Cas9 has been engineered into a transcriptional activator of endogenous *MYOD1* in murine embryonic fibroblasts, resulting in skeletal myocytes [102]. All in all, this approach is promising, but our understanding of lineage manipulation remains poor, and current attempts at direct reprogramming are insufficient to address myocardial degeneration after infarction.

4.2 Transplantation of Exogenous Cells

Somatic multipotent stem cells and pluripotent stem cells are promising approaches for cardiac regeneration via transplantation to the heart tissue damaged following an infarct [103–105]. While various cells with the potential for cardiac regeneration are available, most recent work has been focused on CMs derived from iPSCs and ESCs [106, 107]. HESCs treated with cytokines activin A and bone morphogenic protein 4 (BMP4) showed enhanced CM-directed differentiation, and rats receiving an intracardiac injection of these CMs post-MI display a lesser degree of ventricular dilation and a higher local and global cardiac contractile function relative to control rats [108]. IPSCs are a feat of genetic reprogramming,

a result of dedifferentiating mature somatic or blood cells into an embryonic-like pluripotent state via retroviral transfection of Yamanaka factors (Oct3/4, Sox2, Klf4, c-Myc) [109, 110]. Human iPSC-derived CMs, endothelial cells, and smooth muscle cells have been successfully integrated into infarcted porcine myocardium and have induced cardiac regeneration [111, 112]. Transplantation may be performed either by direct injection or through surgical implantation of bioactive scaffolds such as 3D fibrin-based patches, hydrogel matrices, decellularized/acellular extracellular matrices, or other biosynthetic materials [113–115].

Gene editing is being increasingly used to enhance cell visualization and in vivo tracking of transplanted cells' engraftment, migration, metabolic activity, and calcium dynamics. Transposon-mediated gene insertion has been used to induce green fluorescent protein (GFP) expression in cells to be transplanted post-MI. The cells showed organized sarcomere structure, improved left ventricular function, and reduced infarct size without any arrhythmias [112]. In contrast, a study using hESC-CMs transplanted into primates showed electromechanical coupling, but ventricular arrhythmias were an issue. This study utilized ZFN gene editing via the AAVS1 locus to insert a transgene for constitutive GCaMP3 expression, a genetically encoded fluorescent calcium indicator (GECI), for the visualization of calcium signaling in the cells [116]. CRISPR/Cas9 has been used to target the AAVS1 harbor locus in rhesus macaque iPSCs (RhiPSCs) for the stable knock-in of GCaMP6, a more recent version of GCaMP3 [117]. This allows for the cells to emit GFP-like fluorescence reflective of calcium transients associated with contraction and is useful in in vitro and ex vivo physiological assays and drug screening assays. Lentiviral vectors have also been used to produce firefly luciferase and GFP-expressing iPSC-CMs [118]. Mice transplanted with iPSC-CMs edited with TALEN and ZFN to insert enhanced GFP showed sustained expression for several weeks [119]. With the advent of multiphoton imaging techniques combined with such calcium indicators, intravital calcium imaging of the beating heart may be performed [120]. Similarly, monitoring of implanted cells can be done using radiotracers. For example, the sodium/iodide symporter (NIS) allows imaging with radiotracers detected with positron emission tomography (PET) or single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT). The human NIS gene was successfully inserted into RhiPSCs via CRISPR/Cas9. NIS-RhiPSC-derived CMs transplanted into mice post-MI were followed with PET and SPECT injected with ^{18}F-tetrafluoroborate, a NIS-specific radiotracer, and could be safely detected until 8–10 weeks [121]. Likewise, a triple-fusion reporter gene consisting of monomeric red fluorescent protein, firefly luciferase, and herpes simplex virus thymidine kinase was integrated into the AAVS1 harbor locus of iPSCs via CRISPR/Cas9 technology, allowing for fluorescent, bioluminescence, and PET imaging, respectively [122].

Recently, the transplantation of human umbilical cord blood-derived mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) with CRISPR/Cas9-inserted lymphoid enhancer-binding factor 1 gene (*LEF1* involved in the Wnt pathway) significantly improved the survival of rats following an MI, outlining its cardioprotective effect [123]. In another study, bone marrow-derived MSCs were transduced to retrovirally express AKT and injected at two sites along the infarct border. AKT-expressing MSCs decreased infarct size in rats and restored early cardiac function [124]. An analogous study in a porcine MI model determined that AKT-MSCs enhanced cardiac repair by increasing viability of transplanted cells through paracrine action of secreted frizzled-related protein 2 [125, 126].

Exosomes are a subset of cellular secretomes that are important for intercellular communication and have been recently proposed to be beneficial for mediating endogenous cardiac repair by regulating cellular processes such as proliferation, apoptosis, and angiogenesis [127, 128]. Using a TALEN gene-editing approach, researchers knocked out the *Rab27a* gene in mice, thereby halting exosome secretion. Bone marrow MSCs were then implanted into viable myocardium along the infarction border of normal and *Rab27a* knockout mice. It was found that the

viability of transplanted MSCs was increased in the knockout mice compared to the control, suggesting that exosomes from injured CMs accelerate the injury of transplanted MSCs [129].

In the context of enhancing stem cell engraftment and viability following transplantation, it is crucial to consider immune rejection. Although allogeneic umbilical MSCs are a convenient resource, transplanting these cells is an immunological challenge. To circumvent this, HLA class I light chain β2-microglobulin (*B2M*) in umbilical MSCs was knocked out with CRISPR/Cas9, and their transplantation post-MI did not induce a $CD8^+$ T-cell-mediated response as opposed to control cells. Furthermore, exosomes derived from *B2M* knockout MSCs were more effective at inhibiting fibrosis and restoring cardiac function [130]. TALEN-mediated insertion of the *IL10* gene in amniotic MSCs resulted in improved ventricular remodeling and reduced infarct size and pro-inflammatory markers [131]. While YAP overexpression in CMs leads to improved cardiac regeneration, YAP activation in macrophages enhances their pro-inflammatory response via IL-6 which impairs repair post-MI. Myeloid-specific deletion of YAP/TAZ in mice was found to impair the pro-inflammatory response and enhance the reparative response [132]. This is an important contrast between the cell types involved in cardiac regeneration, as the Hippo pathway also mediates the macrophage response in the infarcted area. Future studies using genetically edited elements of the signaling pathways involved in cardiac regeneration must differentially examine cell types to ensure a specific and desired response and reduce unwanted side effects.

5 Perspective

The use of CRISPR/Cas9 to edit CM biology in vivo is commonly utilized to address conditions with a single genetic defect like Duchenne muscular dystrophy, Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome, and catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia [133]. The application of the CRISPR/Cas9 system in cardiac regeneration is limited by inefficiency in gene disruption within CMs using AAV9 [134]. Rather, this technology is more likely to be used to edit a cell source exogenously for delivery into the myocardial tissue, and we may see a rise in these studies in the near future.

While a plethora of clinical trials have been approved to study gene modifications in humans, there is currently no clinically approved therapy available for patients suffering from heart failure [135]. Given the specific tropism toward postmitotic CMs and indefinite gene expression, the use of AAVs remains the most promising gene delivery system in this field [136]. The main goal of this system is to deliver genes that initiate cell cycle re-entry in adult CMs, leading to proliferation and reduction of the myocardial scar size. Continued research will be necessary to ensure there are no side effects from this gene delivery system, such as arrhythmias, hyperproliferation, or continued dedifferentiation as seen with some AAV-delivered miRNAs [137]. Although still primitive at this point, genetically engineering the existing postmitotic CMs remains a promising avenue to induce cardiac regeneration and improve function. With the fundamental pathophysiology of heart failure caused by the lack of contractile CMs, the ongoing research and better understanding of genomic editing promises to improve the efficacy of myocardial regeneration and the treatment of heart failure.

References

1. Halushka MK, Mitchell RN, Padera RF (2016) Heart failure therapies: new strategies for old treatments and new treatments for old strategies. Cardiovasc Pathol 25(6):503–511
2. Marín-García J (2010) Heart failure: bench to bedside. Springer, New York. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-60761-147-9
3. Virani SS, Alonso A, Benjamin EJ, Bittencourt MS, Callaway CW, Carson AP, Chamberlain AM, Chang AR, Cheng S, Delling FN, Djousse L, MSV E, Ferguson JF, Fornage M, Khan SS, Kissela BM, Knutson KL, Kwan TW, Lackland DT, Lewis TT, Lichtman JH, Longenecker CT, Loop MS, Lutsey PL, Martin SS, Matsushita K, Moran AE, Mussolino ME, Perak AM, Rosamond WD, Roth GA, UKA S,

Satou GM, Schroeder EB, Shah SH, Shay CM, Spartano NL, Stokes A, Tirschwell DL, LB VW, Tsao CW, American Heart Association Council on E, Prevention Statistics C, Stroke Statistics S (2020) Heart disease and stroke statistics-2020 update: a report from the American Heart Association. Circulation 141(9):e139–e596
4. Miller LW, Rogers JG (2018) Evolution of left ventricular assist device therapy for advanced heart failure: a review. JAMA Cardiol 3(7):650–658
5. Senyo SE, Steinhauser ML, Pizzimenti CL, Yang VK, Cai L, Wang M, Wu TD, Guerquin-Kern JL, Lechene CP, Lee RT (2013) Mammalian heart renewal by pre-existing cardiomyocytes. Nature 493(7432):433–436
6. Bergmann O, Bhardwaj RD, Bernard S, Zdunek S, Barnabe-Heider F, Walsh S, Zupicich J, Alkass K, Buchholz BA, Druid H, Jovinge S, Frisen J (2009) Evidence for cardiomyocyte renewal in humans. Science 324(5923):98–102
7. Le T, Chong J (2016) Cardiac progenitor cells for heart repair. Cell Death Discov 2:16052. https://doi.org/10.1038/cddiscovery.2016.52
8. Amini H, Rezaie J, Vosoughi A, Rahbarghazi R, Nouri M (2017) Cardiac progenitor cells application in cardiovascular disease. J Cardiovasc Thorac Res 9(3):127–132
9. Beltrami AP, Barlucchi L, Torella D, Baker M, Limana F, Chimenti S, Kasahara H, Rota M, Musso E, Urbanek K, Leri A, Kajstura J, Nadal-Ginard B, Anversa P (2003) Adult cardiac stem cells are multipotent and support myocardial regeneration. Cell 114(6):763–776
10. Gnecchi M, Zhang Z, Ni A, Dzau VJ (2008) Paracrine mechanisms in adult stem cell signaling and therapy. Circ Res 103(11):1204–1219
11. Gyongyosi M, Haller PM, Blake DJ, Martin Rendon E (2018) Meta-analysis of cell therapy studies in heart failure and acute myocardial infarction. Circ Res 123(2):301–308
12. Zimmet H, Porapakkham P, Porapakkham P, Sata Y, Haas SJ, Itescu S, Forbes A, Krum H (2012) Short- and long-term outcomes of intracoronary and endogenously mobilized bone marrow stem cells in the treatment of ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction: a meta-analysis of randomized control trials. Eur J Heart Fail 14(1):91–105
13. Rose RA, Keating A, Backx PH (2008) Do mesenchymal stromal cells transdifferentiate into functional cardiomyocytes? Circ Res 103(9):e120
14. Stolzing A, Jones E, McGonagle D, Scutt A (2008) Age-related changes in human bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells: consequences for cell therapies. Mech Ageing Dev 129(3):163–173
15. Fan M, Chen W, Liu W, Du GQ, Jiang SL, Tian WC, Sun L, Li RK, Tian H (2010) The effect of age on the efficacy of human mesenchymal stem cell transplantation after a myocardial infarction. Rejuvenation Res 13(4):429–438
16. Laflamme MA, Murry CE (2011) Heart regeneration. Nature 473(7347):326–335. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature10147
17. Alagoz M, Kherad N (2020) Advance genome editing technologies in the treatment of human diseases: CRISPR therapy (Review). Int J Mol Med 46(2):521–534
18. Raya A, Consiglio A, Kawakami Y, Rodriguez-Esteban C, Izpisua-Belmonte JC (2004) The zebrafish as a model of heart regeneration. Cloning Stem Cells 6(4):345–351
19. Wang H, Paulsen MJ, Hironaka CE, Shin HS, Farry JM, Thakore AD, Jung J, Lucian HJ, Eskandari A, Anilkumar S, Wu MA, Cabatu MC, Steele AN, Stapleton LM, Zhu Y, Woo YJ (2020) Natural heart regeneration in a neonatal rat myocardial infarction model. Cell 9(1):229
20. Poss KD, Wilson LG, Keating MT (2002) Heart regeneration in zebrafish. Science 298(5601): 2188–2190
21. Wang J, Panakova D, Kikuchi K, Holdway JE, Gemberling M, Burris JS, Singh SP, Dickson AL, Lin YF, Sabeh MK, Werdich AA, Yelon D, Macrae CA, Poss KD (2011) The regenerative capacity of zebrafish reverses cardiac failure caused by genetic cardiomyocyte depletion. Development 138(16): 3421–3430
22. Wang J, Karra R, Dickson AL, Poss KD (2013) Fibronectin is deposited by injury-activated epicardial cells and is necessary for zebrafish heart regeneration. Dev Biol 382(2):427–435
23. Wang J, Cao J, Dickson AL, Poss KD (2015) Epicardial regeneration is guided by cardiac outflow tract and Hedgehog signalling. Nature 522(7555): 226–230
24. Ablain J, Durand EM, Yang S, Zhou Y, Zon LI (2015) A CRISPR/Cas9 vector system for tissue-specific gene disruption in zebrafish. Dev Cell 32(6):756–764
25. Simoes FC, Cahill TJ, Kenyon A, Gavriouchkina D, Vieira JM, Sun X, Pezzolla D, Ravaud C, Masmanian E, Weinberger M, Mayes S, Lemieux ME, Barnette DN, Gunadasa-Rohling M, Williams RM, Greaves DR, Trinh LA, Fraser SE, Dallas SL, Choudhury RP, Sauka-Spengler T, Riley PR (2020) Macrophages directly contribute collagen to scar formation during zebrafish heart regeneration and mouse heart repair. Nat Commun 11(1):600
26. Cao J, Navis A, Cox BD, Dickson AL, Gemberling M, Karra R, Bagnat M, Poss KD (2016) Single epicardial cell transcriptome sequencing identifies Caveolin 1 as an essential factor in zebrafish heart regeneration. Development 143(2): 232–243
27. Porrello ER, Mahmoud AI, Simpson E, Hill JA, Richardson JA, Olson EN, Sadek HA (2011) Transient regenerative potential of the neonatal mouse heart. Science 331(6020):1078–1080

28. Huang S, Li X, Zheng H, Si X, Li B, Wei G, Li C, Chen Y, Chen Y, Liao W, Liao Y, Bin J (2019) Loss of super-enhancer-regulated circRNA Nfix induces cardiac regeneration after myocardial infarction in adult mice. Circulation 139(25):2857–2876
29. Yu JSL, Palano G, Lim C, Moggio A, Drowley L, Plowright AT, Bohlooly YM, Rosen BS, Hansson EM, Wang QD, Yusa K (2019) CRISPR-knockout screen identifies Dmap1 as a regulator of chemically induced reprogramming and differentiation of cardiac progenitors. Stem Cells 37(7):958–972
30. Breckwoldt K, Weinberger F, Eschenhagen T (2016) Heart regeneration. Biochim Biophys Acta 1863(7 Pt B):1749–1759
31. Huu AL, Prakash S, Shum-Tim D (2012) Cellular cardiomyoplasty: current state of the field. Regen Med 7(4):571–582
32. Alrefai MT, Murali D, Paul A, Ridwan KM, Connell JM, Shum-Tim D (2015) Cardiac tissue engineering and regeneration using cell-based therapy. Stem Cells Cloning 8:81–101
33. Ryan R, Moyse BR, Richardson RJ (2020) Zebrafish cardiac regeneration-looking beyond cardiomyocytes to a complex microenvironment. Histochem Cell Biol 154(5):533–548
34. Bertero A, Murry CE (2018) Hallmarks of cardiac regeneration. Nat Rev Cardiol 15(10):579–580
35. Parsa H, Ronaldson K, Vunjak-Novakovic G (2016) Bioengineering methods for myocardial regeneration. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 96:195–202
36. Khan K, Gasbarrino K, Mahmoud I, Makhoul G, Yu B, Dufresne L, Daskalopoulou SS, Schwertani A, Cecere R (2018) Bioactive scaffolds in stem-cell-based therapies for cardiac repair: protocol for a meta-analysis of randomized controlled preclinical trials in animal myocardial infarction models. Syst Rev 7(1):225
37. Johansen AKZ, Molkentin JD (2019) Hippo signaling does it again: arbitrating cardiac fibroblast identity and activation. Genes Dev 33(21–22):1457–1459
38. Harvey KF, Pfleger CM, Hariharan IK (2003) The Drosophila Mst ortholog, Hippo, restricts growth and cell proliferation and promotes apoptosis. Cell 114(4):457–467
39. Xin M, Kim Y, Sutherland LB, Murakami M, Qi X, McAnally J, Porrello ER, Mahmoud AI, Tan W, Shelton JM, Richardson JA, Sadek HA, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2013) Hippo pathway effector Yap promotes cardiac regeneration. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(34):13839–13844
40. Sansores-Garcia L, Bossuyt W, Wada K, Yonemura S, Tao C, Sasaki H, Halder G (2011) Modulating F-actin organization induces organ growth by affecting the Hippo pathway. EMBO J 30(12):2325–2335
41. Wada K, Itoga K, Okano T, Yonemura S, Sasaki H (2011) Hippo pathway regulation by cell morphology and stress fibers. Development 138(18):3907–3914
42. Zhou Q, Li L, Zhao B, Guan KL (2015) The hippo pathway in heart development, regeneration, and diseases. Circ Res 116(8):1431–1447
43. Fernandez BG, Gaspar P, Bras-Pereira C, Jezowska B, Rebelo SR, Janody F (2011) Actin-capping protein and the Hippo pathway regulate F-actin and tissue growth in Drosophila. Development 138(11):2337–2346
44. Yu FX, Zhao B, Panupinthu N, Jewell JL, Lian I, Wang LH, Zhao J, Yuan H, Tumaneng K, Li H, Fu XD, Mills GB, Guan KL (2012) Regulation of the Hippo-YAP pathway by G-protein-coupled receptor signaling. Cell 150(4):780–791
45. Dupont S, Morsut L, Aragona M, Enzo E, Giulitti S, Cordenonsi M, Zanconato F, Le Digabel J, Forcato M, Bicciato S, Elvassore N, Piccolo S (2011) Role of YAP/TAZ in mechanotransduction. Nature 474(7350):179–183
46. Mia MM, Singh MK (2019) The Hippo signaling pathway in cardiac development and diseases. Front Cell Dev Biol 7:211
47. Watt KI, Harvey KF, Gregorevic P (2017) Regulation of tissue growth by the mammalian Hippo signaling pathway. Front Physiol 8:942
48. Heallen T, Morikawa Y, Leach J, Tao G, Willerson JT, Johnson RL, Martin JF (2013) Hippo signaling impedes adult heart regeneration. Development 140(23):4683–4690
49. Zhao B, Ye X, Yu J, Li L, Li W, Li S, Yu J, Lin JD, Wang CY, Chinnaiyan AM, Lai ZC, Guan KL (2008) TEAD mediates YAP-dependent gene induction and growth control. Genes Dev 22(14):1962–1971
50. Flinn MA, Link BA, O'Meara CC (2020) Upstream regulation of the Hippo-Yap pathway in cardiomyocyte regeneration. Semin Cell Dev Biol 100:11–19
51. Leach JP, Heallen T, Zhang M, Rahmani M, Morikawa Y, Hill MC, Segura A, Willerson JT, Martin JF (2017) Hippo pathway deficiency reverses systolic heart failure after infarction. Nature 550(7675):260–264
52. Ramjee V, Li D, Manderfield LJ, Liu F, Engleka KA, Aghajanian H, Rodell CB, Lu W, Ho V, Wang T, Li L, Singh A, Cibi DM, Burdick JA, Singh MK, Jain R, Epstein JA (2017) Epicardial YAP/TAZ orchestrate an immunosuppressive response following myocardial infarction. J Clin Investig 127(3): 899–911
53. Wang P, Mao B, Luo W, Wei B, Jiang W, Liu D, Song L, Ji G, Yang Z, Lai YQ, Yuan Z (2014) The alteration of Hippo/YAP signaling in the development of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Basic Res Cardiol 109(5):435
54. MacDonald BT, Tamai K, He X (2009) Wnt/beta-catenin signaling: components, mechanisms, and diseases. Dev Cell 17(1):9–26
55. Gao C, Chen YG (2010) Dishevelled: the hub of Wnt signaling. Cell Signal 22(5):717–727

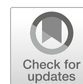
56. Foulquier S, Daskalopoulos EP, Lluri G, Hermans KCM, Deb A, Blankesteijn WM (2018) WNT signaling in cardiac and vascular disease. Pharmacol Rev 70(1):68–141
57. Stamos JL, Weis WI (2013) The beta-catenin destruction complex. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 5(1): a007898
58. Estaras C, Hsu HT, Huang L, Jones KA (2017) YAP repression of the WNT3 gene controls hESC differentiation along the cardiac mesoderm lineage. Genes Dev 31(22):2250–2263
59. Hofsteen P, Robitaille AM, Chapman DP, Moon RT, Murry CE (2016) Quantitative proteomics identify DAB2 as a cardiac developmental regulator that inhibits WNT/beta-catenin signaling. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113(4):1002–1007
60. Oerlemans MI, Goumans MJ, van Middelaar B, Clevers H, Doevendans PA, Sluijter JP (2010) Active Wnt signaling in response to cardiac injury. Basic Res Cardiol 105(5):631–641
61. Aisagbonhi O, Rai M, Ryzhov S, Atria N, Feoktistov I, Hatzopoulos AK (2011) Experimental myocardial infarction triggers canonical Wnt signaling and endothelial-to-mesenchymal transition. Dis Model Mech 4(4):469–483
62. Kim KI, Cho HJ, Hahn JY, Kim TY, Park KW, Koo BK, Shin CS, Kim CH, Oh BH, Lee MM, Park YB, Kim HS (2006) Beta-catenin overexpression augments angiogenesis and skeletal muscle regeneration through dual mechanism of vascular endothelial growth factor-mediated endothelial cell proliferation and progenitor cell mobilization. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 26(1):91–98
63. Blankesteijn WM, van Gijn ME, Essers-Janssen YPG, Daemen MJAP, Smits JFM (2000) β-Catenin, an inducer of uncontrolled cell proliferation and migration in malignancies, is localized in the cytoplasm of vascular endothelium during neovascularization after myocardial infarction. Am J Pathol 157(3):877–883
64. Blumenthal A, Ehlers S, Lauber J, Buer J, Lange C, Goldmann T, Heine H, Brandt E, Reiling N (2006) The wingless homolog WNT5A and its receptor Frizzled-5 regulate inflammatory responses of human mononuclear cells induced by microbial stimulation. Blood 108(3):965–973
65. Makhoul G, Khan K, Cecere R, Yu B, Schwertani A (2019) Triggered cardiogenesis in wingless 5a treated amniotic mesenchymal stromal cells. Biomed J Sci Tech Res 16(4):12205–12213
66. Fruman DA, Chiu H, Hopkins BD, Bagrodia S, Cantley LC, Abraham RT (2017) The PI3K pathway in human disease. Cell 170(4):605–635
67. Cai WF, Liu GS, Wang L, Paul C, Wen ZL, Wang Y (2016) Repair injured heart by regulating cardiac regenerative signals. Stem Cells Int 2016:6193419
68. Okkenhaug K (2013) Signaling by the phosphoinositide 3-kinase family in immune cells. Annu Rev Immunol 31:675–704
69. Manning BD, Toker A (2017) AKT/PKB signaling: navigating the network. Cell 169(3):381–405
70. Lei J, Wang S, Kang W, Chu Q, Liu Z, Sun L, Ji Y, Esteban CR, Yao Y, Belmonte JCI, Chan P, Liu GH, Zhang W, Song M, Qu J (2020) FOXO3-engineered human mesenchymal progenitor cells efficiently promote cardiac repair after myocardial infarction. Protein Cell 12:145. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13238-020-00779-7
71. Armstrong SC (2004) Protein kinase activation and myocardial ischemia/reperfusion injury. Cardiovasc Res 61(3):427–436
72. Maddika S, Ande SR, Wiechec E, Hansen LL, Wesselborg S, Los M (2008) Akt-mediated phosphorylation of CDK2 regulates its dual role in cell cycle progression and apoptosis. J Cell Sci 121(Pt 7): 979–988
73. Tang J, Wang J, Kong X, Yang J, Guo L, Zheng F, Zhang L, Huang Y, Wan Y (2009) Vascular endothelial growth factor promotes cardiac stem cell migration via the PI3K/Akt pathway. Exp Cell Res 315(20):3521–3531
74. Jin L, Zhou Y, Han L, Piao J (2020) MicroRNA302-367-PI3K-PTEN-AKT-mTORC1 pathway promotes the development of cardiac hypertrophy through controlling autophagy. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Anim 56(2):112–119
75. Liao Y, Li H, Pi Y, Li Z, Jin S (2019) Cardioprotective effect of IGF-1 against myocardial ischemia/reperfusion injury through activation of PI3K/Akt pathway in rats in vivo. J Int Med Res 47(8):3886–3897
76. Tong H, Chen W, Steenbergen C, Murphy E (2000) Ischemic preconditioning activates phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase upstream of protein kinase C. Circ Res 87(4):309–315
77. Lal H, Ahmad F, Woodgett J, Force T (2015) The GSK-3 family as therapeutic target for myocardial diseases. Circ Res 116(1):138–149
78. Heallen T, Zhang M, Wang J, Bonilla-Claudio M, Klysik E, Johnson RL, Martin JF (2011) Hippo pathway inhibits Wnt signaling to restrain cardiomyocyte proliferation and heart size. Science 332(6028): 458–461
79. Lin Z, von Gise A, Zhou P, Gu F, Ma Q, Jiang J, Yau AL, Buck JN, Gouin KA, van Gorp PR, Zhou B, Chen J, Seidman JG, Wang DZ, Pu WT (2014) Cardiac-specific YAP activation improves cardiac function and survival in an experimental murine MI model. Circ Res 115(3):354–363
80. Khan K, Makhoul G, Yu B, Schwertani A, Cecere R (2019) The cytoprotective impact of yes-associated protein 1 after ischemia-reperfusion injury in AC16 human cardiomyocytes. Exp Biol Med 244(10): 802–812
81. Diez-Cunado M, Wei K, Bushway PJ, Maurya MR, Perera R, Subramaniam S, Ruiz-Lozano P, Mercola M (2018) miRNAs that induce human cardiomyocyte

proliferation converge on the Hippo pathway. Cell Rep 23(7):2168–2174

82. Tian Y, Liu Y, Wang T, Zhou N, Kong J, Chen L, Snitow M, Morley M, Li D, Petrenko N, Zhou S, Lu M, Gao E, Koch WJ, Stewart KM, Morrisey EE (2015) A microRNA-Hippo pathway that promotes cardiomyocyte proliferation and cardiac regeneration in mice. Sci Transl Med 7(279):279ra238
83. Chen J, Huang ZP, Seok HY, Ding J, Kataoka M, Zhang Z, Hu X, Wang G, Lin Z, Wang S, Pu WT, Liao R, Wang DZ (2013) mir-17-92 cluster is required for and sufficient to induce cardiomyocyte proliferation in postnatal and adult hearts. Circ Res 112(12):1557–1566
84. Gao F, Kataoka M, Liu N, Liang T, Huang ZP, Gu F, Ding J, Liu J, Zhang F, Ma Q, Wang Y, Zhang M, Hu X, Kyselovic J, Hu X, Pu WT, Wang J, Chen J, Wang DZ (2019) Therapeutic role of miR-19a/19b in cardiac regeneration and protection from myocardial infarction. Nat Commun 10(1):1802
85. Hahn JY, Cho HJ, Bae JW, Yuk HS, Kim KI, Park KW, Koo BK, Chae IH, Shin CS, Oh BH, Choi YS, Park YB, Kim HS (2006) Beta-catenin overexpression reduces myocardial infarct size through differential effects on cardiomyocytes and cardiac fibroblasts. J Biol Chem 281(41): 30979–30989
86. Zelarayan LC, Noack C, Sekkali B, Kmecova J, Gehrke C, Renger A, Zafiriou MP, van der Nagel R, Dietz R, de Windt LJ, Balligand JL, Bergmann MW (2008) Beta-catenin downregulation attenuates ischemic cardiac remodeling through enhanced resident precursor cell differentiation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105(50):19762–19767
87. Laeremans H, Hackeng TM, van Zandvoort MA, Thijssen VL, Janssen BJ, Ottenheijm HC, Smits JF, Blankesteijn WM (2011) Blocking of frizzled signaling with a homologous peptide fragment of wnt3a/ wnt5a reduces infarct expansion and prevents the development of heart failure after myocardial infarction. Circulation 124(15):1626–1635
88. Woulfe KC, Gao E, Lal H, Harris D, Fan Q, Vagnozzi R, DeCaul M, Shang X, Patel S, Woodgett JR, Force T, Zhou J (2010) Glycogen synthase kinase-3beta regulates post-myocardial infarction remodeling and stress-induced cardiomyocyte proliferation in vivo. Circ Res 106(10):1635–1645
89. Ahmad F, Lal H, Zhou J, Vagnozzi RJ, Yu JE, Shang X, Woodgett JR, Gao E, Force T (2014) Cardiomyocyte-specific deletion of Gsk3alpha mitigates post-myocardial infarction remodeling, contractile dysfunction, and heart failure. J Am Coll Cardiol 64(7):696–706
90. Zhou J, Ahmad F, Parikh S, Hoffman NE, Rajan S, Verma VK, Song J, Yuan A, Shanmughapriya S, Guo Y, Gao E, Koch W, Woodgett JR, Madesh M, Kishore R, Lal H, Force T (2016) Loss of adult cardiac myocyte GSK-3 leads to mitotic catastrophe resulting in fatal dilated cardiomyopathy. Circ Res 118(8):1208–1222
91. Singh AP, Umbarkar P, Guo Y, Force T, Gupte M, Lal H (2019) Inhibition of GSK-3 to induce cardiomyocyte proliferation: a recipe for in situ cardiac regeneration. Cardiovasc Res 115(1):20–30
92. Xin M, Kim Y, Sutherland LB, Qi X, McAnally J, Schwartz RJ, Richardson JA, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2011) Regulation of insulin-like growth factor signaling by Yap governs cardiomyocyte proliferation and embryonic heart size. Sci Signal 4(196):ra70
93. Lin Z, Zhou P, von Gise A, Gu F, Ma Q, Chen J, Guo H, van Gorp PR, Wang DZ, Pu WT (2015) Pi3kcb links Hippo-YAP and PI3K-AKT signaling pathways to promote cardiomyocyte proliferation and survival. Circ Res 116(1):35–45
94. Nagalingam RS, Safi HA, Czubryt MP (2016) Gaining myocytes or losing fibroblasts: challenges in cardiac fibroblast reprogramming for infarct repair. J Mol Cell Cardiol 93:108–114
95. Murry CE, Kay MA, Bartosek T, Hauschka SD, Schwartz SM (1996) Muscle differentiation during repair of myocardial necrosis in rats via gene transfer with MyoD. J Clin Investig 98(10):2209–2217
96. Ieda M, Fu JD, Delgado-Olguin P, Vedantham V, Hayashi Y, Bruneau BG, Srivastava D (2010) Direct reprogramming of fibroblasts into functional cardiomyocytes by defined factors. Cell 142(3): 375–386
97. Song K, Nam YJ, Luo X, Qi X, Tan W, Huang GN, Acharya A, Smith CL, Tallquist MD, Neilson EG, Hill JA, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2012) Heart repair by reprogramming non-myocytes with cardiac transcription factors. Nature 485(7400):599–604
98. Batty JA, Lima JA Jr, Kunadian V (2016) Direct cellular reprogramming for cardiac repair and regeneration. Eur J Heart Fail 18(2):145–156
99. Dal-Pra S, Hodgkinson CP, Dzau VJ (2019) Induced cardiomyocyte maturation: cardiac transcription factors are necessary but not sufficient. PLoS One 14(10):e0223842
100. Ifkovits JL, Addis RC, Epstein JA, Gearhart JD (2014) Inhibition of TGFbeta signaling increases direct conversion of fibroblasts to induced cardiomyocytes. PLoS One 9(2):e89678
101. Gao X, Yang J, Tsang JC, Ooi J, Wu D, Liu P (2013) Reprogramming to pluripotency using designer TALE transcription factors targeting enhancers. Stem Cell Reports 1(2):183–197
102. Chakraborty S, Ji H, Kabadi AM, Gersbach CA, Christoforou N, Leong KW (2014) A CRISPR/ Cas9-based system for reprogramming cell lineage specification. Stem Cell Reports 3(6):940–947
103. Duan B (2020) Concise review: harnessing iPSC-derived cells for ischemic heart disease treatment. J Transl Int Med 8(1):20–25
104. Kadota S, Shiba Y (2019) Pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocyte transplantation for heart disease treatment. Curr Cardiol Rep 21(8):73
105. Qiao H, Zhang H, Yamanaka S, Patel VV, Petrenko NB, Huang B, Muenz LR, Ferrari VA, Boheler KR, Zhou R (2011) Long-term improvement in postinfarct left ventricular global and regional

contractile function is mediated by embryonic stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes. Circ Cardiovasc Imaging 4(1):33–41
106. Rudman J, Frishman WH (2020) Stem cell therapy for acute myocardial infarctions: a systematic review. Cardiol Rev 28(3):140–147
107. Smith AS, Macadangdang J, Leung W, Laflamme MA, Kim DH (2017) Human iPSC-derived cardiomyocytes and tissue engineering strategies for disease modeling and drug screening. Biotechnol Adv 35(1):77–94
108. Laflamme MA, Chen KY, Naumova AV, Muskheli V, Fugate JA, Dupras SK, Reinecke H, Xu C, Hassanipour M, Police S, O'Sullivan C, Collins L, Chen Y, Minami E, Gill EA, Ueno S, Yuan C, Gold J, Murry CE (2007) Cardiomyocytes derived from human embryonic stem cells in pro-survival factors enhance function of infarcted rat hearts. Nat Biotechnol 25(9):1015–1024
109. Takahashi K, Yamanaka S (2006) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from mouse embryonic and adult fibroblast cultures by defined factors. Cell 126(4): 663–676
110. Qi H, Pei D (2007) The magic of four: induction of pluripotent stem cells from somatic cells by Oct4, Sox2, Myc and Klf4. Cell Res 17(7):578–580
111. Takahashi K, Tanabe K, Ohnuki M, Narita M, Ichisaka T, Tomoda K, Yamanaka S (2007) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from adult human fibroblasts by defined factors. Cell 131(5):861–872
112. Ye L, Chang YH, Xiong Q, Zhang P, Zhang L, Somasundaram P, Lepley M, Swingen C, Su L, Wendel JS, Guo J, Jang A, Rosenbush D, Greder L, Dutton JR, Zhang J, Kamp TJ, Kaufman DS, Ge Y, Zhang J (2014) Cardiac repair in a porcine model of acute myocardial infarction with human induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiovascular cells. Cell Stem Cell 15(6):750–761
113. Gao L, Gregorich ZR, Zhu W, Mattapally S, Oduk Y, Lou X, Kannappan R, Borovjagin AV, Walcott GP, Pollard AE, Fast VG, Hu X, Lloyd SG, Ge Y, Zhang J (2018) Large cardiac muscle patches engineered from human induced-pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiac cells improve recovery from myocardial infarction in swine. Circulation 137(16):1712–1730
114. Chow A, Stuckey DJ, Kidher E, Rocco M, Jabbour RJ, Mansfield CA, Darzi A, Harding SE, Stevens MM, Athanasiou T (2017) Human induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocyte encapsulating bioactive hydrogels improve rat heart function post myocardial infarction. Stem Cell Reports 9(5): 1415–1422
115. Svystonyuk DA, Mewhort HEM, Fedak PWM (2018) Using acellular bioactive extracellular matrix scaffolds to enhance endogenous cardiac repair. Front Cardiovasc Med 5:35
116. Chong JJ, Yang X, Don CW, Minami E, Liu YW, Weyers JJ, Mahoney WM, Van Biber B, Cook SM, Palpant NJ, Gantz JA, Fugate JA, Muskheli V, Gough GM, Vogel KW, Astley CA, Hotchkiss CE, Baldessari A, Pabon L, Reinecke H, Gill EA, Nelson V, Kiem HP, Laflamme MA, Murry CE (2014) Human embryonic-stem-cell-derived cardiomyocytes regenerate non-human primate hearts. Nature 510(7504):273–277
117. Lin Y, Liu H, Klein M, Ostrominski J, Hong SG, Yada RC, Chen G, Navarengom K, Schwartzbeck R, San H, Yu ZX, Liu C, Linask K, Beers J, Qiu L, Dunbar CE, Boehm M, Zou J (2018) Efficient differentiation of cardiomyocytes and generation of calcium-sensor reporter lines from nonhuman primate iPSCs. Sci Rep 8(1):5907
118. Mattapally S, Zhu W, Fast VG, Gao L, Worley C, Kannappan R, Borovjagin AV, Zhang J (2018) Spheroids of cardiomyocytes derived from human-induced pluripotent stem cells improve recovery from myocardial injury in mice. Am J Phys Heart Circ Phys 315(2):H327–H339
119. Luo Y, Liu C, Cerbini T, San H, Lin Y, Chen G, Rao MS, Zou J (2014) Stable enhanced green fluorescent protein expression after differentiation and transplantation of reporter human induced pluripotent stem cells generated by AAVS1 transcription activator-like effector nucleases. Stem Cells Transl Med 3(7): 821–835
120. Jones JS, Small DM, Nishimura N (2018) In vivo calcium imaging of cardiomyocytes in the beating mouse heart with multiphoton microscopy. Front Physiol 9:969
121. Ostrominski JW, Yada RC, Sato N, Klein M, Blinova K, Patel D, Valadez R, Palisoc M, Pittaluga S, Peng KW, San H, Lin Y, Basuli F, Zhang X, Swenson RE, Haigney M, Choyke PL, Zou J, Boehm M, Hong SG, Dunbar CE (2020) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated introduction of the sodium/iodide symporter gene enables noninvasive in vivo tracking of induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes. Stem Cells Transl Med 9(10): 1203–1217
122. Gao Y, Wu S, Pan J, Zhang K, Li X, Xu Y, Jin C, He X, Shi J, Ma L, Wu F, Yao Y, Wang P, He Q, Lan F, Zhang H, Tian M (2021) CRISPR/Cas9-edited triple-fusion reporter gene imaging of dynamics and function of transplanted human urinary-induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 48(3):708–720
123. Cho HM, Lee KH, Shen YM, Shin TJ, Ryu PD, Choi MC, Kang KS, Cho JY (2020) Transplantation of hMSCs genome edited with LEF1 improves cardio-protective effects in myocardial infarction. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 19:1186–1197
124. Noiseux N, Gnecchi M, Lopez-Ilasaca M, Zhang L, Solomon SD, Deb A, Dzau VJ, Pratt RE (2006) Mesenchymal stem cells overexpressing Akt dramatically repair infarcted myocardium and improve cardiac function despite infrequent cellular fusion or differentiation. Mol Ther 14(6):840–850
125. Lim SY, Kim YS, Ahn Y, Jeong MH, Hong MH, Joo SY, Nam KI, Cho JG, Kang PM, Park JC (2006) The effects of mesenchymal stem cells transduced with Akt in a porcine myocardial infarction model. Cardiovasc Res 70(3):530–542

126. Mirotsou M, Zhang Z, Deb A, Zhang L, Gnecchi M, Noiseux N, Mu H, Pachori A, Dzau V (2007) Secreted frizzled related protein 2 (Sfrp2) is the key Akt-mesenchymal stem cell-released paracrine factor mediating myocardial survival and repair. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104(5):1643–1648
127. Sahoo S, Losordo DW (2014) Exosomes and cardiac repair after myocardial infarction. Circ Res 114(2): 333–344
128. Alrefai MT, Tarola CL, Raagas R, Ridwan K, Shalal M, Lomis N, Paul A, Alrefai MD, Prakash S, Schwertani A, Shum-Tim D (2019) Functional assessment of pluripotent and mesenchymal stem cell derived Secretome in heart disease. Ann Stem Cell Res 2(1):29–36
129. Hu M, Guo G, Huang Q, Cheng C, Xu R, Li A, Liu N, Liu S (2018) The harsh microenvironment in infarcted heart accelerates transplanted bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells injury: the role of injured cardiomyocytes-derived exosomes. Cell Death Dis 9(3):357
130. Shao L, Zhang Y, Pan X, Liu B, Liang C, Zhang Y, Wang Y, Yan B, Xie W, Sun Y, Shen Z, Yu XY, Li Y (2020) Knockout of beta-2 microglobulin enhances cardiac repair by modulating exosome imprinting and inhibiting stem cell-induced immune rejection. Cell Mol Life Sci 77(5):937–952
131. Meng D, Han S, Jeong IS, Kim SW (2019) Interleukin 10-secreting MSCs via TALEN-mediated gene editing attenuates left ventricular remodeling after myocardial infarction. Cell Physiol Biochem 52(4): 728–741
132. Mia MM, Cibi DM, Abdul Ghani SAB, Song W, Tee N, Ghosh S, Mao J, Olson EN, Singh MK (2020) YAP/TAZ deficiency reprograms macrophage phenotype and improves infarct healing and cardiac function after myocardial infarction. PLoS Biol 18(12):e3000941
133. Vermersch E, Jouve C, Hulot JS (2020) CRISPR/Cas9 gene-editing strategies in cardiovascular cells. Cardiovasc Res 116(5):894–907
134. Johansen AK, Molenaar B, Versteeg D, Leitoguinho AR, Demkes C, Spanjaard B, de Ruiter H, Akbari Moqadam F, Kooijman L, Zentilin L, Giacca M, van Rooij E (2017) Postnatal cardiac gene editing using CRISPR/Cas9 with AAV9-mediated delivery of short guide RNAs results in mosaic gene disruption. Circ Res 121(10):1168–1181
135. Gabisonia K, Recchia FA (2018) Gene therapy for heart failure: new perspectives. Curr Heart Fail Rep 15(6):340–349
136. Zacchigna S, Zentilin L, Giacca M (2014) Adeno-associated virus vectors as therapeutic and investigational tools in the cardiovascular system. Circ Res 114(11):1827–1846
137. Gabisonia K, Prosdocimo G, Aquaro GD, Carlucci L, Zentilin L, Secco I, Ali H, Braga L, Gorgodze N, Bernini F, Burchielli S, Collesi C, Zandona L, Sinagra G, Piacenti M, Zacchigna S, Bussani R, Recchia FA, Giacca M (2019) MicroRNA therapy stimulates uncontrolled cardiac repair after myocardial infarction in pigs. Nature 569(7756): 418–422



Genome Editing and Myocardial Development

Sifa Turan, J. Richard Chaillet, Margaret C. Stapleton, and Yijen L. Wu

Abstract

Congenital heart disease (CHD) has a strong genetic etiology, making it a likely candidate for therapeutic intervention using genetic editing. Complex genetics involving an orchestrated series of genetic events and over 400 genes are responsible for myocardial development. Cooperation is required from a vast series of genetic networks, and mutations in such can lead to CHD and cardiovascular abnormalities, affecting up to 1% of all live births. Genome editing technologies are becoming better studied and with time and improved logistics, CHD could be a prime therapeutic target. Syndromic, nonsyndromic, and cases of familial inheritance all involve identifiable causative mutations and thus have the potential for genome editing therapy. Mouse models are well-suited to study and predict clinical outcome. This review summarizes the anatomical and genetic timeline of myocardial development in both mice and humans, the potential of gene editing in typical CHD categories, as well as the use of mice thus far in reproducing models of human CHD and correcting the mutations that create them.

Keywords

Congenital heart disease (CHD) · Heart development · Cardiovascular disease

1 Overview

The heart is the first visceral organ to be formed during organogenesis [1]. Myocardial development involves orchestrated series of genetic networks turning on and off cooperatively to execute molecular, cellular, and morphogenetic events to form a normal heart [2, 3]. Mutations in these genes result in congenital heart disease (CHD) at birth or cardiovascular abnormalities later in life [1, 2]. CHD is the most common congenital abnormality, which occurs in about 1 in 100 live births [4] and in 10% of aborted

S. Turan
Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA
e-mail: sturan@som.umaryland.edu

J. R. Chaillet
Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Magee-Womens Research Institute, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA
e-mail: chaillet@pitt.edu

M. C. Stapleton · Y. L. Wu (✉)
Department of Developmental Biology, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Rangos Research Center Animal Imaging Core, Children's Hospital of Pittsburgh of UPMC, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA
e-mail: MCS108@pitt.edu; yijenwu@pitt.edu

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_4

fetuses [5]. More than 400 genes have been associated with CHD [6]. Oyen and associates [7, 8] investigated the overall CHD risks among family members of the proband and found that the risks for concordant [7, 8] and discordant [8, 9] defects among the first-degree relatives are 3–80 [7, 8] and 2 [8, 9], respectively. This is indicative of the genetic and genomic underpinning of CHD [2, 10] (Excellent recent reviews please see Williams et. al. [6, 11], Zaidi and Brueckner [6, 11]).

Should the enormous scientific, logistical, clinical, ethical, and regulatory issues regarding the use of therapeutic genome editing technologies be resolved, CHD would be prime targets. The syndromic CHDs are typically due to large chromosomal defects, such as microdeletions and microduplications, and associated with significant abnormalities apart from the cardiovascular system. Nonsyndromic CHD cases outnumber syndromic cases, and are mainly due to monogenic or digenic mutations, which are small (point mutations mostly), and vis-à-vis state-of-the-art genome editing, correctable.

Familial inheritance of most CHD cases favors the use of genome editing in treatment. The causative mutated gene is often known or can be easily identified, particularly as the list of genes associated with CHD increases (for comprehensive gene lists, see [6]). As well, phenotypic abnormalities of nonsyndromic cases are usually confined to the heart, their developmental onset and progression may be known, and the severity of the anomaly and thus the need for some form of intervention predictable. Lastly, the position of the heart in the vascular system may mean the delivery of editing tools and their effectiveness would be outstanding.

Mouse models of CHD would be essential to formulating a CHD gene editing plan of known efficacy and a strong prediction of a beneficial clinical outcome. Mice are a favorable model system as many of their genes, gene modifiers, and molecular pathways are conserved with those of humans. Biological processes, anatomy, and physiology are likewise conserved with humans, examples being four-chambered hearts, vascular systems, and visceral organs, which share similar structure and function [12–15].

Mouse models of specific human molecular variants can be easily constructed to determine the best developmental time and approach to intervene and correct the gene defect.

This review begins with a discussion of the anatomical development of the human and mouse hearts (Table 1 and Figs. 1 and 2), including a list of the genes (Table 2) and their roles at anatomical positions and gestational times. We follow this with a discussion of the potential roles of gene editing in different traditional categories of CHD. We complete our review with examples of how mice have been used so far, both in generating models of human CHD and in correcting mutations in orthologs of human CHD genes.

2 Cardiac Development

2.1 Early Development and Cardiac Crescent

Heart development begins [20] when cells in the anterior lateral mesoderm move from the primitive streak and give rise to cardiomyocytes, beginning the process that allows the heart to form and contract. These mesodermal cells gather in shape known as the cardiac crescent, made of the first and second heart fields. It is thought that this movement is facilitated by an influx of transcription factors and secreted molecules [10]. Cells in the first heart field go on to form the linear tube; meanwhile, cells in the second heart field, which is medial and dorsal to the first heart field, become the right ventricle, outflow tract, and parts of the atria [16].

2.2 Cardiac Looping

One of the first cells to be specified are cardiac muscle cells, which quickly find their way to the ventral midline of the embryo and form a beating heart tube. This tube has an endocardial and myocardial layer with a layer of extracellular

Table 1 Cardiac development in humans and mice

Cardiac development stage	Milestones	Human embryonic weeks	Mouse embryonic days
Establish left–right body axis	Breaking symmetry around the midline organizer, the node		E7
Establish cardiac fate	Perinodal signaling to the lateral plate mesoderm for cardiac differentiation		
Gastrulation	Cardiac progenitor cells migrate to the splanchnic mesoderm		
Cardiac crescent	Cardiac progenitor cells form first heart field (FHF) and second heart field (SHF)	2 weeks (Fig.1)	E7.5 (Fig.2)
Linear heart tube	Heart tube formation, first heartbeat, anterior–posterior segmental patterning for committing precursors for future aortic sac, conotruncus (outflow tract), atria, pulmonary and systemic ventricles.	3 weeks (Fig.1)	E8.0 (Fig.2)
Cardiac looping	Rightward looping, forming inflow track at the arterial pole and inflow track and the primitive atria at the venous pole	4 weeks (Fig.1)	E8.5–E10.5 (Fig.2)
Chamber formation	Common atrium has moved superior to the ventricles and is separated by atrio-ventricular canal, trabeculation, cushion formation, outflow track separation, and early conduction formation	4.5 weeks	E9.5 (Fig.2)
Cardiac neural crest cell migration	Cardiac neural crest cells from the dorsal neural tube migrate to the cardiac outflow track	4.5 weeks	E10.5 (Fig.2)
Node formation	Sino atrial and atrioventricular nodes detectable	5 weeks	E10.5–E11.5
Atrial septation	Growing two septa: the septum primum and septum secundum	6.8–8.0 weeks	E10.5–E13.5
Outflow track septation	The truncus arteriosus septation into two separate arterial channels.	7.1–7.7 weeks	E11.5–E13.5
Interventricular Foramen	The interventricular foramen changes from wide and open to become narrow with distinct opening.	7.4–8.8 weeks	E10.5–E11.5
Ventricular septation	Forming muscular, inlet, and outlet interventricular septa	7/4–9.1 weeks	E11.5–E13.5
Valve formation	Forming mitral valve, tricuspid valve, aortic valve, and pulmonary valve	8.0–9.4 weeks	E12.5–E13.5
Mature four-chamber heart	The mature heart formed.	8 weeks to birth (Fig. 1)	E15.5 (Fig.2) to birth

Information based on [2, 3, 6, 10, 11, 16–19]

matrix (ECM) in between. [2]. The following process to occur is known as cardiac looping and it takes place around embryonic day E9.5 and E10.5 in mice and weeks 6 4/7 and 7 5/7 in humans [17]. In the lateral mesoderm, uneven gene expression will cause the linear heart tube to loop to the right. This event is essential for heart chamber formation, and the proper alignment between heart chambers and vasculature [2]. Structurally on the left side, blood will go from, what at this point is made up of the atrial cavity, atrial ventricular junction, and what will be the left ventricle to the interventricular foramen. On the right side, blood will flow from the early right ventricle to the truncus arteriosus. In addition, the arterial ventricular junction is enveloped in endocardial cushion tissue [18]. During this time of development, the ventricular and atrial chambers grow in size and start to become distinct on the left and right. Along with this distinction, the interventricular foramen narrows as the ventricles grow, allowing the ventricles to

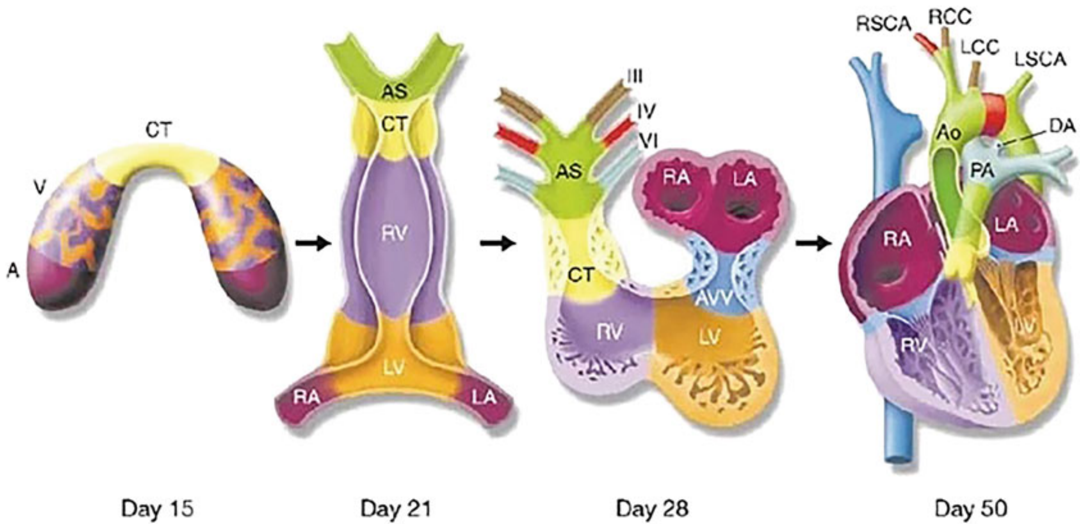


Fig. 1 Schematic of human cardiac morphogenesis. Illustrations depict cardiac development with color coding of morphologically related regions, seen from a ventral view. Cardiogenic precursors form a crescent (*left-most panel*) that is specified to form specific segments of the linear heart tube, which is patterned along the anterior–posterior axis to form the various regions and chambers of the looped and mature heart. Each cardiac chamber balloons out from the outer curvature of the looped heart tube in a segmental fashion. Neural crest cells populate the bilaterally symmetrical aortic arch arteries (*III, IV*, and *VI*) and aortic sac (*AS*) that together contribute to specific segments of the mature aortic arch, also color coded. Mesenchymal cells form the cardiac valves from the conotruncal (*CT*) and atrioventricular valve (*AVV*) segments. Corresponding days of human embryonic development are indicated. *A* atrium, *Ao* aorta, *DA* ductus arteriosus, *LA* left atrium, *LCC* left common carotid, *LSCA* left subclavian artery, *LV* left ventricle, *PA* pulmonary artery, *RA* right atrium, *RCC* right common carotid, *RSCA* right subclavian artery, *RV* right ventricle, *V* ventricle. (Re-use with copyright permission granted from [2])

continue communicating. Also, the atrial ventricular junction becomes denser [18].

2.3 Atrium, Sino Atrial Node, and Atrial Ventricular Node Development

Beginning in the primary heart tube, the atrial septum divides into the septum primum and the septum secundum and looks similar in both mice and humans. The process spans E10.5 to E13.5 in mice and days 48–56 in humans [17]. Starting at the posterior wall of the atrium, the septum primum extends out and eventually meets the endocardial cushions surrounding the atrial ventricular junction. This spine that extends from the wall of the atrium is made of mesenchymal cells that later become muscle cells. This process helps to close the interventricular foramen [18]. Later, the septum secundum formation begins in the dorsal wall of the atrium, when it in folds and grows to the right of where the pulmonary vein will develop [17].

In addition to septation, between E10.5 and E11.5 in mice and around week 5 in humans, some atrial mesenchymal cells will become the sinoatrial node. The comma-shaped node's characteristic head and tail regions develop independently, in order of functions. As it develops, the left-sided sinoatrial node joins the surrounding myocardium and begins to look like characteristic working myocardium. But unlike the left-sided atrial node, the right side does not look like its working myocardium surroundings. Instead, it

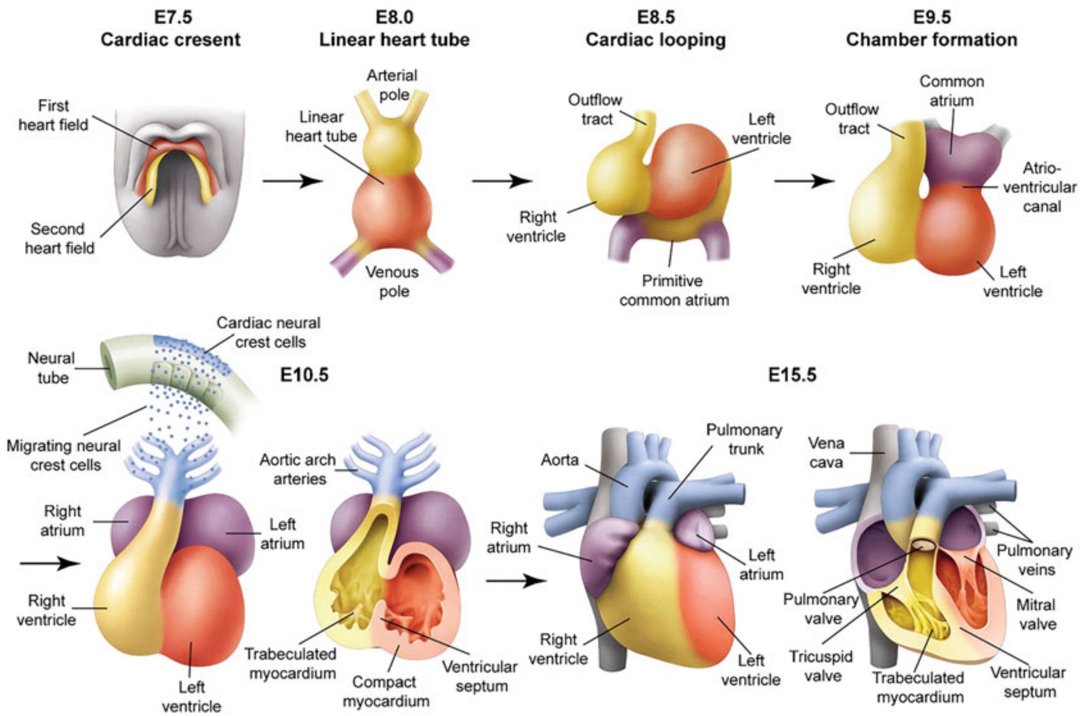


Fig. 2 Mouse cardiac development. The heart originates from mesodermal cells in the primitive streak. During gastrulation, cardiac progenitors migrate to the splanchnic mesoderm to form the cardiac crescent. At E7.5 in the mouse, the cardiac crescent can be divided into two heart field lineages based on differential gene expression and their respective contribution to heart, a first heart field (*red*) and a second heart field (*yellow*), which is located posteriorly and medially to the first heart field. At E8.0, the linear heart tube is present. At E8.5, the looping is associated with uneven growth of cardiac chambers. The outflow tract is at the arterial pole and the inflow tract and primitive atria are at the venous pole. By E9.5, the common atrium has moved superior to the ventricles and is separated by a distinct atrio-ventricular canal. By E10.5, cardiac neural crest cells from the dorsal neural tube migrate via the pharyngeal arches to the cardiac outflow tract. Further cardiac development involves a series of septation events and myocardial trabeculation that result in a mature four-chambered heart integrated with the circulatory system depicted at E15.5. (Re-use with copyright permission granted from [16])

keeps a more primitive function, enabling it to be tracked even in late development [19].

2.4 Ventricular Development

Like atrial development, ventricular development looks very similar between mice and humans. It begins on day E11.5 in mice and week 8 in humans, near the end of the looped heart stage [17]. During ventricular development, the ventricular septum protrudes from the ventral part of the ventricular chamber floor and grows toward the atria. Closing the ventricular septum is thought to be mediated by cells moving from the secondary heart field in the dorsal direction.

2.5 Atrioventricular Valve Development

Atrioventricular valve development spans over E10.5-E17.5 in mice and days 48–66 in humans. The valves' structure is complete by E12.5 and day 56, in mice and humans, respectively, but continues to develop into their polished versions until E17.5 and day 66 [17]. Endocardial cushions, or extracellular matrix areas, that line

Table 2 Genes involved in cardiac development and congenital heart disease

Name	Human phenotype/role
MYBPC3	ASD, PDA, VSD, MR
SCN5A	Long QT syndrome
HRAS	PS, ASD, VSD, PDA, other structural heart disease, hypertrophy, rhythm disturbances
TNNT1/ TNNT2	HCM
LDB3	LVNC
MYPN	RCM
LMNA	LVNC
CASQ2	CPVT
KCNH2/ KCNQ1	Long QT syndrome, short QT syndrome
TAZ	LVNC
Structural proteins	
MYH7	EA, LVNC, HCM, DCM
FBN1	Marfan syndrome
Receptors and ligands	
RyR2	CPVT
Transcription factors and co-factors	
GATA5	AVSD, DORV, LVNC, BAV, CoA
GATA4	Dextrocardia, AVSD, DORV, TOF, BAV, CoA, AR, PAPVR, PDA, PS, ASD, VSD,
GATA6	AVSD, TOF, PDA, PTA, PS, ASD, VSD, OFT defects
NKX2-5	ASD, AVSD, VASD, BAV, CoA, Dextrocardia, DORV, Ebstein's anomaly, HTX, HLHS, IAA, LVNC, Mitral valve anomalies, PA, PAPVR, PDA, PS, SVAS, TA, TAPVR, TGA, TOF, PTA, VSD
TBX5	AVSD, TOF, BAV, CoA, ASD, VSD, Holt-Oram syndrome, PDA
PBX1	CAKUTHED syndrome
Signaling	
JAG1	Aortic dextroposition, TOF, BAV, CoA, PS, VSD, Alagille syndrome, peripheral pulmonary hypoplasia
NOTCH2	AVSD, TOF, BAV, CoA, PS, Alagille syndrome, peripheral pulmonary hypoplasia
TGFB2	VSD, Loeys-Dietz syndrome
TGFB3	Loeys-Dietz syndrome
TGFBR1	BAV, Myxomatous mitral valve, TAAD, Loeys-Dietz syndrome, Marfan syndrome

Information taken from [2, 3, 6, 10, 11, 16, 19]

ASD atrial septal defect, *AVSD* atrioventricular septal defect, *BAV* bicuspid aortic valve, *CoA* Coarctation of the aorta, *CPVT* catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia, *DORV* double outlet right ventricle, *HCM* hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, *HLHS* hypoplastic left heart syndrome, *HTX* heterotaxy, *IAA* interrupted aortic arch, *LVNC* left ventricular noncompaction, *OFT* outflow tract, *PAPVR* partial anomalous pulmonary venous return, *PDA* patent ductus arteriosus, *PS* pulmonary stenosis, *PTA* persistent truncus arteriosus, *TA* tricuspid atresia, *TAAD* thoracic aortic aneurysm and dissection, *TAPVR* total anomalous pulmonary venous return, *TGA* transposition of the great arteries, *TOF* tetralogy of Fallot, *VSD* ventricular septal defect

the atrial ventricular canals divide this area into left and right, and create the atrial ventricular valves. There forms the mitral valve on the left and the tricuspid valve on the right, though at this stage they are thick. In the next 10 days of human gestation, these valves thin and are developed. In mice though, the tricuspid valve takes until E17.5 to develop, and even further development occurs postnatally [17].

2.6 Outflow Track Development

The truncus arteriosus is the site of many events in cardiac development. Cells from the second heart field interacting with neural crest cells will create a septum and become arteries [18]. In humans and mice, at days 50 and 11.5, respectively, neural crest cells facilitate the formation of two ridges. As the truncus arteriosus cushions

begin twisting, they separate into the aorta and pulmonary arteries. At least this is true distally. At this point, proximally the truncus arteriosus is still connected as one [18]. By day E12.5 in mice, the outflow tracts are separate proximally as well. In general, the development of the outflow tracts looks similar between humans and mice [17]. This process is delicate in that 30% of congenital heart defects are due to this neural crest cell process. ET-1, dHAND, and neurophilin-1 are known to regulate neural crest cell development [2]. Neural crest cells are proven to be needed to properly close the ductus, separate the outflow tract, form the aortic arch, and form the ventricular septation [10]. Neural crest cells are also thought to induce the development of the cardiac conduction system, though it is not known precisely how [19].

The semilunar valve is made in a process similar to that of the atrial ventricular valves, in that it comes from cushion tissue, this time truncal, and is thick to start. Semilunar valves then thin out over time. This process begins in mice at day E12.5 and week 8 in humans [17].

2.7 Conductance System

Development of accessory pathways, or accessory bundles of cardiomyocytes, are essential as the atria and ventricles develop, because they conduct action potentials in both the atrial ventricular direction and the ventricular-atrial direction. When the atrial ventricular junction forms, conduction between the atria and ventricles is one of the only connections the two areas have. They are located both endocardially and epicardially to start, and thus have different cellular morphologies. However, it is also imperative that these decrease in number and size as the heart, specifically the atrioventricular junction, develop, or else it can lead to cardiomyopathies later on in development [19].

When it comes to the cardiac conduction system, the posterior end of the heart field will give rise to the sinoatrial node. Some suspect it will also contribute to the formation of the atrioventricular node. However, it is still debated [19]. Furthermore, at E9.5 in mice, epicardial cells from the venous pole of the heart migrate over the developing heart to create the outer layer of the epicardium. Epicardium-derived cells go on to help form smooth muscle cells, coronary vasculature, the atrial ventricular valves, and the compact myocardium. Still, they are also thought to play a role in developing the peripheral conduction system through Purkinje fiber cells [19]. When it comes to the atrioventricular node, it starts to develop at week 5 in humans and day E11.5 in mice. The atrioventricular node develops from the myocardium and begins as an anterior and posterior node, the posterior node eventually playing the more significant role. After all, it is the node that connects to the His bundle. Ultimately, the anterior and posterior atrioventricular nodes fuse [19]. There are many theories as to which cells exactly give rise to the atrioventricular node, but for now, it is only agreed upon that it has multiple cell sources [19]. During early development, the atrioventricular canal conducts slowly, which is known as the atrioventricular delay. As the heart continues to develop, the annulus fibrosus forms and interrupts the myocardial continuity, which would interrupt conduction to the ventricles. As a result, the common bundle begins conducting the electrical impulse to the now working ventricular myocardium and, these electrical impulses speed up [19].

3 Genetic Archetypes in Cardiac Development

As a beginning step, the heart tube formation initiates with the help of the progenitor cells within the anterior lateral plate mesoderm, which becomes committed to a cardiogenic fate around embryonic day (E) 15 in humans. Specific signaling molecules such as bone morphogenetic proteins, fibroblast growth factors (Fgfs), and Wnts are responsible for this step [21–23]. Cardiac precursors bilaterally come together and fuse at the cephalic portion of the primitive streak and forms the cardiac tube. This straight heart tube contains an outer myocardium and an inner endocardium separated by an extracellular matrix

(ECM) known as the cardiac jelly. This process is shown to be under GATA transcription factors control [24]. The tubular heart initiates rhythmic contractions at approximately E23.0 in humans. The linear heart tube is segmentally shaped along the cranial (arterial pole) to caudal (venous pole) end into precursors of the aortic sac, conotruncus (outflow tracts), and primitive ventricle, primitive atria, and sinus venosus. The original upside-down heart tube lies in the cranial part of the embryo and needs to be curved. This critical development is called cardiac looping. In all vertebrates, the linear heart tube at first undergoes rightward, C shape looping and next S shape looping, which is essential for proper orientation of the pulmonary (right) and systemic (left) ventricles, and remodeling of the heart chambers with the vasculature [25]. With this looping process, the heart tube changes its orientation. From cranial to caudal direction, the structures lie as the aortic sac, primitive atrium to the primitive ventricle, and bulbus cordis.

The molecular mechanisms controlling the cardiac looping remain unknown but transforming growth factor-ß (TGF-ß) seems to be playing the role. The creation of a looped heart tube then enables the structure of four chambers and the arterial venous poles. After proper looping, the heart tube is ready to be divided into four chambers. This is followed by symmetrical atrial septation into the left and right atria, which governs NKX2.5 and TBX5 genes. The formation of heart valves and sequential ventricular septation into the left and right ventricles with a formation of the primitive interventricular septum between them, is mainly controlled by the TBX5 gene [2]. As we improve our understanding of cardiac development and the role of genetics in this process, the more underlying pathological processes depend on genetic abnormalities. We have enough evidence to assume that a significant portion of the CHD's originates from errors or disruption in heart development's genetic control.

The etiology of congenital heart defects is recently becoming a more interesting topic in the literature. When we look at the genetic determinants of CHD, we can identify almost 30% of the genetic abnormalities behind CHD's. The majority of the genetic determinants, nearly 70%, are still unrecognized [11]. However, as we improve our understanding of the genetic contribution to heart development and improve genetic technology, the undetermined portion will be less in the near future. Gene therapy is becoming a compelling treatment option when genetic etiology is apparent in many diseases. In this review, we will divide the genetic archetypes behind the CHD, and we will review the gene therapy options based on the genetic model of the CHD.

4 Genetic Archetypes for Syndromic Congenital Heart Defects

This subset of CHD cases has an exact genetic etiology, including various chromosome abnormalities, microdeletion/microduplication syndromes or, single-gene disorders, some of which are syndromic and some of which are nonsyndromic. Recurrence risk estimation is much easier for these cases with a clear genetic etiology; the magnitude of the risk depends on the specific cause. Except for the nonsyndromic single-gene causes of CHD, genetic causes of CHD often involve clinical or developmental features in addition to CHD. People with Down syndrome often have a higher than average number of abnormalities, such as intellectual disabilities, hypotonia, dysmorphic features, and other extracardiac symptoms [26]. Deletion 22q syndrome is commonly associated with oral clefting, velopharyngeal insufficiency, learning disabilities, calcium regulation issues, and thymus hypoplasia [27]. People with Holt–Oram syndrome due to mutations in TBX5 are often characterized by abnormalities in the limb and heart, such as atrial and ventricular septal defects [28]. Costello syndrome occurs due to HRAS mutations and can cause pulmonary stenosis and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy in the heart. People with Alagille syndrome typically have bile duct paucity, typical facies, and vertebral and heart anomalies. In this syndrome, the mutations are generally in JAG1and NOTCH2, and most

cardiac defects are pulmonary stenosis, hypoplasia, and Tetrology of Fallot [29]. Currently, prevention and treatment for this group have not been the focus of the current era. We are doing an excellent job counseling the recurrence risk and diagnosing them prenatally to inform the patients.

5 Genetic Archetypes of Nonsyndromic Isolated Congenital Heart Defects

In recent years, we have learned about several single genes that, when mutated, are associated with nonsyndromic familial CHD. Unlike syndromic CHD, where individuals often have various other medical and developmental concerns in addition to their cardiac problems, nonsyndromic familial CHD is associated with isolated heart defects. Many point mutations of NKX2.5 have been found in families with atrial septal defects and arrhythmias [30]. Sporadic mutations of the NKX2.5 can cause tetralogy of Fallot, an outflow tract alignment defect, and tricuspid valve defects. The exact mechanism of these mutations resulting in cardiac defect is not precise yet. The linkage of particular loss of function with mutations in some distinct abnormalities suggests that different aspects of NKX2.5 functions can be altered in other developmental portions of the heart. Typically, these conditions exhibit both reduced penetrance and variable expressivity. For example, some people in a family who inherit an NKX2.5 mutation will have completely normal hearts, some will have Tetralogy of Fallot, some may have atrial septal defects, etc., but everyone who inherits the mutation, regardless of their phenotype, can transmit that mutation to the next generation [31]. Mutations in GATA4 can cause atrial septal defects, atrioventricular septal defects, and great artery abnormalities, specifically pulmonary artery abnormalities. NOTCH1 mutations go with the bicuspid aortic valve, aortic stenosis, aortic coarctation, and hypoplastic left heart syndromes [32]. The currently known genes to cause nonsyndromic familial CHD's are listed in Table 2. These new developments demonstrate that single-gene defects can lead to isolated congenital heart disease and reveal more about molecular pathways important in cardiac morphogenesis.

6 Genetic Archetypes for Left–Right Patterning

The left-right asymmetry of the heart is required for proper oxygenation of the body, with the left side of the heart holding the responsibility of systemic circulation in order to provide oxygenated blood throughout the body. In contrast, the right side of the heart is responsible for pulmonary circulation to the lung for gas exchange. The abnormal left-right patterning, or laterality defect, is highly associated with CHD [33, 34] indicating the importance of left-right patterning in cardiac development.

This left-right asymmetry established with the rightward cardiac looping (the 4th week of human gestation and E8.5-E10.5 in mice) reflects the left–right body axis. The human body is highly asymmetric, with the body plan following the three axes (anteroposterior [A/P], dorsoventral [D/V], left-right [L/R]) that are established very early in embryonic development (human embryonic day E23 and mouse embryonic day E8.5) [35]. The major visceral organs are packed into the human body with a striking left-right asymmetry. The vast majority of the human population has developed this asymmetric thoracoabdominal organ arrangement, known as the normal situs, called *situs solitus* (SS). Comparative studies revealed that this directionality of the situs asymmetry is vertebrate-conserved, from fish, frog, mouse, to higher mammals, including humans [36]. However, when the asymmetry fails to develop correctly, it results in a pathogenic condition, *heterotaxy*, also known as *situs ambiguous*, which is generally associated with a spectrum of intra-cardiac defects, found in 1 of 10,000 births, and is associated with at least 3% of CHD cases [37]. Over the past few decades, it has been recognized that cilia, the highly conserved microtubule-based structures found in

almost all cell types, play central roles in left-right asymmetry in development. Ciliary abnormality, primary ciliary dyskinesia (PCD) [38], accounts for a host of human diseases such as cystic kidney disease, retinal degeneration, and Bardet-Biedl and Meckel-Gruber syndromes [39–46]. The left–right patterning [47] is established by nodal motile cilia rotating clockwise to generate a leftward flow of morphogens resulting in an asymmetrical gradient around the node, thus breaking the initial embryonic symmetry and establishing left and right asymmetry [41, 45]. Intra-ciliary calcium oscillation dynamics [41–43, 48] are identified as a key signaling pathway that initiates cascades of subsequent events in left–right development. Growing numbers of genetic analyses in both humans [37, 49–52] and mice [53–58] have uncovered arrays of PCD genes. Among all the PCD patients examined [49], about 48% developed SIT, 6% heterotaxy, and 46% had normal SS. How the bodily left–right axis established during nodal development affects the left–right patterning in the heart is not completely clear. A recent discovery of intrinsic cellular chirality [59] showed that the developing chick cardiomyocytes are intrinsically chiral and exhibit dominant clockwise rotation in vitro. Furthermore, the developing myocardium is chiral as evident by a rightward bias of cell alignment and a rightward polarization of the Golgi complex, correlating with the direction of cardiac looping. It is possible that the intrinsic cellular chirality regulates the left–right patterning from a cellular level, cardiac looping, to the overall body plan.

7 Genetic Archetypes of Inherited Arrhythmias

The most common inherited primary arrhythmia syndromes are Long QT syndromes, catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia, Brugada syndromes, and short QT syndromes. The inherited primary arrhythmia syndromes are mainly caused by cardiac channelopathies. Genetic mutations that cause inherited primary arrhythmia syndromes are mostly in genes encoding ion channels and associated regulatory proteins in the heart [60]. The inheritance pattern for primary arrhythmia syndromes is usually Mendelian. The onset of the disorders appears early in life. Epidemiological studies on the spectrum of etiologies of sudden cardiac death (SCD) indicated that the primary arrhythmia disorders are one major culprit of SCD among young and healthy individuals [61]. However, clinical features and phenotypical expression of the inherited primary arrhythmia syndromes resulting from cardiac channelopathies can be variable [62]. The complex interplay of the mutation characteristics, epigenetic, and environmental factors can influence the vulnerability to arrhythmias as well as the disease progression [63]. Many of these diseases exhibit overlapping symptoms. Therefore, precise genetic testing can be of merit in diagnosis, prognosis, guiding clinical management and more specific therapy [62].

7.1 Long QT Syndromes

The congenital long QT syndrome (LQTS) is one of the most common inherited arrhythmias in structurally normal hearts. It is usually diagnosed with prolongation of the QT interval on the electrocardiogram (ECG). Clinically it can cause syncope, seizures, polymorphic ventricular tachycardia (VT) (torsades de pointes), cardiac arrest, and sudden death.

To date, 16 genes have been associated with LQTS. The most common genes seen in 90% of all genotype-positive cases are KCNQ1 (LQTS1), KCNH2 (LQTS2), and SCN5A (LQTS3). The diagnostic yield of these mutations is high. It allows us to understand the penetrance type and determine the risk for the upcoming generations in the same family before being discovered by their clinical symptoms. As a treatment option, the type of mutation will help us start prophylactic treatments, which have already been proven to reduce cumulative mortality [64].

7.2 Catecholaminergic Polymorphic Ventricular Tachycardia (CPVT)

Catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia (CPVT) is an inherited arrhythmic disorder. It is characterized by adrenergic mediated polymorphic or bidirectional ventricular tachycardia (VT) that may degenerate into ventricular fibrillation (VF) which can cause cardiac arrest or sudden cardiac death in patients with structurally normal hearts. As indicated by Drs. Asatryan and Mederios-Domingo [65], for patients with clinical CPVT is suspected, the presence of pathogenic mutations of RyR2 or CASQ2 can be diagnosed by genetic testing, which can have almost 60% diagnostic yield. Besides confirming the diagnosis, a positive result is very useful to identify other affected family members at risk for sudden cardiac death [65, 66].

7.3 Brugada Syndromes (BrS)

Brugada syndrome (BrS) is characterized by a typical ECG pattern of coved-type ST-segment elevation with successive negative T waves in the right precordial leads with or without cardiac conduction delays. Ventricular tachyarrhythmias and sudden death in sleep are the most common clinical findings and manifest between 30 and 40 years of life. The prevalence is higher in males. Although it is rare compared to Long QT syndrome, it is a silent killer due to silent course and intermittent ECG patterns. Although the genetic test's diagnostic yield is around 30%, mutation-specific genetic testing is recommended for family members after identifying a causative mutation. It allows for presymptomatic diagnosis in relatives at risk who need further clinical follow-up, prophylactic treatment, etc. At least 20 genetic mutations have been found to account for 30–35% of BrS cases [65, 67], with loss-of-function mutations in SCN5A contributing to about 30% of said cases [65, 68, 69]. Therefore, global as well as specific SCN5A genetic testing is an expected course of action for any patient suspected of having BrS. It is generally recommended that family members of BrS patients have genetic testing as well in order to allow for early diagnosis and presymptomatic clinical and treatment plans.

7.4 Short QT Syndrome (SQTS)

While exceedingly rare, short QT syndrome (SQTS) is a heritable, grave, deadly cardiac channelopathy. ECG reveals short QT intervals in these patients, making them increasingly vulnerable to atrial and ventricular arrhythmias and sudden death [65, 70]. While some patients present first with these arrhythmias in the form of heart palpitations or syncope, 40% of cases present cardiac arrest as their first symptom, with any survivors showing a high rate of recurrence. KCNH2 (SQTS1) was the first gene discovered in relation to SQTS, with about an 80% penetrance, though data is limited. Therefore those with any clinical suspicion or family history of SQTS should undergo genetic screening for three major genes associated with SQTS, KCNH2, KCNQ1, and KCNJ2, the yield of which is around 40% [65, 71, 72].

8 Genetic Archetypes of Inherited Cardiomyopathy

Cardiomyopathy is a form of heart disease affecting the cardiac muscle and can cause major cardiac-related morbidity in almost all ages. A significant portion of them has a genetic origin. Advances in molecular genetics allowed us to identify multiple genes responsible for cardiomyopathies. Surprisingly, different mutations in the same gene can cause different types of cardiomyopathies. Cardiomyopathies can be classified as dilated, hypertrophic, arrhythmogenic right ventricular, restrictive, or left ventricular non-compaction cardiomyopathies. As a neuromuscular disorder, especially Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophies, cardiomyopathy is also characterized by skeletal myopathy [73].

8.1 Dilated Cardiomyopathy (DCM)

Dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM) is characterized by left ventricular dilatation and abnormality in systolic function. DCM is the most common indication for cardiac transplant. Inheritance patterns are generally autosomal dominant in 30–50% of cases. Small percentages can be autosomal recessive, X-linked, and mitochondrial inheritance. More than 40 genes have been described in DCM. Defects with LMNA-encoded lamin mutations, myosin heavy chain beta mutations, ribonucleic acid-binding protein mutations, and many other complex molecular deficits have been implicated in the pathogenesis of DCM [74]. Most genetic mutations associated with DCM have extremely low prevalence and high heterogeneity. Therefore, it is often necessary to sequence large numbers of genes in order for effective genetic testing. If the DCM is together with conduction disease and/or arrhythmia and strong family history, then focused testing for LMNA, desmosomal, and SCN5A mutations may have a substantial clinical impact. Identification of a genetic mutation in the setting of family history allows early screening, appropriate monitoring, and prophylactic treatments [75].

8.2 Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy (HCM)

The inheritance pattern of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) is autosomal dominant, characterized by concentric hypertrophy of the left ventricle and the septum [76]. The genes that encode sarcomeric proteins are involved in the pathogenesis of HCM. The most common of them that accounts for 20–30% of the HCM is mutations in MYH7 (encoding the β-myosin heavy chain), MYBPC3 (encoding the cardiac myosin binding protein C), and cardiac troponin T (TNNT1and 2) [77]. These mutations, in general, cause decreased myocyte relaxation and increased myocyte growth with prominent involvement of the interventricular septum. Approximately 10% of the patients may carry multiple sarcomeric mutations, presenting with more severe diseases at younger ages. This indicates the need for detailed genetic evaluation of the family for early diagnosis and treatment. The genetic diagnosis can go up to 70% if there is a family history of HCM. The yield is lower when sporadic diseases are considered. For effective screening, it is important to know the pathogenicity of the mutation. Many mutations that cause HCM can be unique to the individual family; therefore, careful genetic counseling and family assessment are needed in this type of inherited cardiomyopathy [78].

8.3 Arrhythmogenic Right Ventricular Cardiomyopathy (ARVC)

The arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy (ARVC) is a form of heart disease characterized by fibrosis and fatty infiltration of the myocardium, mainly in the right ventricle. The inheritance pattern for ARVC is autosomal dominant with incomplete penetrance. Mutations in the genes cause encoding desmosomal proteins are the main etiology. These mutated genes disorganized desmosomal integrity, making muscle fibers more fragile, sensitive to tearing, fragmentation, and eventually cell death in the course of the cardiac cycle. As a result, the desmosomal function, the gap junction remodeling, sodium channel function, and electrocardiographic parameters in cardiomyocytes are also compromised. Besides, disturbance of desmosomal proteins promotes adipogenesis in mesodermal precursors by suppressing the Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway. This particular pathway is known for its role in cardiac myogenesis [79].

As a consequence of this abnormal process, the fibro-fatty replacement of the ventricular myocardium becomes more prominent in the RV. Multiple variants in the mutation cause early presentation and more severe presentation of the disease. The presence of more than one variant was associated with a nearly fivefold increase in odds of penetrant disease. This

information is essential during the genetic evaluation, and recommendation is usually needed to sequence all five desmosomal genes [80].

8.4 Restrictive Cardiomyopathy (RCM)

Restrictive cardiomyopathy (RCM) is a form of heart disease in which the heart chambers gradually become stiff over time. The initial findings are increased ventricular stiffness that impairs ventricular filling without ventricular hypertrophy or systolic dysfunction [81]. The most common inheritance is autosomal dominant. Alterations in genes encoding for sarcomeric proteins (e.g., TNNT2), Z-disc proteins (e.g., MYPN), or transthyretin (TTR) have been identified in patients with RCM [82]. Familial RCM is increasingly recognized as a specific phenotype within the HCM spectrum and can be seen in those who share mutations expressed as classic hypertrophic cardiomyopathy in other family members.

8.5 Left Ventricular Non-compaction Cardiomyopathy

This is a heterogeneous disorder characterized by prominent trabeculae, a thin compacted layer, and deep intertrabecular recesses most evident in the left ventricle apex. Non-compaction may involve the right ventricle, presenting as either a biventricular or isolated right ventricular non-compaction phenotype. The genetic form is commonly inherited as an X-linked recessive or autosomal dominant condition [83]. Mutations that affect the compaction of the endomyocardial layer progress from the base to the apex of the heart during embryogenesis. The genes encoding for sarcomeric (e.g., MYH7), Z-disc (e.g., LDB3), nuclear envelope (e.g., LMNA), mitochondrial (e.g., TAZ), and ion channel proteins (e.g., SCN5A) are found to be responsible for this type of cardiomyopathy.

8.6 Cardiomyopathy in Other Disorders

Duchene muscular dystrophy (DMD), Beker's muscular dystrophy, Marfan syndrome, and Barth syndrome are the other disorders where different types of CMP can be observed. In DMD, three stages are present, usually starting with hypertrophic CMP and some diastolic dysfunction with no heart failure symptoms. Later the heart dilates and accumulates fibrosis and, as the last stage represents, the end-stage heart failure findings such as diastolic dysfunction and arrhythmias. The female carriers of DMD mutations may also manifest dilated cardiomyopathy. This has the potential to progress to heart failure in some cases; therefore, the appropriate genetic counseling and close monitoring of the carriers are also needed. Marfan syndrome is caused by mutations in the FBN1 gene that codes for fibrillin-1. The inheritance is autosomal dominant [84]. Fibrillin-1 is an extracellular protein that plays a role in microfibril formation and provides elastic properties to tissues [85]. Dilated cardiomyopathy is typically associated with Marfan syndrome. The Barth syndrome is an X-linked autosomal recessive disorder is caused by mutations in the tafazzin (TAZ) gene [86]. The loss of tafazzin and increased cardiolipin results in changes in energy stores decreased contractility, and increased heart damage. Barth syndrome cardiomyopathy is usually dilated cardiomyopathy, but cases of hypertrophic and left ventricle non-compaction cardiomyopathies have been described.

9 Genome Editing in Modeling Inheritable Heart Diseases in Model Organisms

Model organisms, such as mice, are indispensable tools for understanding the etiology of inheritable heart diseases and gene functions [87]. Clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR)/CRISPR-associated Cas9-based gene editing technology [88–90] allowing efficient

generation of mutant mice in one step [91], mutant mice can be systematically generated for interrogating and modeling human inheritable heart diseases, as well as for dissecting mechanisms for gene functions.

Pre-B cell leukemia factor 1 (PBX1) is a transcription factor essential for development and associated with CAKUTHED syndrome, characterized by multiple congenital defects including CHD. Alankarage and associates identified a de novo missense variant, PBX1: c.551G>C p.R184P, in a syndromic CHD patient with tetralogy of Fallot with absent pulmonary valve [92]. Using CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing to generate a mouse model with this mutation, Alankarage et al. [92] conducted functional and phenotypical analysis of Pbx1 in mice to show that p.R184P is disease-causal. Wnt/β-catenin signaling cascade [93–95] is important transcriptional regulation for morphogenesis. Combining zebrafish and mouse genetics, Cantù et al. [96] used CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing to demonstrate that tissue-selective perturbation of Bcl9 and Pygo as selective β-catenin cofactors in a subset of canonical Wnt responses caused severe CHD.

Sufficiently sizeable cohorts of probands when searching for causative genes in CHD can be challenging to assemble [8] because of large numbers of causative variants, low frequency of causative variants for individual genes, and diverse genetic backgrounds of the human population. Forward genetic screening with *N*-ethyl-*N*-nitrosourea (ENU) mutagenesis [97] in model organisms, such as inbred mouse strains, with very highly induced rates of mutation throughout the genome in the homogeneous genetic background, is therefore invaluable to uncover causative genes in CHD [53, 55, 98, 99]. However, ENU mutagenesis can cause point mutations in ~100 genetic loci per genome; consequently, it is imperative to rule out non-causative mutations for the CHD phenotypes. Gene editing to knock in or knock out specific gene mutations in the inbred wild-type (WT) background can authenticate the causality of the gene in question. Leveraging forward genetic screening with ENU mutagenesis, Liu et al. [98] have identified causative digenic mutations in *Sap130* and *Pcdha9* that can synergistically cause hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS) in double homozygous mutants with incomplete penetrance and non-mendelian complex genetic inheritance [98, 99]. Gene editing using the CRISPR/Cas9 system to generate the same point mutations in these two genes in the WT background produced identical phenotypes with similar penetrance and substantiated that *Sap130* and *Pcdha9* are causative genes for HLHS.

Furthermore, the CRISPR/Cas9 system has shown tremendous potential to correct genetic defects in zygotes or postnatal mice [100]. Using adeno-associated virus (AAV9 or AAV8) to deliver CRISPR/Cas9-mediated gene editing components, in vivo somatic genome editing has been shown to correct the disease-causing gene mutation of Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD) in mice and improve phenotypical outcomes in postnatal mice [101, 102]. Sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca^{2+}-ATPase 2a (SERCA2a) and its inhibitory protein called phospholamban (PLN) are pivotal for Ca^{2+} handling in cardiomyocytes. Their expression levels and activities were changed in heart failure patients. Using the CRISPR-cas9 system, Kaneko et al. [103] showed that PLN inhibition could significantly improve cardiac function and survival in calsequestrin overexpressing mice, a severe heart failure mouse model, suggesting PLN deletion could be a promising approach to improve both mortality and cardiac function in the heart failure.

One challenge for using the gene editing approach to dissect functional mechanisms for cardiac development and CHD is the presence of functionally redundant genes in the genetic network for cardiac development. It is necessary to knock out multiple genes in the same functional network to exhibit phenotypes. Conventionally, mutant mice carrying multiple genetic mutations were generated by time-consuming intercrossing of mice with different single genetic mutations. Wang et al. [104] have shown the feasibility of multiplex gene editing with the CRISPR/cas-9 system. Coinjection of Cas9 mRNA and single-guide RNAs (sgRNAs) targeting both Tet1 and Tet2 genes into zygotes

generated mice with biallelic mutations in both genes with an efficiency of 80%. The CRISPR/Cas system allows the one-step generation of animals carrying mutations in multiple genes, an approach that will accelerate the in vivo study of functionally redundant genes and epistatic gene interactions [104].

With the availability of the Mouse Genome Database (MGD) [105, 106], large-scale efforts such as the Knockout Mouse Project (KOMP) [107] and the European Conditional Mouse Mutagenesis (EUCOMM) Program [108] are systematically generating knockout mice for dissecting mechanisms for gene functions. International collaborations combining European Mouse Mutant Archive (EMMA), Infrastructure for Phenotyping, Arching and Distribution of Mouse Diseases Models (IPAD-MD), and International Mouse Phenotyping Consortium (IMPC) [109, 110] are pursuing efforts for detailed phenotypic characterization to gain mechanistic insights into gene function. The challenges remain that over 30% of the genes in mice are essential for development and cause embryonic lethality or neonatal survivability when deleted [109], consequently, it is not feasible to analyze postnatal gene functions. Conditional knockouts [111] with Cre/loxP system can overcome the embryonic lethality by knocking out the gene later in life. Conditional knockouts with CRISPR/cas systems [112, 113] can facilitate efficient conditional knockouts for dissecting gene functions in viable adult animals.

10 Other Considerations

Although strong genetic underpinning regulates cardiac development and CHD, extreme locus heterogeneity, incomplete penetrance, and lack of a genotype-phenotype correlation [114, 115] indicate other non-genetic factors [116] can impede cardiogenesis and contribute to the development of CHD. The penetrance of CHD is incomplete and highly variable. Probands [8] and their relatives carrying the same genetic variants can exhibit different cardiac outcomes, ranging from nearly normal to complex CHD with different CHD lesions. Mechanical perturbation [115, 117–123] of ventricular preload pressure and shear stress, as well as exposure to alcohol [124] and environmental toxins [125] can cause CHD. Epidemiology studies have identified maternal risk factors associated with CHD, such as cardiometabolic disorders, stress, preeclampsia, obesity, and diabetes mellitus [126–129]. The risk of congenital anomalies in infants of diabetic mothers is estimated to be between 2.5 and 12%, with an over-representation of CHD [130]. Better understanding of the gene–environment interactions in myocardial development and the pathogenesis of CHD is needed to facilitate effective genome editing as a therapeutic intervention. Additionally, ethical concerns of germline genome editing to correct developmental diseases need to be addressed before the genome editing technologies can treat curable CHD and other cardiovascular diseases [131–133].

11 Conclusions

Reverse and forward genetics will continue to enhance and refine our models of heart development, associate mutated genes with abnormal phenotypes, be used to screen embryos, fetuses, parents, and family for mutations in these genes, and provide highly informed genetic counseling. If and when gene editing is available for treatment of inheritable disorders, the accumulated knowledge of heart development and disease will guide details on when, where, and how to apply gene editing.

Acknowledgments The authors like to thank Drs. Jonathan A. Epstein, Deepak Srivastava, and Eric N. Olson for providing figures. This work was supported in part by the grants to YLW from the National Institute of Health (1R21EB023507, R21 NS121706), American Heart Association (18CDA34140024), Department of Defense (W81XWH1810070, W81XWH-22-1-0221), and the Children's Hospital of Pittsburgh of the UPMC Health System (RAC-CHP00-CY19-16212).

Competing Financial Interests The authors declare no competing financial interests.

References

1. van den Brink L, Grandela C, Mummery CL, Davis RP (2020) Inherited cardiac diseases, pluripotent stem cells, and genome editing combined-the past, present, and future. Stem Cells 38(2):174–186
2. Srivastava D, Olson EN (2000) A genetic blueprint for cardiac development. Nature 407(6801):221–226
3. Srivastava D (2006) Genetic regulation of cardiogenesis and congenital heart disease. Annu Rev Pathol 1:199–213
4. van der Linde D, Konings EE, Slager MA, Witsenburg M, Helbing WA, Takkenberg JJ, Roos-Hesselink JW (2011) Birth prevalence of congenital heart disease worldwide: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Am Coll Cardiol 58(21):2241–2247
5. Roger VL, Go AS, Lloyd-Jones DM, Benjamin EJ, Berry JD, Borden WB, Bravata DM, Dai S, Ford ES, Fox CS, Fullerton HJ, Gillespie C, Hailpern SM, Heit JA, Howard VJ, Kissela BM, Kittner SJ, Lackland DT, Lichtman JH, Lisabeth LD, Makuc DM, Marcus GM, Marelli A, Matchar DB, Moy CS, Mozaffarian D, Mussolino ME, Nichol G, Paynter NP, Soliman EZ, Sorlie PD, Sotoodehnia N, Turan TN, Virani SS, Wong ND, Woo D, Turner MB (2012) Heart disease and stroke statistics—2012 update: a report from the American Heart Association. Circulation 125(1):e2–e220
6. Williams K, Carson J, Lo C (2019) Genetics of congenital heart disease. Biomolecules 9(12):879
7. Oyen N, Poulsen G, Boyd HA, Wohlfahrt J, Jensen PK, Melbye M (2009) Recurrence of congenital heart defects in families. Circulation 120(4):295–301
8. Triedman JK, Newburger JW (2016) Trends in congenital heart disease: the next decade. Circulation 133(25):2716–2733
9. Oyen N, Poulsen G, Wohlfahrt J, Boyd HA, Jensen PK, Melbye M (2010) Recurrence of discordant congenital heart defects in families. Circ Cardiovasc Genet 3(2):122–128
10. Bruneau BG (2008) The developmental genetics of congenital heart disease. Nature 451(7181):943–948
11. Zaidi S, Brueckner M (2017) Genetics and genomics of congenital heart disease. Circ Res 120(6):923–940
12. Wu YL, Lo CW (2017) Diverse application of MRI for mouse phenotyping. Birth Defects Res 109(10): 758–770
13. Georgi B, Voight BF, Bucan M (2013) From mouse to human: evolutionary genomics analysis of human orthologs of essential genes. PLoS Genet 9(5): e1003484
14. Nadeau JH (2001) Modifier genes in mice and humans. Nat Rev Genet 2(3):165–174
15. Nguyen D, Xu T (2008) The expanding role of mouse genetics for understanding human biology and disease. Dis Model Mech 1(1):56–66
16. Epstein JA, Aghajanian H, Singh MK (2015) Semaphorin signaling in cardiovascular development. Cell Metab 21(2):163–173
17. Krishnan A, Samtani R, Dhanantwari P, Lee E, Yamada S, Shiota K, Donofrio MT, Leatherbury L, Lo CW (2014) A detailed comparison of mouse and human cardiac development. Pediatr Res 76(6): 500–507
18. Dhanantwari P, Lee E, Krishnan A, Samtani R, Yamada S, Anderson S, Lockett E, Donofrio M, Shiota K, Leatherbury L, Lo CW (2009) Human cardiac development in the first trimester: a high-resolution magnetic resonance imaging and episcopic fluorescence image capture atlas. Circulation 120(4): 343–351
19. Jongbloed MR, Vicente Steijn R, Hahurij ND, Kelder TP, Schalij MJ, Gittenberger-de Groot AC, Blom NA (2012) Normal and abnormal development of the cardiac conduction system; implications for conduction and rhythm disorders in the child and adult. Differentiation 84(1):131–148
20. Brade T, Pane LS, Moretti A, Chien KR, Laugwitz KL (2013) Embryonic heart progenitors and cardiogenesis. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 3(10):a013847
21. Schultheiss TM, Burch JB, Lassar AB (1997) A role for bone morphogenetic proteins in the induction of cardiac myogenesis. Genes Dev 11(4):451–462
22. Schneider VA, Mercola M (2001) Wnt antagonism initiates cardiogenesis in Xenopus laevis. Genes Dev 15(3):304–315
23. Marvin MJ, Di Rocco G, Gardiner A, Bush SM, Lassar AB (2001) Inhibition of Wnt activity induces heart formation from posterior mesoderm. Genes Dev 15(3):316–327
24. Durocher D, Charron F, Warren R, Schwartz RJ, Nemer M (1997) The cardiac transcription factors Nkx2-5 and GATA-4 are mutual cofactors. EMBO J 16(18):5687–5696
25. Männer J (2004) On rotation, torsion, lateralization, and handedness of the embryonic heart loop: new insights from a simulation model for the heart loop of chick embryos. Anat Rec A Discov Mol Cell Evol Biol 278(1):481–492
26. Antonarakis SE, Lyle R, Dermitzakis ET, Reymond A, Deutsch S (2004) Chromosome 21 and down syndrome: from genomics to pathophysiology. Nat Rev Genet 5(10):725–738
27. Goldmuntz E (2005) DiGeorge syndrome: new insights. Clin Perinatol 32 (4):963-978:ix–x
28. Basson CT, Bachinsky DR, Lin RC, Levi T, Elkins JA, Soults J, Grayzel D, Kroumpouzou E, Traill TA, Leblanc-Straceski J, Renault B, Kucherlapati R, Seidman JG, Seidman CE (1997) Mutations in human TBX5 [corrected] cause limb and cardiac malformation in Holt-Oram syndrome. Nat Genet 15(1):30–35
29. McDaniell R, Warthen DM, Sanchez-Lara PA, Pai A, Krantz ID, Piccoli DA, Spinner NB (2006) NOTCH2 mutations cause Alagille syndrome, a heterogeneous disorder of the notch signaling pathway. Am J Hum Genet 79(1):169–173

30. McElhinney DB, Geiger E, Blinder J, Benson DW, Goldmuntz E (2003) NKX2.5 mutations in patients with congenital heart disease. J Am Coll Cardiol 42(9):1650–1655
31. Sarkozy A, Conti E, Neri C, D'Agostino R, Digilio MC, Esposito G, Toscano A, Marino B, Pizzuti A, Dallapiccola B (2005) Spectrum of atrial septal defects associated with mutations of NKX2.5 and GATA4 transcription factors. J Med Genet 42(2):e16
32. Koenig SN, Bosse KM, Nadorlik HA, Lilly B, Garg V (2015) Evidence of aortopathy in mice with haploinsufficiency of Notch1 in Nos3-Null background. J Cardiovasc Dev Dis 2(1):17–30
33. Lin AE, Krikov S, Riehle-Colarusso T, Frías JL, Belmont J, Anderka M, Geva T, Getz KD, Botto LD (2014) Laterality defects in the national birth defects prevention study (1998-2007): birth prevalence and descriptive epidemiology. Am J Med Genet A 164a(10):2581–2591. https://doi.org/10.1002/ajmg.a.36695
34. Gabriel GC, Lo CW (2020) Left-right patterning in congenital heart disease beyond heterotaxy. Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet 184(1):90–96
35. Delhaas T, Decaluwe W, Rubbens M, Kerckhoffs R, Arts T (2004) Cardiac fiber orientation and the left-right asymmetry determining mechanism. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1015:190–201
36. Cooke J (2004) Developmental mechanism and evolutionary origin of vertebrate left/right asymmetries. Biol Rev Camb Philos Soc 79(2):377–407
37. Brueckner M (2007) Heterotaxia, congenital heart disease, and primary ciliary dyskinesia. Circulation 115(22):2793–2795
38. Zariwala MA, Knowles MR, Leigh MW (1993) Primary ciliary dyskinesia. GeneReviews® [Internet], University of Washington, Seattle
39. Pennekamp P, Menchen T, Dworniczak B, Hamada H (2015) Situs inversus and ciliary abnormalities: 20 years later, what is the connection? Cilia 4(1):1
40. Berdon WE, Willi U (2004) Situs inversus, bronchiectasis, and sinusitis and its relation to immotile cilia: history of the diseases and their discoverers-Manes Kartagener and Bjorn Afzelius. Pediatr Radiol 34(1):38–42
41. Patel A, Honore E (2010) Polycystins and renovascular mechanosensory transduction. Nat Rev Nephrol 6(9):530–538
42. Fliegauf M, Benzing T, Omran H (2007) When cilia go bad: cilia defects and ciliopathies. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 8(11):880–893
43. Yuan S, Zhao L, Brueckner M, Sun Z (2015) Intraciliary calcium oscillations initiate vertebrate left-right asymmetry. Curr Biol 25(5):556–567
44. Babu D, Roy S (2013) Left-right asymmetry: cilia stir up new surprises in the node. Open Biol 3(5):130052
45. Kennedy MP, Plant BJ (2014) Primary ciliary dyskinesia and the heart: cilia breaking symmetry. Chest 146(5):1136–1138
46. Sharma N, Berbari NF, Yoder BK (2008) Ciliary dysfunction in developmental abnormalities and diseases. Curr Top Dev Biol 85:371–427
47. Dykes IM (2014) Left right patterning, evolution and cardiac development. J Cardiovasc Dev Dis 1(1):52–72
48. Delling M, DeCaen PG, Doerner JF, Febvay S, Clapham DE (2013) Primary cilia are specialized calcium signalling organelles. Nature 504(7479):311–314
49. Kennedy MP, Omran H, Leigh MW, Dell S, Morgan L, Molina PL, Robinson BV, Minnix SL, Olbrich H, Severin T, Ahrens P, Lange L, Morillas HN, Noone PG, Zariwala MA, Knowles MR (2007) Congenital heart disease and other heterotaxic defects in a large cohort of patients with primary ciliary dyskinesia. Circulation 115(22):2814–2821
50. Leigh MW, Pittman JE, Carson JL, Ferkol TW, Dell SD, Davis SD, Knowles MR, Zariwala MA (2009) Clinical and genetic aspects of primary ciliary dyskinesia/Kartagener syndrome. Genet Med 11(7):473–487
51. Brueckner M (2012) Impact of genetic diagnosis on clinical management of patients with congenital heart disease: cilia point the way. Circulation 125(18):2178–2180
52. Nakhleh N, Francis R, Giese RA, Tian X, Li Y, Zariwala MA, Yagi H, Khalifa O, Kureshi S, Chatterjee B, Sabol SL, Swisher M, Connelly PS, Daniels MP, Srinivasan A, Kuehl K, Kravitz N, Burns K, Sami I, Omran H, Barmada M, Olivier K, Chawla KK, Leigh M, Jonas R, Knowles M, Leatherbury L, Lo CW (2012) High prevalence of respiratory ciliary dysfunction in congenital heart disease patients with heterotaxy. Circulation 125(18):2232–2242
53. Li Y, Klena NT, Gabriel GC, Liu X, Kim AJ, Lemke K, Chen Y, Chatterjee B, Devine W, Damerla RR, Chang C, Yagi H, San Agustin JT, Thahir M, Anderton S, Lawhead C, Vescovi A, Pratt H, Morgan J, Haynes L, Smith CL, Eppig JT, Reinholdt L, Francis R, Leatherbury L, Ganapathiraju MK, Tobita K, Pazour GJ, Lo CW (2015) Global genetic analysis in mice unveils central role for cilia in congenital heart disease. Nature 521(7553):520–524
54. Rao Damerla R, Gabriel GC, Li Y, Klena NT, Liu X, Chen Y, Cui C, Pazour GJ, Lo CW (2014) Role of cilia in structural birth defects: insights from ciliopathy mutant mouse models. Birth Defects Res C Embryo Today 102(2):115–125
55. Liu X, Francis R, Kim AJ, Ramirez R, Chen G, Subramanian R, Anderton S, Kim Y, Wong L, Morgan J, Pratt HC, Reinholdt L, Devine W, Leatherbury L, Tobita K, Lo CW (2014) Interrogating congenital heart defects with noninvasive fetal echocardiography in a mouse forward genetic screen. Circ Cardiovasc Imaging 7(1):31–42

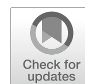
56. Miller KA, Ah-Cann CJ, Welfare MF, Tan TY, Pope K, Caruana G, Freckmann ML, Savarirayan R, Bertram JF, Dobbie MS, Bateman JF, Farlie PG (2013) Cauli: a mouse strain with an Ift140 mutation that results in a skeletal ciliopathy modelling Jeune syndrome. PLoS Genet 9(8):e1003746
57. Francis RJ, Christopher A, Devine WA, Ostrowski L, Lo C (2012) Congenital heart disease and the specification of left-right asymmetry. Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol 302(10):H2102–H2111
58. Tan SY, Rosenthal J, Zhao XQ, Francis RJ, Chatterjee B, Sabol SL, Linask KL, Bracero L, Connelly PS, Daniels MP, Yu Q, Omran H, Leatherbury L, Lo CW (2007) Heterotaxy and complex structural heart defects in a mutant mouse model of primary ciliary dyskinesia. J Clin Investig 117(12): 3742–3752
59. Ray P, Chin AS, Worley KE, Fan J, Kaur G, Wu M, Wan LQ (2018) Intrinsic cellular chirality regulates left-right symmetry breaking during cardiac looping. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 115(50):E11568–e11577
60. Ackerman MJ, Priori SG, Willems S, Berul C, Brugada R, Calkins H, Camm AJ, Ellinor PT, Gollob M, Hamilton R, Hershberger RE, Judge DP, Le Marec H, McKenna WJ, Schulze-Bahr E, Semsarian C, Towbin JA, Watkins H, Wilde A, Wolpert C, Zipes DP (2011) HRS/EHRA expert consensus statement on the state of genetic testing for the channelopathies and cardiomyopathies this document was developed as a partnership between the Heart Rhythm Society (HRS) and the European Heart Rhythm Association (EHRA). Heart Rhythm 8(8): 1308–1339
61. Chugh SS, Reinier K, Teodorescu C, Evanado A, Kehr E, Al Samara M, Mariani R, Gunson K, Jui J (2008) Epidemiology of sudden cardiac death: clinical and research implications. Prog Cardiovasc Dis 51(3):213–228
62. Shen WK, Sheldon RS, Benditt DG, Cohen MI, Forman DE, Goldberger ZD, Grubb BP, Hamdan MH, Krahn AD, Link MS, Olshansky B, Raj SR, Sandhu RK, Sorajja D, Sun BC, Yancy CW (2017) 2017 ACC/AHA/HRS guideline for the evaluation and management of patients with syncope: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines and the Heart Rhythm Society. Circulation 136(5):e25–e59
63. Abi Khalil C (2014) The emerging role of epigenetics in cardiovascular disease. Ther Adv Chronic Dis 5(4):178–187
64. Schwartz PJ, Crotti L, Insolia R (2012) Long-QT syndrome: from genetics to management. Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol 5(4):868–877
65. Asatryan B, Medeiros-Domingo A (2019) Emerging implications of genetic testing in inherited primary arrhythmia syndromes. Cardiol Rev 27(1):23–33
66. Priori SG, Wilde AA, Horie M, Cho Y, Behr ER, Berul C, Blom N, Brugada J, Chiang CE, Huikuri H, Kannankeril P, Krahn A, Leenhardt A, Moss A, Schwartz PJ, Shimizu W, Tomaselli G, Tracy C (2013) HRS/EHRA/APHRS expert consensus statement on the diagnosis and management of patients with inherited primary arrhythmia syndromes: document endorsed by HRS, EHRA, and APHRS in May 2013 and by ACCF, AHA, PACES, and AEPC in June 2013. Heart Rhythm 10(12):1932–1963
67. Schulze-Bahr E, Eckardt L, Breithardt G, Seidl K, Wichter T, Wolpert C, Borggrefe M, Haverkamp W (2003) Sodium channel gene (SCN5A) mutations in 44 index patients with Brugada syndrome: different incidences in familial and sporadic disease. Hum Mutat 21(6):651–652
68. Kapplinger JD, Tester DJ, Alders M, Benito B, Berthet M, Brugada J, Brugada P, Fressart V, Guerchicoff A, Harris-Kerr C, Kamakura S, Kyndt F, Koopmann TT, Miyamoto Y, Pfeiffer R, Pollevick GD, Probst V, Zumhagen S, Vatta M, Towbin JA, Shimizu W, Schulze-Bahr E, Antzelevitch C, Salisbury BA, Guicheney P, Wilde AA, Brugada R, Schott JJ, Ackerman MJ (2010) An international compendium of mutations in the SCN5A-encoded cardiac sodium channel in patients referred for Brugada syndrome genetic testing. Heart Rhythm 7(1):33–46
69. Wang QI, Ohno S, Ding WG, Fukuyama M, Miyamoto A, Itoh H, Makiyama T, Wu J, Bai J, Hasegawa K, Shinohara T, Takahashi N, Shimizu A, Matsuura H, Horie M (2014) Gain-of-function KCNH2 mutations in patients with Brugada syndrome. J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol 25(5): 522–530
70. Gussak I, Brugada P, Brugada J, Wright RS, Kopecky SL, Chaitman BR, Bjerregaard P (2000) Idiopathic short QT interval: a new clinical syndrome? Cardiology 94(2):99–102
71. Brugada R, Hong K, Dumaine R, Cordeiro J, Gaita F, Borggrefe M, Menendez TM, Brugada J, Pollevick GD, Wolpert C, Burashnikov E, Matsuo K, Wu YS, Guerchicoff A, Bianchi F, Giustetto C, Schimpf R, Brugada P, Antzelevitch C (2004) Sudden death associated with short-QT syndrome linked to mutations in HERG. Circulation 109(1):30–35
72. Giustetto C, Schimpf R, Mazzanti A, Scrocco C, Maury P, Anttonen O, Probst V, Blanc JJ, Sbragia P, Dalmasso P, Borggrefe M, Gaita F (2011) Long-term follow-up of patients with short QT syndrome. J Am Coll Cardiol 58(6):587–595
73. Maron BJ, Towbin JA, Thiene G, Antzelevitch C, Corrado D, Arnett D, Moss AJ, Seidman CE, Young JB (2006) Contemporary definitions and classification of the cardiomyopathies: an American Heart Association Scientific Statement from the Council on Clinical Cardiology, Heart Failure and Transplantation Committee; Quality of Care and Outcomes Research and Functional Genomics and Translational Biology Interdisciplinary Working Groups; and

Council on Epidemiology and Prevention. Circulation 113(14):1807–1816
74. Kamisago M, Sharma SD, DePalma SR, Solomon S, Sharma P, McDonough B, Smoot L, Mullen MP, Woolf PK, Wigle ED, Seidman JG, Seidman CE (2000) Mutations in sarcomere protein genes as a cause of dilated cardiomyopathy. N Engl J Med 343(23):1688–1696
75. Watkins H, Ashrafian H, Redwood C (2011) Inherited cardiomyopathies. N Engl J Med 364(17): 1643–1656
76. Towbin JA (2014) Inherited cardiomyopathies. Circ J 78(10):2347–2356
77. Richard P, Charron P, Carrier L, Ledeuil C, Cheav T, Pichereau C, Benaiche A, Isnard R, Dubourg O, Burban M, Gueffet JP, Millaire A, Desnos M, Schwartz K, Hainque B, Komajda M (2003) Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: distribution of disease genes, spectrum of mutations, and implications for a molecular diagnosis strategy. Circulation 107(17): 2227–2232
78. Millat G, Bouvagnet P, Chevalier P, Dauphin C, Jouk PS, Da Costa A, Prieur F, Bresson JL, Faivre L, Eicher JC, Chassaing N, Crehalet H, Porcher R, Rodriguez-Lafrasse C, Rousson R (2010) Prevalence and spectrum of mutations in a cohort of 192 unrelated patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Eur J Med Genet 53(5):261–267
79. Garcia-Gras E, Lombardi R, Giocondo MJ, Willerson JT, Schneider MD, Khoury DS, Marian AJ (2006) Suppression of canonical Wnt/beta-catenin signaling by nuclear plakoglobin recapitulates phenotype of arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy. J Clin Investig 116(7):2012–2021
80. Marcus FI, McKenna WJ, Sherrill D, Basso C, Bauce B, Bluemke DA, Calkins H, Corrado D, Cox MG, Daubert JP, Fontaine G, Gear K, Hauer R, Nava A, Picard MH, Protonotarios N, Saffitz JE, Sanborn DM, Steinberg JS, Tandri H, Thiene G, Towbin JA, Tsatsopoulou A, Wichter T, Zareba W (2010) Diagnosis of arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy/dysplasia: proposed modification of the Task Force Criteria. Eur Heart J 31(7):806–814
81. Sen-Chowdhry S, Syrris P, McKenna WJ (2010) Genetics of restrictive cardiomyopathy. Heart Fail Clin 6(2):179–186
82. Caleshu C, Sakhuja R, Nussbaum RL, Schiller NB, Ursell PC, Eng C, De Marco T, McGlothlin D, Burchard EG, Rame JE (2011) Furthering the link between the sarcomere and primary cardiomyopathies: restrictive cardiomyopathy associated with multiple mutations in genes previously associated with hypertrophic or dilated cardiomyopathy. Am J Med Genet A 155A(9):2229–2235
83. Towbin JA (2010) Left ventricular noncompaction: a new form of heart failure. Heart Fail Clin 6(4): 453–469, viii
84. Ramirez F, Caescu C, Wondimu E, Galatioto J (2018) Marfan syndrome; A connective tissue disease at the crossroads of mechanotransduction, TGFβ signaling and cell stemness. Matrix Biol 71-72:82–89
85. Godwin ARF, Singh M, Lockhart-Cairns MP, Alanazi YF, Cain SA, Baldock C (2019) The role of fibrillin and microfibril binding proteins in elastin and elastic fibre assembly. Matrix Biol 84:17–30
86. Dudek J, Maack C (2017) Barth syndrome cardiomyopathy. Cardiovasc Res 113(4):399–410
87. Lee D, Threadgill DW (2004) Investigating gene function using mouse models. Curr Opin Genet Dev 14(3):246–252
88. Motta BM, Pramstaller PP, Hicks AA, Rossini A (2017) The impact of CRISPR/Cas9 technology on cardiac research: from disease modelling to therapeutic approaches. Stem Cells Int 2017:8960236
89. Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2014) Genome editing. The new frontier of genome engineering with CRISPR-Cas9. Science 346(6213):1258096
90. Moore JD (2015) The impact of CRISPR-Cas9 on target identification and validation. Drug Discov Today 20(4):450–457
91. Yang H, Wang H, Shivalila CS, Cheng AW, Shi L, Jaenisch R (2013) One-step generation of mice carrying reporter and conditional alleles by CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome engineering. Cell 154(6): 1370–1379
92. Alankarage D, Szot JO, Pachter N, Slavotinek A, Selleri L, Shieh JT, Winlaw D, Giannoulatou E, Chapman G, Dunwoodie SL (2020) Functional characterization of a novel PBX1 de novo missense variant identified in a patient with syndromic congenital heart disease. Hum Mol Genet 29(7):1068–1082
93. Mosimann C, Hausmann G, Basler K (2009) Beta-catenin hits chromatin: regulation of Wnt target gene activation. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 10(4):276–286
94. Nakamura Y, de Paiva AE, Veenstra GJ, Hoppler S (2016) Tissue- and stage-specific Wnt target gene expression is controlled subsequent to β-catenin recruitment to cis-regulatory modules. Development 143(11):1914–1925
95. Ding Y, Ploper D, Sosa EA, Colozza G, Moriyama Y, Benitez MD, Zhang K, Merkurjev D, De Robertis EM (2017) Spemann organizer transcriptome induction by early beta-catenin, Wnt, Nodal, and Siamois signals in Xenopus laevis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 114(15):E3081–e3090
96. Cantù C, Felker A, Zimmerli D, Prummel KD, Cabello EM, Chiavacci E, Méndez-Acevedo KM, Kirchgeorg L, Burger S, Ripoll J, Valenta T, Hausmann G, Vilain N, Aguet M, Burger A, Panáková D, Basler K, Mosimann C (2018) Mutations in Bcl9 and Pygo genes cause congenital heart defects by tissue-specific perturbation of Wnt/β-catenin signaling. Genes Dev 32(21-22): 1443–1458
97. Stottmann R, Beier D (2014) ENU Mutagenesis in the Mouse. Curr Protoc Hum Genet 82:15.14.11-10
98. Liu X, Yagi H, Saeed S, Bais AS, Gabriel GC, Chen Z, Peterson KA, Li Y, Schwartz MC, Reynolds

WT, Saydmohammed M, Gibbs B, Wu Y, Devine W, Chatterjee B, Klena NT, Kostka D, de Mesy Bentley KL, Ganapathiraju MK, Dexheimer P, Leatherbury L, Khalifa O, Bhagat A, Zahid M, Pu W, Watkins S, Grossfeld P, Murray SA, Porter GA Jr, Tsang M, Martin LJ, Benson DW, Aronow BJ, Lo CW (2017) The complex genetics of hypoplastic left heart syndrome. Nat Genet 49(7): 1152–1159

99. Yagi H, Liu X, Gabriel GC, Wu Y, Peterson K, Murray SA, Aronow BJ, Martin LJ, Benson DW, Lo CW (2018) The genetic landscape of hypoplastic left heart syndrome. Pediatr Cardiol 39(6): 1069–1081
100. Koch L (2016) In vivo genome editing—growing in strength. Nat Rev Genet 17(3):124–124
101. Long C, Amoasii L, Mireault AA, McAnally JR, Li H, Sanchez-Ortiz E, Bhattacharyya S, Shelton JM, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2016) Postnatal genome editing partially restores dystrophin expression in a mouse model of muscular dystrophy. Science 351(6271):400–403
102. Nelson CE, Hakim CH, Ousterout DG, Thakore PI, Moreb EA, Castellanos Rivera RM, Madhavan S, Pan X, Ran FA, Yan WX, Asokan A, Zhang F, Duan D, Gersbach CA (2016) In vivo genome editing improves muscle function in a mouse model of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Science 351(6271): 403–407
103. Kaneko M, Hashikami K, Yamamoto S, Matsumoto H, Nishimoto T (2016) Phospholamban ablation using CRISPR/Cas9 system improves mortality in a murine heart failure model. PLoS One 11(12):e0168486
104. Wang H, Yang H, Shivalila CS, Dawlaty MM, Cheng AW, Zhang F, Jaenisch R (2013) One-step generation of mice carrying mutations in multiple genes by CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome engineering. Cell 153(4):910–918
105. Blake JA, Bult CJ, Eppig JT, Kadin JA, Richardson JE (2014) The Mouse Genome Database: integration of and access to knowledge about the laboratory mouse. Nucleic Acids Res 42(Database issue): D810–D817
106. Bult CJ, Eppig JT, Kadin JA, Richardson JE, Blake JA (2008) The Mouse Genome Database (MGD): mouse biology and model systems. Nucleic Acids Res 36(Database issue):D724–D728
107. Austin CP, Battey JF, Bradley A, Bucan M, Capecchi M, Collins FS, Dove WF, Duyk G, Dymecki S, Eppig JT, Grieder FB, Heintz N, Hicks G, Insel TR, Joyner A, Koller BH, Lloyd KC, Magnuson T, Moore MW, Nagy A, Pollock JD, Roses AD, Sands AT, Seed B, Skarnes WC, Snoddy J, Soriano P, Stewart DJ, Stewart F, Stillman B, Varmus H, Varticovski L, Verma IM, Vogt TF, von Melchner H, Witkowski J, Woychik RP, Wurst W, Yancopoulos GD, Young SG, Zambrowicz B (2004) The knockout mouse project. Nat Genet 36(9):921–924
108. Friedel RH, Seisenberger C, Kaloff C, Wurst W (2007) EUCOMM—the European conditional mouse mutagenesis program. Brief Funct Genomic Proteomic 6(3):180–185
109. Dickinson ME, Flenniken AM, Ji X, Teboul L, Wong MD, White JK, Meehan TF, Weninger WJ, Westerberg H, Adissu H, Baker CN, Bower L, Brown JM, Caddle LB, Chiani F, Clary D, Cleak J, Daly MJ, Denegre JM, Doe B, Dolan ME, Edie SM, Fuchs H, Gailus-Durner V, Galli A, Gambadoro A, Gallegos J, Guo S, Horner NR, Hsu CW, Johnson SJ, Kalaga S, Keith LC, Lanoue L, Lawson TN, Lek M, Mark M, Marschall S, Mason J, McElwee ML, Newbigging S, Nutter LM, Peterson KA, Ramirez-Solis R, Rowland DJ, Ryder E, Samocha KE, Seavitt JR, Selloum M, Szoke-Kovacs Z, Tamura M, Trainor AG, Tudose I, Wakana S, Warren J, Wendling O, West DB, Wong L, Yoshiki A, MacArthur DG, Tocchini-Valentini GP, Gao X, Flicek P, Bradley A, Skarnes WC, Justice MJ, Parkinson HE, Moore M, Wells S, Braun RE, Svenson KL, de Angelis MH, Herault Y, Mohun T, Mallon AM, Henkelman RM, Brown SD, Adams DJ, Lloyd KC, McKerlie C, Beaudet AL, Bućan M, Murray SA (2016) High-throughput discovery of novel developmental phenotypes. Nature 537(7621):508–514
110. Dickinson ME, Flenniken AM, Ji X, Teboul L, Wong MD, White JK, Meehan TF, Weninger WJ, Westerberg H, Adissu H, Baker CN, Bower L, Brown JM, Caddle LB, Chiani F, Clary D, Cleak J, Daly MJ, Denegre JM, Doe B, Dolan ME, Edie Helmut Fuchs SM, Gailus-Durner V, Galli A, Gambadoro A, Gallegos J, Guo S, Horner NR, Hsu CW, Johnson SJ, Kalaga S, Keith LC, Lanoue L, Lawson TN, Lek M, Mark M, Marschall S, Mason J, McElwee ML, Nutter S, Peterson KA, Ramirez-Solis R, Rowland DJ, Ryder E, Samocha KE, Seavitt JR, Selloum M, Szoke-Kovacs Z, Tamura M, Trainor AG, Tudose I, Wakana S, Warren J, Wendling O, West DB, Wong L, Yoshiki A, Wurst W, MacArthur DG, Tocchini-Valentini GP, Gao X, Flicek P, Bradley A, Skarnes WC, Justice MJ, Parkinson HE, Moore M, Wells S, Braun RE, Svenson KL, de Angelis MH, Herault Y, Mohun T, Mallon AM, Henkelman RM, Brown SDM, Adams DJ, Lloyd KCK, McKerlie C, Beaudet AL, Murray M (2017) Corrigendum: High-throughput discovery of novel developmental phenotypes. Nature 551(7680):398
111. Skarnes WC, Rosen B, West AP, Koutsourakis M, Bushell W, Iyer V, Mujica AO, Thomas M, Harrow J, Cox T, Jackson D, Severin J, Biggs P, Fu J, Nefedov M, de Jong PJ, Stewart AF, Bradley A (2011) A conditional knockout resource for the genome-wide study of mouse gene function. Nature 474(7351):337–342

112. Gurumurthy CB, O'Brien AR, Quadros RM, Adams J Jr, Alcaide P, Ayabe S, Ballard J, Batra SK, Beauchamp MC, Becker KA, Bernas G, Brough D, Carrillo-Salinas F, Chan W, Chen H, Dawson R, DeMambro V, D'Hont J, Dibb KM, Eudy JD, Gan L, Gao J, Gonzales A, Guntur AR, Guo H, Harms DW, Harrington A, Hentges KE, Humphreys N, Imai S, Ishii H, Iwama M, Jonasch E, Karolak M, Keavney B, Khin NC, Konno M, Kotani Y, Kunihiro Y, Lakshmanan I, Larochelle C, Lawrence CB, Li L, Lindner V, Liu XD, Lopez-Castejon G, Loudon A, Lowe J, Jerome-Majewska LA, Matsusaka T, Miura H, Miyasaka Y, Morpurgo B, Motyl K, Nabeshima YI, Nakade K, Nakashiba T, Nakashima K, Obata Y, Ogiwara S, Ouellet M, Oxburgh L, Piltz S, Pinz I, Ponnusamy MP, Ray D, Redder RJ, Rosen CJ, Ross N, Ruhe MT, Ryzhova L, Salvador AM, Alam SS, Sedlacek R, Sharma K, Smith C, Staes K, Starrs L, Sugiyama F, Takahashi S, Tanaka T, Trafford AW, Uno Y, Vanhoutte L, Vanrockeghem F, Willis BJ, Wright CS, Yamauchi Y, Yi X, Yoshimi K, Zhang X, Zhang Y, Ohtsuka M, Das S, Garry DJ, Hochepied T, Thomas P, Parker-Thornburg J, Adamson AD, Yoshiki A, Schmouth JF, Golovko A, Thompson WR, Lloyd KCK, Wood JA, Cowan M, Mashimo T, Mizuno S, Zhu H, Kasparek P, Liaw L, Miano JM, Burgio G (2019) Reproducibility of CRISPR-Cas9 methods for generation of conditional mouse alleles: a multi-center evaluation. Genome Biol 20(1):171
113. Yang H, Wang H, Jaenisch R (2021) Response to "Reproducibility of CRISPR-Cas9 methods for generation of conditional mouse alleles: a multi-center evaluation". Genome Biol 22(1):98
114. Yuan S, Zaidi S, Brueckner M (2013) Congenital heart disease: emerging themes linking genetics and development. Curr Opin Genet Dev 23(3):352–359
115. Lindsey SE, Butcher JT, Yalcin HC (2014) Mechanical regulation of cardiac development. Front Physiol 5:318
116. Russell MW, Chung WK, Kaltman JR, Miller TA (2018) Advances in the understanding of the genetic determinants of congenital heart disease and their impact on clinical outcomes. J Am Heart Assoc 7(6):e006906
117. Hogers B, DeRuiter MC, Gittenberger-de Groot AC, Poelmann RE (1999) Extraembryonic venous obstructions lead to cardiovascular malformations and can be embryolethal. Cardiovasc Res 41(1): 87–99
118. Sedmera D, Pexieder T, Rychterova V, Hu N, Clark EB (1999) Remodeling of chick embryonic ventricular myoarchitecture under experimentally changed loading conditions. Anat Rec 254(2):238–252
119. Sedmera D, Hu N, Weiss KM, Keller BB, Denslow S, Thompson RP (2002) Cellular changes in experimental left heart hypoplasia. Anat Rec 267(2):137–145
120. Miller CE, Wong CL, Sedmera D (2003) Pressure overload alters stress-strain properties of the developing chick heart. Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol 285(5):H1849–H1856
121. Reckova M, Rosengarten C, deAlmeida A, Stanley CP, Wessels A, Gourdie RG, Thompson RP, Sedmera D (2003) Hemodynamics is a key epigenetic factor in development of the cardiac conduction system. Circ Res 93(1):77–85
122. Groenendijk BC, Hierck BP, Vrolijk J, Baiker M, Pourquie MJ, Gittenberger-de Groot AC, Poelmann RE (2005) Changes in shear stress-related gene expression after experimentally altered venous return in the chicken embryo. Circ Res 96(12):1291–1298
123. deAlmeida A, McQuinn T, Sedmera D (2007) Increased ventricular preload is compensated by myocyte proliferation in normal and hypoplastic fetal chick left ventricle. Circ Res 100(9):1363–1370
124. Denny L, Coles S, Blitz R (2017) Fetal alcohol syndrome and fetal alcohol spectrum disorders. Am Fam Physician 96(8):515–522
125. Sun R, Liu M, Lu L, Zheng Y, Zhang P (2015) Congenital heart disease: causes, diagnosis, symptoms, and treatments. Cell Biochem Biophys 72(3):857–860
126. Helle E, Priest JR (2020) Maternal obesity and diabetes mellitus as risk factors for congenital heart disease in the offspring. J Am Heart Assoc 9(8):e011541
127. Wren C, Birrell G, Hawthorne G (2003) Cardiovascular malformations in infants of diabetic mothers. Heart 89(10):1217–1220
128. Lisowski LA, Verheijen PM, Copel JA, Kleinman CS, Wassink S, Visser GH, Meijboom EJ (2010) Congenital heart disease in pregnancies complicated by maternal diabetes mellitus. An international clinical collaboration, literature review, and meta-analysis. Herz 35(1):19–26
129. Loffredo CA, Wilson PD, Ferencz C (2001) Maternal diabetes: an independent risk factor for major cardiovascular malformations with increased mortality of affected infants. Teratology 64(2):98–106
130. Narchi H, Kulaylat N (2000) Heart disease in infants of diabetic mothers. Images Paediatr Cardiol 2(2): 17–23
131. German DM, Mitalipov S, Mishra A, Kaul S (2019) Therapeutic genome editing in cardiovascular diseases. JACC Basic Transl Sci 4(1):122–131
132. Seeger T, Porteus M, Wu JC (2017) Genome editing in cardiovascular biology. Circ Res 120(5):778–780
133. Hernandez-Benitez R, Martinez-Martinez ML, Lajara J, Magistretti P, Montserrat N, Izpisua Belmonte JC (2018) At the heart of genome editing and cardiovascular diseases. Circ Res 123(2): 221–223



Genome Editing and Heart Failure

Daniele Masarone, Martina Caiazza, Federica Amodio, Enrico Melillo, Roberta Pacileo, Giuseppe Limongelli, and Giuseppe Pacileo

Abstract

Heart failure is a leading and growing cause of morbidity and mortality worldwide and clinically is defined by the presence of typical symptoms and signs due structural or functional cardiac abnormalities. In addition to family history of heart failure, genetic predisposition to cardiomyopathies and exposure to cardiotoxic agents, risk factors for heart failure with reduced ejection fraction are the same as for chronic coronary syndrome. Genome editing technologies can provide the tools to correct genetic defects responsible for various diseases, including cardiomyopathies. These technologies aim to reverse specific mutations. The same methods can also be applied to modulate and improve heart function. This chapter will briefly explain the pathophysiological and genetic aspects of heart failure and then discuss the clinical applications of genome editing in patients with heart failure.

Keywords

Heart failure · Genome editing · Disease models · Beneficial therapeutic effect

1 Introduction

Heart failure is a clinical syndrome characterised by typical symptoms (i.e. shortness of breath, ankle swelling and fatigue) and signs (i.e. elevated jugular venous pressure, pulmonary crackles and peripheral oedema) caused by structural or functional cardiac abnormalities. These anomalies can determine elevated intracardiac pressure, reduced cardiac output or both at rest or under stress [1]. Heart failure is a leading and growing cause of morbidity and mortality worldwide with a prevalence of approximately 2% in the general population [2]. Below the values of the ejection fraction, patients with heart failure can be classified into three groups (Fig. 1): patients with heart failure with reduced left ventricular ejection fraction (≤40%), patients with preserved left ventricular ejection fraction (≥50%) and patients with ejection fraction with intermediate values (>40% and < 50%) [3]. To date, almost all experimental drugs or devices show a beneficial therapeutic effect exclusively in patients with chronic heart failure with reduced ejection fraction. Conversely, few treatment options are available for patients with heart failure with preserved ejection fraction [4, 5].

D. Masarone (✉) · E. Melillo · R. Pacileo · G. Pacileo
Heart Failure Unit, Department of Cardiology, AORN dei Colli, Monaldi Hospital, Naples, Italy
e-mail: danielemasarone@ospedalideicolli.it

M. Caiazza · F. Amodio · G. Limongelli
Inherited and Rare Cardiovascular Diseases Unit, Department of Traslational Medical Sciences, University of Campania "Luigi Vanvitelli", Monaldi Hospital, Naples, Italy

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_5

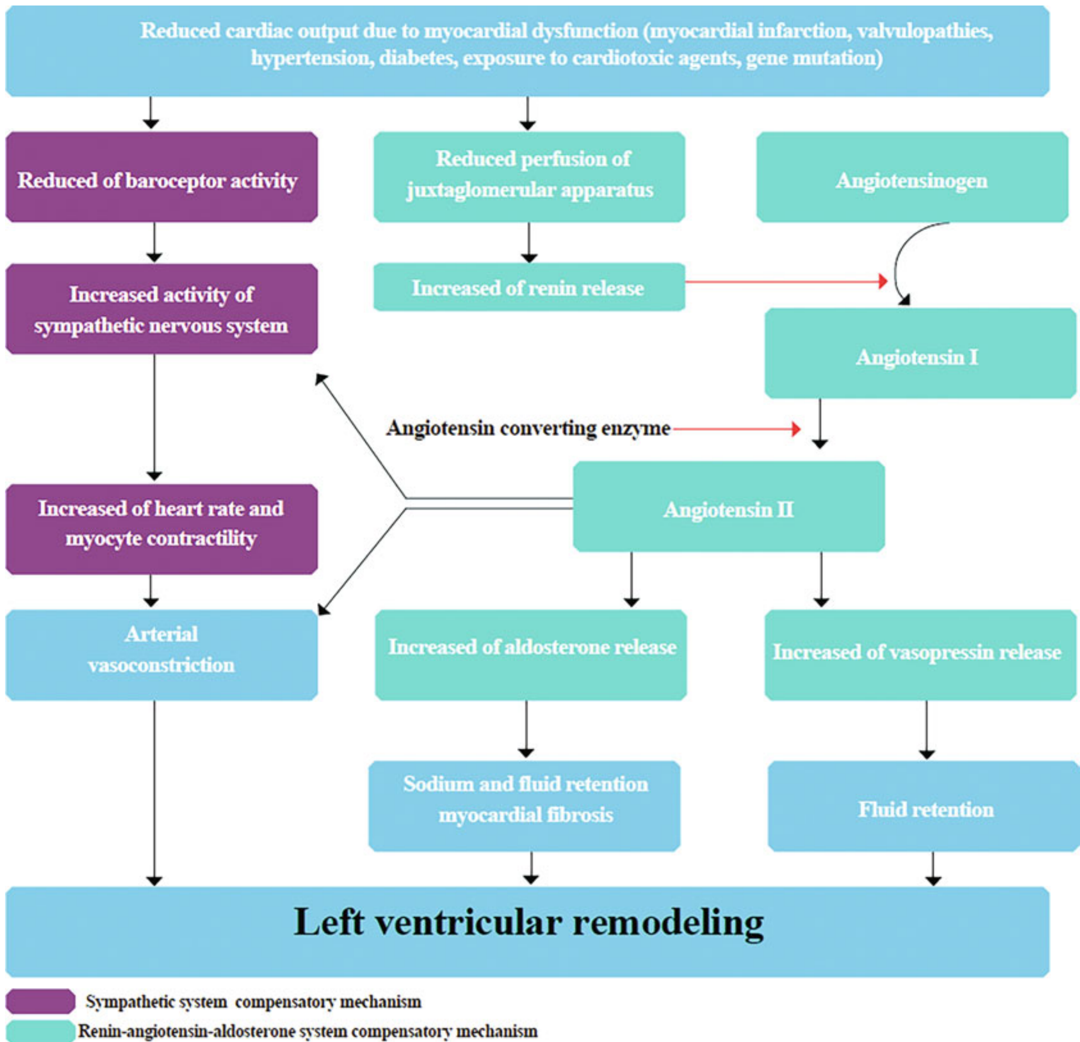


Fig. 1 The pathophysiology of heart failure with reduced ejection fraction

Advances in molecular genetics have made it possible to use genome editing in various fields of biomedical research, including cardiovascular science. Currently, zinc finger nucleases (ZFNs), transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs) and clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPRs) whose use is also proposed for the treatment of patients with heart failure are the most used tools [6].

This chapter will briefly explain the pathophysiological and genetic aspects of heart failure and then discuss the clinical applications of genome editing in patients with heart failure.

2 Pathophysiology of Heart Failure

The pathophysiology of heart failure with reduced ejection fraction is characterised by disease progression. Risk factors lead to cardiac injury subsequently to initially asymptomatic myocardial dysfunction [7]. Symptoms worsen until they reach an advanced stage of the disease. In addition to family history of heart failure [8, 9], genetic predisposition to cardiomyopathies [10] and exposure to cardiotoxic agents (e.g. alcohol, amphetamines, radiation and anthracyclines)

[11], risk factors for heart failure with reduced ejection fraction are the same as for chronic coronary syndrome (hypertension, hypercholesterolemia, diabetes mellitus and obesity). Cardiac injury may also occur as a result of any cardiovascular disease. Such cardiac injury results in the loss of myocyte cells and an increase in stress on the residual myocytes with subsequent development of left ventricular eccentric hypertrophy [12], mediated by neurohormonal activation of the sympathetic system and the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system [13]. This is followed by the progressive dilation of the left ventricle, development of fibrosis, change in the shape of the left ventricle (from elliptical to spherical) and often functional mitral insufficiency [14]. These changes are called left ventricular remodelling. They result in reduced myocardial contraction efficiency and increased myocardial oxygen consumption [15]. Besides, neurohormonal activation causes renal dysfunction resulting in sodium retention, fluid overload, oedema and reduced response to diuretics [16]. Although heart failure is a heterogeneous condition with multiple aetiologies, each of these results in the activation of common mechanisms that result in progression to a single endpoint, which will happen regardless of the initial pathophysiology. To date, the pathophysiology of heart failure with preserved ejection fraction is poorly understood [17]. The most reliable hypothesis is that comorbidities (e.g. obesity, chronic kidney disease, iron deficiency, hypertension, diabetes mellitus and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease) cause a systemic proinflammatory state. This determines the reduction of reactive oxygen species, the endothelial dysfunction, the reduction of nitric oxide production and the decrease in the activity of protein kinase G [18].

The proinflammatory state causes myocyte hypertrophy, titin hypophosphorylation, increased collagen production and consequent deposit in the extracellular matrix. Furthermore, a reduction in left ventricular compliance is observed (Fig. 1) [19].

3 Management of Heart Failure with a Reduced Ejection Fraction

Treatment of heart failure with reduced ejection fraction is mainly based on the use of diuretics (to relieve symptoms associated with congestion), 'disease-modifier' drugs and devices for the electrical therapy of heart failure [20–22]. Disease-modifying drugs work by antagonising the neurohormonal systems activated in heart failure and are β-blockers, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, angiotensin receptor blockers, mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists [23] and the newer angiotensin receptor neprilysin inhibitors [24]. All of these drugs have been shown to improve symptoms, reduce hospitalisations and improve survival. Some of these drugs, such as β-blockers, mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists and angiotensin receptor neprilysin inhibitors, also result in a reduction in sudden cardiac death [25, 26].

A detailed discussion of cardiac resynchronisation therapy and modulation of cardiac contractility is beyond the objectives of this chapter. However, these treatments will increasingly be used in patients with chronic heart failure with reduced ejection fraction (Table 1) [27].

4 Management of Heart Failure with a Preserved Ejection Fraction

There is not therapy with a definitive and favourable effect in patients with heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. Thus, symptom improvement is the primary goal in these patients [28]. Diuretics are the mainstay of treatment for patients with signs and symptoms of congestion, but care must be taken to avoid an excessive decrease in left ventricular preload. Appropriate treatment of hypertension, diabetes mellitus, coronary artery disease and atrial fibrillation remains the best management strategy of these patients [29, 30].

Table 1 Type of drugs, devices and surgery to management of heart failure with a reduced ejection fraction

Drugs	Device	Surgery
β-Blockers	Cardiac resynchronisation therapy	Coronary artery bypass graft
Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors	Cardiac contractility modulation	Left ventriculoplasty
Angiotensin receptor blockers		Valvular surgery
Mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists		Left ventricular assist device implantation
Sacubitril/valsartan		Heart transplant

5 The Genetic Architecture of Heart Failure

Genetic architecture refers to the genetic contribution to a given phenotype [31]. It includes the number of genetic variants that influence a phenotype, the size of their effects on the phenotype, the frequency of those variants in the population and their interactions with each other and the environment [32]. Variation in heart failure phenotype has been attributed to different aetiologies and varying severity of myocardial damage. However, there is evidence that myocardial damages of the same magnitude can lead to different outcomes. Other evidences involve important hereditary and environmental contributions to the development of heart failure [33].

Non-ischaemic heart failure is familial in 30–50% of cases, and more than 30 genetic loci are known to date, although few have been cloned [34]. In family members of patients with chronic heart failure who have asymptomatic left ventricular dysfunction, a genetic predisposition to ventricular remodelling is likely to be present in response to many different stimuli [35]. Recently, some authors reported that several genes (modifier genes) influence the risk of heart failure or modify the clinical course [36]. Most genes related to specific phenotypes (dilated, hypertrophic and restrictive) or polymorphisms in the genes encoding proteins of the renin-angiotensin system influence treatment effect [37, 38]. Furthermore, environmental variables contribute in determining the phenotypic pleiotropy observed in some monogenic disorders [39]. Finally, microRNAs and epigenetic factors have recently been recognised to play an important role in the pathophysiology of heart failure [40, 41].

6 Tools for Genome Editing

Genome editing is a type of genetic engineering in which DNA is inserted, deleted, modified or replaced in a living organism's genome. Unlike early genetic engineering techniques, which randomly insert genetic material into a host genome, genome editing aims at insertions in site-specific locations [42]. Genome editing was pioneered in the 1990s, but editing efficiency limited its use. Genome editing takes place through the use of engineered nucleases belonging to three enzymatic classes: ZFNs, TALENs and engineered meganucleases [43]. In 2015, another very efficient method was born: the CRISPRs (clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats)/ Cas9 system [44]. In 2018, engineered nucleases were the most commonly used method. These create site-specific double-strand breaks repaired through nonhomologous end joining. In recent years, the emergence of new genome editing technologies has provided researchers with the ability to introduce sequence-specific modifications into the genomes of a broad spectrum of cell types. Genome editing using engineered nucleases will certainly contribute to many life sciences fields, boosting the study of gene functions in plants and animals and leading to future gene therapy in humans. The development of cellular transcriptomics, genome editing and new stem cell models may offer an alternative to functional genetics experiments no longer limited to animal models. Another significant step is

represented by the opportunity to perform genetics experiments directly in human samples. Using genome editing, it is possible to block or remove key genes to elucidate function in a human setting and, where possible, to cure monogenic diseases [45]. Gene therapy is the therapeutic release of nucleic acids into a patient's cells as if it were a drug to treat the disease. Clinical trials are currently underway using gene therapy as a treatment for some genetic diseases. These include diseases caused by recessive genetic mutations (cystic fibrosis, haemophilia, muscular dystrophy and sickle cell anaemia) and acquired genetic diseases (cancer and some viral infections). Genome editing and related approaches are already transforming cardiovascular research and the practice of cardiovascular medicine [46]. Very soon, a wide variety of cardiovascular diseases could be treated using genome editing technology, including those we now believe to be completely incurable. Genome editing could solve monogenic cardiovascular disorders for the offspring of affected individuals. Although technically easier, this approach remains ethically controversial [47].

7 Genome Editing in Heart Failure

Cardiomyopathy and heart failure may have a genetic basis. Genome editing technologies can provide the tools to correct genetic defects responsible for various diseases, including cardiomyopathies. These technologies aim to reverse specific mutations. The same methods can also be applied to modulate and improve heart function. Most genetic correction strategies are gene specific. These approaches require in-depth knowledge of the genetic mutations responsible for cardiomyopathies and heart failure, which underlines the importance of genetic diagnosis. The applications of gene editing to cure heart failure conditions are many and relevant.

Cardiomyopathies can be caused by genetic mutations that give rise to familial or inherited forms. Various genetic mutations, such as autosomal dominant (most frequent), autosomal recessive, X-linked recessive and mitochondrial inheritance mutations, can contribute to develop some form of cardiomyopathies [48–50].

The most common genetic mutations linked to cardiomyopathies are single nucleotide variants (SNVs) or small insertions/deletions. These mutations can produce in-frame or out-of-frame effects on the protein they encode. In-frame deletions can produce internal truncations, but the protein can maintain its function depending on the mutation's length. Out-of-frame deletions may reduce the amount of protein mRNA and the stability of amino-terminal domains. Similarly, the loss or addition of stop codons can affect the functioning of the residual protein. To evaluate the most suitable gene correction strategy for the treatment of cardiomyopathies, it is very important to analyse the precise mode of action of the gene. In addition, it is important to identify mutant genes to avoid introducing mutations into the wild-type gene copy. Gene editing of an autosomal dominant disease, like cardiomyopathies mutations, must correct the mutated copy and leave the healthy copy intact. Cardiomyopathies can be caused by SNVs alias mutations that often span only 1–2 bp. SNVs determine the difference between healthy and mutated gene. Therefore, extreme precision is required in corrective technology. It requires a homology-directed repair to correct this type of mutations. Possible genetic therapeutic correction strategies are directed on the disease mutations. For cardiomyopathies, we need to test and analyse several site-specific corrective strategies. In this complex situation, some researchers evaluated the possibility of broader genetic corrective pathways targeting normal genes to enhance cardiac function [51, 52]. It may be possible to use gene editing techniques to upregulate specific sarcomere proteins that increase actomyosin interactions. In this way, it would make the heart more energetically efficient [53].

8 Using Genome Editing to Create In Vitro and In Vivo Disease Models of Heart Failure

The reproduction of disease mutations through the use of genome editing is quick and simple and can be applied to cells or animal models. There are several systems for genome editing, but the CRISPR/Cas9 system is the most widely used for reproducing the disease model (in vivo and in vitro) [54]. The CRISPR method can be used to modify any aspect of gene regulation. Disease models can be generated in cell cultures or in animal models. It is possible to generate knock-in and knockout animal models using the CRISPR approach. Pathogenic variants can be restored or introduced in human-induced pluripotent stem cells. The CRISPR system enables one to fuse it to an effector protein, modulating gene function.

Currently, the application of CRISPR/Cas9 in the field of cardiac biology is still in its infancy. To specifically study the heart, researchers utilised cardiotropic adeno-associated virus (AAV) constructs for the in vivo CRISPR/Cas9 experiments. Several studies utilised a dual-vector approach with the Cas9 protein (derived from *Streptococcus pyogenes*) and single-stranded guide RNA (sgRNA) that are delivered to the heart by separate AAV constructs [55, 56]. Researchers have experimented genome editing techniques in cardiomyopathy models. With an intraperitoneal injection, they used the cardiotropic AAV9 to deliver a sgRNA targeting the Myh6 locus. They subsequently analysed the hearts 5–6 weeks later. The most important goal to achieve was the transduction efficiency, leading to a marked decrease in Myh6 expression. This was accompanied by severe cardiomyopathy and reduced cardiac function [57]. Other authors used similar CRISPR/Cas9 methods to study many genes specifically in cardiomyocytes to investigate their role in heart maturation and to assess specific phenotype in presence of mutations [58]. The use of CRISPR can also be beneficial for generating mouse models. Researchers created knock-in and knockout models with injections of DNA or modified embryonic stem cells into the blastocyst [59]. Kaneko et al. had performed genome editing with CRISPR/Cas9 to eliminate the PLN gene in mouse model of severe heart failure. Compared with heart failure control mice, PLN knockout mice survived longer and had improved cardiac size and function [60]. Most cardiac genome editing studies with CRISPR/Cas9 have been conducted in a murine model. CRISPR has also been used in other species such as rats [61], rabbits [62], pigs [63] and zebrafish [64].

With the application of CRISPR/Cas9 in vitro, pluripotent stem cells can be differentiated into any type of heart cell. Through this method, it is possible to introduce or correct mutations in the cells that determine the disease. These cells represent valuable models to define the pathogenic mechanisms underlying cardiac disease. Some authors have used CRISPR/Cas9 methods for pluripotent stem cells with a pathogenic mutation in MYH7 (responsible for hypertrophic cardiomyopathy). In the model, they observed all the main hallmarks of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: multinucleation, sarcomeric disarray and hypertrophy. The mutant cells exhibited increased metabolic respiratory activity, impaired calcium handling and contraction force. The authors concluded that their findings supported the proposed energy depletion model to be involved in the progression of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy [65]. Although these studies indicate therapeutic potential, future research will have to prove whether these strategies are also applicable to other cardiac conditions.

9 Genome Editing for Therapy of Heart Failure

A wide variety of cardiovascular diseases can potentially be treated with CRISPR/Cas9. Multigenic diseases are too complex to hope to treat with today's gene editing strategies and are out of our reach. Fortunately, genome editing may potentially solve monogenic cardiovascular disorders, even with current technologies. Although technically easier and likely already

available for use in humans, this approach remains ethically controversial. Public debate and public policy decisions will have to proceed rapidly to allow clinical use of these therapies. Further technical issue will need to be resolved more comprehensively, including those related to long-term risks, off-target effects, mosaicism and applicability to a wider variety of cardiovascular mutations and conditions.

'Standard' pharmacological strategies against cardiomyopathies reduce symptoms and adverse outcomes, slowing the progression of the disease. Current knowledge on genetics and its molecular mechanisms underlying heart disease opens the way to new therapeutic approaches and possibly to the treatment of heart failure.

The development of human cardiomyocytes from iPSCs and the advancement of genome editing offer an innovative approach for the study of cardiomyopathies and their treatment. The human application of these technologies is still ethically discussed, especially from the point of view of eugenics, but the potential therapeutic applications in the cardiovascular field cannot be ignored.

Currently, there are no approved human gene therapies for heart failure. However, intense studies are underway on mouse models of the pathology. A single gene is known to be rarely involved in any disease. Not surprisingly, in most cases, cardiovascular diseases are the result of multiple genomic, epigenetic and environmental risk factors. Therefore, for the correct use of genome editing, it is necessary to fully understand the causes of the disease and the pathways involved.

In 2017, the CUPID study was born to develop a genome editing treatment of patients with heart failure with reduced left ventricular ejection fraction [66]. In contrast, there are currently no clinical trials of gene therapies for patients with heart failure characterised by preserved left ventricular ejection fraction. Underlying the CUPID study is the analysis of the sarcoplasmic/endoplasmic reticulum Ca^{2+}-ATPase (SERCA2a) protein, which is a major cardiac calcium cycle protein in heart failure. Studies have reported that reduced SERCA2a activity can contribute to the development and progression of heart failure [67–70]. From these data, preliminary studies based on gene therapy were born. The gene transfer of SERCA2a in animal models resulted in cardiac improvement of contractile function, with almost no side effects [71]. In the first phase, CUPID study enrolled only few patients, obtaining promising results in cases with heart failure characterised by severely reduced ejection fraction. AAV1 was used as a vector to insert SERC2a by intracoronary injection. The excellent results obtained 3 years after the start of the study [72] were the basis for a second trial, CUPID2, which included a larger and more randomised population. Again, intracoronary release of AAV1/SERCA2a or placebo was used. However, the results contradicted the promises that emerged from the first study, forcing the researchers to cancel the trial. Nonetheless, the negative results should not be a source of abandonment of the study of the treatment of gene-edited cardiomyopathies, but a starting point for future studies. The trial authors themselves identified some possible causes of failure, proposing to conduct further research to improve the technique [73–75].

10 Conclusions

Heart failure is a leading and growing cause of morbidity and mortality worldwide, whether it results from structural or functional cardiac abnormalities. Today there are few drugs or experimental devices that have a real beneficial therapeutic effect in all heart failure. Therefore, a new type of therapy is needed. The answer to this problem could be genome editing technology, in particular the promising CRISPR/Cas9. Current therapies are based on the use of 'disease-modifying' drugs (beta blockers, ACE inhibitors, angiotensin receptor blockers, etc.), diuretics and devices for the electrical therapy of heart failure. Recently, especially in patients who have a family history of heart failure, it has been seen that there are modifier genes that influence the level risk. These modifier genes can be polymorphisms in the genes that code for the proteins of the renin-angiotensin system or related to specific

phenotypes such as cardiac dilatation or hypertrophy. However, at the molecular level, microRNAs and epigenetic factors involved in cardiac pathophysiology have been identified. It is above all at this level where it is possible to act with genome editing, which aims to insert or remove specific genes in a site-specific way. If this approach proves valid, the future of heart failure therapy will no longer be based on symptomatic treatment alone but on more in-depth biological analysis and genetic therapy.

In conclusion, we are getting closer and closer to personalised/precision cardiological therapy with the advancement of diagnostic (with the use of biomarkers) and therapeutic technologies. Thus, the genomic characteristics of each patient become part of the diagnosis and individualised treatments. Therefore, the in-depth study of cardiovascular diseases at the molecular and cellular level could in the future yield clinical benefits obtained from gene therapy.

However, there is no doubt that there is still a long way to go for the application of genome editing in the field of cardiology. However, this should not discourage researchers from persevering and continuing to seek a solution to this global scourge.

References

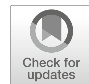
1. Metra M, Teerlink JR (2017) Heart failure. Lancet 390(10106):1981–1995
2. van Riet EE, Hoes AW, Wagenaar KP, Limburg A, Landman MA, Rutten FH (2016) Epidemiology of heart failure: the prevalence of heart failure and ventricular dysfunction in older adults over time. A systematic review. Eur J Heart Fail 18(3):242–252
3. Ponikowski P, Voors AA, Anker SD, Bueno H, Cleland JGF, Coats AJS, Falk V, González-Juanatey JR, Harjola V-P, Jankowska EA, Jessup M, Linde C, Nihoyannopoulos P, Parissis JT, Pieske B, Riley JP, Rosano GMC, Ruilope LM, Ruschitzka F, Rutten FH, van der Meer P (2016) 2016 ESC guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of acute and chronic heart failure: The Task Force for the diagnosis and treatment of acute and chronic heart failure of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). Developed with the special contribution of the Heart Failure Association (HFA) of the ESC. Eur J Heart Fail 18:891–975
4. Kalogirou F, Forsyth F, Kyriakou M, Mantle R, Deaton C (2020) Heart failure disease management: a systematic review of effectiveness in heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. ESC Heart Fail 7(1):194–212
5. Murphy SP, Ibrahim NE, Januzzi JL Jr (2020) Heart failure with reduced ejection fraction: a review. JAMA 324(5):488–504
6. Nishiga M, Qi LS, Wu JC (2020) Therapeutic genome editing in cardiovascular diseases. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 168:147–157
7. Kemp CD, Conte JV (2012) The pathophysiology of heart failure. Cardiovasc Pathol 21(5):365–371
8. Khatibzadeh S, Farzadfar F, Oliver J, Ezzati M, Moran A (2013) Worldwide risk factors for heart failure: a systematic review and pooled analysis. Int J Cardiol 168(2):1186–1194
9. Czepluch FS, Wollnik B, Hasenfuß G (2018) Genetic determinants of heart failure: facts and numbers. ESC Heart Fail 5(3):211–217
10. Seferović PM, Polovina M, Bauersachs J, Arad M, Gal TB, Lund LH, Felix SB, Arbustini E, Caforio ALP, Farmakis D, Filippatos GS, Gialafos E, Kanjuh V, Krljanac G, Limongelli G, Linhart A, Lyon AR, Maksimović R, Miličić D, Milinković I, Noutsias M, Oto A, Oto Ö, Pavlović SU, Piepoli MF, Ristić AD, Rosano GMC, Seggewiss H, Ašanin M, Seferović JP, Ruschitzka F, Čelutkiene J, Jaarsma T, Mueller C, Moura B, Hill L, Volterrani M, Lopatin Y, Metra M, Backs J, Mullens W, Chioncel O, de Boer RA, Anker S, Rapezzi C, Coats AJS, Tschöpe C (2019) Heart failure in cardiomyopathies: a position paper from the Heart Failure Association of the European Society of Cardiology. Eur J Heart Fail 21(5):553–576
11. Hantson P (2019) Mechanisms of toxic cardiomyopathy. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 57(1):1–9
12. Lazzeroni D, Rimoldi O, Camici PG (2016) From left ventricular hypertrophy to dysfunction and failure. Circ J 80(3):555–564
13. Hartupee J, Mann DL (2017) Neurohormonal activation in heart failure with reduced ejection fraction. Nat Rev Cardiol 14(1):30–38
14. Schmitto JD, Lee LS, Mokashi SA, Bolman RM 3rd, Cohn LH, Chen FY (2010) Functional mitral regurgitation. Cardiol Rev 18(6):285–291
15. Azevedo PS, Polegato BF, Minicucci MF, Paiva SA, Zornoff LA (2016) Cardiac remodeling: concepts, clinical impact, pathophysiological mechanisms and pharmacologic treatment. Arq Bras Cardiol 106(1):62–69
16. Gnanaraj JF, von Haehling S, Anker SD, Raj DS, Radhakrishnan J (2013) The relevance of congestion in the cardio-renal syndrome. Kidney Int 83(3):384–391
17. Borlaug BA (2014) The pathophysiology of heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. Nat Rev Cardiol 11(9):507–515
18. Gevaert AB, Boen JRA, Segers VF, Van Craenenbroeck EM (2019) Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction: a review of cardiac and noncardiac pathophysiology. Front Physiol 29(10):638

19. Schiattarella GG, Rodolico D, Hill JA (2020) Metabolic inflammation in heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. Cardiovasc Res 14(2):423–434
20. Inamdar AA, Inamdar AC (2016) Heart failure: diagnosis, management and utilization. J Clin Med 5(7):62
21. Gedela M, Khan M, Jonsson O (2015) Heart failure. S D Med 68(9):403–405
22. Mitter SS, Yancy CW (2017) Contemporary approaches to patients with heart failure. Cardiol Clin 35(2):261–271
23. Wieser M, Rhyner D, Martinelli M, Suter T, Schnegg B, Bösch C, Wigger O, Dobner S, Hunziker L (2018) Medikamentöse Therapie der Herzinsuffizienz mit verminderter Auswurffraktion [Pharmacological therapy of heart failure with reduced ejection fraction]. Ther Umsch 75(3):180–186
24. Liu RC (2018) Focused treatment of heart failure with reduced ejection fraction using sacubitril/valsartan. Am J Cardiovasc Drugs 18(6):473–482
25. Cheng S, Zhang N, Hua W (2020) Sacubitril/valsartan in the management of heart failure patients with cardiac implantable electronic devices. Am J Cardiovasc Drugs 21(4):383–393
26. Martens P, Beliën H, Dupont M, Mullens W (2018) Insights into implementation of sacubitril/valsartan into clinical practice. ESC Heart Fail 5(3):275–283
27. Hussein AA, Wilkoff BL (2019) Cardiac implantable electronic device therapy in heart failure. Circ Res 124(11):1584–1597
28. IlieșiuAM HAS (2018) Treatment of heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. Adv Exp Med Biol 1067: 67–87
29. Kjeldsen SE, von Lueder TG, Smiseth OA, Wachtell K, Mistry N, Westheim AS, Hopper I, Julius S, Pitt B, Reid CM, Devereux RB, Zannad F (2020) Medical therapies for heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. Hypertension 75(1):23–32
30. Adamczak DM, Oduah MT, Kieblo T, Nartowicz S, Bęben M, Pochylski M, Ciepłucha A, Gwizdała A, Lesiak M, Straburzyńska-Migaj E (2020) Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction-a concise review. Curr Cardiol Rep 22(9):82
31. Timpson NJ, Greenwood CMT, Soranzo N, Lawson DJ, Richards JB (2018) Genetic architecture: the shape of the genetic contribution to human traits and disease. Nat Rev Genet 19(2):110–124
32. Watanabe K, Stringer S, Frei O, UmićevićMirkov M, de Leeuw C, Polderman TJC, van der Sluis S, Andreassen OA, Neale BM, Posthuma D (2019) A global overview of pleiotropy and genetic architecture in complex traits. Nat Genet 51(9):1339–1348
33. Mann DL, Bristow MR (2005) Mechanisms and models in heart failure: the biomechanical model and beyond. Circulation 111(21):2837–2849
34. Baig MK, Goldman JH, Caforio AL, Coonar AS, Keeling PJ, McKenna WJ (1998) Familial dilated cardiomyopathy: cardiac abnormalities are common in asymptomatic relatives and may represent early disease. J Am Coll Cardiol 31(1):195–201
35. Mahon NG, Murphy RT, MacRae CA, Caforio AL, Elliott PM, McKenna WJ (2005) Echocardiographic evaluation in asymptomatic relatives of patients with dilated cardiomyopathy reveals preclinical disease. Ann Intern Med 143(2):108–115
36. Le Corvoisier P, Park HY, Rockman HA (2003) Modifier genes and heart failure. Minerva Cardioangiol 51(2):107–120
37. Samuel JL, Schaub MC, Zaugg M, Mamas M, Dunn WB, Swynghedauw B (2008) Genomics in cardiac metabolism. Cardiovasc Res 79(2):218–227
38. Patel VB, Zhong JC, Grant MB, Oudit GY (2016) Role of the ACE2/Angiotensin 1-7 Axis of the renin-angiotensin system in heart failure. Circ Res 118(8): 1313–1326
39. Wagner KD, Wagner N, Ghanbarian H, Grandjean V, Gounon P, Cuzin F, Rassoulzadegan M (2008) RNA induction and inheritance of epigenetic cardiac hypertrophy in the mouse. Dev Cell 14(6):962–969
40. Udali S, Guarini P, Moruzzi S, Choi SW, Friso S (2013) Cardiovascular epigenetics: from DNA methylation to microRNAs. Mol Asp Med 34(4):883–901
41. Kim SY, Morales CR, Gillette TG, Hill JA (2016) Epigenetic regulation in heart failure. Curr Opin Cardiol 31(3):255–265
42. Bak RO, Gomez-Ospina N, Porteus MH (2018) Gene editing on center stage. Trends Genet 34(8):600–611
43. (2012) Method of the year 2011. Nat Methods 9(1):1
44. Deshpande K, Vyas A, Balakrishnan A, Vyas D (2015) Clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats/Cas9 genetic engineering: robotic genetic surgery. Am J Robot Surg 2(1):49–52
45. Ortega NM, Winblad N, Plaza Reyes A, Lanner F (2018) Functional genetics of early human development. Curr Opin Genet Dev 52:1–6
46. Musunuru K (2017) Genome editing: the recent history and perspective in cardiovascular diseases. J Am Coll Cardiol 70(22):2808–2821
47. German DM, Mitalipov S, Mishra A, Kaul S (2019) Therapeutic genome editing in cardiovascular diseases. JACC Basic Transl Sci 4(1):122–131
48. Marian AJ, Braunwald E (2017) Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: genetics, pathogenesis, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and therapy. Circ Res 121(7):749–770
49. McNally EM, Mestroni L (2017) Dilated cardiomyopathy: genetic determinants and mechanisms. Circ Res 121(7):731–748
50. McNally E, MacLeod H, Dellefave-Castillo L (2005) Arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy. In: Adam MP, Ardinger HH, Pagon RA, Wallace SE Bean LJH, Stephens K, Amemiya A, editors. GeneReviews® [Internet]. Seattle: University of Washington, Seattle 1993–2020
51. Hulot JS, Salem JE, Redheuil A, Collet JP, Varnous S, Jourdain P, Logeart D, Gandjbakhch E, Bernard C, Hatem SN, Isnard R, Cluzel P, Le Feuvre C, Leprince P, Hammoudi N, Lemoine FM, Klatzmann D, Vicaut E, Komajda M, Montalescot G,

Lompré AM, Hajjar RJ (2017) Effect of intracoronary administration of AAV1/SERCA2a on ventricular remodeling in patients with advanced systolic heart failure: results from the AGENT-HF randomized phase 2 trial. Eur J Heart Fail 19(11):1534–1541

52. Jessup M, Greenberg B, Mancini D, Cappola T, Pauly DF, Jaski B, Yaroshinsky A, Zsebo KM, Dittrich H, Hajjar RJ (2011) Calcium Upregulation by Percutaneous Administration of Gene Therapy in Cardiac Disease (CUPID) Investigators. Calcium Upregulation by Percutaneous Administration of Gene Therapy in Cardiac Disease (CUPID): a phase 2 trial of intracoronary gene therapy of sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca2+-ATPase in patients with advanced heart failure. Circulation 124(3):304–313
53. Ohiri JC, McNally EM (2018) Gene editing and gene-based therapeutics for cardiomyopathies. Heart Fail Clin 14(2):179–188
54. Xiao-Jie L, Li-Juan J, Kato T, Takada S (2017) Brief Funct Genomics 16(1):13–24
55. Amoasii L, Hildyard JCW, Li H, Sanchez-Ortiz E, Mireault A, Caballero D, Harron R, Stathopoulou TR, Massey C, Shelton JM, Bassel-Duby R, Piercy RJ, Olson EN (2018) Gene editing restores dystrophin expression in a canine model of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Science 362(6410):86–91
56. Long C, Amoasii L, Mireault AA, McAnally JR, Li H, Sanchez-Ortiz E, Bhattacharyya S, Shelton JM, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2016) Postnatal genome editing partially restores dystrophin expression in a mouse model of muscular dystrophy. Science 351(6271):400–403
57. Carroll KJ, Makarewich CA, McAnally J, Anderson DM, Zentilin L, Liu N, Giacca M, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2016) A mouse model for adult cardiac-specific gene deletion with CRISPR/Cas9. Proc Natl Acad Sci 113(2):338–343
58. Guo Y, VanDusen NJ, Zhang L, Gu W, Sethi I, Guatimosim S, Ma Q, Jardin BD, Ai Y, Zhang D, Chen B, Guo A, Yuan GC, Song LS, Pu WT (2017) Analysis of cardiac myocyte maturation using CASAAV, a platform for rapid dissection of cardiac myocyte gene function in vivo. Circ Res 120(12): 1874–1888
59. Fishman GI (1998) Timing is everything in life: conditional transgene expression in the cardiovascular system. Circ Res 82(8):837–844
60. Kaneko M, Hashikami K, Yamamoto S, Matsumoto H, Nishimoto T (2016) Phospholamban ablation using CRISPR/Cas9 system improves mortality in a murine heart failure model. PLoS One 11(12): e0168486
61. Nakamura K, Fujii W, Tsuboi M, Tanihata J, Teramoto N, Takeuchi S, Naito K, Yamanouchi K, Nishihara M (2014) Generation of muscular dystrophy model rats with a CRISPR/Cas system. Sci Rep 9(4): 5635
62. Yang D, Xu J, Zhu T, Fan J, Lai L, Zhang J, Chen YE (2014) Effective gene targeting in rabbits using RNA-guided Cas9 nucleases. Mol Cell Biol 6(1): 97–99
63. Huang L, Hua Z, Xiao H, Cheng Y, Xu K, Gao Q, Xia Y, Liu Y, Zhang X, Zheng X, Mu Y, Li K (2017) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated ApoE-/- and LDLR-/- double gene knockout in pigs elevates serum LDL-C and TC levels. Oncotarget 8(23):37751–37760
64. Tessadori F, Roessler HI, Savelberg SMC, Chocron S, Kamel SM, Duran KJ, van Haelst MM, van Haaften G, Bakkers J (2018) Effective CRISPR/Cas9-based nucleotide editing in zebrafish to model human genetic cardiovascular disorders. Dis Model Mech 11(10): dmm035469
65. Mosqueira D, Mannhardt I, Bhagwan JR, Lis-Slimak K, Katili P, Scott E, Hassan M, Prondzynski M, Harmer SC, Tinker A, Smith JGW, Carrier L, Williams PM, Gaffney D, Eschenhagen T, Hansen A, Denning C (2018) CRISPR/Cas9 editing in human pluripotent stem cell-cardiomyocytes highlights arrhythmias, hypocontractility, and energy depletion as potential therapeutic targets for hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Eur Heart J 39:3879–3892
66. Gigli M, Sinagra G, Mestroni L (2017) Trattamento dello scompenso cardiaco con terapia genica: i risultati inattesi del trial CUPID 2 [Gene therapy in heart failure: the unexpected results from the CUPID 2 trial]. G Ital Cardiol 18(2):101–105
67. Hasenfuss G, Reinecke H, Studer R, Meyer M, Pieske B, Holtz J, Holubarsch C, Posival H, Just H, Drexler H (1994) Relation between myocardial function and expression of sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca(2+)-ATPase in failing and nonfailing human myocardium. Circ Res 75(3):434–442
68. Hasenfuss G, Pieske B (2002) Calcium cycling in congestive heart failure. J Mol Cell Cardiol 34(8): 951–969
69. Hayward C, Patel H, Lyon A (2014) Gene therapy in heart failure. SERCA2a as a therapeutic target. Circulation 78(11):2577–2587
70. Eisner D, Caldwell J, Trafford A (2013) Sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca-ATPase and heart failure 20 years later. Circ Res 113(8):958–961
71. del Monte F, Lebeche D, Guerrero JL, Tsuji T, Doye AA, Gwathmey JK, Hajjar RJ (2004) Abrogation of ventricular arrhythmias in a model of ischemia and reperfusion by targeting myocardial calcium cycling. Proc Natl Acad Sci 101(15):5622–5627
72. Jessup M, Greenberg B, Mancini D, Cappola T, Pauly DF, Jaski B, Yaroshinsky A, Zsebo KM, Dittrich H, Hajjar RJ, Calcium Upregulation by Percutaneous Administration of Gene Therapy in Cardiac Disease (CUPID) Investigators (2017) Calcium Upregulation by Percutaneous Administration of Gene Therapy in Cardiac Disease (CUPID): a phase 2 trial of intracoronary gene therapy of sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca2+-ATPase in patients with advanced heart failure. Circulation 124(3):304–313
73. Greenberg B, Butler J, Felker GM, Ponikowski P, Voors AA, Desai AS, Barnard D, Bouchard A,

Jaski B, Lyon AR, Pogoda JM, Rudy JJ, Zsebo KM (2016) Calcium upregulation by percutaneous administration of gene therapy in patients with cardiac disease (CUPID 2): a randomised, multinational, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 2b trial. Lancet 387(10024):1178–1186
74. Kawase Y, Ly HQ, Prunier F, Lebeche D, Shi Y, Jin H, Hadri L, Yoneyama R, Hoshino K, Takewa Y, Sakata S, Peluso R, Zsebo K, Gwathmey JK, Tardif JC, Tanguay JF, Hajjar RJ (2008) Reversal of cardiac dysfunction after long-term expression of SERCA2a by gene transfer in a pre-clinical model of heart failure. J Am Coll Cardiol 51(11):1112–1119
75. Byrne MJ, Power JM, Preovolos A, Mariani JA, Hajjar RJ, Kaye DM (2008) Recirculating cardiac delivery of AAV2/1SERCA2a improves myocardial function in an experimental model of heart failure in large animals. Gene Ther 15(23):1550–1557



Genome Editing and Pathological Cardiac Hypertrophy

Takao Kato

Abstract

Three major genome editing tools, transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs), zinc finger nucleases (ZFNs), and clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeat (CRISPR) systems, are increasingly important technologies used in the study and treatment of hereditary myocardial diseases. Germ cell genome editing and modification can permanently eliminate monogenic cardiovascular disease from the offspring of affected families and the next generation, although ethically controversial. Somatic genome editing may be a promising method for the treatment of hereditary cardiomyopathy various diseases for which gene knockout is favorable and can also treat people who are already ill, although there are currently some technical challenges. This chapter describes the application of genome editing in the experimental studies and treatment of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy as well as other cardiomyopathies.

Keywords

Genome editing; HCM · DMD · CRISPR/Cas

T. Kato (✉)
Department of Cardiovascular Medicine, Kyoto University Graduate School of Medicine, Kyoto, Japan
e-mail: tkato75@kuhp.kyoto-u.ac.jp

1 Introduction

The knowledge of the genetic mechanism of cardiovascular diseases has exploded, and the understanding of monogenous cardiovascular diseases has improved. Advances in molecular genetics have made it possible to incorporate genome editing into cardiovascular science [1]. Zinc finger nucleases (ZFNs) and transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs) are both engineering restriction enzymes based on *Fok*I restriction enzymes [2–4]. A genome editing tool based on the adaptive immune system of bacteria is the clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR) [1, 5]. This method has made it possible to develop powerful treatment for cardiovascular diseases that currently do not have effective therapies.

The DNA-binding domain of ZFN is diverted from the classical zinc finger transcription factor and consists of 3–6 zinc finger repeats that recognize 9–18 bp [4]. The DNA-binding domain of TALEN is composed of 10–30 repeats consisting of 33–35 amino acids. This amino acid sequence is highly conserved except for two amino acids, allowing TALEN to recognize specific DNA sequences [6–8]. These DNA-binding domains allow ZFNs and TALENs to have target specificity. Binding of two independent nucleases to the contralateral DNA strand allows dimerization of the *Fok*I domain, followed by cleavage of the double-stranded DNA at the sticky end [2, 9].

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_6

CRISPR has two major components: guide RNA (gRNA) and CRISPR-associated (Cas) protein [5, 10–13]. A gRNA is an RNA sequence approximately 100 nucleotides in length that directs the Cas protein to a specific location in the genome. The first 20 nucleotides (protospacers) of gRNAs are designed to hybridize to specific sites on DNA, which imparts sequence specificity to the CRISPR/Cas system. In addition, the Cas protein needs to bind to the species-specific PAM (protospacer-adjacent motif) sequence. When the gRNA protospacer and a complementary DNA sequence are hybridizing and the Cas protein binds to the PAM sequence, the Cas protein cuts both strands of the DNA, resulting in a double-stranded DNA break. This process applies to the most common version of CRISPR/Cas9, but other systems such as CRISPR/Cpf. CRISPR/Cpf1 can create double-stranded DNA breaks at the sticky end [14].

This review is intended to explain the genetics of cardiomyopathy (mainly hypertrophic cardiomyopathy) and the genome editing in the understanding of and potential therapy for cardiomyopathy [15–19]. However, as we will see later, CRISPR seems to be the most widely used of the three technologies, so we will focus on CRISPR in the following discussion.

2 Genetic Backgrounds of Cardiomyopathies

Primary cardiomyopathy is classified into major four groups: dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM), hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM), restrictive cardiomyopathy, and arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy based on the function and morphology [19]. When analyzing molecular genetics, multiple genes are responsible for the development of cardiomyopathies [19–23]. However, mutations in the same gene can cause various clinical symptoms, resulting in various types of cardiomyopathy [20–23]. Genome editing can be a promising method for the treatment of monogenetic diseases such as hereditary HCM and Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD) [17]. Hereditary arrhythmia and transthyretin amyloidosis are other candidates for therapeutic application [17].

2.1 HCM and DCM

HCM is defined as a group of diseases characterized by hypertrophy of the myocardium of the left or right ventricle and decreased left ventricular diastolic function due to myocardial hypertrophy. Hypertrophy of cardiomyocytes, damage to cardiomyocytes and myofibrils, and increase in interstitial collagen cause left ventricular remodeling, which leads to changes in disease type and pathology, and cardiovascular events are observed according to the pathology [24]. About 60% of HCM is autosomal dominant, and about 40–60% of cases are caused by more than 1400 mutations, including genes encoding myocardial component proteins such as sarcomeres [19, 25]. At present, we do not have sufficient evidence to apply to the long-term prognostic management of individual cases, but the discovery of the responsible genes and the elucidation of the molecular mechanisms of pathogenesis using animal models will lead to early diagnosis and improved diagnostic methods. It may also lead to the development of mechanism-based therapies, and a number of genetically modified mice have been produced so far. Table 1 shows HCM model mice and their target genes.

DCM in humans is defined as “a group of diseases characterized by (1) diffuse contractile dysfunction of the left ventricle and (2) left ventricular hypertrophy” and is characterized by chronic heart failure symptoms that progress with repeated acute exacerbations. It is a disease with a poor prognosis. It has been reported that 15–27% of patients hospitalized for heart failure have dilated cardiomyopathy as an underlying disease [26–28], indicating that it is a group of diseases. Therefore, the role of dilated cardiomyopathy models is very important for the investigation of the cause of the disease and for its treatment. The classification of the disease can be broadly divided into familial (hereditary) and

Table 1 Mouse models of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy and other cardiomyopathies and their target genes

Gene	Phenotype in person	Model mouse [Ref]	Phenotype in mouse	Virulence
α-MHC	HCM	R403Q [98]	HCM	Myocyte disarray, fibrosis, atrial dilation
α-MHC	HCM	Arg403Gln [99]	HCM	Altered voltage-gated K channel
α-MHC-cre		CS-Cre [100]	DCM	Activated p38, JNK, and p53
Caveolin-3	HCM	Caveolin3 KO [101]	HCM, DCM, cardiac dysfunction	ERK1/2 activation, Src signaling
Caveolin3	HCM	P104L TG [102]	HCM, enhanced contractility, apoptosis	nNOS production, altered endoplasmic reticulum (ER) stress response
Tropomyosin	HCM	E180G TG [103]	HCM, fibrosis, and atrial enlargement	Increased myofilament sensitivity to Ca^{2+}
Tropomyosin	HCM	D175N KO [104]	HCM, contractility, and relaxation reduction	Thin filament enhanced Ca^{2+} sensitivity
Tropomyosin	DCM	KO [100]	Embryonic lethal	
Tropomyosin	DCM	TG-E54K [31]	DCM	Decrease in Ca^{2+} sensitivity and tension
Troponin T	CM	Myosin heavy chain TG [105]	HCM, reduced number of myocytes	Multiple cellular mechanisms
Troponin T	CM	R92Q TG [106]	Mitochondrial pathology, diastolic dysfunction	Induction of ANP and bMHC
Troponin I	HCM	R145G TG [107]	HCM, diastolic dysfunction, death	Increased Ca^{2+} sensitivity and hypercontractility
Troponin I	HCM	Troponin I KO [107]	Acute HF, shortened sarcomeres	Reduced Ca^{2+} sensitivity, elevated resting tension
Troponin I	RCM	TG R193H [108]	RCM	Increase in Ca^{2+} sensitivity
Troponin I	RCM	TG R145W [109]	Diastolic dysfunction	Prolonged force and Ca^{2+} transient
MyBPC	HCM	Myosin-binding protein C TG [110]	Sarcomere disorganization	Stable truncated protein
MyBPC		Myosin-binding protein C KO [111]	HCM, reduced myofilament stiffness	Abnormal sarcomere shortening
MyBPC	CM	cMyBPC KO [112]	HCM	Dysregulation of Xirp2 and Zbtb16
Myopalladin	DCM HCM	Y20C TG [113]	HCM and heart failure	Desmin, DPS, Cx43, and vinculin disruption
CARP	HCM DCM	α-MHC TG [114]	HCM in response to pressure overload stress	Reduced TGF-β, ERK1/2, MEK, and Smad3
Talin		Talin KO [115]	HCM, hypercontraction to pressure overload	Blunted ERK 1/2, p38, Akt, and Gsk3 after stress
SGLT1		SGLT1 KD TG [116]	HCM	HCM leading to heart failure

ANP atrial natriuretic peptide, *CARP* cardiac ankyrin repeat protein, *CM* cardiomyopathy, *CSRP3* cysteine- and glycine-rich protein 3, *Cx* connexin, *DCM* dilated cardiomyopathy, *DSP* desmoplakin, *ERBB* erythroblastic leukemia viral oncogene homolog, *ERK* extracellular signal-regulated kinase, *Gsk* glycogen synthase kinase, *HCM* hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, *HF* heart failure, *KO* knockout, *MHC* major histocompatibility complex, *MyBPC* myosin-binding protein C, *nNOS* neuronal nitric oxide synthase, *ROCK* rho kinase, *SGLT1* sodium glucose cotransporters 1, *TG* transgenic, *TGF* transforming growth factor, *TNNT2* cardiac troponin T

nonfamilial. In humans, at least 60 different gene mutations have been reported [28], and about 20–30% of dilated cardiomyopathy is familial. However, even in nonfamilial cases, genes that have not yet been identified are expected to be involved in the development of dilated cardiomyopathy [29]. Table 2 shows some of the gene mutations that are currently known. The genetic

Table 2 Genes and proteins involved in dilated cardiomyopathy

Genes	Protein
Sarcomere	
MYH6	α-Myosin heavy chain
MYH7	β-Myosin heavy chain
TPM1	α-Tropomyosin
ACTC1	α-Cardiac actin
TNNT2	Cardiac troponin T
TNNC1	Cardiac troponin C
TNNI3	Cardiac troponin I
MYBPC3	Myosin-binding protein C
TTN	Titin
TNNI3K	Troponin I-interacting kinase
Z-band	
ACTN2	α-Actinin 2
BAG3	BCL2-associated athanogene 3
CRYAB	α-B-crystallin
TCAP	Titin-cap/telethonin
CSRP3	Muscle LIM protein
ANKRD1	Cardiac ankyrin repeat protein
LDB3	Cypher/ZASP
NEBL	Nebulette
Dystrophin	
DMD	Dystrophin
DTNA	Dystrobrevin
SGCA	α-Sarcoglycan
SGCB	β-Sarcoglycan
SGCD	δ-Sarcoglycan
Cytoskeleton	
DES	Desmin
VCL	Metavinculin
FLNC	Filamin C
DSP	Desmoplakin
LAMA4	Laminin 4
Nucleus	
LMNA	Lamin A/C
EMD	Emerin
RBM20	RNA-binding protein 20
Ion channel and Ca handling	
PLN	Phospholamban
SCN5A	Type 5 voltage-gated cardiac Na channel
ABCC9	ATP-sensitive potassium channel
KCQN1	Potassium channel
Mitochondria	
DNAJC19	HSP40 homolog, C19
TAZ/G4.5	Tafazzin

mutations can be broadly divided into those within the sarcomere and those outside the sarcomere (Table 2). Looking at the frequency of occurrence, in familial dilated cardiomyopathy, titin is 25%, lamin A/C 6%, myosin heavy chain 7 7%, MYBPC3 (cardiac myosin-binding protein

C) 4%, troponin T type 2 (TNNT2) 3%, myosin heavy chain 6 3%, and sodium channel protein type 5 subunit alpha 3% [30, 31]. Furthermore, abnormalities in the titin gene are found in 18% of nonfamilial dilated cardiomyopathy and 3% of healthy individuals and are considered to be not rare [29]. The interaction of genetic and environmental factors may contribute to the disease manifestations in DCM patients.

2.2 Arrhythmogenic Right Ventricular Cardiomyopathy

The main feature of ARVC is myocardial fiber-fat infiltration, primarily in the right ventricle (RV), but LV may also be involved [32]. ARVC is autosomal dominant and incompletely permeable [2, 35, 36]. In ARVC, changes in the gene encoding desmosomal proteins have been identified as the cause of the disease [21, 33]. Mutations in these genes disrupt the integrity of desmosomes and can lead to muscle fiber tearing, fragmentation, and ultimately cell death during the cardiac cycle. Loss of desmosome function also affects cardiomyocyte gap junction remodeling, sodium channel function, and electrocardiographic parameters [21, 33]. In addition, perturbation of desmosome proteins promotes mesoderm precursor adipose formation by inhibiting the Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway, which plays an important role in cardiomyopathy [34–36]. As a result, fiber-fat replacement of the ventricular myocardium occurs mainly in RV [37].

2.3 Restrictive Cardiomyopathy

RCM is the least common of cardiomyopathy and usually has increased ventricular sclerosis, which prevents ventricular filling, without ventricular hypertrophy [20, 38]. Most of the disease-causing mutations are autosomal dominant, but there are also forms of autosomal recessive, X-linked, and mitochondrial inheritance. In RCM patients, changes in genes encoding sarcomere proteins (TNNT2, etc.), *Z*-disk proteins (MYPN, etc.), and transthyretin (TTR) have been confirmed [39].

2.4 Left Ventricular Noncompaction Cardiomyopathy (LVNC)

LVNC is characterized by prominent corpus cavernosum, a thin compression layer, and the most prominent deep corpus cavernosum depression at the LV apex [37]. Uncompressed extends to RV and may exhibit a biventricular or isolated RV uncompressed phenotype. The genetic form of LVNC is generally inherited as X-linked recessive or autosomal dominant [37] but heterogeneous. It has been confirmed that mutations in multiple genes are involved in the development of LVNC. These genes include genes encoding sarcomeres (such as MYH7), *Z*-disks (such as LDB3), nuclear envelopes (such as LMNA), mitochondria (such as TAZ), and ion channel proteins (such as SCN5A) [33].

3 Genome Editing in Cell Models of Cardiac Disease

Genome editing allowed to create allogeneic cell lines that differ only in the locus of interest. To create human ESC-based models, TALEN has been used for studying cardiomyopathy. TALEN construct was used to knock out 88 genes associated with cardiomyopathy and congenital heart disease [40] and was validated to effectively disrupt target loci. Mutations in the TNNT2 gene are well associated with autosomal dominant HCM with disarray of sarcomere and abnormal intracellular Ca^{2+} cycling [40].

Unlike ESCs, iPSCs have no ethical issues and are the most suitable model for studying cardiomyogenesis and cardiomyocyte in human cells [41], where human in vitro models are lacking [42]. Because CRISPR/Cas9 tools can be used to relatively efficiently and easily create homogeneous cell lines that differ only in the DNA sequence of interest [43], the differences in genetic background and epigenetic memory can be eliminated [43, 44]. So far, the CRISPR/

Cas9 system is an effective and useful tool for investigating the role of various genes and proteins in the human cells, especially in iPSCs [10, 45].

In the studies for cardiomyopathies, the CRISPR/Cas9 system was used to assess the pathogenicity of titin gene mutations in dilated cardiomyopathy. Missense or frameshift titin mutations were introduced into iPSCs, and then contractile disorders were evaluated by iPSC-cardiomyocyte (iPSC-CM) [46]. The HCM phenotype was able to be reproduced, and mutations in the RAF1 gene were identified as a cause of HCM through activation of mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase 1/2 and extracellular signal-regulated kinase 5 in people with Noonan syndrome using iPSC-CM and CRISPR/Cas9 [47]. Seeger et al. used CRISPR/Cas9 and TALEN to investigate the underlying mechanism of HCM associated with mutations in the MYBPC3 gene that introduces premature stop codons via aberrant Ca^{2+} handling and other molecular dysregulations [48]. Genome editing is also used to evaluate variant of unknown significance from the perspective of gene screening for HCM [49]. Through the correction of genetic mutations in iPSC-related disease model [50, 51], genome editing has already been applied in the study for treating various heart diseases [52].

4 Genome Editing in Animal Models

Introduction of genome-specific mutations in model organisms laid the foundation for the understanding of physiology and pathophysiology of the heart [53, 54]. In classical approaches, the researchers induced homologous recombination in mouse ESCs, selected mutant ESCs by antibiotic resistance, and excised antibiotic cassettes, and injected ESCs into blastocyst recipient mice [55]. In contrast, the CRISPR/Cas9-based technique allows the production of mutant mice in a single step, consisting of simultaneous injection of Cas9 mRNA, different sgRNA, and DNA donors into the zygotes [56]. In a mouse model of heart failure caused by overexpressed calsequestrin, the knockout of phospholamban by the CRISPR/Cas9-based technique improved cardiac function [57]. Furthermore, in mdx mice, CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing could be applied to zygotes to correct the mutations that cause Duchenne muscular dystrophy and restore dystrophin expression in cardiac tissue as well as skeletal muscle [58].

5 Germline and Somatic Genome as a Therapeutic Implication and Ethical Problems

The significance in the treatment using genome editing is to better the treatment of monogenic cardiovascular diseases that is currently ineffective or has minimal efficacy. Hereditary cardiomyopathies such as HCM and DMD are potential candidates for clinical application of genome editing technology for germ cells. In these diseases, a single gene mutation is involved in the expression of the disease. Editing germ cells can permanently improve the disease in the offspring of the affected or those with the deleterious mutation. In germline gene editing, several ethical issues must be considered, as both intended and unintended changes can be transmitted subsequently [17]. Social debate and public policy decisions need to be fast-tracked to determine when and how these therapies can be used clinically [17]. Mosaicism is a major concern. Although Ma et al. showed mosaicism can be largely avoided if the introduction of CRISPR is prior to the start of cell division and no off-target effect was not observed [59], it is unclear whether the human fetus can always recognize and correct such off-target effects [60]. Developing new base editing technologies may allow more accurate correction of mutations in selective cases.

Somatic genome editing may eventually be applicable to the treatment for various diseases with the interaction of genetic and environmental factors in the development of the disease [17]. Partial or complete gene knockout is favorable in the treatment of atherosclerosis and hyperlipidemia. Somatic genome editing may also be applicable in the postnatal treatment of

monogenic diseases, as germline genome editing may be more ethically controversial than somatic genome editing [17]. There are technical challenges of introducing Cas9-gRNA (immune response to viral vectors, introduction of nonviral vectors, vector size) to be solved in large animals and humans.

6 Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy and Genome Editing

About one-third of human HCM are due to the mutations in MYBPC3, and hereditary DCM are also involved with the mutations in MYBPC3 [61]. Ma et al. recently used CRISPR/Cas9 to correct mutations in MYBPC3 in human germ cells [59]. Recombinant Cas9 protein with gRNA and ssODN DNA were injected into human zygotes derived from healthy donor oocytes and sperm from a male donor heterozygous for MYBPC3 mutation. Although the two-third of embryos injected by this method showed homozygous wild-type genotype, one-fourth of embryos showed mosaicism, and about 9% of embryos showed heterozygous mutant genotypes [59]. This mosaicism could be attributed to the failure of CRISPR to correct all mutant genes after cell division. In addition, when Cas9 was injected into M-stage oocytes with sperm, about 70% of the embryos obtained showed homozygous wild-type genotype, with no mosaic or mutant genotypes [59]. The lack of mosaicism in the embryos was probably due to genetic correction during embryogenesis. The remaining 27% of embryos were uniformly heterozygous due to wild-type alleles and nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ)-mediated repair. Furthermore, examination of the germ genome sequence targeting CRISPR/Cas9 did not show a significant off-target effect [59]. This study demonstrates that CRISPR/Cas9 can be used to eliminate disease-causing mutations in human embryos for the first time and that modifying the timing of Cas9 injection during embryogenesis can greatly improve the efficiency of homology-directed repair (HDR) [59].

Even in HCM, somatic genome editing is considered possible because cardiac hypertrophy, myocardial fibrosis, and symptom development are generally slow processes. Mearini et al. used non-mutated Mybpc3 cDNA without CRISPR/Cas9 in AAV vectors to Mybpc3 knockout mice [62]. Functional cMyBP-C was increased to 60% of wild-type levels without cardiac hypertrophy and cardiac dysfunction in mice [62]. Viral delivery has the size problem to package SpCas9 enzymes, but other smaller Cas9 enzymes can be used [63]. However, it should be understood that HDR is uncommon in somatic cells and, therefore, there are hurdles to gene correction in human myocardium.

7 Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy and Genome Editing

Mutations in the DMD gene, which encodes dystrophin, a long gene with 79 exons caused DMD, a relatively common X-linked disease with progressive atrophy of the skeletal muscle and heart muscle. Since DMD is an inherited disease and there is no effective treatment, it is attracting attention as a candidate for germline genome editing [16].

When Cas9, gRNA targeting exon 23, and template ssODN DNA were injected into the zygotes of mice with a nonsense Dmd mutation, mosaicism in most animals was observed by sequencing of Dmd exon 23 in these modified mice [58]. Improved skeletal muscle function was observed in the majority of animals, even if functional dystrophin had been partially restored by either NHEJ or HDR [58]. Recently, attempts have been made to correct genetic mutations by introducing AAV-Cas9-gRNA. This approach can utilize two viral systems with appropriate Cas9 (less than 4.7 kB in size) or a split intein Cas9 equally distributed with gRNA in two AAVs. Both approaches have proven to be effective in large animal models [64, 65].

Many of the in vivo studies developing CRISPR therapies for DMD have been conducted over a short period of time. Assessments of therapeutic efficacy are typically performed at 3–14 weeks postinjection, which is not a long enough period to evaluate the long-term effects of treatment. It is also not surprising that these

studies failed to assess the ability of CRISPR therapy to improve cardiac function, given that the injections were initiated in mice of relatively young age (P1–11 weeks old) and mostly used mdx models. According to one study, signs of cardiac dysfunction are developed in mdx mice around 18 months of age [66]. This highlights the need for longer-term evaluation.

Recently, addressing the above limitations, the long-term effects in mdx mice of DMD CRISPR treatment have been published [67–69]. In all of them, exon 23 of the Dmd gene, which is intended for deletion, is injected alone or together with exons 21 and 22 to generate in-frame transcripts for dystrophin translation. Assessment of therapeutic effects was done between 12 and 19 months after injection. Recovery of dystrophin in the heart was sustained in three studies, with one study observing protein expression of dystrophin up to 20% of normal at 18 months posttreatment [67]. In addition, immunohistochemical studies showed the development of the dystrophin-positive fibers with significant improvement in cardiac function with CRISPR treatment [67, 68]. These indicate the promise of CRISPR for the treatment of DMD-related cardiomyopathy in patients.

In addition, various treatments are being used to re-express dystrophin. Ataluren, a small molecule compound, is being tested in DMD to achieve read-through of stop codons. In addition, eteplirsen has received FDA approval as a treatment for exon skipping using antisense oligonucleotides. Three types of microdystrophin encoded by AAV vectors are being tested in clinical trials by various companies, and future results are expected [70].

8 Transthyretin Cardiac Amyloidosis

To find the optimal way to deliver the CRISPR/Cas9 component to the cells of interest is important. Viral vectors are not the sole methods for this purpose. Transthyretin (TTR) myocardial amyloidosis is a myocardial invasive disease caused by abnormal prealbumin (transthyretin) protein deposition, either a hereditary TTR gene mutation or wild-type transthyretin accumulation. Most of the transthyretin is produced in the liver, which may make it an attractive candidate for somatic genome editing. Finn et al. administered lipid nanoparticles packaged with Cas9 mRNA and gRNA targeting the TTR gene to mice and found a significant reduction in serum TTR levels (97% or more) [71]. It is unclear whether this method can rescue or prevent the phenotype of the disease and further studies would be needed. Other nonviral vectors (such as microbubbles) that can selectively destroy the target tissue with ultrasound and locally introduce the vector are also interesting [72].

9 Long QT Syndrome

Long QT syndrome (LQTS) is an attractive candidate for genome editing. Limpitikul et al. used iPS-CM derived from a patient with a calmodulin 2 mutation, characterized the phenotype of LQTS [73], and treated with CRISPR interference to reduce calmodulin protein and action potential duration indicating that postnatal correction of this disease is possible. Further studies are needed to apply these results to different types of genetic mutations and apply to large animals to validate the corrected phenotype.

10 Future Directions in CRISPR and Cardiomyopathy Treatment

Because CRISPR is currently a mainstream technology and most research is directed toward improving this technology, the advances in CRISPR are focused. An ongoing area of research is how to increase the HDR rate of CRISPR in the heart; HDR only occurs in the cell cycle S and G2 phases [74]. Since the heart is basically composed of postmitotic cells, the main mode of DNA repair is NHEJ, which may be undesirable if the intended strategy is gene replacement or knock-in. There are also safety concerns as the unpredictable formation of NHEJ indels can cause

off-target effects. Several strategies have been devised to suppress NHEJ and promote HDR repair, for example, the use of small molecule compounds such as Src7 that inhibit DNA ligase IV [75, 76], shRNA knockdown of KU70 and KU80 [76], genome editing combined with cell cycle synchronization [77], and use of geminin-Cas9 fusion protein [78].

Homology-independent targeted integration (HITI), a new genome editing strategy developed by Suzuki et al. in 2016 [79], is another relatively recent advance. HITI works like a hybrid of NHEJ and HDR. The main advantage of HITI is that it is efficient in actively proliferating cells as well as in nondividing cells. In addition, intravenous administration of HITI-CRISPR/Cas9 has been shown to knock in cardiac genes at a much higher rate than HDR. It will be very interesting to see if HITI can be applied to the treatment of cardiomyopathy in the future.

Attempts to reduce the off-target effects associated with genome editing, especially CRISPR, are also underway. The main strategies can be divided into two, depending on which CRISPR component is modified: one approach focuses on the Cas enzyme. Besides engineering Cas9 itself, the group has also divided the enzyme in half so that it can only cleave double-stranded DNA when both are at the target site [80, 81]. These so-called paired nickases may be more efficient than the original single enzyme [82]. Self-repression mechanisms have also been devised to reduce Cas9 transcription and/or translation by simultaneous administration of gRNAs to the genome of delivery vectors or by the use of synthetic repression systems [83–85]. Another approach aims to enhance the design of gRNAs. gRNA sequences, lengths, and chemical properties are being optimized, and the development of bioinformatics tools is further aiding in the screening of gRNAs [86–90]. Guide-seq [91] and Digenome-seq [92] are more robust and comprehensive methods for assessing off-target effects in the genome, and they will further facilitate efforts to mitigate concerns related to the safety of genome editing for therapy.

11 Advances in Nonviral Delivery System

Although AAV9-based protease-activated AAVs have recently been demonstrated to specifically deliver transgenes to the heart of a mouse model of myocardial infarction [93], the current trend is to develop nonviral delivery methods for genome editing [16]. Immunogenicity, integration of undesirable viral genomes, and packaging are the major limitations in viral vectors, and nonviral delivery overcomes these problems. Examples of nonviral approaches are lipid nanoparticles, polymer-based particles, cell-infiltrating peptides, DNA nanoparticles, and inorganic nanoparticles (silicon or zinc-based) [94–96]. The use of gold nanoparticles for the delivery of CRISPR/Cas9 (CRISPR-Gold) has been applied to correct the Dmd point mutation in mdx mice via HDR [97]. It is still unclear whether CRISPR-Gold shows effective targeting to the heart. The application of such a nonviral delivery approach to the heart may improve the study of cardiomyopathy.

12 Conclusions

Genome editing is a powerful tool for modifying cell lines and organisms in order to study the biological and pathophysiological mechanisms as well as therapeutic implications of various genetic diseases [16–18]. Genome editing of germ cells is one of the most promising technologies. Genome editing of germ cells is expected to make monogenic cardiovascular disorders permanent in offspring and future generations. Although technically straightforward and likely to be introduced into humans in the future, germline genome editing is ethically controversial. Technical issues such as off-target effects, mosaicism, and long-term risks need to be more fully addressed. Somatic genome editing can be used for cardiovascular diseases in which gene knockout, if partial, is favorable. It also has several technical challenges to be resolved successfully applied in humans.

Conflicts of Interest None reported.

References

1. Strong A, Musunuru K (2017) Genome editing in cardiovascular diseases. Nat Rev Cardiol 14(1): 11–20
2. Bitinaite J, Wah DA, Aggarwal AK, Schildkraut I (1998) FokI dimerization is required for DNA cleavage. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95(18):10570–10575
3. Kim YG, Cha J, Chandrasegaran S (1996) Hybrid restriction enzymes: zinc finger fusions to Fok I cleavage domain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93(3): 1156–1160
4. Urnov FD, Rebar EJ, Holmes MC, Zhang HS, Gregory PD (2010) Genome editing with engineered zinc finger nucleases. Nat Rev Genet 11(9):636–646
5. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
6. Boch J, Scholze H, Schornack S, Landgraf A, Hahn S, Kay S, Lahaye T, Nickstadt A, Bonas U (2009) Breaking the code of DNA binding specificity of TAL-type III effectors. Science 326(5959): 1509–1512
7. Bogdanove AJ, Voytas DF (2011) TAL effectors: customizable proteins for DNA targeting. Science 333(6051):1843–1846
8. Moscou MJ, Bogdanove AJ (2009) A simple cipher governs DNA recognition by TAL effectors. Science 326(5959):1501
9. Christian M, Cermak T, Doyle EL, Schmidt C, Zhang F, Hummel A, Bogdanove AJ, Voytas DF (2010) Targeting DNA double-strand breaks with TAL effector nucleases. Genetics 186(2):757–761
10. Cong L, Ran FA, Cox D, Lin S, Barretto R, Habib N, Hsu PD, Wu X, Jiang W, Marraffini LA, Zhang F (2013) Multiplex genome engineering using CRISPR/Cas systems. Science 339(6121):819–823
11. Mali P, Yang L, Esvelt KM, Aach J, Guell M, DiCarlo JE, Norville JE, Church GM (2013) RNA-guided human genome engineering via Cas9. Science 339(6121):823–826
12. Hwang WY, Fu Y, Reyon D, Maeder ML, Tsai SQ, Sander JD, Peterson RT, Yeh JR, Joung JK (2013) Efficient genome editing in zebrafish using a CRISPR-Cas system. Nat Biotechnol 31(3):227–229
13. Cho SW, Kim S, Kim JM, Kim JS (2013) Targeted genome engineering in human cells with the Cas9 RNA-guided endonuclease. Nat Biotechnol 31(3): 230–232
14. Zetsche B, Gootenberg JS, Abudayyeh OO, Slaymaker IM, Makarova KS, Essletzbichler P, Volz SE, Joung J, van der Oost J, Regev A, Koonin EV, Zhang F (2015) Cpf1 is a single RNA-guided endonuclease of a class 2 CRISPR-Cas system. Cell 163(3):759–771
15. Ohiri JC, McNally EM (2018) Gene editing and gene-based therapeutics for cardiomyopathies. Heart Fail Clin 14(2):179–188
16. Nguyen Q, Lim KRQ, Yokota T (2020) Genome editing for the understanding and treatment of inherited cardiomyopathies. Int J Mol Sci 21(3):733
17. German DM, Mitalipov S, Mishra A, Kaul S (2019) Therapeutic genome editing in cardiovascular diseases. JACC Basic Transl Sci 4(1):122–131
18. Motta BM, Pramstaller PP, Hicks AA, Rossini A (2017) The impact of CRISPR/Cas9 technology on cardiac research: from disease modelling to therapeutic approaches. Stem Cells Int 2017:8960236
19. Maron BJ (2018) Clinical course and management of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. N Engl J Med 379(7): 655–668
20. Maron BJ, Towbin JA, Thiene G, Antzelevitch C, Corrado D, Arnett D, Moss AJ, Seidman CE, Young JB (2006) Contemporary definitions and classification of the cardiomyopathies: an American Heart Association Scientific Statement from the Council on Clinical Cardiology, Heart Failure and Transplantation Committee; Quality of Care and Outcomes Research and Functional Genomics and Translational Biology Interdisciplinary Working Groups; and Council on Epidemiology and Prevention. Circulation 113(14):1807–1816
21. Watkins H, Ashrafian H, Redwood C (2011) Inherited cardiomyopathies. N Engl J Med 364(17): 1643–1656
22. Elliott P, Andersson B, Arbustini E, Bilinska Z, Cecchi F, Charron P, Dubourg O, Kühl U, Maisch B, McKenna WJ, Monserrat L, Pankuweit S, Rapezzi C, Seferovic P, Tavazzi L, Keren A (2008) Classification of the cardiomyopathies: a position statement from the European Society of Cardiology Working Group on Myocardial and Pericardial Diseases. Eur Heart J 29(2):270–276
23. Kamisago M, Sharma SD, DePalma SR, Solomon S, Sharma P, McDonough B, Smoot L, Mullen MP, Woolf PK, Wigle ED, Seidman JG, Seidman CE (2000) Mutations in sarcomere protein genes as a cause of dilated cardiomyopathy. N Engl J Med 343(23):1688–1696
24. Olivotto I, Cecchi F, Poggesi C, Yacoub MH (2012) Patterns of disease progression in hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: an individualized approach to clinical staging. Circ Heart Fail 5(4):535–546
25. Marian AJ, Braunwald E (2017) Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: genetics, pathogenesis, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and therapy. Circ Res 121(7):749–770
26. Miura M, Sakata Y, Miyata S, Nochioka K, Takada T, Tadaki S, Takahashi J, Shiba N, Shimokawa H (2013) Usefulness of combined risk stratification with heart rate and systolic blood pressure in the management of chronic heart failure. A

report from the CHART-2 study. Circ J 77(12): 2954–2962

27. Nakada Y, Kawakami R, Nakano T, Takitsume A, Nakagawa H, Ueda T, Nishida T, Onoue K, Soeda T, Okayama S, Takeda Y, Watanabe M, Kawata H, Okura H, Saito Y (2016) Sex differences in clinical characteristics and long-term outcome in acute decompensated heart failure patients with preserved and reduced ejection fraction. Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol 310(7):H813–H820
28. Japp AG, Gulati A, Cook SA, Cowie MR, Prasad SK (2016) The diagnosis and evaluation of dilated cardiomyopathy. J Am Coll Cardiol 67(25):2996–3010
29. Herman DS, Lam L, Taylor MR, Wang L, Teekakirikul P, Christodoulou D, Conner L, DePalma SR, McDonough B, Sparks E, Teodorescu DL, Cirino AL, Banner NR, Pennell DJ, Graw S, Merlo M, Di Lenarda A, Sinagra G, Bos JM, Ackerman MJ, Mitchell RN, Murry CE, Lakdawala NK, Ho CY, Barton PJ, Cook SA, Mestroni L, Seidman JG, Seidman CE (2012) Truncations of titin causing dilated cardiomyopathy. N Engl J Med 366(7):619–628
30. Hershberger RE, Siegfried JD (2011) Update 2011: clinical and genetic issues in familial dilated cardiomyopathy. J Am Coll Cardiol 57(16):1641–1649
31. Rajan S, Ahmed RP, Jagatheesan G, Petrashevskaya N, Boivin GP, Urboniene D, Arteaga GM, Wolska BM, Solaro RJ, Liggett SB, Wieczorek DF (2007) Dilated cardiomyopathy mutant tropomyosin mice develop cardiac dysfunction with significantly decreased fractional shortening and myofilament calcium sensitivity. Circ Res 101(2): 205–214
32. Sen-Chowdhry S, Morgan RD, Chambers JC, McKenna WJ (2010) Arrhythmogenic cardiomyopathy: etiology, diagnosis, and treatment. Annu Rev Med 61:233–253
33. Towbin JA (2014) Inherited cardiomyopathies. Circ J 78(10):2347–2356
34. Garcia-Gras E, Lombardi R, Giocondo MJ, Willerson JT, Schneider MD, Khoury DS, Marian AJ (2006) Suppression of canonical Wnt/beta-catenin signaling by nuclear plakoglobin recapitulates phenotype of arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy. J Clin Investig 116(7):2012–2021
35. Lombardi R, Dong J, Rodriguez G, Bell A, Leung TK, Schwartz RJ, Willerson JT, Brugada R, Marian AJ (2009) Genetic fate mapping identifies second heart field progenitor cells as a source of adipocytes in arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy. Circ Res 104(9):1076–1084
36. Djouadi F, Lecarpentier Y, Hébert JL, Charron P, Bastin J, Coirault C (2009) A potential link between peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor signalling and the pathogenesis of arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy. Cardiovasc Res 84(1):83–90
37. Towbin JA (2010) Left ventricular noncompaction: a new form of heart failure. Heart Fail Clin 6(4): 453–469, viii
38. Sen-Chowdhry S, Syrris P, McKenna WJ (2010) Genetics of restrictive cardiomyopathy. Heart Fail Clin 6(2):179–186
39. Caleshu C, Sakhuja R, Nussbaum RL, Schiller NB, Ursell PC, Eng C, De Marco T, McGlothlin D, Burchard EG, Rame JE (2011) Furthering the link between the sarcomere and primary cardiomyopathies: restrictive cardiomyopathy associated with multiple mutations in genes previously associated with hypertrophic or dilated cardiomyopathy. Am J Med Genet A 155A(9):2229–2235
40. Karakikes I, Termglinchan V, Cepeda DA, Lee J, Diecke S, Hendel A, Itzhaki I, Ameen M, Shrestha R, Wu H, Ma N, Shao NY, Seeger T, Woo N, Wilson KD, Matsa E, Porteus MH, Sebastiano V, Wu JC (2017) A comprehensive TALEN-based knockout library for generating human-induced pluripotent stem cell-based models for cardiovascular diseases. Circ Res 120(10): 1561–1571
41. Zwi L, Caspi O, Arbel G, Huber I, Gepstein A, Park IH, Gepstein L (2009) Cardiomyocyte differentiation of human induced pluripotent stem cells. Circulation 120(15):1513–1523
42. Yang C, Al-Aama J, Stojkovic M, Keavney B, Trafford A, Lako M, Armstrong L (2015) Concise review: cardiac disease modeling using induced pluripotent stem cells. Stem Cells 33(9):2643–2651
43. Grobarczyk B, Franco B, Hanon K, Malgrange B (2015) Generation of isogenic human iPS cell line precisely corrected by genome editing using the CRISPR/Cas9 system. Stem Cell Rev Rep 11(5): 774–787
44. Zhang M, D'Aniello C, Verkerk AO, Wrobel E, Frank S, Ward-van Oostwaard D, Piccini I, Freund C, Rao J, Seebohm G, Atsma DE, Schulze-Bahr E, Mummery CL, Greber B, Bellin M (2014) Recessive cardiac phenotypes in induced pluripotent stem cell models of Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome: disease mechanisms and pharmacological rescue. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111(50):E5383–E5392
45. Merkle FT, Neuhausser WM, Santos D, Valen E, Gagnon JA, Maas K, Sandoe J, Schier AF, Eggan K (2015) Efficient CRISPR-Cas9-mediated generation of knockin human pluripotent stem cells lacking undesired mutations at the targeted locus. Cell Rep 11(6):875–883. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.celrep.2015.04.007
46. Hinson JT, Chopra A, Nafissi N, Polacheck WJ, Benson CC, Swist S, Gorham J, Yang L, Schafer S, Sheng CC, Haghighi A, Homsy J, Hubner N, Church G, Cook SA, Linke WA, Chen CS, Seidman JG, Seidman CE (2015) HEART DISEASE. Titin mutations in iPS cells define sarcomere insufficiency

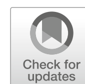
as a cause of dilated cardiomyopathy. Science 349(6251):982–986
47. Jaffré F, Miller CL, Schänzer A, Evans T, Roberts AE, Hahn A, Kontaridis MI (2019) Inducible pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes reveal aberrant extracellular regulated kinase 5 and mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase 1/2 signaling concomitantly promote hypertrophic cardiomyopathy in RAF1-associated Noonan syndrome. Circulation 140(3):207–224
48. Seeger T, Shrestha R, Lam CK, Chen C, McKeithan WL, Lau E, Wnorowski A, McMullen G, Greenhaw M, Lee J, Oikonomopoulos A, Lee S, Yang H, Mercola M, Wheeler M, Ashley EA, Yang F, Karakikes I, Wu JC (2019) A premature termination codon mutation in MYBPC3 causes hypertrophic cardiomyopathy via chronic activation of nonsense-mediated decay. Circulation 139(6): 799–811
49. Ma N, Zhang JZ, Itzhaki I, Zhang SL, Chen H, Haddad F, Kitani T, Wilson KD, Tian L, Shrestha R, Wu H, Lam CK, Sayed N, Wu JC (2018) Determining the pathogenicity of a genomic variant of uncertain significance using CRISPR/Cas9 and human-induced pluripotent stem cells. Circulation 138(23):2666–2681
50. Lim KRQ, Yoon C, Yokota T (2018) Applications of CRISPR/Cas9 for the treatment of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. J Pers Med 8(4):38
51. Piga D, Salani S, Magri F, Brusa R, Mauri E, Comi GP, Bresolin N, Corti S (2019) Human induced pluripotent stem cell models for the study and treatment of Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophies. Ther Adv Neurol Disord 12:1756286419833478
52. Macadangdang J, Guan X, Smith AS, Lucero R, Czerniecki S, Childers MK, Mack DL, Kim DH (2015) Nanopatterned human iPSC-based model of a dystrophin-null cardiomyopathic phenotype. Cell Mol Bioeng 8(3):320–332. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12195-015-0413-8
53. Milani-Nejad N, Janssen PM (2014) Small and large animal models in cardiac contraction research: advantages and disadvantages. Pharmacol Ther 141(3):235–249
54. Zaragoza C, Gomez-Guerrero C, Martin-Ventura JL, Blanco-Colio L, Lavin B, Mallavia B, Tarin C, Mas S, Ortiz A, Egido J (2011) Animal models of cardiovascular diseases. J Biomed Biotechnol 2011: 497841
55. Hall B, Limaye A, Kulkarni AB (2009) Overview: generation of gene knockout mice. Curr Protoc Cell Biol Chapter 19(Unit 19.12):19.12.11-17
56. Yang H, Wang H, Shivalila CS, Cheng AW, Shi L, Jaenisch R (2013) One-step generation of mice carrying reporter and conditional alleles by CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome engineering. Cell 154(6): 1370–1379
57. Kaneko M, Hashikami K, Yamamoto S, Matsumoto H, Nishimoto T (2016) Phospholamban ablation using CRISPR/Cas9 system improves mortality in a murine heart failure model. PLoS One 11(12):e0168486
58. Long C, McAnally JR, Shelton JM, Mireault AA, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2014) Prevention of muscular dystrophy in mice by CRISPR/Cas9-mediated editing of germline DNA. Science 345(6201): 1184–1188
59. Ma H, Marti-Gutierrez N, Park SW, Wu J, Lee Y, Suzuki K, Koski A, Ji D, Hayama T, Ahmed R, Darby H, Van Dyken C, Li Y, Kang E, Park AR, Kim D, Kim ST, Gong J, Gu Y, Xu X, Battaglia D, Krieg SA, Lee DM, Wu DH, Wolf DP, Heitner SB, Belmonte JCI, Amato P, Kim JS, Kaul S, Mitalipov S (2017) Correction of a pathogenic gene mutation in human embryos. Nature 548(7668):413–419
60. Fu Y, Foden JA, Khayter C, Maeder ML, Reyon D, Joung JK, Sander JD (2013) High-frequency off-target mutagenesis induced by CRISPR-Cas nucleases in human cells. Nat Biotechnol 31(9): 822–826
61. Schlossarek S, Mearini G, Carrier L (2011) Cardiac myosin-binding protein C in hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: mechanisms and therapeutic opportunities. J Mol Cell Cardiol 50(4):613–620
62. Mearini G, Stimpel D, Geertz B, Weinberger F, Krämer E, Schlossarek S, Mourot-Filiatre J, Stoehr A, Dutsch A, Wijnker PJ, Braren I, Katus HA, Müller OJ, Voit T, Eschenhagen T, Carrier L (2014) Mybpc3 gene therapy for neonatal cardiomyopathy enables long-term disease prevention in mice. Nat Commun 5:5515
63. Ribeiro LF, Ribeiro LFC, Barreto MQ, Ward RJ (2018) Protein engineering strategies to expand CRISPR-Cas9 applications. Int J Genomics 2018: 1652567
64. Amoasii L, Hildyard JCW, Li H, Sanchez-Ortiz E, Mireault A, Caballero D, Harron R, Stathopoulou TR, Massey C, Shelton JM, Bassel-Duby R, Piercy RJ, Olson EN (2018) Gene editing restores dystrophin expression in a canine model of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Science 362(6410):86–91
65. Moretti A, Fonteyne L, Giesert F, Hoppmann P, Meier AB, Bozoglu T, Baehr A, Schneider CM, Sinnecker D, Klett K, Fröhlich T, Rahman FA, Haufe T, Sun S, Jurisch V, Kessler B, Hinkel R, Dirschinger R, Martens E, Jilek C, Graf A, Krebs S, Santamaria G, Kurome M, Zakhartchenko V, Campbell B, Voelse K, Wolf A, Ziegler T, Reichert S, Lee S, Flenkenthaler F, Dorn T, Jeremias I, Blum H, Dendorfer A, Schnieke A, Krause S, Walter MC, Klymiuk N, Laugwitz KL, Wolf E, Wurst W, Kupatt C (2020) Somatic gene editing ameliorates skeletal and cardiac muscle failure in pig and human models of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Nat Med 26(2):207–214
66. Van Erp C, Loch D, Laws N, Trebbin A, Hoey AJ (2010) Timeline of cardiac dystrophy in 3-18-month-old MDX mice. Muscle Nerve 42(4):504–513

67. Hakim CH, Wasala NB, Nelson CE, Wasala LP, Yue Y, Louderman JA, Lessa TB, Dai A, Zhang K, Jenkins GJ, Nance ME, Pan X, Kodippili K, Yang NN, Chen SJ, Gersbach CA, Duan D (2018) AAV CRISPR editing rescues cardiac and muscle function for 18 months in dystrophic mice. JCI Insight 3(23): e124297
68. Xu L, Lau YS, Gao Y, Li H, Han R (2019) Life-Long AAV-mediated CRISPR genome editing in dystrophic heart improves cardiomyopathy without causing serious lesions in mdx mice. Mol Ther 27(8): 1407–1414
69. Nelson CE, Wu Y, Gemberling MP, Oliver ML, Waller MA, Bohning JD, Robinson-Hamm JN, Bulaklak K, Castellanos Rivera RM, Collier JH, Asokan A, Gersbach CA (2019) Long-term evaluation of AAV-CRISPR genome editing for Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Nat Med 25(3):427–432
70. Kupatt C, Windisch A, Moretti A, Wolf E, Wurst W, Walter MC (2021) Genome editing for Duchenne muscular dystrophy: a glimpse of the future? Gene Ther 28(9):542–548. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41434-021-00222-4
71. Finn JD, Smith AR, Patel MC, Shaw L, Youniss MR, van Heteren J, Dirstine T, Ciullo C, Lescarbeau R, Seitzer J, Shah RR, Shah A, Ling D, Growe J, Pink M, Rohde E, Wood KM, Salomon WE, Harrington WF, Dombrowski C, Strapps WR, Chang Y, Morrissey DV (2018) A single administration of CRISPR/Cas9 lipid nanoparticles achieves robust and persistent in vivo genome editing. Cell Rep 22(9):2227–2235
72. Christiansen JP, French BA, Klibanov AL, Kaul S, Lindner JR (2003) Targeted tissue transfection with ultrasound destruction of plasmid-bearing cationic microbubbles. Ultrasound Med Biol 29(12): 1759–1767
73. Limpitikul WB, Dick IE, Tester DJ, Boczek NJ, Limphong P, Yang W, Choi MH, Babich J, DiSilvestre D, Kanter RJ, Tomaselli GF, Ackerman MJ, Yue DT (2017) A precision medicine approach to the rescue of function on malignant calmodulinopathic long-QT syndrome. Circ Res 120(1):39–48
74. Chapman JR, Taylor MR, Boulton SJ (2012) Playing the end game: DNA double-strand break repair pathway choice. Mol Cell 47(4):497–510
75. Maruyama T, Dougan SK, Truttmann MC, Bilate AM, Ingram JR, Ploegh HL (2015) Increasing the efficiency of precise genome editing with CRISPR-Cas9 by inhibition of nonhomologous end joining. Nat Biotechnol 33(5):538–542
76. Chu VT, Weber T, Wefers B, Wurst W, Sander S, Rajewsky K, Kühn R (2015) Increasing the efficiency of homology-directed repair for CRISPR-Cas9-induced precise gene editing in mammalian cells. Nat Biotechnol 33(5):543–548
77. Lin S, Staahl BT, Alla RK, Doudna JA (2014) Enhanced homology-directed human genome engineering by controlled timing of CRISPR/Cas9 delivery. Elife 3:e04766
78. Howden SE, McColl B, Glaser A, Vadolas J, Petrou S, Little MH, Elefanty AG, Stanley EG (2016) A Cas9 variant for efficient generation of indel-free knockin or gene-corrected human pluripotent stem cells. Stem Cell Reports 7(3): 508–517
79. Suzuki K, Tsunekawa Y, Hernandez-Benitez R, Wu J, Zhu J, Kim EJ, Hatanaka F, Yamamoto M, Araoka T, Li Z, Kurita M, Hishida T, Li M, Aizawa E, Guo S, Chen S, Goebl A, Soligalla RD, Qu J, Jiang T, Fu X, Jafari M, Esteban CR, Berggren WT, Lajara J, Nuñez-Delicado E, Guillen P, Campistol JM, Matsuzaki F, Liu GH, Magistretti P, Zhang K, Callaway EM, Zhang K, Belmonte JC (2016) In vivo genome editing via CRISPR/Cas9 mediated homology-independent targeted integration. Nature 540(7631):144–149
80. Ran FA, Hsu PD, Lin CY, Gootenberg JS, Konermann S, Trevino AE, Scott DA, Inoue A, Matoba S, Zhang Y, Zhang F (2013) Double nicking by RNA-guided CRISPR Cas9 for enhanced genome editing specificity. Cell 154(6):1380–1389
81. Shen B, Zhang W, Zhang J, Zhou J, Wang J, Chen L, Wang L, Hodgkins A, Iyer V, Huang X, Skarnes WC (2014) Efficient genome modification by CRISPR-Cas9 nickase with minimal off-target effects. Nat Methods 11(4):399–402
82. Gopalappa R, Suresh B, Ramakrishna S, Kim HH (2018) Paired D10A Cas9 nickases are sometimes more efficient than individual nucleases for gene disruption. Nucleic Acids Res 46(12):e71
83. Chen Y, Liu X, Zhang Y, Wang H, Ying H, Liu M, Li D, Lui KO, Ding Q (2016) A self-restricted CRISPR system to reduce off-target effects. Mol Ther 24(9):1508–1510. https://doi.org/10.1038/mt.2016.172
84. Shen CC, Hsu MN, Chang CW, Lin MW, Hwu JR, Tu Y, Hu YC (2019) Synthetic switch to minimize CRISPR off-target effects by self-restricting Cas9 transcription and translation. Nucleic Acids Res 47(3):e13
85. Moore R, Spinhirne A, Lai MJ, Preisser S, Li Y, Kang T, Bleris L (2015) CRISPR-based self-cleaving mechanism for controllable gene delivery in human cells. Nucleic Acids Res 43(2):1297–1303
86. Tycko J, Myer VE, Hsu PD (2016) Methods for optimizing CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing specificity. Mol Cell 63(3):355–370. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molcel.2016.07.004
87. Pattanayak V, Lin S, Guilinger JP, Ma E, Doudna JA, Liu DR (2013) High-throughput profiling of off-target DNA cleavage reveals RNA-programmed Cas9 nuclease specificity. Nat Biotechnol 31(9): 839–843
88. Fu Y, Sander JD, Reyon D, Cascio VM, Joung JK (2014) Improving CRISPR-Cas nuclease specificity using truncated guide RNAs. Nat Biotechnol 32(3): 279–284
89. Filippova J, Matveeva A, Zhuravlev E, Stepanov G (2019) Guide RNA modification as a way to improve

CRISPR/Cas9-based genome-editing systems. Biochimie 167:49–60
90. Wang D, Zhang C, Wang B, Li B, Wang Q, Liu D, Wang H, Zhou Y, Shi L, Lan F, Wang Y (2019) Optimized CRISPR guide RNA design for two high-fidelity Cas9 variants by deep learning. Nat Commun 10(1):4284
91. Tsai SQ, Zheng Z, Nguyen NT, Liebers M, Topkar VV, Thapar V, Wyvekens N, Khayter C, Iafrate AJ, Le LP, Aryee MJ, Joung JK (2015) GUIDE-seq enables genome-wide profiling of off-target cleavage by CRISPR-Cas nucleases. Nat Biotechnol 33(2): 187–197
92. Kim D, Bae S, Park J, Kim E, Kim S, Yu HR, Hwang J, Kim JI, Kim JS (2015) Digenome-seq: genome-wide profiling of CRISPR-Cas9 off-target effects in human cells. Nat Methods 12(3):237–243, 1 p following 243
93. Guenther CM, Brun MJ, Bennett AD, Ho ML, Chen W, Zhu B, Lam M, Yamagami M, Kwon S, Bhattacharya N, Sousa D, Evans AC, Voss J, Sevick-Muraca EM, Agbandje-McKenna M, Suh J (2019) Protease-Activatable adeno-associated virus vector for gene delivery to damaged heart tissue. Mol Ther 27(3):611–622
94. Hardee CL, Arévalo-Soliz LM, Hornstein BD, Zechiedrich L (2017) Advances in non-viral DNA vectors for gene therapy. Genes (Basel) 8(2):65
95. Tong S, Moyo B, Lee CM, Leong K, Bao G (2019) Engineered materials for in vivo delivery of genome-editing machinery. Nat Rev Mater 4(11):726–737
96. Wilbie D, Walther J, Mastrobattista E (2019) Delivery aspects of CRISPR/Cas for in vivo genome editing. Acc Chem Res 52(6):1555–1564
97. Lee K, Conboy M, Park HM, Jiang F, Kim HJ, Dewitt MA, Mackley VA, Chang K, Rao A, Skinner C, Shobha T, Mehdipour M, Liu H, Huang WC, Lan F, Bray NL, Li S, Corn JE, Kataoka K, Doudna JA, Conboy I, Murthy N (2017) Nanoparticle delivery of Cas9 ribonucleoprotein and donor DNA in vivo induces homology-directed DNA repair. Nat Biom Eng 1:889–901
98. Geisterfer-Lowrance AAT, Christe M, Conner DA, Ingwall JS, Schoen FJ, Seidman CE, Seidman JG (1996) A mouse model of familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Science 272(5262):731–734
99. Hueneke R, Adenwala A, Mellor RL, Seidman JG, Seidman CE, Nerbonne JM (2017) Early remodeling of repolarizing K(+) currents in the αMHC(403/+) mouse model of familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. J Mol Cell Cardiol 103:93–101
100. Rehmani T, Salih M, Tuana BS (2019) Cardiac-specific Cre induces age-dependent dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM) in mice. Molecules 24(6):–1189
101. Woodman SE, Park DS, Cohen AW, Cheung MW, Chandra M, Shirani J, Tang B, Jelicks LA, Kitsis RN, Christ GJ, Factor SM, Tanowitz HB, Lisanti MP (2002) Caveolin-3 knock-out mice develop a progressive cardiomyopathy and show hyperactivation of the p42/44 MAPK cascade. J Biol Chem 277(41): 38988–38997
102. Kuga A, Ohsawa Y, Okada T, Kanda F, Kanagawa M, Toda T, Sunada Y (2011) Endoplasmic reticulum stress response in P104L mutant caveolin-3 transgenic mice. Hum Mol Genet 20(15): 2975–2983
103. Prabhakar R, Boivin GP, Grupp IL, Hoit B, Arteaga G, Solaro RJ, Wieczorek DF (2001) A familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy alpha-tropomyosin mutation causes severe cardiac hypertrophy and death in mice. J Mol Cell Cardiol 33(10):1815–1828
104. Muthuchamy M, Pieples K, Rethinasamy P, Hoit B, Grupp IL, Boivin GP, Wolska B, Evans C, Solaro RJ, Wieczorek DF (1999) Mouse model of a familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy mutation in alpha-tropomyosin manifests cardiac dysfunction. Circ Res 85(1):47–56
105. Tardiff JC, Factor SM, Tompkins BD, Hewett TE, Palmer BM, Moore RL, Schwartz S, Robbins J, Leinwand LA (1998) A truncated cardiac troponin T molecule in transgenic mice suggests multiple cellular mechanisms for familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. J Clin Investig 101(12):2800–2811
106. Tardiff JC, Hewett TE, Palmer BM, Olsson C, Factor SM, Moore RL, Robbins J, Leinwand LA (1999) Cardiac troponin T mutations result in allele-specific phenotypes in a mouse model for hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. J Clin Investig 104(4):469–481
107. James J, Zhang Y, Osinska H, Sanbe A, Klevitsky R, Hewett TE, Robbins J (2000) Transgenic modeling of a cardiac troponin I mutation linked to familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Circ Res 87(9):805–811
108. Davis J, Wen H, Edwards T, Metzger JM (2007) Thin filament disinhibition by restrictive cardiomyopathy mutant R193H troponin I induces Ca2+-independent mechanical tone and acute myocyte remodeling. Circ Res 100(10):1494–1502
109. Wen Y, Xu Y, Wang Y, Pinto JR, Potter JD, Kerrick WG (2009) Functional effects of a restrictive-cardiomyopathy-linked cardiac troponin I mutation (R145W) in transgenic mice. J Mol Biol 392(5): 1158–1167
110. Yang Q, Sanbe A, Osinska H, Hewett TE, Klevitsky R, Robbins J (1998) A mouse model of myosin binding protein C human familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. J Clin Investig 102(7): 1292–1300
111. Palmer BM, McConnell BK, Li GH, Seidman CE, Seidman JG, Irving TC, Alpert NR, Maughan DW (2004) Reduced cross-bridge dependent stiffness of skinned myocardium from mice lacking cardiac myosin binding protein-C. Mol Cell Biochem 263(1–2): 73–80
112. Farrell E, Armstrong AE, Grimes AC, Naya FJ, de Lange WJ, Ralphe JC (2018) Transcriptome analysis of cardiac hypertrophic growth in MYBPC3-null mice suggests early responders in hypertrophic remodeling. Front Physiol 9:1442
113. Purevjav E, Arimura T, Augustin S, Huby AC, Takagi K, Nunoda S, Kearney DL, Taylor MD, Terasaki F, Bos JM, Ommen SR, Shibata H, Takahashi M, Itoh-Satoh M, McKenna WJ, Murphy

RT, Labeit S, Yamanaka Y, Machida N, Park JE, Alexander PM, Weintraub RG, Kitaura Y, Ackerman MJ, Kimura A, Towbin JA (2012) Molecular basis for clinical heterogeneity in inherited cardiomyopathies due to myopalladin mutations. Hum Mol Genet 21(9):2039–2053

114. Song Y, Xu J, Li Y, Jia C, Ma X, Zhang L, Xie X, Zhang Y, Gao X, Zhang Y, Zhu D (2012) Cardiac ankyrin repeat protein attenuates cardiac hypertrophy by inhibition of ERK1/2 and TGF-beta signaling pathways. PLoS One 7(12):e50436
115. Manso AM, Li R, Monkley SJ, Cruz NM, Ong S, Lao DH, Koshman YE, Gu Y, Peterson KL, Chen J, Abel ED, Samarel AM, Critchley DR, Ross RS (2013) Talin1 has unique expression versus Talin 2 in the heart and modifies the hypertrophic response to pressure overload. J Biol Chem 288(6):4252–4264
116. Ramratnam M, Sharma RK, D'Auria S, Lee SJ, Wang D, Huang XY, Ahmad F (2014) Transgenic knockdown of cardiac sodium/glucose cotransporter 1 (SGLT1) attenuates PRKAG2 cardiomyopathy, whereas transgenic overexpression of cardiac SGLT1 causes pathologic hypertrophy and dysfunction in mice. J Am Heart Assoc 3(4):e000899. https://doi.org/10.1161/JAHA.114.000899



Genome Editing and Diabetic Cardiomyopathy

Tyler N. Kambis and Paras K. Mishra

Abstract

Differential gene expression is associated with diabetic cardiomyopathy (DMCM) and culminates in adverse remodeling in the diabetic heart. Genome editing is a technology utilized to alter endogenous genes. Genome editing also provides an option to induce cardioprotective genes or inhibit genes linked to adverse cardiac remodeling and thus has promise in ameliorating DMCM. Non-coding genes have emerged as novel regulators of cellular signaling and may serve as potential therapeutic targets for DMCM. Specifically, there is a widespread change in the gene expression of fetal cardiac genes and microRNAs, termed genetic reprogramming, that promotes pathological remodeling and contributes to heart failure in diabetes. This genetic reprogramming of both coding and non-coding genes varies with the progression and severity of DMCM. Thus, genetic editing provides a promising option to investigate the role of specific genes/non-coding RNAs in DMCM initiation and progression as well as developing therapeutics to mitigate cardiac remodeling and ameliorate DMCM. This chapter will summarize the research progress in genome editing and DMCM and provide future directions for utilizing genome editing as an approach to prevent and/or treat DMCM.

Keywords

Heart failure · MicroRNA · Therapeutics · Regulator

1 Introduction

Genes remain at the heart of cellular signaling and function, as well as the prevention and/or treatment of diseases. Differential expression of coding and non-coding genes play a pivotal role in the initiation and progression of several diseases, including diabetic cardiomyopathy (DMCM). DMCM is a cardiac muscle disorder caused by diabetes mellitus (DM), which develops independently from hypertension, valvular, or other vascular diseases. DMCM was initially described in 1972 by Rubler et al., during the evaluation of causes of heart failure in four DM patients who did not have hypertension or vascular disease [1]. How DMCM is initiated at the molecular level and which signaling pathways should be targeted to mitigate the risk of heart failure in DM remain an area of intensive research. However, empirical evidence suggests that the expression of several genes are altered in the DM heart. Among these genes are several non-coding RNAs, some of which are constitutively expressed, while the expression of others occur

T. N. Kambis · P. K. Mishra (✉)
Department of Cellular and Integrative Physiology, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA
e-mail: paraskumar.mishra@unmc.edu

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023
J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_7

during adverse remodeling. Thus, incorporating non-coding RNAs when targeting gene expression may prove to be a promising therapeutic strategy to ameliorate DMCM. Additionally, categorizing differentially expressed genes based on tissue origin and temporal expression may be crucial for understanding the genetic causes of DMCM and developing therapeutic genomic editing approaches. Here, we discuss how the field of genomic editing has progressed and how this technology is useful for investigating molecular signaling and developing therapeutics for DMCM.

2 Diabetic Cardiomyopathy

DM is a highly prevalent, chronic disease with a complex and multifactorial etiology [2, 3]. Defined as a silent killer, it slowly promotes adverse cardiac remodeling leading to heart failure [3]. The heart is a highly sophisticated organ where subtle changes in molecular regulation may result in catastrophic effects. Through hyperglycemia, hyperlipidemia, and hyperinsulinemia, DM fosters an environment which causes both direct and indirect effects preceding DMCM. DM ultimately affects heart function by inducing cell death signaling, which causes the loss of cardiac cells and instigates adverse remodeling. This loss of cardiac cells, termed cardiomyocytes, impairs cardiac contractility leading to cardiac dysfunction and heart failure. DM directly affects the heart via metabolic remodeling, where a lack of insulin prevents glucose uptake leading to increased cardiac utilization of fatty acids. This induces mitochondrial stress and dysfunction due to the increased amount of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) needed to oxidize fatty acids. DM indirectly affects heart function by adversely affecting central mechanisms—signals from the brain to control heart function. Sympathetic and parasympathetic signals from the brain are critical in regulating cardiac contractility. Thus, DM causes neuronal dysfunction and thereby impairs sympathetic and parasympathetic drive leading to cardiac dysfunction [4, 5]. Additionally, DM causes renal (kidney) dysfunction that increases blood volume in venous returns contributing to volume overload in the heart [6, 7]. Altogether, DM has detrimental effects at multiple molecular and physiological levels to initiate and exacerbate DMCM.

3 Genetic Editing

Genomic editing is utilized to modify endogenous genes. Genes are broadly categorized into two types: (1) genes that encode for proteins and (2) genes that encode for non-coding, functional RNA. Endogenous changes in gene expression are affected either by an organism's developmental stage or maladaptive disease remodeling and are regulated by a variety of epigenetic modifications and upstream transcription factors. This change in gene expression is best observed during cardiac development, in which over 800 genes are differentially expressed while cells undergo terminal differentiation via hyperplasia—an increase in cell number [8]. During pathological remodeling, the adult heart compensates for terminal differentiation via hypertrophy—an increase in cell size. While both hyperplasia and hypertrophy are distinct phenomena, fetal genes typically expressed during cardiac development become re-expressed during heart failure [9]. During this event, termed fetal reprogramming, expression of half of the top 500 genes affected during heart failure is correlated with fetal development [10]. Additionally, the expression of approximately 20 microRNAs, non-coding genes that regulate cellular signaling via mRNA targeting, is affected during heart failure [11–13].

With respect to expression, genes can be categorized into two types: (1) constitutively expressed genes which are always transcribed and (2) inducible genes which are transcribed under specific conditions. Editing constitutively expressed genes requires caution, as these genes may regulate several signaling pathways. These genes can be attenuated (decreased in expression) or induced (increased in expression) depending on their expression in pathological condition to alleviate disease pathology. Contrary to this,

inducible genes can be targeted and deleted/suppressed as their expression may relate to disease condition. As genetic editing approaches evolve over time, genes can be deleted or overexpressed with increasing specificity. This includes the creation of transgenic models in all tissues (global) or specific tissue such as the heart, via the insertion of genes into tissue-specific promoter regions [14, 15]. If deleting a gene is embryonically lethal, the use of Cre-lox site-specific recombination systems allows for the induction of knockout mutations post-development [16]. Based on cardiac transcriptome profiling of the diabetic Akita mouse, our lab was able to identify 137 differentially expressed transcripts that potentially acted as inducible genes [17]. Genome editing technology can be used to ablate individual genes to determine their specific roles in the Akita heart.

4 Advancement in Genetic Editing Technology

Genome editing studies were initially performed in fruit flies, *Drosophila melanogaster*, where radiation and chemical treatment were used to enhance random mutagenesis [18, 19]. However, these mutations—change in gene sequence—lacked specificity in their genome targeting. In the late twentieth century, targeted genomic editing with homologous recombination was attempted in both yeast and mice, resulting in a genome editing technology that was more specific, but inefficient [20–24]. More recently, progress in genome editing has made a remarkable leap in the field of targeting and efficient genetic manipulation by utilizing the knowledge on DNA damage and repair and recombination between homologous DNA sequences during meiosis [25, 26]. Targeted DNA double-strand breaks can be induced by nucleases which are then rejoined by nonhomologous ends via inherent DNA repair mechanisms in the cell [27–31]. Recently, three important nucleases have been used to induce DNA double-strand break for targeted genome editing. These nucleases are zinc-finger nucleases (ZFNs), transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs), and clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR)-associated protein 9 (Cas9) or CRISPR-Cas9, each of which has gained popularity in targeted gene editing [26, 32–35] (Fig. 1).

ZFNs: This is the first targeted genome editing technique and has been used in a wide range of organisms and cell types to introduce genetic alterations such as point mutations, deletions, insertions, inversions, duplications, and translocations [36, 37]. Repetitive zinc-binding domain protein containing cysteine and histidine residues was initially observed in a transcription factor of oocytes of *Xenopus laevis* [38]. Later, two zinc-finger proteins along with the cleavage domain of the "Fok*I*" restriction endonuclease were utilized in the development to develop ZFNs, a novel artificial site-specific nuclease with high efficiency [39, 40]. Fok*I* mediates dimerization—functional activation—of ZFNs. Functional ZFNs with 3–4 zinc-finger DNA-binding domains bind to 9–18 bp of DNA and cleave DNA into 5–7-base pair spacer sequence [41, 42]. Each zinc-finger binding domain recognizes a distinct DNA triplet, and these domains can be assembled in a myriad of ways to target DNA sequences [43–57]. The details on how ZFNs are designed, characteristics of the Fok*I* catalytic domain, how ZFNs introduce DNA double-strand breaks, different endogenous genes modified by ZFNs, the use of ZFNs in different species, and therapeutic applications of ZFNs have been extensively reviewed by Philip D. Gregory's group [36].

TALENs: It was initially observed that some plant pathogenic bacteria could regulate host cell by targeting DNA base pairs [58]. This observation leads to the engineering of artificial nucleases by fusing a customizable sequence-specific DNA-binding domain to a nonspecific DNA-cleaving nuclease. TALENs quickly and efficiently bind to any target DNA sequence, induce double-strand breaks in the DNA binding site, and alter gene sequences through DNA repair mechanisms in different types of plant and animal cells [59–65]. An extensive review on customizing DNA-binding domain of

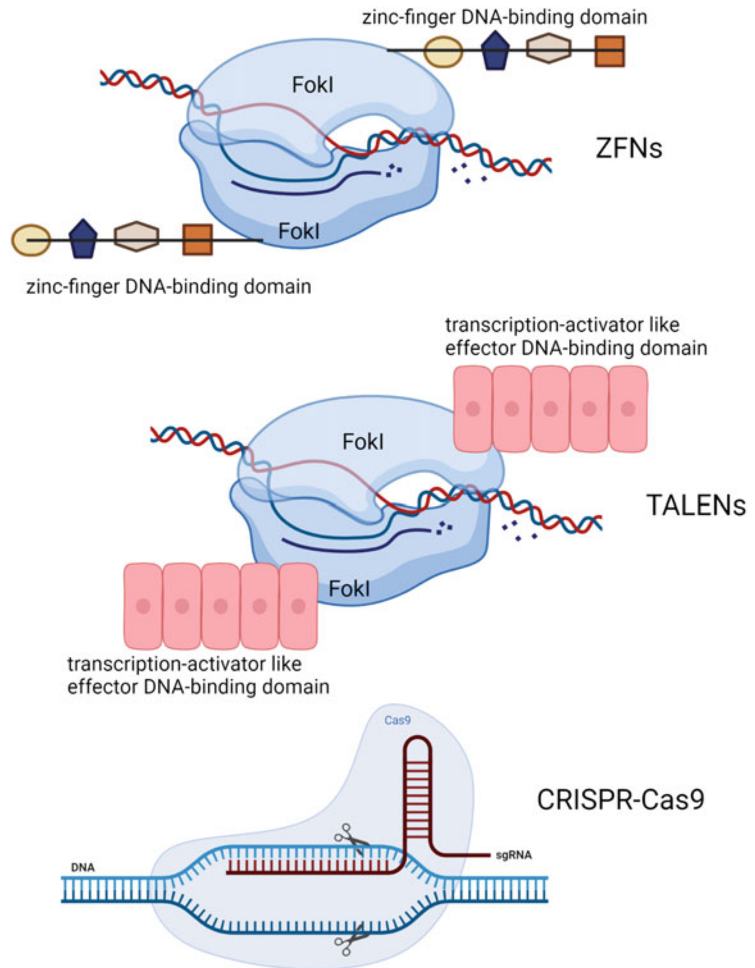


Fig. 1 Schematic showing the three major genomic editing technologies: zinc-finger nucleases (ZFNs), transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs), and clustered regularly interspersed short palindromic repeats (CRISPR)-associated protein 9 (CRISPR-Cas9). *sgRNA* single guide RNA

TALENs; different genomic editing performed by TALENs; application of TALEN-mediated genetic alterations in model organisms, plants, and livestock; cell-based disease modeling; and therapeutics have been published by Joung and Sander [66]. TALENs have potential applications against murine cytomegalovirus infections, curing cytoplasmic male sterility via mitochondrial genome editing, and performing genetic alterations in plants, yeasts, insects, mammals, as well as T cells, and chemokines [67–76]. TALENs also show promise in gene targeting for cystic fibrosis, sickle cell disease, and heteroplasmic mitochondrial DNA mutation [77–79]. TALEN-mediated gene editing of interleukin 10-secreting mesenchymal stem cells mitigates adverse remodeling of left ventricle after myocardial infarction in the heart [80]. Considering the broad applicability of TALENs in genome editing in different animal models and cell types, and its therapeutic potential, this technique was named "Method of the Year" for 2011 [81].

Both ZFNs and TALENs employ the same bacterial cleavage domains, FOK*I*; however, they use different DNA-binding domains. ZFNs use a set of zinc-finger domains similar to eukaryotic transcription factors, whereas TALENs use transcription factors produced by plant pathogenic bacteria to recognize DNA sequences [82] (Fig. 1).

CRISPR-Cas9: This is the most advanced, efficient, and utilized genome editing approach [34, 83–85]. The CRISPR system is naturally

expressed in bacteria and plays an endogenous role in the immune response to invading viruses and plasmids through RNA-guided cleavage of DNA by Cas protein [86–88]. The CRISPR-Cas9's adaptive role in bacteria occurs via its ability to integrate short sequences of foreign DNA into CRISPR locus to make trans-activating CRISPR RNA that targets and degrades pathogenic DNA with the help of the Cas9 protein [89–91]. This technique has been used in *D. melanogaster* germ-line cells to generate heritable mutant alleles [92]. With the advancement of time, several modifications of the CRISPR-Cas9 technique have resulted in a more simplified version, where the Cas9 nuclease utilizes a single guide RNA to recognize target DNA. This guide RNA makes CRISPR-Cas9 the most flexible and user-friendly genome editing technology [93–95]. By binding to target DNA and forming a heteroduplex [96–98] (Fig. 1). Although CRISPR-Cas9 is the most accesible genome editing technology, inducing off-target mutations is the greatest limitation of this technology [84, 99, 100]. Several approaches have been adopted to reduce the off-target effects of CRISPR-Cas9 such as use of paired Cas9 nickases and truncated guide RNA, reducing doses of Cas9 or guide RNA, and using Cas9 variants with inducible Cas9 architecture or small-molecule-responsive intein domain [101–106].

CRISPR-Cas9 is the most promising technique for gene therapy [107–109]. It has high therapeutic potential in cancer, Duchenne muscular dystrophy, and sickle cell disease [110–113]. This technology has promising roles in editing heart cells and mitigating cardiovascular disease [114–120].

A simple schematic of the three genomic editing technologies—ZFNs, TALENs, and CRISPR-Cas9—is provided in Fig. 1 that shows similarities and differences in these three methods. ZFNs and TALENs share several similarities such as having common catalytic domain and to have a DNA-binding domain. However, CRISPR-Cas9 differs significantly from both ZFNs and TALENs in using both guide RNA and a Cas9 nuclease. All three technologies share similarity in binding and cleaving double-stranded DNA (Fig. 1).

5 Genetic Editing in Diabetic Cardiomyopathy

Although several coding and non-coding genes are associated with adverse cardiac remodeling during DM, we will focus on an example of how genetic editing of each may be utilized to prevent DMCM. The gene encoding for matrix metalloproteinase-9 (MMP9), which is latent in the healthy heart, is robustly expressed in the DM heart [121]. To determine the specific role of inhibition of MMP9 in the DM heart, we cross-bred MMP9KO (global) with DM Akita mice and developed Akita/MMP9KO mice [122]. These Akita/MMP9KO mice showed improved cardiomyocyte contractility when compared to the DM Akita mice [123]. Thus, genomic manipulation of MMP9 is beneficial to the DM heart.

We have also overexpressed miR-133a, a non-coding RNA, in the diabetic Akita heart. miR-133a is a muscle-specific miRNA which is transcribed primarily in cardiac and skeletal muscles [124]. Out of nearly 800 miRNAs, miR-133a the most abundant in the heart [125]. However, it is reduced in the DM heart [17, 126]. Similar to the development of the Akita/MMP9KO mice, we crossbred cardiac-specific miR-133a transgenic (Tg) with DM Akita mice to develop Akita/miR-133aTg mice [127]. These Akita/miR-133aTg mice displayed lower accumulation of lipids within the heart, and decreased cardiac fibrosis and hypertrophy, thus demonstrating protection against DM-induced cardiac remodeling [128].

In addition to the crossbreeding of genetically altered animal models, the transient delivery of genetic materials such as miR-133a mimic and siRNA offers another approach for genomic alteration [126, 129]. Genetic regulators may be delivered to the heart via circulation through a variety of nanoparticle packaging, primarily consisting of either lipopolysaccharides or polymers [130]. There are different methods to deliver nanoparticles with different therapeutic efficacies

[131]. The genetic materials—DNA and RNA—may also be delivered utilizing viral packaging [132, 133]. The progress and problems in viral delivery have been elaborated by the Mark A Kay group [134]. One of the limitations of gene delivery is package accumulation in non-targeted tissue, primarily in the liver. Adding tissue-specific ligands facilitates gene delivery to specific tissues, such as the heart genes can be directly delivered through intramuscular or intracoronary injection further increasing specificity of delivery.

In order to transiently express or inhibit a gene, the mimic or inhibitor of the specific gene is packaged into an adeno-associated virus (AAV) [135]. A Phase 2b trial—calcium upregulation by percutaneous administration of gene therapy in cardiac disease 2b (CUPID 2)—has used an AAV1 delivery approach to introduce the sarcoendoplasmic reticulum calcium ATPase-2A (SERCA 2A) gene through intracoronary infusion [136, 137]. For long-term gene expression, genes need to first be inserted into the host genome. Lentiviruses, which infect both dividing and nondividing cells with high efficiency, also integrate into the genome for long-term and stable expression of the transgene. In addition, lentivirus have low immunogenicity and are considered suitable vectors for gene delivery into the heart for cardiac diseases [138]. In preclinical studies using a rat myocardial infarction model, SERCA 2A gene delivery through lentivirus via intracoronary injection has demonstrated successful integration of SERCA 2A into the host genome, which had compensated for the reduced expression of SERCA 2A in the heart and prevented adverse cardiac remodeling [139]. However, the stage of heart failure depends on the conditions of cardiomyocytes—the contractile apparatus of the heart. Gene therapy is only considered suitable for the failing heart when cardiomyocytes are healthy, while cell therapy is considered a better approach for permanently lost cardiomyocytes [140]. After packaging miR-133a mimic into lentivirus and delivering it to the DM mouse heart, we observed that miR-133a overexpression mitigated adverse cardiac remodeling and improved cardiac function [126, 141]. Altogether, genetic editing shows high potential as a therapeutic technique in the amelioration of DMCM (Fig. 2).

6 Future Direction

Gene therapy shows huge promise for the treatment of cardiovascular disease [142]. With the

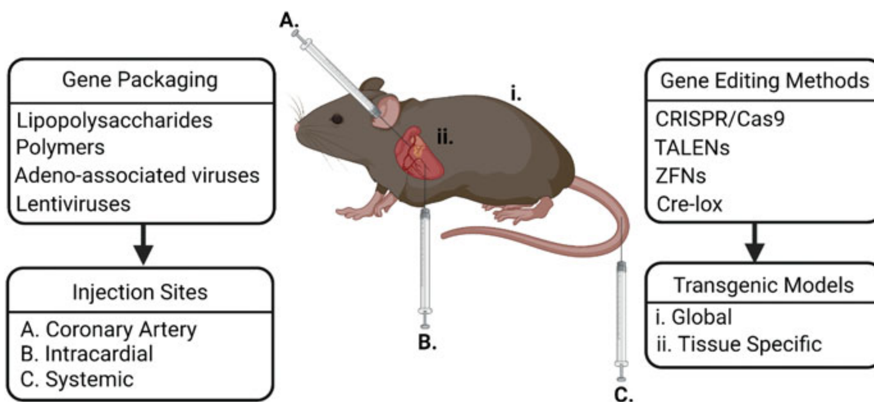


Fig. 2 Gene editing approaches to ameliorate diabetic cardiomyopathy. Both gene and non-coding RNA, such as miRNA, can be packaged into lipopolysaccharides, polymers, adeno-associated viruses, or lentiviruses. These packaged gene mimics/shRNAs/siRNAs can be delivered into the diabetic heart via (*A*) direct intracoronary, (*B*) intracardial (injecting into cardiac muscle), or (*C*) systemic (tail vein injection) injection. For gene editing, different methods are used, such as CRISPR/Cas9, TALENs, Cre-lox, and ZFNs. Animal models have been developed by gene editing that overexpress a specific gene (transgenic) either globally or in a tissue-specific manner

advancement of technologies in genetic editing, more options are available for genetic manipulation of the DM heart to mitigate DMCM. However, it is important to discern which technology is appropriate for each specific type of genetic editing in DMCM. There are several caveats that need to be considered while investigating the cause of initiation or progression of DMCM, or for developing therapeutics for DMCM. (1) It is important to evaluate the stage (prediabetic, DM, advanced DM) of DMCM because genetic profile alters with advancement of DMCM. (2) The duration of genetic editing is also important. Transient overexpression or inhibition of genes via AAV is considered better than the permanent lentivirus approach because gene expression alters when the heart is reverting toward healthy condition. Overt induction or inhibition of genes may have adverse effects on the prediabetic heart while reverting toward healthy condition or becoming healthy heart. (3) The gene delivery approach is also critical. Direct delivery is considered good because of target specificity. However, a drawback is its invasive nature. Injecting mimic or inhibitor into the circulation and adding cardiac-specific ligand to the liposome or nanodroplet are considered a less invasive approach for genetic editing in DMCM. Altogether, development of genetic editing tools and delivery approaches has pivotal role in understanding the causes of DMCM and developing novel therapeutic approaches for DMCM.

Acknowledgment This work was supported in part by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) grant F31HL156402 to TNK and pilot projects of Nebraska Center for the Prevention of Obesity Diseases from NIH P20GM104320 and of UNMC Center for Heart and Vascular Research from the National Institute of General Medical Sciences 1U54GM115458 to PKM. The content is solely the responsibility of the author and does not necessarily represent the official view of the NIH.
Authors' Contribution: TNK prepared Fig. 2 and contributed in editing and revising manuscript. PKM drafted the manuscript and prepared Fig. 1.

Disclosure No conflict of interest to disclose.

References

1. Rubler S, Dlugash J, Yuceoglu YZ, Kumral T, Branwood AW, Grishman A (1972) New type of cardiomyopathy associated with diabetic glomerulosclerosis. Am J Cardiol 30(6):595–602
2. Boudina S, Abel ED (2010) Diabetic cardiomyopathy, causes and effects. Rev Endocr Metab Disord 11(1):31–39
3. Chavali V, Tyagi SC, Mishra PK (2013) Predictors and prevention of diabetic cardiomyopathy. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes 6:151–160
4. Vinik AI, Ziegler D (2007) Diabetic cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy. Circulation 115(3):387–397
5. Pop-Busui R (2010) Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in diabetes: a clinical perspective. Diabetes Care 33(2):434–441
6. Braunwald E (2019) Diabetes, heart failure, and renal dysfunction: the vicious circles. Prog Cardiovasc Dis 62(4):298–302
7. Aguilar D (2016) Heart failure, diabetes mellitus, and chronic kidney disease: a clinical conundrum. Circ Heart Fail 9(7)
8. Pervolaraki E, Dachtler J, Anderson RA, Holden AV (2018) The developmental transcriptome of the human heart. Sci Rep 8(1):15362
9. Thum T, Galuppo P, Wolf C, Fiedler J, Kneitz S, van Laake LW, Doevendans PA, Mummery CL, Borlak J, Haverich A, Gross C, Engelhardt S, Ertl G, Bauersachs J (2007) MicroRNAs in the human heart: a clue to fetal gene reprogramming in heart failure. Circulation 116(3):258–267
10. Ramirez Flores RO, Lanzer JD, Holland CH, Leuschner F, Most P, Schultz JH, Levinson RT, Saez-Rodriguez J (2021) Consensus transcriptional landscape of human end-stage heart failure. J Am Heart Assoc 10(7):e019667
11. Bartel DP (2004) MicroRNAs: genomics, biogenesis, mechanism, and function. Cell 116(2):281–297
12. Bartel DP (2009) MicroRNAs: target recognition and regulatory functions. Cell 136(2):215–233
13. Gholaminejad A, Zare N, Dana N, Shafie D, Mani A, Javanmard SH (2021) A meta-analysis of microRNA expression profiling studies in heart failure. Heart Fail Rev 26(4):997–1021
14. Hall B, Limaye A, Kulkarni AB (2009) Overview: generation of gene knockout mice. Curr Protoc Cell Biol Chapter 19:Unit 19.12–19.12.1-17
15. Matkovich SJ, Wang W, Tu Y, Eschenbacher WH, Dorn LE, Condorelli G, Diwan A, Nerbonne JM, Dorn GW 2nd (2010) MicroRNA-133a protects against myocardial fibrosis and modulates electrical repolarization without affecting hypertrophy in pressure-overloaded adult hearts. Circ Res 106(1): 166–175
16. Fernandez-Chacon M, Casquero-Garcia V, Luo W, Francesca Lunella F, Ferreira Rocha S, Del Olmo-

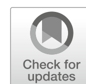
Cabrera S, Benedito R (2019) iSuRe-Cre is a genetic tool to reliably induce and report Cre-dependent genetic modifications. Nat Commun 10(1):2262
17. Kesherwani V, Shahshahan HR, Mishra PK (2017) Cardiac transcriptome profiling of diabetic Akita mice using microarray and next generation sequencing. PLoS One 12(8):e0182828
18. Muller HJ (1927) Artificial transmutation of the gene. Science 66(1699):84–87
19. Auerbach C, Robson JM, Carr JG (1947) The chemical production of mutations. Science 105(2723): 243–247
20. Scherer S, Davis RW (1979) Replacement of chromosome segments with altered DNA sequences constructed in vitro. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 76(10):4951–4955
21. Rothstein RJ (1983) One-step gene disruption in yeast. Methods Enzymol 101:202–211
22. Smithies O, Gregg RG, Boggs SS, Koralewski MA, Kucherlapati RS (1985) Insertion of DNA sequences into the human chromosomal beta-globin locus by homologous recombination. Nature 317(6034): 230–234
23. Thomas KR, Folger KR, Capecchi MR (1986) High frequency targeting of genes to specific sites in the mammalian genome. Cell 44(3):419–428
24. Mansour SL, Thomas KR, Capecchi MR (1988) Disruption of the proto-oncogene int-2 in mouse embryo-derived stem cells: a general strategy for targeting mutations to non-selectable genes. Nature 336(6197):348–352
25. Youds JL, Boulton SJ (2011) The choice in meiosis—defining the factors that influence crossover or non-crossover formation. J Cell Sci 124 (Pt 4):501–513
26. Carroll D (2014) Genome engineering with targetable nucleases. Annu Rev Biochem 83:409–439
27. Choulika A, Perrin A, Dujon B, Nicolas JF (1995) Induction of homologous recombination in mammalian chromosomes by using the I-SceI system of Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Mol Cell Biol 15(4): 1968–1973
28. Plessis A, Perrin A, Haber JE, Dujon B (1992) Site-specific recombination determined by I-SceI, a mitochondrial group I intron-encoded endonuclease expressed in the yeast nucleus. Genetics 130(3): 451–460
29. Rouet P, Smih F, Jasin M (1994) Introduction of double-strand breaks into the genome of mouse cells by expression of a rare-cutting endonuclease. Mol Cell Biol 14(12):8096–8106
30. Rudin N, Sugarman E, Haber JE (1989) Genetic and physical analysis of double-strand break repair and recombination in Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Genetics 122(3):519–534
31. Chapman JR, Taylor MR, Boulton SJ (2012) Playing the end game: DNA double-strand break repair pathway choice. Mol Cell 47(4):497–510
32. Randhawa S, Sengar S (2021) The evolution and history of gene editing technologies. Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci 178:1–62
33. Gaj T, Sirk SJ, Shui SL, Liu J (2016) Genome-editing technologies: principles and applications. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 8(12):a023754
34. Gaj T, Gersbach CA, Barbas CF 3rd (2013) ZFN, TALEN, and CRISPR/Cas-based methods for genome engineering. Trends Biotechnol 31(7): 397–405
35. Khan SH (2019) Genome-editing technologies: concept, pros, and cons of various genome-editing techniques and bioethical concerns for clinical application. Mol Ther Nucleic Acids 16:326–334
36. Urnov FD, Rebar EJ, Holmes MC, Zhang HS, Gregory PD (2010) Genome editing with engineered zinc finger nucleases. Nat Rev Genet 11(9):636–646
37. Carroll D (2008) Progress and prospects: zinc-finger nucleases as gene therapy agents. Gene Ther 15(22): 1463–1468
38. Miller J, McLachlan AD, Klug A (1985) Repetitive zinc-binding domains in the protein transcription factor IIIA from Xenopus oocytes. EMBO J 4(6): 1609–1614
39. Kim YG, Cha J, Chandrasegaran S (1996) Hybrid restriction enzymes: zinc finger fusions to Fok I cleavage domain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93(3): 1156–1160
40. Porteus MH, Carroll D (2005) Gene targeting using zinc finger nucleases. Nat Biotechnol 23(8):967–973
41. Smith J, Bibikova M, Whitby FG, Reddy AR, Chandrasegaran S, Carroll D (2000) Requirements for double-strand cleavage by chimeric restriction enzymes with zinc finger DNA-recognition domains. Nucleic Acids Res 28(17):3361–3369
42. Pavletich NP, Pabo CO (1991) Zinc finger-DNA recognition: crystal structure of a Zif268-DNA complex at 2.1 A. Science 252(5007):809–817
43. Segal DJ, Dreier B, Beerli RR, Barbas CF 3rd (1999) Toward controlling gene expression at will: selection and design of zinc finger domains recognizing each of the 5′-GNN-3′ DNA target sequences. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 96(6):2758–2763
44. Dreier B, Beerli RR, Segal DJ, Flippin JD, Barbas CF 3rd (2001) Development of zinc finger domains for recognition of the 5′-ANN-3′ family of DNA sequences and their use in the construction of artificial transcription factors. J Biol Chem 276(31): 29466–29478
45. Bae KH, Kwon YD, Shin HC, Hwang MS, Ryu EH, Park KS, Yang HY, Lee DK, Lee Y, Park J, Kwon HS, Kim HW, Yeh BI, Lee HW, Sohn SH, Yoon J, Seol W, Kim JS (2003) Human zinc fingers as building blocks in the construction of artificial transcription factors. Nat Biotechnol 21(3):275–280
46. Liu Q, Segal DJ, Ghiara JB, Barbas CF 3rd (1997) Design of polydactyl zinc-finger proteins for unique addressing within complex genomes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94(11):5525–5530

47. Beerli RR, Segal DJ, Dreier B, Barbas CF 3rd (1998) Toward controlling gene expression at will: specific regulation of the erbB-2/HER-2 promoter by using polydactyl zinc finger proteins constructed from modular building blocks. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95(25):14628–14633
48. Beerli RR, Dreier B, Barbas CF 3rd (2000) Positive and negative regulation of endogenous genes by designed transcription factors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97(4):1495–1500
49. Kim HJ, Lee HJ, Kim H, Cho SW, Kim JS (2009) Targeted genome editing in human cells with zinc finger nucleases constructed via modular assembly. Genome Res 19(7):1279–1288
50. Greisman HA, Pabo CO (1997) A general strategy for selecting high-affinity zinc finger proteins for diverse DNA target sites. Science 275(5300):657–661
51. Isalan M, Klug A, Choo Y (2001) A rapid, generally applicable method to engineer zinc fingers illustrated by targeting the HIV-1 promoter. Nat Biotechnol 19(7):656–660
52. Hurt JA, Thibodeau SA, Hirsh AS, Pabo CO, Joung JK (2003) Highly specific zinc finger proteins obtained by directed domain shuffling and cell-based selection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100(21): 12271–12276
53. Magnenat L, Schwimmer LJ, Barbas CF 3rd (2008) Drug-inducible and simultaneous regulation of endogenous genes by single-chain nuclear receptor-based zinc-finger transcription factor gene switches. Gene Ther 15(17):1223–1232
54. Maeder ML, Thibodeau-Beganny S, Osiak A, Wright DA, Anthony RM, Eichtinger M, Jiang T, Foley JE, Winfrey RJ, Townsend JA, Unger-Wallace E, Sander JD, Muller-Lerch F, Fu F, Pearlberg J, Gobel C, Dassie JP, Pruett-Miller SM, Porteus MH, Sgroi DC, Iafrate AJ, Dobbs D, McCray PB Jr, Cathomen T, Voytas DF, Joung JK (2008) Rapid "open-source" engineering of customized zinc-finger nucleases for highly efficient gene modification. Mol Cell 31(2):294–301
55. Bhakta MS, Henry IM, Ousterout DG, Das KT, Lockwood SH, Meckler JF, Wallen MC, Zykovich A, Yu Y, Leo H, Xu L, Gersbach CA, Segal DJ (2013) Highly active zinc-finger nucleases by extended modular assembly. Genome Res 23(3): 530–538
56. Gupta A, Christensen RG, Rayla AL, Lakshmanan A, Stormo GD, Wolfe SA (2012) An optimized two-finger archive for ZFN-mediated gene targeting. Nat Methods 9(6):588–590
57. Sander JD, Dahlborg EJ, Goodwin MJ, Cade L, Zhang F, Cifuentes D, Curtin SJ, Blackburn JS, Thibodeau-Beganny S, Qi Y, Pierick CJ, Hoffman E, Maeder ML, Khayter C, Reyon D, Dobbs D, Langenau DM, Stupar RM, Giraldez AJ, Voytas DF, Peterson RT, Yeh JR, Joung JK (2011) Selection-free zinc-finger-nuclease engineering by context-dependent assembly (CoDA). Nat Methods 8(1):67–69
58. Boch J, Scholze H, Schornack S, Landgraf A, Hahn S, Kay S, Lahaye T, Nickstadt A, Bonas U (2009) Breaking the code of DNA binding specificity of TAL-type III effectors. Science 326(5959): 1509–1512
59. Hensel G, Kumlehn J (2019) Genome engineering using TALENs. Methods Mol Biol 1900:195–215
60. Naert T, Van Nieuwenhuysen T, Vleminckx K (2017) TALENs and CRISPR/Cas9 fuel genetically engineered clinically relevant Xenopus tropicalis tumor models. Genesis 55(1–2)
61. Martin-Fernandez JM, Fleischer A, Vallejo-Diez S, Palomino E, Sanchez-Gilabert A, Ruiz R, Bejarano Y, Llinas P, Gaya A, Bachiller D (2020) New bicistronic TALENs greatly improve genome editing. Curr Protoc Stem Cell Biol 52(1):e104
62. Fang Y, Cheng Y, Lu D, Gong X, Yang G, Gong Z, Zhu Y, Sang X, Fan S, Zhang J, Zeng F (2018) Treatment of beta(654)-thalassaemia by TALENs in a mouse model. Cell Prolif 51(6):e12491
63. Bi H, Fei Q, Li R, Liu B, Xia R, Char SN, Meyers BC, Yang B (2020) Disruption of miRNA sequences by TALENs and CRISPR/Cas9 induces varied lengths of miRNA production. Plant Biotechnol J 18(7):1526–1536
64. Sun N, Zhao H (2013) Transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs): a highly efficient and versatile tool for genome editing. Biotechnol Bioeng 110(7):1811–1821
65. Liu Y, Zhao H, Cheng CH (2016) Mutagenesis in Xenopus and zebrafish using TALENs. Methods Mol Biol 1338:207–227
66. Joung JK, Sander JD (2013) TALENs: a widely applicable technology for targeted genome editing. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 14(1):49–55
67. Chen SJ, Chen YC (2019) Potential application of TALENs against murine cytomegalovirus latent infections. Viruses 11(5):414
68. Chen K, Gao C (2013) TALENs: customizable molecular DNA scissors for genome engineering of plants. J Genet Genomics 40(6):271–279
69. Luo D, Feng K, Zhu Z, Hu W (2019) Generating gene knockout Oryzias latipes and Rice field eel using TALENs method. Methods Mol Biol 1874:489–506
70. Qasim W, Zhan H, Samarasinghe S, Adams S, Amrolia P, Stafford S, Butler K, Rivat C, Wright G, Somana K, Ghorashian S, Pinner D, Ahsan G, Gilmour K, Lucchini G, Inglott S, Mifsud W, Chiesa R, Peggs KS, Chan L, Farzeneh F, Thrasher AJ, Vora A, Pule M, Veys P (2017) Molecular remission of infant B-ALL after infusion of universal TALEN gene-edited CAR T cells. Sci Transl Med 9(374):eaaj2013
71. Yu AQ, Ding Y, Lu ZY, Hao YZ, Teng ZP, Yan SR, Li DS, Zeng Y (2018) TALENs-mediated homozygous CCR5Delta32 mutations endow CD4+ U87

cells with resistance against HIV1 infection. Mol Med Rep 17(1):243–249
72. Kazama T, Okuno M, Watari Y, Yanase S, Koizuka C, Tsuruta Y, Sugaya H, Toyoda A, Itoh T, Tsutsumi N, Toriyama K, Koizuka N, Arimura SI (2019) Curing cytoplasmic male sterility via TALEN-mediated mitochondrial genome editing. Nat Plants 5(7):722–730
73. Wang Y, Tan A, Xu J, Li Z, Zeng B, Ling L, You L, Chen Y, James AA, Huang Y (2014) Site-specific, TALENs-mediated transformation of Bombyx mori. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 55:26–30
74. Feng Y, Zhang S, Huang X (2014) A robust TALENs system for highly efficient mammalian genome editing. Sci Rep 4:3632
75. Gan Y, Lin Y, Guo Y, Qi X, Wang Q (2018) Metabolic and genomic characterisation of stress-tolerant industrial Saccharomyces cerevisiae strains from TALENs-assisted multiplex editing. FEMS Yeast Res 18(5)
76. Zhang G, Lin Y, Qi X, Li L, Wang Q, Ma Y (2015) TALENs-assisted multiplex editing for accelerated genome evolution to improve yeast phenotypes. ACS Synth Biol 4(10):1101–1111
77. Xia E, Zhang Y, Cao H, Li J, Duan R, Hu J (2019) TALEN-mediated gene targeting for cystic fibrosis-gene therapy. Genes (Basel) 10(1):39
78. Sun N, Zhao H (2014) Seamless correction of the sickle cell disease mutation of the HBB gene in human induced pluripotent stem cells using TALENs. Biotechnol Bioeng 111(5):1048–1053
79. Bacman SR, Kauppila JHK, Pereira CV, Nissanka N, Miranda M, Pinto M, Williams SL, Larsson NG, Stewart JB, Moraes CT (2018) MitoTALEN reduces mutant mtDNA load and restores tRNA(ala) levels in a mouse model of heteroplasmic mtDNA mutation. Nat Med 24(11):1696–1700
80. Meng D, Han S, Jeong IS, Kim SW (2019) Interleukin 10-secreting MSCs via TALEN-mediated gene editing attenuates left ventricular remodeling after myocardial infarction. Cell Physiol Biochem 52(4): 728–741
81. Baker M (2012) Gene-editing nucleases. Nat Methods 9(1):23–26
82. Carroll D (2017) Genome editing: past, present, and future. Yale J Biol Med 90(4):653–659
83. Ran FA, Hsu PD, Wright J, Agarwala V, Scott DA, Zhang F (2013) Genome engineering using the CRISPR-Cas9 system. Nat Protoc 8(11):2281–2308
84. Ma Y, Zhang L, Huang X (2014) Genome modification by CRISPR/Cas9. FEBS J 281(23):5186–5193
85. Redman M, King A, Watson C, King D (2016) What is CRISPR/Cas9? Arch Dis Child Educ Pract Ed 101(4):213–215
86. Wiedenheft B, Sternberg SH, Doudna JA (2012) RNA-guided genetic silencing systems in bacteria and archaea. Nature 482(7385):331–338
87. Sorek R, Lawrence CM, Wiedenheft B (2013) CRISPR-mediated adaptive immune systems in bacteria and archaea. Annu Rev Biochem 82:237–266
88. Hryhorowicz M, Lipinski D, Zeyland J, Slomski R (2017) CRISPR/Cas9 immune system as a tool for genome engineering. Arch Immunol Ther Exp (Warsz) 65(3):233–240
89. Horvath P, Barrangou R (2010) CRISPR/Cas, the immune system of bacteria and archaea. Science 327(5962):167–170
90. Marraffini LA, Sontheimer EJ (2010) CRISPR interference: RNA-directed adaptive immunity in bacteria and archaea. Nat Rev Genet 11(3):181–190
91. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
92. Ren X, Sun J, Housden BE, Hu Y, Roesel C, Lin S, Liu LP, Yang Z, Mao D, Sun L, Wu Q, Ji JY, Xi J, Mohr SE, Xu J, Perrimon N, Ni JQ (2013) Optimized gene editing technology for Drosophila melanogaster using germ line-specific Cas9. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(47):19012–19017
93. Cho SW, Kim S, Kim JM, Kim JS (2013) Targeted genome engineering in human cells with the Cas9 RNA-guided endonuclease. Nat Biotechnol 31(3): 230–232
94. Cong L, Ran FA, Cox D, Lin S, Barretto R, Habib N, Hsu PD, Wu X, Jiang W, Marraffini LA, Zhang F (2013) Multiplex genome engineering using CRISPR/Cas systems. Science 339(6121):819–823
95. Mali P, Yang L, Esvelt KM, Aach J, Guell M, DiCarlo JE, Norville JE, Church GM (2013) RNA-guided human genome engineering via Cas9. Science 339(6121):823–826
96. Nishimasu H, Ran FA, Hsu PD, Konermann S, Shehata SI, Dohmae N, Ishitani R, Zhang F, Nureki O (2014) Crystal structure of Cas9 in complex with guide RNA and target DNA. Cell 156(5):935–949
97. Anders C, Niewoehner O, Duerst A, Jinek M (2014) Structural basis of PAM-dependent target DNA recognition by the Cas9 endonuclease. Nature 513(7519):569–573
98. Jiang F, Taylor DW, Chen JS, Kornfeld JE, Zhou K, Thompson AJ, Nogales E, Doudna JA (2016) Structures of a CRISPR-Cas9 R-loop complex primed for DNA cleavage. Science 351(6275): 867–871
99. Cradick TJ, Fine EJ, Antico CJ, Bao G (2013) CRISPR/Cas9 systems targeting beta-globin and CCR5 genes have substantial off-target activity. Nucleic Acids Res 41(20):9584–9592
100. Fu Y, Foden JA, Khayter C, Maeder ML, Reyon D, Joung JK, Sander JD (2013) High-frequency off-target mutagenesis induced by CRISPR-Cas nucleases in human cells. Nat Biotechnol 31(9): 822–826
101. Mali P, Aach J, Stranges PB, Esvelt KM, Moosburner M, Kosuri S, Yang L, Church GM (2013) CAS9 transcriptional activators for target specificity screening and paired nickases for cooperative genome engineering. Nat Biotechnol 31(9): 833–838

102. Ran FA, Hsu PD, Lin CY, Gootenberg JS, Konermann S, Trevino AE, Scott DA, Inoue A, Matoba S, Zhang Y, Zhang F (2013) Double nicking by RNA-guided CRISPR Cas9 for enhanced genome editing specificity. Cell 154(6):1380–1389
103. Fu Y, Sander JD, Reyon D, Cascio VM, Joung JK (2014) Improving CRISPR-Cas nuclease specificity using truncated guide RNAs. Nat Biotechnol 32(3): 279–284
104. Hsu PD, Scott DA, Weinstein JA, Ran FA, Konermann S, Agarwala V, Li Y, Fine EJ, Wu X, Shalem O, Cradick TJ, Marraffini LA, Bao G, Zhang F (2013) DNA targeting specificity of RNA-guided Cas9 nucleases. Nat Biotechnol 31(9):827–832
105. Zetsche B, Volz SE, Zhang F (2015) A split-Cas9 architecture for inducible genome editing and transcription modulation. Nat Biotechnol 33(2):139–142
106. Davis KM, Pattanayak V, Thompson DB, Zuris JA, Liu DR (2015) Small molecule-triggered Cas9 protein with improved genome-editing specificity. Nat Chem Biol 11(5):316–318
107. Savic N, Schwank G (2016) Advances in therapeutic CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing. Transl Res 168:15–21
108. Gupta D, Bhattacharjee O, Mandal D, Sen MK, Dey D, Dasgupta A, Kazi TA, Gupta R, Sinharoy S, Acharya K, Chattopadhyay D, Ravichandiran V, Roy S, Ghosh D (2019) CRISPR-Cas9 system: a new-fangled dawn in gene editing. Life Sci 232: 116636
109. Cai L, Fisher AL, Huang H, Xie Z (2016) CRISPR-mediated genome editing and human diseases. Genes Dis 3(4):244–251
110. Chen M, Mao A, Xu M, Weng Q, Mao J, Ji J (2019) CRISPR-Cas9 for cancer therapy: opportunities and challenges. Cancer Lett 447:48–55
111. Min YL, Li H, Rodriguez-Caycedo C, Mireault AA, Huang J, Shelton JM, McAnally JR, Amoasii L, Mammen PPA, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2019) CRISPR-Cas9 corrects Duchenne muscular dystrophy exon 44 deletion mutations in mice and human cells. Sci Adv 5(3):eaav4324
112. Bengtsson NE, Hall JK, Odom GL, Phelps MP, Andrus CR, Hawkins RD, Hauschka SD, Chamberlain JR, Chamberlain JS (2017) Muscle-specific CRISPR/Cas9 dystrophin gene editing ameliorates pathophysiology in a mouse model for Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Nat Commun 8:14454
113. Demirci S, Leonard A, Haro-Mora JJ, Uchida N, Tisdale JF (2019) CRISPR/Cas9 for sickle cell disease: applications, future possibilities, and challenges. Adv Exp Med Biol 1144:37–52
114. Tessadori F, Roessler HI, Savelberg SMC, Chocron S, Kamel SM, Duran KJ, van Haelst MM, van Haaften G, Bakkers J (2018) Effective CRISPR/Cas9-based nucleotide editing in zebrafish to model human genetic cardiovascular disorders. Dis Model Mech 11(10):dmm035469
115. Liu X, Yagi H, Saeed S, Bais AS, Gabriel GC, Chen Z, Peterson KA, Li Y, Schwartz MC, Reynolds WT, Saydmohammed M, Gibbs B, Wu Y, Devine W, Chatterjee B, Klena NT, Kostka D, de Mesy Bentley KL, Ganapathiraju MK, Dexheimer P, Leatherbury L, Khalifa O, Bhagat A, Zahid M, Pu W, Watkins S, Grossfeld P, Murray SA, Porter GA Jr, Tsang M, Martin LJ, Benson DW, Aronow BJ, Lo CW (2017) The complex genetics of hypoplastic left heart syndrome. Nat Genet 49(7): 1152–1159
116. Xie C, Zhang YP, Song L, Luo J, Qi W, Hu J, Lu D, Yang Z, Zhang J, Xiao J, Zhou B, Du JL, Jing N, Liu Y, Wang Y, Li BL, Song BL, Yan Y (2016) Genome editing with CRISPR/Cas9 in postnatal mice corrects PRKAG2 cardiac syndrome. Cell Res 26(10):1099–1111
117. Sano S, Oshima K, Wang Y, Katanasaka Y, Sano M, Walsh K (2018) CRISPR-mediated gene editing to assess the roles of Tet2 and Dnmt3a in clonal hematopoiesis and cardiovascular disease. Circ Res 123(3):335–341
118. Schoger E, Carroll KJ, Iyer LM, McAnally JR, Tan W, Liu N, Noack C, Shomroni O, Salinas G, Gross J, Herzog N, Doroudgar S, Bassel-Duby R, Zimmermann WH, Zelarayan LC (2020) CRISPR-mediated activation of endogenous gene expression in the postnatal heart. Circ Res 126(1):6–24
119. Mosqueira D, Mannhardt I, Bhagwan JR, Lis-Slimak K, Katili P, Scott E, Hassan M, Prondzynski M, Harmer SC, Tinker A, Smith JGW, Carrier L, Williams PM, Gaffney D, Eschenhagen T, Hansen A, Denning C (2018) CRISPR/Cas9 editing in human pluripotent stem cell-cardiomyocytes highlights arrhythmias, hypocontractility, and energy depletion as potential therapeutic targets for hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Eur Heart J 39(43):3879–3892
120. Vermersch E, Jouve C, Hulot JS (2020) CRISPR/Cas9 gene-editing strategies in cardiovascular cells. Cardiovasc Res 116(5):894–907
121. Mishra PK, Tyagi N, Sen U, Joshua IG, Tyagi SC (2010) Synergism in hyperhomocysteinemia and diabetes: role of PPAR gamma and tempol. Cardiovasc Diabetol 9:49
122. Chavali V, Nandi SS, Singh SR, Mishra PK (2014) Generating double knockout mice to model genetic intervention for diabetic cardiomyopathy in humans. Methods Mol Biol 1194:385–400
123. Prathipati P, Metreveli N, Nandi SS, Tyagi SC, Mishra PK (2016) Ablation of matrix Metalloproteinase-9 prevents cardiomyocytes contractile dysfunction in diabetics. Front Physiol 7:93
124. Kumarswamy R, Thum T (2013) Non-coding RNAs in cardiac remodeling and heart failure. Circ Res 113(6):676–689
125. Leptidis S, El Azzouzi H, Lok SI, de Weger R, Olieslagers S, Kisters N, Silva GJ, Heymans S, Cuppen E, Berezikov E, De Windt LJ, da Costa MP (2013) A deep sequencing approach to uncover the

miRNOME in the human heart. PLoS One 8(2): e57800
126. Nandi SS, Zheng H, Sharma NM, Shahshahan HR, Patel KP, Mishra PK (2016) Lack of miR-133a decreases contractility of diabetic hearts: a role for novel cross talk between tyrosine aminotransferase and tyrosine hydroxylase. Diabetes 65(10): 3075–3090
127. Shahshahan HR, Kambis TN, Kar S, Yadav SK, Mishra PK (2021) Generating Ins2(+/−)/miR-133aTg mice to model miRNA-driven cardioprotection of human diabetic heart. Methods Mol Biol 2224:113–121
128. Kambis TN, Shahshahan HR, Kar S, Yadav SK, Mishra PK (2019) Transgenic expression of miR-133a in the diabetic Akita heart prevents cardiac remodeling and cardiomyopathy. Front Cardiovasc Med 6:45
129. Alvarez-Erviti L, Seow Y, Yin H, Betts C, Lakhal S, Wood MJ (2011) Delivery of siRNA to the mouse brain by systemic injection of targeted exosomes. Nat Biotechnol 29(4):341–345
130. De Leo V, Milano F, Agostiano A, Catucci L (2021) Recent advancements in polymer/liposome assembly for drug delivery: from surface modifications to hybrid vesicles. Polymers (Basel) 13(7):1027
131. Chenthamara D, Subramaniam S, Ramakrishnan SG, Krishnaswamy S, Essa MM, Lin FH, Qoronfleh MW (2019) Therapeutic efficacy of nanoparticles and routes of administration. J Biomed Mater Res 23:20
132. Sung YK, Kim SW (2019) Recent advances in the development of gene delivery systems. J Biomed Mater Res 23:8. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40824-019-0156-z
133. Nayerossadat N, Maedeh T, Ali PA (2012) Viral and nonviral delivery systems for gene delivery. Adv Biomed Res 1:27
134. Thomas CE, Ehrhardt A, Kay MA (2003) Progress and problems with the use of viral vectors for gene therapy. Nat Rev Genet 4(5):346–358
135. Naso MF, Tomkowicz B, Perry WL 3rd, Strohl WR (2017) Adeno-associated virus (AAV) as a vector for gene therapy. BioDrugs 31(4):317–334
136. Greenberg B, Yaroshinsky A, Zsebo KM, Butler J, Felker GM, Voors AA, Rudy JJ, Wagner K, Hajjar RJ (2014) Design of a phase 2b trial of intracoronary administration of AAV1/SERCA2a in patients with advanced heart failure: the CUPID 2 trial (calcium up-regulation by percutaneous administration of gene therapy in cardiac disease phase 2b). JACC Heart Fail 2(1):84–92
137. Greenberg B, Butler J, Felker GM, Ponikowski P, Voors AA, Desai AS, Barnard D, Bouchard A, Jaski B, Lyon AR, Pogoda JM, Rudy JJ, Zsebo KM (2016) Calcium upregulation by percutaneous administration of gene therapy in patients with cardiac disease (CUPID 2): a randomised, multinational, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 2b trial. Lancet 387(10024):1178–1186
138. Di Pasquale E, Latronico MV, Jotti GS, Condorelli G (2012) Lentiviral vectors and cardiovascular diseases: a genetic tool for manipulating cardiomyocyte differentiation and function. Gene Ther 19(6):642–648
139. Niwano K, Arai M, Koitabashi N, Watanabe A, Ikeda Y, Miyoshi H, Kurabayashi M (2008) Lentiviral vector-mediated SERCA2 gene transfer protects against heart failure and left ventricular remodeling after myocardial infarction in rats. Mol Ther 16(6):1026–1032
140. Ly H, Kawase Y, Yoneyama R, Hajjar RJ (2007) Gene therapy in the treatment of heart failure. Physiology (Bethesda) 22:81–96
141. Nandi SS, Shahshahan HR, Shang Q, Kutty S, Boska M, Mishra PK (2018) MiR-133a mimic alleviates T1DM-induced systolic dysfunction in Akita: an MRI-based study. Front Physiol 9:1275
142. Rincon MY, VandenDriessche T, Chuah MK (2015) Gene therapy for cardiovascular disease: advances in vector development, targeting, and delivery for clinical translation. Cardiovasc Res 108(1):4–20



Genome Editing and Inherited Cardiac Arrhythmias

Laura Lalaguna, Laura Ramos-Hernández, Silvia G. Priori, and Enrique Lara-Pezzi

Abstract

Inherited arrhythmic disorders are a group of heterogeneous diseases predisposing to life-threatening arrhythmias and sudden cardiac death. Their diagnosis is not always simple due to incomplete penetrance and genetic heterogeneity. Furthermore, the available treatments are usually invasive and merely preventive. Genome editing and especially CRISPR/Cas9 technologies have the potential to correct the genetic arrhythmogenic substrate, thereby offering a cure for these fatal diseases. To date, genome editing has allowed reproducing cardiac arrhythmias in vitro, providing a robust platform for variant pathogenicity, mechanistic, and drug-testing studies. However, in vivo approaches still need profound research regarding safety, specificity, and efficiency of the methods.

Keywords

Sudden cardiac death · Primary arrhythmia · Channelopathy · Gene editing · CRISPR/Cas9 · LQTS · Brugada syndrome · CPVT · SQTS

1 Introduction

Sudden cardiac death (SCD) in young individuals with anatomically normal hearts has been reported for decades [1]. Due to inability to identify a causal relationship, this SCDs were initially termed as "idiopathic ventricular fibrillation" [2]. However, the discovery of the first long QT syndrome susceptibility genes in the late 1990s had transformative effects in their management, introducing what we now call primary arrhythmia syndromes [3–5]. These inherited arrhythmic disorders have a low prevalence, and patients suffer from increased predisposition to life-threatening arrhythmias, which arise spontaneously or upon a trigger in the absence of structural cardiac abnormalities. As most of the genes affected encode cardiac ion channels, they are also referred to as cardiac channelopathies. Their diagnosis is not always simple due to incomplete penetrance and genetic heterogeneity. The available treatments are merely preventive and involve

L. Lalaguna · L. Ramos-Hernández
Centro Nacional de Investigaciones Cardiovasculares (CNIC), Madrid, Spain

S. G. Priori
Centro Nacional de Investigaciones Cardiovasculares (CNIC), Madrid, Spain

Università di Pavia, Istituti Clinici Scientifici Maugeri, Pavia, Italy

E. Lara-Pezzi (✉)
Centro Nacional de Investigaciones Cardiovasculares (CNIC), Madrid, Spain

Centro de Investigación Biomédica en Red Cardiovascular (CIBERCV), Madrid, Spain
e-mail: elara@cnic.es

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_8

life-long or invasive approaches like the implantable cardiac defibrillator (ICD) or left cardiac sympathetic denervation (LCSD) [6]. This is a big challenge for clinicians, whose decision may have life-altering consequences for the patients, especially for those with an inconclusive diagnosis. For these reasons, the lack of highly effective pharmacological treatment makes inherited cardiac arrhythmias the perfect candidate for genome editing-based approaches, potentially reversing the genetic substrate and offering a "cure" for the disease.

As the availability and use of genetic testing increases, so does the probability that rare variants of uncertain significance (VUS) are found. Regarding channelopathies, to date genome editing has mainly been used to either directly introduce the desired VUS mutation in in vitro models, particularly human-induced pluripotent stem cells (hiPSCs), or to generate the proper isogenic controls from patient-derived lines. Both approaches result in isogenic sets of cells, allowing the elimination of epigenetic differences and unknown genetic modifiers that may introduce phenotype variability (Fig. 1). Consequently, genome editing and especially CRISPR/Cas9 provide a robust platform to study genotype-phenotype correlations, being able to identify causality or association of the variant to the disease. Furthermore, this system allows molecular and mechanistic studies, identification of regulatory elements, and comparative studies of different mutations.

In summary, this chapter focuses on the knowledge that CRISPR/Cas9 technologies have helped acquire regarding the four major channelopathies: long QT syndrome (LQTS), Brugada syndrome (BrS), catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia (CPVT), and short QT syndrome (SQTS).

2 Long QT Syndrome

Long QT syndrome (LQTS) is the most frequent primary arrhythmia with a prevalence of up to 1: 2000. The inheritance is autosomal dominant, although some very rare and extremely severe recessive variants have also been described [7, 8]. LQTS comprises a heterogenous family of diseases characterized by a prolonged QT interval and T-wave abnormalities in the electrocardiogram (ECG) (Fig. 2b). Especially upon adrenergic stimulation, these patients are at a high risk of ventricular tachycardia, which can end in sudden cardiac death due to torsade de pointes.

To date, congenital LQTS has been classified based on mutations associated with up to 17 genes [9]. The QT prolongation arises mainly from loss of function mutations of the K^+ channels, which cause a decrease in repolarizing potassium current in phase 3 of the action potential, or gain of function mutations of Na^+ and Ca^{2+} channels, which cause a late inward entry of positive ions in the cardiomyocyte. LQT1-3 subtypes comprise about 75% of all the patients with LQTS and affect KCNQ1, KCNH2, and SCN5A genes, respectively [10]. KCNQ1 and KCNH2 both encode for the alpha subunits of K^+ channels conducting the slow and rapid delayed rectifying current, I_{ks} and I_{kr}. SCN5A, on the other hand, encodes for the alpha subunit of the cardiac sodium channel, conducting the depolarizing sodium inward current (I_{Na}) [11]. These major genes were first identified in 1995 [3–5], and, as 20% of LQTS remained genetically elusive, the past 25 years have experienced an exponential growth in publications reporting LQTS-associated genes and mutations, describing more than 600 genetic variants [10, 12].

In this race for genotype-phenotype association, the advances in hiPSC culture and differentiation together with CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing tools have undoubtedly provided an easy and rapid method to study the causality of genetic variants in a dish. For example, the missense mutation T983I in KCNH2 was initially classified as VUS due to very low population frequency and lack of prior clear phenotypic data. Isogenic sets of cells consisting of patient-derived and CRISPR/Cas9-corrected hiPSC-cardiomyocytes (hiPSC-CMs) allowed the reclassification of this variant to likely pathogenic. The mutant cells showed prolonged action potential (AP), reduced

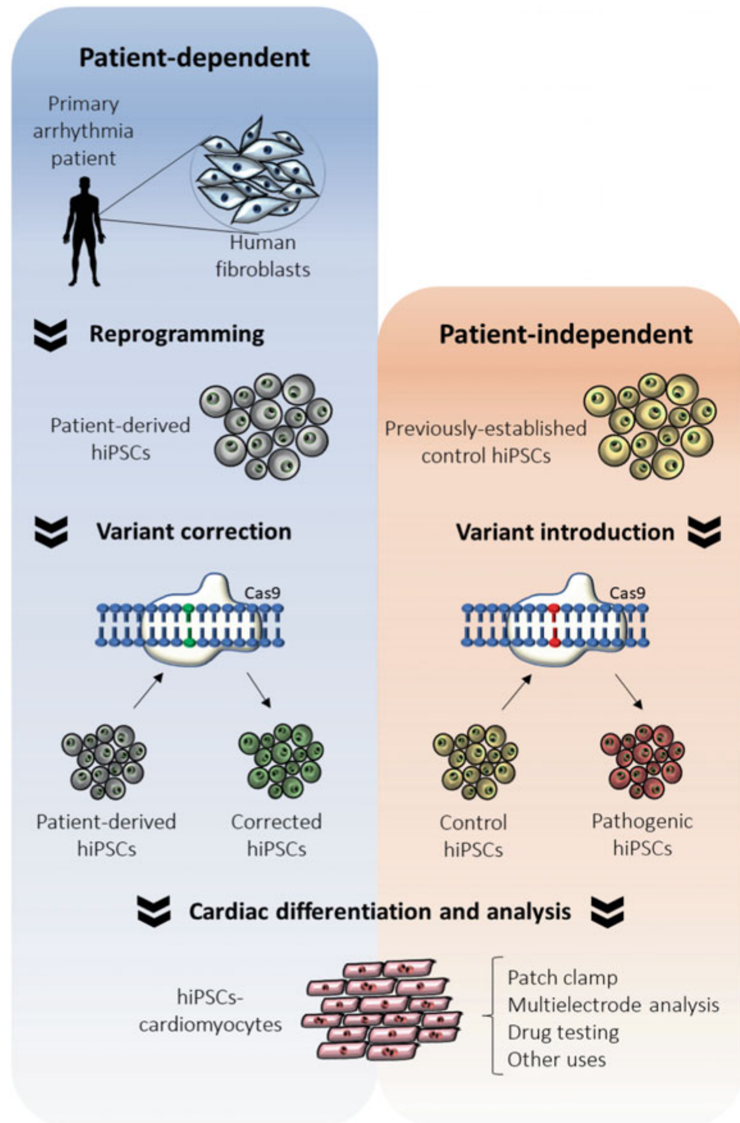


Fig. 1 Comparison of patient-dependent and patient-independent hiPSC models in primary arrhythmias. Patient-dependent approach (left) in which the hiPSC line is generated de novo from affected fibroblasts and CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing is used to generate the isogenic controls by correcting the variant. A much more rapid patient-independent approach (right) uses previously established control hiPSCs to introduce the mutation with CRISPR/Cas9. After cardiac differentiation, both models are ready for analysis

I_{Kr}, and a greater propensity to proarrhythmia upon high-risk torsadogenic drugs. On the other hand, correction of the mutation through genome editing restored the aberrant cellular phenotype. In a complementary set of experiments, the mutation was introduced in homozygosis in healthy hiPSCs, getting rid of the patient's genetic background, and hallmark features of the LQTS disorder were again recapitulated [13]. Missense mutations in KCNH2, also called hERG, usually have a dominant negative effect and result in inappropriate maturation of the potassium channel and reduced I_{Kr}. The dominant mechanism associated with the protein loss of function has been reported to be the generation of trafficking deficient channels [14]. To gain further insight, a missense mutation known to cause LQT2 was introduced in homozygosis in control hiPSC-CMs using CRISPR/Cas9 and compared to unedited cells and heterozygous patient-derived hiPSC-CMs [15]. hERG immunostaining showed similar intracellular presence of the channel for all the cells but reduced fluorescence intensity in the plasma membrane in both LQT2

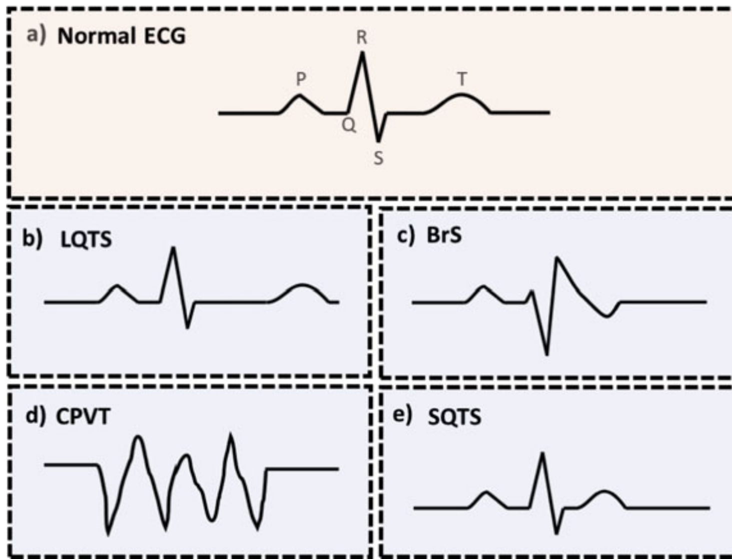


Fig. 2 Electrophysiological characteristics of the main cardiac channelopathies. (**a**) Normal ECG. (**b**) Prolonged QT interval in long QT syndrome (LQTS). (**c**) Coved-type ST segment elevation in Brugada syndrome (BrS). (**d**) Shortened QT interval in short QT syndrome (SQTS). (**e**) Polymorphic ventricular tachycardia in catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia (CPVT)

models, suggesting trafficking defects. This same mutation had been previously studied in heterologous systems, and its transient expression showed insufficient processing in the Golgi apparatus [14]. Therefore, the reduced I_{Kr} and prolongation of AP duration (APD) phenotype observed in the mutant hiPSC-CMs may be the result of a non-glycosylated hERG that fails to be transported to the plasma membrane [16]. The fact that the mutation in homozygosis aggravated the phenotype supports not just its pathogenic role but also the use of patient-independent models to confidently study disease pathogenesis.

VUS in less common LQTS-associated genes have also been studied with this same approach. The R518C mutation in the CACNA1C gene was reported to be the genetic substrate of cardiac-only Timothy syndrome (TS) [17, 18]. TS is a very rare and severe variant of LQT8 in which there is a coexistence of LQTS, cardiomyopathy, and extracardiac phenotypes. The affected gene encodes for the heart's voltage-gated L-type calcium channel, LTCC. The ion current studies of patient-derived hiPSC-CMs (CACNA1C-R518C) and its CRISPR/Cas9-corrected isogenic control showed that this gain of function mutation is sufficient to cause the patient's QT prolongation due to an increase in LTCC late current and delayed calcium transient resolution. This prolongs the plateau phase of the myocyte action potential, leading to delayed repolarization, and is the monogenetic substrate for the LQTS phenotype in the patient [19]. Furthermore, a patient-independent model in which another CACNA1C VUS was introduced into hiPSCs using CRISPR/Cas9 also showed prolonged AP due to reduced LTCC voltage-dependent inactivation [20]. Not only do these results support the pathogenicity of this specific variant but also, together with the previous report, support that CACNA1C is a susceptibility gene for LQTS.

Taking a step further, Yoshinaga et al. proposed the use of these patient-derived hiPSC-CMs together with their corresponding CRISPR/Cas9-corrected controls to develop a novel method for LQTS phenotype-based classification. It consists of specific currents blockade and their electrophysiological assessment using multielectrode array (MEA) systems, which allow multiple simultaneous recordings at once. Studying cells

from patients suffering from the three main subtypes of LQTS and their CRISPR/Cas9-corrected controls, they observed that LQT1-3 could be distinguished by I_{Ks}, I_{Kr}, and I_{Na} blockade, respectively [21]. This strategy reduces variability compared to traditional single-cell patch clamp recordings, allowing the detection of subtle electrophysiological differences. Therefore, it could potentially allow high-throughput screening, efficient recognition of pathogenic variants, and phenotype-based diagnosis of LQT subtypes.

Combination of the patient-independent platform together with MEA has also been used to observe intragenotype differences in disease severity attributable to the KCNH2 mutation site. Heterozygous missense mutations known to affect the pore-loop domain (KCNH2-A561T) or the cytoplasmic tail of hERG (KCNH2-N996I) were introduced into control hiPSCs using CRISPR/Cas9. Action potentials (APs) and field potentials (FPs) were recorded using both patch clamp and MEA in single cells and confluent monolayers of hiPSC-CMs, respectively. Furthermore, to mimic the triggering factors that induce arrhythmic events in LQTS, the researchers examined the behavior of the cells upon inhibition with the I_{Kr} blocker E-4031. In summary, the pore-loop mutation had longer APs and FPs and a higher risk of developing an arrhythmic cardiac event upon stimulation with a triggering factor [22]. These results are in line with the fact that pore mutations cause a more severe clinical course due to a dominant negative effect, while usually, C-term mutations cause haploinsufficiency and therefore less severe phenotypes [23]. Although a larger panel of KCNH2 mutations should be assessed to further evaluate this scoring system, it appears to be sufficiently sensitive to detect subtle intragenotype-phenotype mutational differences and could have clinical implications in diagnosis, prognosis, and risk stratification of LQTS patients [22].

In combination with next-generation exome sequencing, genome editing also enables the identification of plausible genetic causes for families with genotype-phenotype discordances. A large Cleveland family that was studied for 20 years showed a homogenous LQTS population carrying the LQT2 KCNH2-R752W mutation. Nevertheless, out of 26 mutation-positive members, only 6 had severely affected phenotypes, making it so variable that clinical analysis did not allow an accurate diagnosis of those individuals carrying these mutations [24]. Whole exome sequencing analysis identified a variant in the GTP-binding protein REM2, common for the severe phenotypes. REM2 encodes a member of the Ras superfamily, which are well-known modulators of voltage-gated calcium ion channels, suggesting it could be a promising modifier gene in LQTS [25]. Five patients were selected from this family, and as their hiPSC-CMs were able to reproduce phenotype discordances, Chai et al. used a CRISPR/Cas9 strategy based on homologous recombination to correct the REM2 variant in the cells from severely affected individuals. The hiPSC-CMs showed enhanced LTCC and prolonged action potentials that were successfully reversed upon genome editing. Therefore, they linked the REM2 gene variants to arrhythmias and concluded that the REM2-driven increased L-type Ca^{2+} current in combination with primary KCNH2 haploinsufficiency is the permutation that produces the full-blown disease phenotype [26]. A similar situation was studied recently in a family in which both father and son were carriers of the same Y111C missense mutation in KCNQ1 gene but presented opposite clinical phenotypes. The functional and molecular study of their hiPSC-CMs showed impaired trafficking and increased degradation of the mutant KCNQ1 protein in the symptomatic (S) patient. In contrast, for the asymptomatic (AS) patient, the degradation was reduced as a result of a reduced activity of Nedd4L, which is involved in channel protein degradation via the proteasome. Whole exome sequencing found two single nucleotide variants (SNVs) on a Nedd4L interactor gene, MTMR4, present in the AS patient and his two siblings, also AS carriers. Correction of the SNVs in AS cells using CRISPR/Cas9 unmasked the LQTS phenotype, showing reduced I_{Kr} density. Furthermore, they confirmed that their presence reduced MTMR4 dephosphorylation activity,

thus blunting the proteasomal degradation of KCNQ1 mediated by Nedd4L. In a separate cohort, they found that the same MTMR4 variants were present in 77% of AS Y111C mutation carriers, additionally supporting their protective effect and their role in the incomplete penetrance of Y111C-LQT1 [27].

As we mentioned before, dealing with incomplete penetrance is one of the major hindrances to effective clinical diagnosis. At the molecular level, multiple mechanisms may be responsible for the penetrance heterogeneity in LQTS. Introduction of a very low penetrance SCN5A mutation in hiPSCs through CRISPR/Cas9 showed prolonged action potentials and arrhythmogenic delayed afterdepolarizations. The LQT3 phenotype was reversed by using PIP_3, a known sodium late current modulator. This is consistent with the results obtained in heterologous expression systems, in which PIP_3 could also reverse the late current phenotype in this variant. However, a fully penetrant SCN5A mutation did not show sensitivity to PIP_3. Therefore, this penetrance differences from almost 0% to 100% may be the result of distinct molecular mechanisms, which need to be considered when interpreting the severity of a late current derived from sodium channel functional defects [28].

Although gene correction is the most appealing application of CRISPR/Cas9, knocking out or down genes is also possible. This approach is especially interesting in those diseases affecting redundantly expressed genes. That is the case for calmodulinopathies, since the human genome harbors three distinct genes encoding for an identical calmodulin protein (CALM1-3). This protein is a ubiquitous Ca^{2+} sensor that modulates several ion channels, including LTCCs, which inactivation is promoted by the formation of Ca^{2+}-CaM complexes. As calmodulin is also an LQTS susceptibility gene, in 2017, two groups used this approach to investigate CALM2-LQT15 mutations. On the one hand, Limpitikul et al. used a CRISPRi system in which a dead Cas9 is fused to a suppressor, allowing downregulation of the target gene and avoiding double-strand breaks that could permanently alter off-target or downstream elements in the genome. The CRISPRi suppressed patient-specific iPSCs, normalized the prolonged APD, and corrected fully the magnitude of LTCC's Ca^{2+}-CaM dependent inactivation. Furthermore, it provided additional evidence that mature cells like cardiomyocytes could potentially be targeted by this approach [29]. On the other hand, Yamamoto et al. leaned toward a mutant allele-specific ablation in another LQT15 model of patient-derived iPSCs. This approach used a Cas9 double nickase system to reduce off-target effects and premature stop codons. They achieved the rescue of the electrophysiological abnormalities of the LQT15-hiPSC-CMs, indicating that the mutant allele caused dominant negative suppression of LTCC inactivation, resulting in prolonged AP duration [30]. In contrast to the former strategy, this allele-specific approach does not affect the WT allele, and therefore can be used in any other dominant negative disease with no need for genetic redundancy. Both strategies hold great promise in the treatment and diagnosis of LQTS and other inherited diseases, whose management is moving into the realm of precision medicine.

3 Brugada Syndrome

Like LQTS, Brugada syndrome (BrS) belongs to the group of inherited primary arrhythmia syndromes, predisposing to ventricular fibrillation and sudden cardiac death in the absence of structural heart abnormalities. This channelopathy is characterized by a coved-type ST segment elevation in the right precordial leads of the ECG (Fig. 2c), occurring spontaneously or upon the intravenous administration of class I antiarrhythmic drugs [31]. The main gene associated to BrS is SCN5A, the alpha subunit of the voltage-gated Nav1.5 cardiac sodium channel responsible for phase 0 of the cardiac action potential. More than 350 rare variants have been identified in SCN5A, accounting for 30% of the diagnosed cases [32]. Although BrS remains to be classified as a monogenic disease, incomplete penetrance and variable expressivity suggest a complex mode of inheritance, and most of these genetic variants remain of questionable causality

[33]. More information about the pathophysiological mechanism of the disease is needed in order to develop BrS-specific treatments, for which the only proven therapeutic option is ICD [6].

BrS genotype-phenotype associations have been studied using genome editing. One of the SCN5A variants examined showed reduced inward sodium current (I_{Na}), abnormal Ca^{2+} transients, and increased triggered activity in patient-derived hiPSC-CMs, reproducing the single-cell phenotype features of BrS. When this variant was corrected to wild type with CRISPR/Cas9, the maximal upstroke velocity and inter-beat variability were ameliorated, resulting in an improvement of the proarrhythmic phenotype and the disturbances found in AP recordings and Ca^{2+} imaging [34]. In another SCN5A variant, a patient-independent approach was used to study causality of the mutation, irrespective of the patient's genetic background. The loss of function BrS A735V-SCN5A variant was introduced in homozygosis in control hiPSC-CMs using CRISPR/Cas9. Apart from observing strongly reduced upstroke velocities and abnormal APs associated to the mutation, they identified a shifted activation curve of Nav1.5 channels that represents a key mechanism underlying the pathology of the variant [35]. In short, both approaches found evidence to support the association of the mutations to the observed BrS phenotypes.

Furthermore, usage of isogenic pairs of cells has enabled the identification of new BrS susceptibility genes. Whole exome sequencing of a large pedigree with BrS and history of SCD identified a rare non-synonymous variant (R211H) in RRAD, a gene encoding the RAD GTPase, present in all the affected members of the family. Insertion of the variant in an extrafamilial control iPSC line with CRISPR/Cas9 technology recapitulated the same phenotype of patient-derived hiPSC-CMs, including persistent Na^{+} current and cytoskeleton disturbances. This confirms the involvement of the RRAD variant in the BrS phenotype, thus identifying a new BrS susceptibility gene [36].

As we have already observed, I_{Na} reductions are characteristic of BrS. Therefore, understanding the molecular mechanisms underlying this reduced current could be of help in the search for potential therapeutic options. Wnt/β-catenin signaling, which is active in heart disease, has been reported to potently inhibit Nav1.5 expression in both neonatal and adult rat cardiomyocytes [37]. Furthermore, chromatin immunoprecipitation showed that TCF4, a downstream effector of the pathway, had binding sites in the SCN5A promoter. Therefore, CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing has been used to induce mutations within these TCF4 binding sites in neonatal rat ventricular myocytes, showing attenuated Wnt inhibition of SCN5A and demonstrating that those sites were functionally important for Wnt regulation of SCN5A [38]. All in all, strategies to block this intracellular cascade would represent novel methods for cardiac-specific inhibition of the Wnt pathway to rescue I_{Na} and prevent SCD. Following the regulation of Nav1.5, a conserved regulatory cluster with super enhancer characteristics has been identified downstream of SCN5A. It drives localized cardiac expression and contains conduction velocity-associated variants, including BrS variants [39]. Deletion of its component regulatory elements using genome editing in the one cell stage of mouse embryos showed that the cluster and its individual components are selectively required for cardiac SCN5A expression, normal cardiac conduction, and normal embryonic development. These studies reveal physiological roles of an enhancer cluster in the SCN5A-SCN10A locus that controls chromatin architecture and SCN5A expression. Thus, alteration of its activity by genetic variants like the ones found in BrS may contribute to the disease phenotype [40].

3.1 Catecholaminergic Polymorphic Ventricular Tachycardia

Catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia (CPVT) is the third of the main primary arrhythmia syndromes, characterized by adrenergic-induced bidirectional and polymorphic ventricular tachycardias (Fig. 2d) in the absence of structural cardiac abnormalities [41]. Treatments for CPVT include beta-blockers,

flecainide, and ICD [6]. Two main types of CPVT have been described: an autosomal dominant disease affecting the RyR2 gene (CPVT1) [42] and a less common recessive form involving the CASQ2 gene (CPVT2) [43]. The RyR2 gene encodes the cardiac ryanodine receptor, which is the main intracellular calcium release channel. On the other hand, CASQ2 is involved in the regulation of the RyR2 activity. Mutations in these proteins therefore are associated with defects in Ca^{2+} handling by the sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) and underlie the pathophysiology of the disease [44]. CPVT1 accounts for approximately 60% of the cases, while CPVT2, usually more severe, accounts for 10–15% [45]. The remaining CPVT cases are due to mutations of known or unknown origin. In this regard, other genes like triadin, calmodulin, and TECRL are also being studied as potential susceptibility genes [46–48].

As for the other channelopathies, genome editing tools have helped in generating robust models for studying CPVT in vitro. As such, a CPVT1 model generated with CRISPR/Cas9 exhibited aberrant Ca^{2+} signaling properties indistinguishable from those previously recorded in cells derived from patients carrying the same mutation [49, 50]. This supports the pathological effect of the variant as well as the feasibility of the patient-independent model.

With respect to the molecular mechanism underlying CPVT, RyR2 mutations result in an abnormal protein that is prone to spontaneous calcium release from the SR, drives depolarizing Na^{+}-Ca^{2+} exchange, and results in afterdepolarizations that can trigger subsequent action potentials, causing ventricular ectopy and arrhythmias [45]. Gene editing studies in CPVT have been centered into understanding these imbalances in calcium homeostasis, which are triggered upon catecholaminergic stimulation. Studies in mouse models have shown that CaMKII-mediated phosphorylation of RyR2 is able to promote ventricular arrhythmias and its inhibition has proven to be successful in preventing arrhythmogenesis in several CPVT1 mutations in vitro and in vivo [51–53]. The use of genome editing has further supported this hypothesis, identifying a serine (RYR2-S2814) that induces CPVT1. As clinical arrhythmias emerge from the collective behavior of cardiomyocytes assembled into myocardial tissue, researchers developed a bidimensional model using integrated muscular thin films (MTFs) from patient-derived and CRISPR/Cas9-introduced R4651-RyR2 hiPSCs. Together with optogenetics, this enabled simultaneous assessment of myocardial Ca^{2+} transient propagation and contraction. Both patient-derived and engineered MTFs reproduced the CPVT phenotype at the tissue level and implicated CaMKII as a key signaling molecule in the pathogenesis of CPVT. To further study the mechanism of reentry, they used genome editing to replace a critical target serine of CaMKII with alanine (S2814A) in RYR2 alleles, in both WT and R4651I background. By doing so, they blocked the phosphorylation event and observed normalized pacing- and isoproterenol-induced Ca^{2+} propagation speed heterogeneity and relative diastolic Ca^{2+} level, resulting in a substrate that is less vulnerable to reentry [54].

Comparative analysis of different disease-causing mutations can also be performed using genome editing. Recently, Zhang et al. explored three mutations introduced by CRISPR/Cas9 in different domains of the RyR2 to determine whether the molecular mechanism underlying their pathological effect is dependent on the specific RyR2 mutation site. The mutations were located at the N-terminus, C-terminus, and central domains of the protein. All three mutants exhibited CPVT phenotype with prolonged calcium releases. However, in the C-terminus and central domain mutations, the SR Ca^{2+} leak was significantly increased, and the SR Ca^{2+} content was reduced compared to control cells or the N-terminus mutant, which showed moderate leak and Ca^{2+} content. In the C-terminus domain, this might be explained by the higher fractional Ca^{2+} releases and calcium-induced calcium release (CICR) gains observed. Furthermore, dantrolene, reported to bind to RyR2 N-terminus domain, was more effective in suppressing the SR leak and aberrant Ca^{2+} releases in the C-terminus mutation. Although no other drug tested showed mutation-site specificity, these results suggest that

the treatment of CPVT1 should move toward personalized medicine, applying mutation-specific pharmacotherapy [55].

4 Short QT Syndrome

As opposed to LQTS, short QT syndrome is characterized by a shortened QT interval as a consequence of abbreviated ventricular repolarization (Fig. 2e). Pathogenic mutations have been identified in both potassium and calcium channel genes, and at least six subtypes of SQTS have been reported. Like the rest of the primary arrhythmia syndromes, it predisposes to life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias and sudden cardiac death. The treatments of choice for SQTS are the class Ia antiarrhythmic drug quinidine or ICD implantation [6].

SQTS is one of the rarest and less studied channelopathies; therefore models for this syndrome developed with genome editing are scarce. Nevertheless, as for the abovementioned diseases, it has been demonstrated that the phenotype of SQTS can be reproduced in vitro in single cells. Compared to its gene-corrected isogenic control, SQTS cells (KCNH2-T618I) showed shortened action potential duration and increased beat-beat interval variability. In addition, this particular missense mutation produced gain of function of KCNH2, with increased I_{Kr} and protein expression in the membrane [56].

However, more complex electrophysiological phenomena, such as conduction and reentrant arrhythmias, need to be studied in the whole tissue, rather than in individual cells. Cardiac cell sheets (CCSs) provide a bidimensional approach that can overcome this restraint [57]. CCSs from SQTS patient-derived and gene-corrected hiPSCs allow to study the mechanisms underlying SQT pathophysiology. This approach was used to investigate the most common mutation causing SQTS, KCNH2-N588K. It recapitulated the SQTS disease phenotype in both cells and tissues, including a shortened APD and wavelength, increased susceptibility for induction of reentrant arrhythmias, and increased arrhythmia complexity as observed by optical mapping in the CCSs. To validate this tissue model further, the effects of several potential SQTS therapies were screened. Interestingly, despite being able to prolong AP in both healthy and isogenic control hiPSC-CMs, sotalol did not show effects on CCSs [58]. This reinforces the importance of using tissue models over single cell ones while studying arrhythmogenic diseases, since sotalol also failed to produce QTc prolongation in SQTS patients [59].

5 Summary and Future Perspectives

For primary arrhythmias, the first report using genome editing dates back to 2014, when zinc finger nucleases were used to correct an LQTS mutation in vitro [60]. A couple years later, coinciding with CRISPR/Cas9 bursting applications, more groups interested in arrhythmias slowly started to consider the use of genome editing. Regarding in vitro models, we have seen that the generation of isogenic control cells with CRISPR/Cas9 has allowed the identification of new susceptibility genes and variants. Furthermore, the patient-independent approach in which the mutation is introduced by CRISPR/Cas9 in control hiPSCs is much cheaper and rapid than obtaining patient-derived cells for evaluating VUS. This approach does not require access to human samples, making feasible even postmortem studies.

Genetic heterogeneity is very common in channelopathies, and as a result, more and more mutations are being discovered and added to the potential list of variants susceptible for genetic testing. Although both patient-dependent and patient-independent in vitro approaches can support the pathogenicity of a variant, further robust scientific and statistical evidence of disease causation must be considered in order to include them in routinely used clinical screening [61, 62]. In addition, even though huge progress has been made into understanding the pathogenesis of inherited cardiac arrhythmias, the recommendations for therapeutic interventions

have barely changed in the last four decades [63], including beta-blockers, LCSD, or ICD [6]. Being able to introduce distinct disease-causing mutations while keeping the same genetic background has also allowed unbiased comparison of multiple variants. This comparative analysis showed that different mutations in the same gene might be the consequence of distinct molecular mechanisms, reinforcing the concept that the treatment of inherited arrhythmias needs to move into the realm of precision medicine and patient-specific approaches.

Another point worth mentioning is that despite the fact that missense variants are relatively easy to be corrected by CRISPR/Cas9, targeting complex mutations, such as double heterozygosity, may pose additional challenges that still need to be surpassed [64]. Additionally, CRISPR/Cas9 itself has several limitations that have delayed the application of genome editing in vivo to the treatment of cardiac arrhythmias. Correcting a mutation requires the activity of the homologous recombination cellular machinery, which is downregulated in terminally differentiated cells like cardiomyocytes, thereby reducing the chances of success. Furthermore, correction of only a small number of cells might trigger proarrhythmic events and even worsen the patients' clinical scenarios [65].

All in all, what we have learned from these recent studies of primary arrhythmia syndromes and genome editing is that these diseases can be successfully reproduced in a dish, showing defective ion currents and providing a useful platform for molecular, comparative, and drug-testing studies. Although very promising, this technology is still very young, and translating it from bench to bedside will need additional research to improve safety, efficiency, and specificity of the methods. Hopefully, in the upcoming years, more in vivo CRISPR/Cas9 research in cardiac channelopathies will help us see its potential to cure these diseases and make precision medicine a reality.

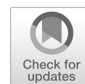
References

1. McWilliam J (1889) Cardiac failure and sudden death. Br Med J 1462:6–8
2. Priori S, Borggrefe M, Camm A, Hauer R, Klein H, Kuck K, Schwartz P, Touboul P, Wellens H (1992) Unexplained cardiac arrest. The need for a prospective registry. Eur Heart J 13(11):1445–1446
3. Wang Q, Shen J, Splawski I, Atkinson D, Li Z, Robinson J, Moss A, Towbin J, Keating M (1995) SCN5A mutations associated with an inherited cardiac arrhythmia, long QT syndrome. Cell 80(5):805–811
4. Curran M, Splawski I, Timothy K, Vincent G, Green E, Keating M (1995) A molecular basis for cardiac arrhythmia: HERG mutations cause long QT syndrome. Cell 80(5):795–803
5. Wang Q, Curran M, Splawski I, Burn T, Millholland J, VanRaay T, Shen J, Timothy K, Vincent G, de Jager T, Schwartz P, Toubin J, Moss A, Atkinson D, Landes G, Connors T, Keating M (1996) Positional cloning of a novel potassium channel gene: KVLQT1 mutations cause cardiac arrhythmias. Nat Genet 12(1):17–23
6. Priori S, Wilde A, Horie M, Cho Y, Behr E, Berul C, Blom N, Brugada J, Chiang C, Huikuri H, Kannankeril P, Krahn A, Leenhardt A, Moss A, Schwartz P, Shimizu W, Tomaselli G, Tracy C (2013) HRS/EHRA/APHRS expert consensus statement on the diagnosis and management of patients with inherited primary arrhythmia syndromes: document endorsed by HRS, EHRA, and APHRS in May 2013 and by ACCF, AHA, PACES, and AEPC in June 2013. Heart Rhythm 10(12):1932–1963
7. Schwartz P, Stramba-Badiale M, Crotti L, Pedrazzini M, Besana A, Bosi G, Gabbarini F, Goulene K, Insolia R, Mannarino S, Mosca F, Nespoli L, Rimini A, Rosati E, Salice P, Spazzolini C (2009) Prevalence of the congenital long-QT syndrome. Circulation 120(18):1761–1767
8. Schwartz P, Spazzolini C, Crotti L, Bathen J, Amlie J, Timothy K, Shkolnikova M, Berul C, Bitner-Glindzicz M, Toivonen L, Horie M, Schulze-Bahr E, Denjoy I (2006) The Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome: natural history, molecular basis, and clinical outcome. Circulation 113(6):783–790
9. Skinner J, Winbo A, Abrams D, Vohra J, Wilde A (2019) Channelopathies that lead to sudden cardiac death: clinical and genetic aspects. Heart Lung Circ 28(1):22–30
10. Barsheshet A, Dotsenko O, Goldenberg I (2013) Genotype-specific risk stratification and management of patients with long QT syndrome. Ann Noninvasive Electrocardiol 18(6):499–509
11. Schwartz PJ, Crotti L, Insolia R (2012) Long-QT syndrome from genetics to management. Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol 5(4):868–877
12. Schwartz P, Ackerman M, George A, Wilde A (2013) Impact of genetics on the clinical management of channelopathies. J Am Coll Cardiol 62(3):169–180

13. Garg P, Oikonomopoulos A, Chen H, Li Y, Lam C, Sallam K, Perez M, Lux R, Sanguinetti M, Wu J (2018) Genome editing of induced pluripotent stem cells to decipher cardiac channelopathy variant. J Am Coll Cardiol 72(1):62–75
14. Anderson C, Delisle B, Anson B, Kilby J, Will M, Tester D, Gong Q, Zhou Z, Ackerman M, January C (2006) Most LQT2 mutations reduce Kv11.1 (hERG) current by a class 2 (trafficking-deficient) mechanism. Circulation 113(3):365–373
15. Nakajima T, Furukawa T, Hirano Y, Tanaka T, Sakurada H, Takahashi T, Nagai R, Itoh T, Katayama Y, Nakamura Y, Hiraoka M (1999) Voltage-shift of the current activation in HERG S4 mutation (R534C) in LQT2. Cardiovasc Res 44(2): 283–293
16. Mesquita F, Arantes P, Kasai-Brunswick T, Araujo D, Gubert F, Monnerat G, Silva Dos Santos D, Neiman G, Leitão I, Barbosa R, Coutinho J, Vaz I, Dos Santos M, Borgonovo T, Cruz F, Miriuka S, Medei E, Campos de Carvalho A, Carvalho A (2019) R534C mutation in hERG causes a trafficking defect in iPSC-derived cardiomyocytes from patients with type 2 long QT syndrome. Sci Rep 9(1):19203
17. Boczek N, Ye D, Jin F, Tester D, Huseby A, Bos J, Johnson A, Kanter R, Ackerman M (2015) Identification and functional characterization of a novel CACNA1C-mediated cardiac disorder characterized by prolonged QT intervals with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, congenital heart defects, and sudden cardiac death. Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol 8(5): 1122–1132
18. Larrañaga-Moreira J, Quintela-García S, Cárdenas-Reyes I, Barbeito-Caamaño C, Monserrat-Iglesias L, Barriales-Villa R (2019) Cardiac-only timothy syndrome (COTS): peripartum cardiomyopathy and long QT syndrome. Rev Esp Cardiol 72(10):876–878
19. Estes S, Ye D, Zhou W, Dotzler S, Tester D, Bos J, Kim C, Ackerman M (2019) Characterization of the CACNA1C-R518C missense mutation in the pathobiology of long-QT syndrome using human induced pluripotent stem cell cardiomyocytes shows action potential prolongation and L-Type calcium channel perturbation. Circ Genom Precis Med 12(8):e002534
20. Chavali N, Kryshtal D, Parikh S, Wang L, Glazer A, Blackwell D, Kroncke B, Shoemaker M, Knollmann B (2019) Patient-independent human induced pluripotent stem cell model: a new tool for rapid determination of genetic variant pathogenicity in long QT syndrome. Heart Rhythm 16(11):1686–1695
21. Yoshinaga D, Baba S, Makiyama T, Shibata H, Hirata T, Akagi K, Matsuda K, Kohjitani H, Wuriyanghai Y, Umeda K, Yamamoto Y, Conklin B, Horie M, Takita J, Heike T (2019) Phenotype-based high-throughput classification of long QT syndrome subtypes using human induced pluripotent stem cells. Stem Cell Rep 13(2):394–404
22. Brandão K, van den Brink L, Miller D, Grandela C, van Meer B, Mol M, de Korte T, Tertoolen L, Mummery C, Sala L, Verkerk A, Davis R (2020) Isogenic sets of hiPSC-CMs harboring distinct KCNH2 mutations differ functionally and in susceptibility to drug-induced arrhythmias. Stem Cell Rep 15(5):1127–1139
23. Anderson C, Kuzmicki C, Childs R, Hintz C, Delisle B, January C (2014) Large-scale mutational analysis of Kv11.1 reveals molecular insights into type 2 long QT syndrome. Nat Commun 5:5535
24. Kaufman E, Priori S, Napolitano C, Schwartz P, Iyengar S, Elston R, Schnell A, Gorodeski E, Rammohan G, Bahhur N, Connuck D, Verrilli L, Rosenbaum D, Brown A (2001) Electrocardiographic prediction of abnormal genotype in congenital long QT syndrome: experience in 101 related family members. J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol 12(4):455–461
25. Finlin B, Crump S, Satin J, Andres D (2003) Regulation of voltage-gated calcium channel activity by the Rem and Rad GTPases. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100(24):14469–14474
26. Chai S, Wan X, Ramirez-Navarro A, Tesar P, Kaufman E, Ficker E, George A, Deschênes I (2018) Physiological genomics identifies genetic modifiers of long QT syndrome type 2 severity. J Clin Invest 128(3):1043–1056
27. Lee Y, Sala L, Mura M, Rocchetti M, Pedrazzini M, Ran X, Mak T, Crotti L, Sham P, Torre E, Zaza A, Schwartz P, Tse H, Gnecchi M (2021) MTMR4 SNVs modulate ion channel degradation and clinical severity in congenital long QT syndrome: insights in the mechanism of action of protective modifier genes. Cardiovasc Res 117(3):767–779
28. Kroncke B, Yang T, Roden D (2019) Multiple mechanisms underlie increased cardiac late sodium current. Heart Rhythm 16(7):1091–1097
29. Limpitikul W, Dick I, Tester D, Boczek N, Limphong P, Yang W, Choi M, Babich J, DiSilvestre D, Kanter R, Tomaselli G, Ackerman M, Yue D (2017) A precision medicine approach to the rescue of function on malignant calmodulinopathic long-QT syndrome. Circ Res 120(1):39–48
30. Yuta Y, Takeru M, Takeshi H, Kenichi S, Yimin W, Mamoru H, Suguru N, Hirohiko K, Sayako H, Chen J (2017) Allele-specific ablation rescues electrophysiological abnormalities in a human iPS cell model of long-QT syndrome with a CALM2 mutation. Hum Mol Genet 9:9
31. Sieira J, Brugada P (2017) The definition of the Brugada syndrome. Eur Heart J 38(40):3029–3034
32. Brugada J, Campuzano O, Arbelo E, Sarquella-Brugada G, Brugada R (2018) Present status of brugada syndrome: JACC state-of-the-art review. J Am Coll Cardiol 72(9):1046–1059
33. Campuzano O, Sarquella-Brugada G, Cesar S, Arbelo E, Brugada J, Brugada R (2020) Update on genetic basis of brugada syndrome: monogenic, polygenic or oligogenic? Int J Mol Sci 21:19
34. Liang P, Sallam K, Wu H, Li Y, Itzhaki I, Garg P, Zhang Y, Vermglinchan V, Lan F, Gu M, Gong T,

Zhuge Y, He C, Ebert A, Sanchez-Freire V, Churko J, Hu S, Sharma A, Lam C, Scheinman M, Bers D, Wu J (2016) Patient-specific and genome-edited induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes elucidate single-cell phenotype of brugada syndrome. J Am Coll Cardiol 68(19):2086–2096
35. de la Roche J, Angsutararux P, Kempf H, Janan M, Bolesani E, Thiemann S, Wojciechowski D, Coffee M, Franke A, Schwanke K, Leffler A, Luanpitpong S, Issaragrisil S, Fischer M, Zweigerdt R (2019) Comparing human iPSC-cardiomyocytes versus HEK293T cells unveils disease-causing effects of Brugada mutation A735V of Na1.5 sodium channels. Sci Rep 9(1): 11173
36. Belbachir N, Portero V, Al Sayed Z, Gourraud J, Dilasser F, Jesel L, Guo H, Wu H, Gaborit N, Guilluy C, Girardeau A, Bonnaud S, Simonet F, Karakachoff M, Pattier S, Scott C, Burel S, Marionneau C, Chariau C, Gaignerie A, David L, Genin E, Deleuze J, Dina C, Sauzeau V, Loirand G, Baró I, Schott J, Probst V, Wu J, Redon R, Charpentier F, Le Scouarnec S (2019) RRAD mutation causes electrical and cytoskeletal defects in cardiomyocytes derived from a familial case of Brugada syndrome. Eur Heart J 40(37):3081–3094
37. Liang W, Cho H, Marbán E (2015) Wnt signalling suppresses voltage-dependent Na^+ channel expression in postnatal rat cardiomyocytes. J Physiol 593(5): 1147–1157
38. Lu A, Kamkar M, Chu C, Wang J, Gaudet K, Chen Y, Lin L, Liu W, Marbán E, Liang W (2020) Direct and indirect suppression of Scn5a gene expression mediates cardiac Na channel inhibition by Wnt signalling. Can J Cardiol 36(4):564–576
39. Bezzina C, Barc J, Mizusawa Y, Remme C, Gourraud J, Simonet F, Verkerk A, Schwartz P, Crotti L, Dagradi F, Guicheney P, Fressart V, Leenhardt A, Antzelevitch C, Bartkowiak S, Borggrefe M, Schimpf R, Schulze-Bahr E, Zumhagen S, Behr E, Bastiaenen R, Tfelt-Hansen J, Olesen M, Kääb S, Beckmann B, Weeke P, Watanabe H, Endo N, Minamino T, Horie M, Ohno S, Hasegawa K, Makita N, Nogami A, Shimizu W, Aiba T, Froguel P, Balkau B, Lantieri O, Torchio M, Wiese C, Weber D, Wolswinkel R, Coronel R, Boukens B, Bézieau S, Charpentier E, Chatel S, Despres A, Gros F, Kyndt F, Lecointe S, Lindenbaum P, Portero V, Violleau J, Gessler M, Tan H, Roden D, Christoffels V, Le Marec H, Wilde A, Probst V, Schott J, Dina C, Redon R (2013) Common variants at SCN5A-SCN10A and HEY2 are associated with Brugada syndrome, a rare disease with high risk of sudden cardiac death. Nat Genet 45(9):1044–1049
40. Man J, Mohan R, Boogaard M, Hilvering C, Jenkins C, Wakker V, Bianchi V, Laat W, Barnett P, Boukens B, Christoffels V (2019) An enhancer cluster controls gene activity and topology of the SCN5A-SCN10A locus in vivo. Nat Commun 10(1):4943
41. Leenhardt A, Lucet V, Denjoy I, Grau F, Ngoc D, Coumel P (1995) Catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia in children. A 7-year follow-up of 21 patients. Circulation 91(5):1512–1519
42. Priori S, Napolitano C, Tiso N, Memmi M, Vignati G, Bloise R, Sorrentino V, Danieli G (2001) Mutations in the cardiac ryanodine receptor gene (hRyR2) underlie catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia. Circulation 103(2):196–200
43. Lahat H, Pras E, Olender T, Avidan N, Ben-Asher E, Man O, Levy-Nissenbaum E, Khoury A, Lorber A, Goldman B, Lancet D, Eldar M (2001) A missense mutation in a highly conserved region of CASQ2 is associated with autosomal recessive catecholamine-induced polymorphic ventricular tachycardia in bedouin families from Israel. Am J Hum Genet 69(6): 1378–1384
44. Priori S, Chen S (2011) Inherited dysfunction of sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca2+ handling and arrhythmogenesis. Circ Res 108(7):871–883
45. Kim C, Aronow W, Dutta T, Frenkel D, Frishman W (2020) Catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia. Cardiol Rev 28(6):325–331
46. Roux-Buisson N, Cacheux M, Fourest-Lieuvin A, Fauconnier J, Brocard J, Denjoy I, Durand P, Guicheney P, Kyndt F, Leenhardt A, Le Marec H, Lucet V, Mabo P, Probst V, Monnier N, Ray P, Santoni E, Trémeaux P, Lacampagne A, Fauré J, Lunardi J, Marty I (2012) Absence of triadin, a protein of the calcium release complex, is responsible for cardiac arrhythmia with sudden death in human. Hum Mol Genet 21(12):2759–2767
47. Nyegaard M, Overgaard M, Søndergaard M, Vranas M, Behr E, Hildebrandt L, Lund J, Hedley P, Camm A, Wettrell G, Fosdal I, Christiansen M, Børglum A (2012) Mutations in calmodulin cause ventricular tachycardia and sudden cardiac death. Am J Hum Genet 91(4):703–712
48. Devalla H, Gélinas R, Aburawi E, Beqqali A, Goyette P, Freund C, Chaix M, Tadros R, Jiang H, Le Béchec A, Monshouwer-Kloots J, Zwetsloot T, Kosmidis G, Latour F, Alikashani A, Hoekstra M, Schlaepfer J, Mummery C, Stevenson B, Kutalik Z, de Vries A, Rivard L, Wilde A, Talajic M, Verkerk A, Al-Gazali L, Rioux J, Bhuiyan Z, Passier R (2016) TECRL, a new life-threatening inherited arrhythmia gene associated with overlapping clinical features of both LQTS and CPVT. EMBO Mol Med 8(12): 1390–1408
49. Wei H, Zhang X, Clift C, Yamaguchi N, Morad M (2018) CRISPR/Cas9 Gene editing of RyR2 in human stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes provides a novel approach in investigating dysfunctional Ca signaling. Cell Calcium 73:104–111
50. Fatima A, Xu G, Shao K, Papadopoulos S, Lehmann M, Arnáiz-Cot J, Rosa A, Nguemo F, Matzkies M, Dittmann S, Stone S, Linke M, Zechner U, Beyer V, Hennies H, Rosenkranz S, Klauke B, Parwani A, Haverkamp W, Pfitzer G,

Farr M, Cleemann L, Morad M, Milting H, Hescheler J, Saric T (2011) In vitro modeling of ryanodine receptor 2 dysfunction using human induced pluripotent stem cells. Cell Physiol Biochem 28(4):579–592
51. Liu N, Ruan Y, Denegri M, Bachetti T, Yang L, Colombi B, Napolitano C, Coetzee WA, Priori SG (2011) Calmodulin kinase II inhibition prevents arrhythmias in RyR2(R4496C+/-) mice with catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia. J Mol Cell Cardiol 50(1):214–222
52. Pasquale ED, Lodola F, Miragoli M, Denegri M, Avelino-Cruz JE, Buonocore M, Nakahama H, Portararo P, Bloise R, Napolitano C (2013) CaMKII inhibition rectifies arrhythmic phenotype in a patient-specific model of catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia. Cell Death Dis 4(10):843
53. Bezzerides V, Caballero A, Wang S, Ai Y, Hylind R, Lu F, Heims-Waldron D, Chambers K, Zhang D, Abrams D, Pu W (2019) Gene therapy for catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia by inhibition of Ca/calmodulin-dependent kinase II. Circulation 140(5):405–419
54. Park S, Zhang D, Qi Y, Li Y, Lee K, Bezzerides V, Yang P, Xia S, Kim S, Liu X, Lu F, Pasqualini F, Campbell P, Geva J, Roberts A, Kleber A, Abrams D, Pu W, Parker K (2019) Insights into the pathogenesis of catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia from engineered human heart tissue. Circulation 140(5):390–404
55. Zhang X, Wei H, Xia Y, Morad M (2021) Calcium signaling consequences of RyR2 mutations associated with CPVT1 introduced via CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing in human-induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes: comparison of RyR2-R420Q, F2483I, and Q4201R. Heart Rhythm 18(2): 250–260
56. Guo F, Sun Y, Wang X, Wang H, Wang J, Gong T, Chen X, Zhang P, Su L, Fu G, Su J, Yang S, Lai R, Jiang C, Liang P (2019) Patient-specific and gene-corrected induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes elucidate single-cell phenotype of short QT syndrome. Circ Res 124(1):66–78
57. Shaheen N, Shiti A, Huber I, Shinnawi R, Arbel G, Gepstein A, Setter N, Goldfracht I, Gruber A, Chorna S, Gepstein L (2018) Human induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiac cell sheets expressing genetically encoded voltage indicator for pharmacological and arrhythmia studies. Stem Cell Rep 10(6):1879–1894
58. Shinnawi R, Shaheen N, Huber I, Shiti A, Arbel G, Gepstein A, Ballan N, Setter N, Tijsen A, Borggrefe M, Gepstein L (2019) Modeling reentry in the short QT syndrome with human-induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiac cell sheets. J Am Coll Cardiol 73(18):2310–2324
59. Gaita F, Giustetto C, Bianchi F, Schimpf R, Haissaguerre M, Calò L, Brugada R, Antzelevitch C, Borggrefe M, Wolpert C (2004) Short QT syndrome: pharmacological treatment. J Am Coll Cardiol 43(8): 1494–1499
60. Wang Y, Liang P, Lan F, Wu H, Lisowski L, Gu M, Hu S, Kay M, Urnov F, Shinnawi R, Gold J, Gepstein L, Wu J (2014) Genome editing of isogenic human induced pluripotent stem cells recapitulates long QT phenotype for drug testing. J Am Coll Cardiol 64(5):451–459
61. Adler A, Novelli V, Amin A, Abiusi E, Care M, Nannenberg E, Feilotter H, Amenta S, Mazza D, Bikker H, Sturm A, Garcia J, Ackerman M, Hershberger R, Perez M, Zareba W, Ware J, Wilde A, Gollob M (2020) An international, multicentered, evidence-based reappraisal of genes reported to cause congenital long QT syndrome. Circulation 141(6):418–428
62. Hosseini S, Kim R, Udupa S, Costain G, Jobling R, Liston E, Jamal S, Szybowska M, Morel C, Bowdin S, Garcia J, Care M, Sturm A, Novelli V, Ackerman M, Ware J, Hershberger R, Wilde A, Gollob M (2018) Reappraisal of reported genes for sudden arrhythmic death: evidence-based evaluation of gene validity for brugada syndrome. Circulation 138(12):1195–1205
63. Schwartz PJ, Periti M, Malliani A (1975) The long Q-T syndrome. Am Heart J 89(3):378–390
64. Wang Z, Wang L, Liu W, Hu D, Gao Y, Ge Q, Liu X, Li L, Wang Y, Wang S, Li C (2019) Pathogenic mechanism and gene correction for LQTS-causing double mutations in KCNQ1 using a pluripotent stem cell model. Stem Cell Res 38:101483
65. Bongianino R, Priori S (2015) Gene therapy to treat cardiac arrhythmias. Nat Rev Cardiol 12(9):531–546



Genome Editing and Atrial Fibrillation

Michael Spartalis

Abstract

Atrial fibrillation (AF) is a frequent rhythm disturbance that raises the possibility of heart failure (HF) and stroke. AF is a multifactorial disorder combining genetic and environmental etiologies. Over the last decade, advancements have been made regarding the genetic base of this arrhythmia. We present the existing knowledge of genetic analysis and genome editing for atrial fibrillation, indicating the existing gaps and future directions. We aim to elucidate how genome editing could be utilized for patients with atrial fibrillation.

Keywords

Genome editing · Atrial fibrillation · Gene therapy · Genetics · Arrhythmia

1 Background

Interventional electrophysiology is a rather new subspecialty of cardiology. Over the last 50 years, novel ablation procedures and approaches have evolved [1]. Nevertheless, the therapy of rhythm disturbances remains substandard. Many cardiac rhythm disturbances like ventricular tachycardia (VT) and AF are arduous to treat with either interventional or antiarrhythmic drug treatment [2]. Cardiologists are continuously studying novel approaches such as genome editing to manage rhythm disturbances and address patients' increasing demands with arrhythmias [1, 2]. Genome editing has a great future and can be an exceptionally efficient patient-tailored therapy for rhythm disturbances [1, 2]. We will examine the present status and advancements in genome editing for AF.

2 Genome Editing and Atrial Fibrillation

The main issue with AF is that it enhances the patients' possibility of stroke, dementia, HF, and death [3, 4]. Several specific genetic loci linked with AF are found via genome-wide association investigations [5]. In addition, some loci were identified via familial linkage investigations [6]. The diverse genetic, electrical, and structural deviations causing AF are the most challenging aspects of AF therapy. Present AF management is based on reestablishing sinus rhythm (SR) but is hindered by substandard effectiveness and possible mortality and morbidity. Antiarrhythmic medication treatment is known to have severe side effects [7, 8]. AF ablation is progressively being utilized for symptomatic patients; however, its

M. Spartalis (✉)
Arrhythmia Unit, San Raffaele University Hospital, Milan, Italy

ESC Working Group on Cardiac Cellular Electrophysiology, Sophia Antipolis, Cannes, France
e-mail: msparta@med.uoa.gr

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_9

effectiveness in subjects with persistent AF is inadequate [9]. AF ablation is linked to increased mortality risk and increased number of deaths [10, 11]. There are several promising genome editing methods for AF prevention and treatment [1, 2]. Most AF studies are experimental, based on porcine and dog models [1, 2]. Because AF is mainly an atrial disorder, investigations in such designs display a huge translational edge over mouse ones [1, 2]. Various mechanistic AF investigations that show the aspect of anatomical and electric remodeling in the origin of AF were implemented in dog, sheep, and goat examinations [12, 13]. The framework of ion channel and atrial change of electrophysiological properties of canines was found similar to that observed in AF subjects [14]. The basis of electric remodeling seen in the atria has proven to be identical in genome editing porcine model investigations to that found in canines and several big animals [15, 16]. Table 1 summarizes the primary experimental studies regarding gene-focused aiming of AF substrate.

3 Atrial Fibrillation Substrate and Modifiable Electrical Targets

3.1 Ion Channels

A typical pathophysiological process of alterations in electrophysiological properties of AF is the decrease of the action potential duration (APD) [23]. This shortened duration causes the reentrant loops to be effortlessly induced and sustained [23]. In experimental studies, genome editing has been utilized to extend the APD via diminishing the expression of the delayed rectifier potassium channel IKr. This is accomplished through inhibiting the KCNH2 gene, a gene that codes for the alpha subunit of the IKr channel [23]. Furthermore, a porcine study found that potential duration can be lengthened by painting an adenovirus vector with an epicardial gene encoding a dominant-negative (DN) mutation of KCNH2 [24]. The authors demonstrated that halting the alpha subunit of the IKr channel resulted in an APD prolongation, inability of burst pacing induction of AF, and enhanced AF return to SR. [24]. The modifications were changed back after two weeks, associated with loss of gene expression [24]. Furthermore, Soucek et al. investigated the electroporation and epicardial injection in order to transfer the AdCERG-G627S transgene to hinder KCNH2 activity [17]. The authors showed that pigs after editing had significantly greater APD, and AF formation was impeded in an accelerated atrial pacing design [17]. It is essential to mention that the porcine hearts that acquired the transgene and formed chronic AF did not have reduced ejection fraction in comparison to the control arm [17]. However, these investigations did not evaluate the long-lasting outcomes of atrial IKr abolishment, because they were designed for limited period [17]. New investigations have revealed that reduced L-type calcium channel density (ICaL) is involved in the pathophysiological development of AF [25]. Genome editing focusing on enhancing a remarkably expressed gene replica, or through upregulation of specific channels, can be efficient in modifying this result [25].

Kv 1.5 ion channels can be an alternative option for AF genome editing [26–28]. Kv 1.5 ion channels are preferentially found in myocardial cells of the atrium and control the ultrarapid delayed rectifier current (IKur), leading to atrial repolarization following an action potential [26–28]. Hindrance of these channels is an attractive target of several molecule AF treatments due to the ability to cause selective lengthening of only the atrium's action potential [29]. Kv 1.5 knockout by CRISPR-mediated gene targeting or through an expressed siRNA or analogous oligonucleotide moieties can have the same therapeutic results without the necessity for continuous anti-arrhythmic drug therapy [29].

The TASK-1 potassium channel is an atrial distinct modulator of APD, making it an attractive option for anti-arrhythmic drug treatment [30]. Three distinct TASK-1 mutations were found to associate with AF generation [31]. Mathematical design and patch clamp techniques have shown that regulation of TASK-1 could modify

Table 1 Genome editing studies based on experimental models of AF [1]

AF prevention/cessation approach	Reference	Gene	Vector	Transfer techniques	Animal
Suppression of IKr current Lengthening of the atrial APD Suppression of IKr current	2005 [16] 2012 [17] 2013 [18]	KCNH2-G628S KCNH2-G627S KCNH2-G628S	AV AV AV	Epicardial gene painting Electroporation and gene injection Epicardial gene painting	Porcine Porcine Porcine
Enhanced expression of cardiac gap junction proteins CX43/CX40 to maintain more homogenous atrial conduction	2011 [19] 2012 [20]	CX43 CX40 CX43	AV AV	Electroporation and gene injection Epicardial gene painting	Porcine Porcine
Halting vagal signaling via dismantling Gi and/or Go proteins in LA	2009 [21]	Gi/Go terminal peptides	Plasmid	Electroporation and gene injection	Dog
Reducing LA fibrosis to homogenize atrial conduction	2016 [22]	TGR-B Type II receptor	Plasmid	Electroporation and gene injection	Dog

AF atrial fibrillation, *AV* adenovirus, *APD* action potential duration, *LA* left atrium

the action potential of cardiac muscle cells [32]. The specific expression methods of TASK-1 were examined in extensive studies with persistent AF, resulting in increased expression of TASK-1 in the atrium [33, 34]. While TASK-1 hindrance leads to an enhancement in the APD, which may have a positive effect on the AF substrate status, in vivo pig designs have demonstrated that in the frame of AF and HF pathophysiology, TASK-1 expression is downregulated [30]. The double impact obscures the TASK-1 narration, showing a need of a deeper understanding of TASK-1 prior to thoroughly labeling TASK-1 as an alternative AF strategy therapy [30].

3.2 Gap Junctions

Gap junctions are vital mediators of normal atrium conduction that control the electrical impulse transmission velocity linking with neighboring cytoplasms [35]. Connexins, which are transmembrane ion channels, control this relation [35]. These channels regulate the movement of small proteins and ions between adjacent cells, granting conduction and electrical coupling [35]. The atrium has two different connexin subtypes that develop gap junctions, CX40 and CX43 [35]. These proteins are critical regulators of a cell-to-cell coupling, and consequently, the altered expression of these molecules causes tremendous changes in the conduction [36]. Furthermore, altered connexin expression sequences could enhance atrial refractoriness discrepancy, leading to heterogeneous conduction sequences which may cause an arrhythmia [35]. Experimental models and studies with human atrial tissue have shown that reduced CX 40 and 43 contribute to AF-related structural alterations [37]. A porcine model study showed that CX43 expression could be repaired through electroporation and epicardial direct injection of an adenovirus encoding CX43 [19]. The authors concluded that these animals showed no arrhythmia episodes after 14 days of burst stimulation whereas everyone from the control group formed AF [19]. Igarashi et al. also showed that the epicardial painting repaired expression of connexins 40 and 43 in a rapid pacing porcine model and improved not only the electrical conduction but the gap junction concentration as well [20].

3.3 Parasympathetic Signaling

Aberrant autonomic parasympathetic signaling is an essential element that could lead to AF development [38]. Because of its denser innervation than different atrial segments, the posterior wall of the left atrium (LA) has more parasympathetic properties that can promptly generate AF [39]. Parasympathetic signaling begins with acetylcholine discharge from vagal nerve endings, which later stimulate muscarinic type 2 receptors that connect with heterotrimeric Gi proteins [40]. Gαi/o subunits of this G protein then hinder adenylate cyclase cyclic monophosphate (cAMP)—protein kinase action, delay SR, and atrioventricular nodal conduction while reducing refractoriness of the atrium [41]. Consequently, the reduction of refractoriness increases the possibility of reentry and contributes to new arrhythmia episodes [42]. Aistrup et al. demonstrated that hinder of Gαi proteins through adding Gαi2/3 C-terminal peptides could facilitate vagal-induced refractory period reduction and as a result cause a reduction in vagal-induced AF [21]. They showed that the C-terminal Gαi/o peptides expressed from a cytomegalovirus plasmid after in vivo electroporation can reduce vagal-induced arrhythmia in a dog study [1].

4 Atrial Fibrillation Substrate and Modifiable Structural Aspects

4.1 Fibrosis

It is well known in current literature that AF is linked to a proinflammatory pathophysiological process that contributes to increased atrial oxidative stress [1, 2]. The inflammation development and the oxidative stress cause disturbance of the balance of regulatory processes, causing enhanced apoptosis and cellular fibrosis [1, 2]. As fibrosis is linked to an increased expression of the transforming growth factor (TGF-b), this growth factor prompts the generation of extracellular matrix proteins, collagen, and reactive oxygen species (ROS) [18, 43, 44]. The myocardial segment of the posterior LA can sustain AF via an enhanced susceptibility to heterogeneous conduction and fibrosis [22]. The transduction of a transgene that interrupts TGF-b signaling in the posterior wall of the LA can alter the electrophysiological properties and framework of this segment [1]. Electroporation and direct injection are used to deliver a DN mutation of the TGF-b receptor to the posterior LA of 12 dogs [1]. The dogs presented a remarkable decline in atrial fibrosis [18, 43, 44]. Reverse remodeling of the posterior wall of the LA enhanced electrical impulse transmission, and decline in AF induction during pacing was observed after three weeks of burst stimulation [18, 43, 44]. A shift in the restitution slope was also noted, forming the plasmid inserted atrial tissue more impervious to AF. These electric alterations were associated with a decline in atrial fibrosis, showing a connection between AF substrate and conduction properties [18, 43, 44]. The results highlight the role of genome editing to alter atrial function and structure via downregulating the inflammation found in AF [18, 43, 44]. These observations pave the way for not only focusing on the treatment of AF but also the prevention, interrupting the structural changes that generate AF [1, 18, 43, 44].

4.2 Apoptosis

The enhancement of apoptosis is an alternative approach for genome editing. Superoxide dismutase-1(SOD1) enzyme is a key element in oxidative stress signaling and cellular apoptosis. Dysregulation of the SOD1 enzyme is found in canine AF models [45]. Zhang et al. showed that suppressing micro-RNA 206 can reduce AF susceptibility by reducing the SOD1 enzyme [45]. The authors transduced an anti-MRI 206 lentivirus into the superior left ganglionated plexi in dog models. The animals showed a decline in AF induction and an increased APD [45]. A different technique based on apoptosis is via inhibiting the function of caspase-3, an enzyme mediating

apoptosis which can be hindered with siRNA [46]. Adenovirus vector therapy involving siRNA targeting caspase-3 in a porcine model caused elimination of apoptosis and delay of persistent AF [46].

5 Oxidative Stress and Modifiable Structural and Electrical Aspects

AF is a multifactorial disease involving different structural and cellular factors. This complex interplay will reasonably demand various sites of adequate contact modulation. ROS produced by oxidative stress connect with biomolecules such as DNA, lipids, and protein [47, 48]. This increased reactivity connects a huge number of integrations with the AF substrate. ROS have many thoroughly established connections with a number of recognized AF rotors, and their modulation has a great possibility to tremendous positive results on the AF disorder status [49].

Increased ROS levels such as H2O2 and superoxide are correlated with the AF disorder status [50]. This correlation is upheld by secondary oxidative stress methods, identified in the plasma of AF subjects [50]. AF subjects have less degrees of nitric oxide bioavailability and greater oxidized/reduced rates of cysteine and glutathione in comparison to subjects without AF [51, 52]. Hydroxyl radicals and peroxynitrate, two of the most important ROS, can generate oxidative impairment to myofibrils, causing anatomical remodeling that defines AF [53]. ROS are associated with augmented TGF-B communication and AF fibrosis that is typical of anatomical restructure [54]. ROS can harm mitochondrial DNA, leading to cellular calcium burden and alterations of the electrophysiological properties that causes AF [55]. In addition, elevated ROS levels are linked to augmented oxidized CaMKII that is correlated with varied calcium handling and consequently atrial changes of the electrophysiological properties [49]. Current literature has validated ROS as a fascinating and compelling approach to alter course of AF [49–55].

5.1 ROS Generation and NADPH Oxidase

NADPH oxidases are membrane-bound proteins identified in various tissue categories [56]. NADPH oxidases are the catalysts of the transformation of oxygen to superoxide [56]. The Nox group of these proteins are the main ROS producers in the normal heart, and this role is augmented in AF setting [50, 57, 58]. The function of Nox group is raised in the fibrillating atrium [57]. Several studies have demonstrated that this effect is independent of Nox expression changes, showing that greater degrees of Nox stimulation, rather than expression in the fibrillating atrium, stimulate enhanced ROS generation [57]. As a result, there are two paths to abolish the number of ROS being generated in the myocardial cells, either by reducing Nox stimulation or by reducing the all of the Nox proteins [57]. There are two different gene-based translational methods to regulate Nox levels [57]. The first is via Nox hinder through transgene-regulated expression of inhibitory polypeptides [57]. The other one requires Nox knockdown via RNAi or CRISPR knockout [57].

5.2 Oxidized Calmodulin-Dependent Protein Kinase II (oxCAMKII)

CaMKII acts as a ROS sensor as well as a proarrhythmic indication in the fibrillating atrium [59]. CaMKII is prone to oxidation at methionines 281 and 282, resulting in a constitutively active design linked to enhanced phosphorylation of RYR2 channels [60]. The phosphorylation causes greater sarcoplasmic reticulum calcium leakage, delayed after depolarizations, triggered action potentials, and conclusively AF [61–63]. In addition, this profibrillatory effect was abolished in mice with an oxidation-resistant CaMKII type showing that oxCaMKII is a vital element of the ROS-induced profibrillatory path [61–63]. Genome editing focusing on oxCaMKII can be managed either by a CRISPR or RNAi knockdown or CaMKII

replacement with an oxidation resistant type of the particle to sustain regular function and diminishing protein's profibrillatory size.

6 Conclusions

AF is a multifactorial disorder with a pathophysiological process involving genetic basis and environmental elements. The use of genome editing to treat AF at the substrate level could provide a revolutionary treatment for a disorder that the present standard of care is inadequate. Our knowledge of the AF substrate has greatly been advanced recently, designing alternative management approaches that could specifically be identified and consequently targeted. Our knowledge of the disorder is the only limit to identify a perfect genome editing tool for AF. As our understanding of gene vectors and transfer techniques progress, a novel approach in AF therapy will arise, where cardiac muscles are modified to be impervious to AF, promoting patients' quality of living and lowering the pressure on the healthcare organizations from AF comorbidities. Further refinement of the genetic core of this arrhythmia will eventually identify novel treatment strategies and more accurate risk stratification.

Acknowledgments None.

Competing Financial Interests The authors declare no competing financial interests.

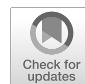
References

1. Trivedi A, Hoffman J, Arora R (2019) Gene therapy for atrial fibrillation – how close to clinical implementation? Int J Cardiol 296:177–183
2. Wellens HJ (2008) Forty years of invasive clinical electrophysiology: 1967-2007. Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol 1(1):49–53
3. Piccini JP, Hammill BG, Sinner MF, Jensen PN, Hernandez AF, Heckbert SR, Benjamn EJ, Curtis LH (2012) Incidence and prevalence of atrial fibrillation and associated mortality among Medicare beneficiaries, 1993-2007. Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes 5(1):85–93
4. Bunch TJ, Weiss PJ, Crandall BG, May HT, Bair TL, Osborn JS, Anderson JL, Muhlestein JB, Horne BD, Lappe DL, Day JD (2010) Atrial fibrillation is independently associated with senile, vascular, and Alzheimer's dementia. Heart Rhythm 7(4):433–437
5. Kolek MJ, Edwards TL, Muhammad R, Balouch A, Shoemaker MB, Blair MA, Kor KC, Takahashi A, Kubo M, Roden DM, Tanaka T, Darbar D (2014) A genome-wide association study to identify genomic modulators of rate control therapy in patients with atrial fibrillation. Am J Cardiol 114(4):593–600
6. Lubitz SA, Yin X, Fontes JD, Magnani JW, Rienstra M, Pai M, Villalon ML, Vasan RS, Pencina MJ, Levy D, Larson MG, Ellinor PT, Benjamin EJ (2010) Association between familial atrial fibrillation and risk of new-onset atrial fibrillation. JAMA 304(20):2263–2269
7. Echt DS, Liebson PR, Mitchell LB, Peters RW, Obias-Manno D, Barker AH, Arensberg D, Baker A, Friedman L, Greene HL (1991) Mortality and morbidity in patients receiving encainide, flecainide, or placebo. N Engl J Med 324(12):781–788
8. Sardar MR, Saeed W, Kowey PR (2016) Antiarrhythmic drug therapy for atrial fibrillation. Heart Fail Clin 12(2):205–221
9. Kirchhof P, Calkins H (2017) Catheter ablation in patients with persistent atrial fibrillation. Eur Heart J 38(1):20–26
10. Cappato R, Calkins H, Chen S, Davies W, Iesaka Y, Kalman J, Kim Y, Klein G, Packer D, Skanes A (2005) Worldwide survey on the methods, efficacy, and safety of catheter ablation for human atrial fibrillation. Circulation 111(9):1100–1105
11. Cappato R, Calkins H, Chen S, Davies W, Iesaka Y, Kalman J, Kim Y, Klein G, Natale A, Packer D, Skanes A (2009) Prevalence and causes of fatal outcome in catheter ablation of atrial fibrillation. J Am Coll Cardiol 53(19):1798–1803
12. Derakhchan K, Li D, Courtenmanche M, Smith B, Brouilette J, Page PL, Nattel S (2003) Method for simultaneous epicardial and endocardial mapping of in vivo canine heart: application to atrial conduction properties and arrhythmia mechanisms. J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol 12(5):548–555
13. Skanes AC, Mandapati R, Berenfeld O, Davidenko JM, Jalife J (1998) Spatiotemporal periodicity during atrial fibrillation in the isolated sheep heart. Circulation 98(12):1236–1248
14. Everett TH, Olgin JE (2007) Atrial fibrosis and the mechanisms of atrial fibrillation. Heart Rhythm 4(3): S24–S27
15. Power JM, Beacom GA, Alferness CA, Raman J, Wijffels M, Farish SJ, Burrell LM, Tonkin AM (1998) Susceptibility to atrial fibrillation: a study in an ovine model of pacing-induced early heart failure. J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol 9(4):423–435
16. Kikuchi K, McDonald AD, Sasano T, Donahue JK (2005) Targeted modification of atrial

electrophysiology by homogeneous transmural atrial gene transfer. Circulation 111(3):264–270
17. Soucek R, Thomas D, Kelemen K, Bikou O, Seyler C, Voss F, Becker R, Koenen M, Katus HA, Bauer A (2012) Genetic suppression of atrial fibrillation using a dominant-negative ether-a-go-go-related gene mutant. Heart Rhythm 9(2):265–272
18. Li Y, Jian Z, Yang ZY, Chen L, Wang XF, Ma RY, Xiao YB (2013) Increased expression of connective tissue growth factor and transforming growth factor-beta-1 in atrial myocardium of patients with chronic atrial fibrillation. Cardiology 124(4):233–240
19. Bikou O, Thomas D, Trappe K, Lugenbiel P, Kelemen K, Koch M, Soucek R, Voss F, Becker R, Katus HA, Bauer A (2011) Connexin 43 gene therapy prevents persistent atrial fibrillation in a porcine model. Cardiovasc Res 92(2):218–225
20. Igarashi T, Finet JE, Takeuchi A, Fujino Y, Strom M, Greener ID, Rosenbaum DS, Donahue JK (2012) Connexin gene transfer preserves conduction velocity and prevents atrial fibrillation. Circulation 125(2): 216–225
21. Aistrup GL, Villuendas R, Ng J, Gilchrist A, Lynch TW, Gordon D, Cokic I, Mottl S, Zhou R, Dean DA, Wasserstrom JA, Goldberger JJ, Kadish AH, Arora R (2009) Targeted G-protein inhibition as a novel approach to decrease vagal atrial fibrillation by selective parasympathetic attenuation. Cardiovasc Res 83(3):481–492
22. Kunamalla A, Ng J, Parini V, Yoo S, McGee KA, Tomson TT, Gordon D, Thorp EB, Lomasney J, Zhang Q, Shah S, Browne S, Knight BP, Passman R, Goldberger JJ, Aistrup G, Arora R (2016) Constitutive expression of a dominant-negative TGF-b type II receptor in the posterior left atrium leads to beneficial remodeling of atrial fibrillation substrate. Circ Res 119(1):69–82
23. Wu TJ, Kim YH, Yashima M, Athill CA, Ting CT, Karagueuzian HS, Chen PS (2001) Progressive action potential duration shortening and the conversion from atrial flutter to atrial fibrillation in the isolated canine right atrium. J Am Coll Cardiol 38(6):1757–1765
24. Amit G, Kikuchi K, Greener ID, Yang L, Novack V, Donahue JK (2010) Selective molecular potassium channel blockade prevents atrial fibrillation. Circulation 121(21):2263–2270
25. Gaborit N, Steenman M, Lamirault G, Le Meur N, Le Bouter S, Lande G, Leger J, Charpentier F, Christ T, Dobrev D, Escande D, Nattel S, Demolombe S (2005) Human atrial ion channel and transporter subunit gene-expression remodeling associated with valvular heart disease and atrial fibrillation. Circulation 112(4): 471–481
26. Snyders DJ, Tamkun MM, Bennett PB (1993) A rapidly activating and slowly inactivating potassium channel cloned from human heart. Functional analysis after stable mammalian cell culture expression. J Gen Physiol 101(4):513–543
27. Decher N, Pirard B, Bundis F, Peukert S, Baringhaus K, Busch AE, Steinmeyer K, Sanguinetti MC (2004) Molecular basis for Kv1.5 channel block: conservation of drug binding sites among voltage-gated K channels. J Biol Chem 279(1):394–400
28. Fedida D, Eldstrom J, Hesketh JC, Lamorgese M, Castel L, Steele DF, Van Wagoner DR (2003) Kv1.5 is an important component of repolarizing K current in canine atrial myocytes. Circ Res 93(8):744–751
29. Peukert S, Brendel J, Pirard B, Bruggemann A, Below P, Kleemann H, Hemmerle H, Schmidt W (2003) Identification, synthesis, and activity of novel blockers of the voltage-gated potassium channel Kv1.5. J Med Chem 46(4):486–498
30. Schmidt C, Wiedmann F, Langer C, Tristram F, Anand P, Wenzel W, Lugenbiel P, Schweizer PA, Katus HA, Thomas D (2014) Cloning, functional characterization, and remodeling of K2P3.1 (TASK-1) potassium channels in a porcine model of atrial fibrillation and heart failure. Heart Rhythm 11(10): 1798–1805
31. Olesen M, Liang B, Soka M, Larsen AP, Knop FK, Wang F, Nielsen JB, Andersen MN, Humphreys D, Mann SA, Vandenberg JI, Svendsen JH, Haunso S, Preiss T, Seebohm G, Olesen SP, Schmitt N, Fatkin D (2013) TASK-1 potassium channel mutations in atrial fibrillation. Eur Heart J 34(1):3411
32. Limberg SH, Netter MF, Rolfes C, Rinne S, Schlichthorl G, Zuzarte M, Vassiliou T, Moosdorf R, Wulf H, Daut J, Sachse FB, Decher N (2011) TASK-1 channels may modulate action potential duration of human atrial cardiomyocytes. Cell Physiol Biochem 28(4):613–624
33. Schmidt C, Wiedmann F, Voigt N, Zhou X, Heijman J, Lang S, Albert V, Kallenberger S, Ruhparwar A, Szabó G, Kallenbach K, Karck M, Borggrefe M, Biliczki P, Ehrlich JR, Baczkó I, Lugenbiel P, Schweizer PA, Donner BC, Katus HA, Dobrev D, Thomas D (2015) Upregulation of K(2P)3.1 K current causes action potential shortening in patients with chronic atrial fibrillation. Circulation 132(2):82–92
34. Schmidt C, Wiedmann F, Zhou X, Heijman J, Voigt N, Ratte A, Lang S, Kallenberger SM, Campana C, Weymann A, De Simone R, Szabó G, Ruhparwar A, Kallenbach K, Karck M, Ehrlich JR, Baczkó I, Borggrefe M, Ravens U, Dobrev D, Katus HA, Thomas D (2017) Inverse remodelling of K2P3.1 K channel expression and action potential duration in left ventricular dysfunction and atrial fibrillation: implications for patient-specific antiarrhythmic drug therapy. Eur Heart J 38(22):1764–1774
35. Kato T, Iwasaki Y, Nattel S (2012) Connexins and atrial fibrillation: filling in the gaps. Circulation 125(2):203–206
36. Gollob MH, Jones DL, Krahn AD, Danis L, Gong XQ, Shao Q, Liu X, Veinot JP, Tang AS, Stewart AF, Tesson F, Klein GJ, Yee R, Skanes AC, Guiraudon GM, Ebihara L, Bai D (2006) Somatic mutations in the

connexin 40 gene (GJA5) in atrial fibrillation. N Engl J Med 354(25):2677–2688
37. Desplantez T (2017) Cardiac Cx43, Cx40 and Cx45 co-assembling: involvement of connexins epitopes in formation of hemichannels and Gap junction channels. BMC Cell Biol 18(Suppl 1):3
38. Linz D, Ukena C, Mahfoud F, Neuberger HR, Böhm M (2014) Atrial autonomic innervation: a target for interventional antiarrhythmic therapy? J Am Coll Cardiol 63(3):215–224
39. Arora R, Ng J, Ulphani J, Mylonas I, Subacius H, Shade G, Gordon D, Morris A, He X, Lu Y, Belin R, Goldberger JJ, Kadish AH (2007) Unique autonomic profile of the pulmonary veins and posterior left atrium. J Am Coll Cardiol 49(12):1340–1348
40. Watanabe S, Kono Y, Oishi-Tobinaga Y, Yamada S, Hara M, Kano T (2002) A comparison of the chronotropic and dromotropic actions between adenosine triphosphate and edrophonium in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery. J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth 16(5):598–602
41. Nikolov EN, Ivanova-Nikolova TT (2007) Dynamic integration of a-adrenergic and cholinergic signals in the atria role of G protein-regulated inwardly rectifying K channels. J Biol Chem 282(39): 28669–28682
42. Kurachi Y (1995) G protein regulation of cardiac muscarinic potassium channel. Am J Physiol 269(4): 821–830
43. Schotten U, Verheule S, Kirchhof P, Goette A (2011) Pathophysiological mechanisms of atrial fibrillation: a translational appraisal. Physiol Rev 91(1):265–325
44. Roselli C, Rienstra M, Ellinor PT (2020) Genetics of atrial fibrillation in 2020: GWAS, genome sequencing, polygenic risk, and beyond. Circ Res 127(1):21–33
45. Zhang Y, Zheng S, Geng Y, Xue J, Wang Z, Xie X, Wang J, Zhang S, Hou Y (2015) MicroRNA profiling of atrial fibrillation in canines: miR-206 modulates intrinsic cardiac autonomic nerve remodeling by regulating SOD1. PLoS One 10(3):e0122674
46. Trappe K, Thomas D, Bikou O, Kelemen K, Lugenbiel P, Voss F, Becker R, Katus HA, Bauer A (2011) Suppression of persistent atrial fibrillation by genetic knockdown of caspase 3: a pre-clinical pilot study. Eur Heart J 34(2):147–157
47. Halliwell B, Gutteridge JMC (2015) Free radicals in biology and medicine. Oxford University Press, Oxford
48. Mattila H, Khorobrykh S, Havurinne V, Tyystjärvi E (2015) Reactive oxygen species: reactions and detection from photosynthetic tissues. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 152(Pt B):176–214
49. Youn JY, Zhang J, Zhang Y, Chen H, Liu D, Ping P, Weiss JN, Cai H (2013) Oxidative stress in atrial fibrillation: an emerging role of NADPH oxidase. J Mol Cell Cardiol 62:72–79
50. Looi YH, Grieve DJ, Siva A, Walker SJ, Anilkumar N, Cave AC, Marber M, Monaghan MJ, Shah AM (2008) Involvement of Nox2 NADPH oxidase in adverse cardiac remodeling after myocardial infarction. Hypertension 51(2):319–325
51. Cai H, Li Z, Goette A, Mera F, Honeycutt C, Feterik K, Wilcox JN, Dudley SC Jr, Harrison DG, Langberg JJ (2002) Downregulation of endocardial nitric oxide synthase expression and nitric oxide production in atrial fibrillation: potential mechanisms for atrial thrombosis and stroke. Circulation 106(22): 2854–2858
52. Neuman RB, Bloom HL, Shukrullah I, Darrow LA, Kleinbaum D, Jones DP, Dudley SC Jr (2007) Oxidative stress markers are associated with persistent atrial fibrillation. Clin Chem 53(9):1652–1657
53. Babusíková E, Kaplán P, Lehotský J, Jesenák M, Dobrota D (2004) Oxidative modification of rat cardiac mitochondrial membranes and myofibrils by hydroxyl radicals. Gen Physiol Biophys 23(3): 327–335
54. Richter K, Kietzmann T (2016) Reactive oxygen species and fibrosis: further evidence of a significant liaison. Cell Tissue Res 365(3):591–605
55. Bukowska A, Schild L, Keilhoff G, Hirte D, Neumann M, Gardemann A, Neumann KH, Röhl FW, Huth C, Goette A, Lendeckel U (2008) Mitochondrial dysfunction and redox signaling in atrial tachyarrhythmia. Exp Biol Med 233(5):558–574
56. Paik YH, Brenner DA (2011) NADPH oxidase mediated oxidative stress in hepatic fibrogenesis. Korean J Hepatol 17(4):251–257
57. Kim YM, Guzik TJ, Zhang YH, Zhang MH, Kattach H, Ratnatunga C, Pillai R, Channon KM, Casadei B (2005) A myocardial Nox2 containing NAD(P)H oxidase contributes to oxidative stress in human atrial fibrillation. Circ Res 97(7):629–636
58. Wolin MS, Gupte SA (2005) Roles for Nox oxidases in cardiac arrhythmia and oxidized glutathione export in endothelial function. Circ Res 97(7):612–614
59. Erickson JR, Joiner ML, Guan X, Kutschke W, Yang J, Oddis CV, Bartlett RK, Lowe JS, O'Donnell SE, Aykin-Burns N, Zimmerman MC, Zimmerman K, Ham AJ, Weiss RM, Spitz DR, Shea MA, Colbran RJ, Mohler PJ, Anderson ME (2008) A dynamic pathway for calcium-independent activation of CaMKII by methionine oxidation. Cell 133(3):462–474
60. Swaminathan PD, Purohit A, Soni S, Voigt N, Singh MV, Glukhov AV, Gao Z, He BJ, Luczak ED, Joiner ML, Kutschke W, Yang J, Donahue JK, Weiss RM, Grumbach IM, Ogawa M, Chen PS, Efimov I, Dobrev D, Mohler PJ, Hund TJ, Anderson ME (2011) Oxidized CaMKII causes cardiac sinus node dysfunction in mice. J Clin Investig 121(8):3277–3288
61. Purohit A, Rokita AG, Guan X, Chen B, Koval OM, Voigt N, Neef S, Sowa T, Gao Z, Luczak ED, Stefansdottir H, Behunin AC, Li N, El-Accaoui RN, Yang B, Swaminathan PD, Weiss RM, Wehrens XH, Song LS, Dobrev D, Maier LS, Anderson ME (2013) Oxidized Ca(2+)/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II triggers atrial fibrillation. Circulation 128(16): 1748–1757

62. Moris D, Spartalis M, Tzatzaki E, Spartalis E, Karachaliou GS, Triantafyllis AS, Karaolanis GI, Tsilimigras DI, Theocharis S (2017) The role of reactive oxygen species in myocardial redox and signaling and regulation. Ann Transl Med 5(16):324
63. Moris D, Spartalis M, Spartalis E, Karachaliou GS, Karaolanis GI, Tsourouflis G, Tsilimigras DI, Tzatzaki E, Theocharis S (2017) The role of reactive oxygen species in the pathophysiology of cardiovascular diseases and the clinical significance of myocardial redox. Ann Transl Med 5(16):326



Genome Editing in Dyslipidemia and Atherosclerosis

Zhifen Chen, Constanze Lehertshuber, and Heribert Schunkert

Abstract

Despite successive advancement of genome editing technology with zinc finger nucleases (ZFNs) and transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs), the recent breakthrough in the field has been related to clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats/associated proteins (CRISPR/Cas). The high efficiency and convenience of CRIPSR/Cas systems dramatically accelerate pre- and clinical experimentations of dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis. In this chapter, we review the latest state of genome editing in translational research of dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis. We highlight recent progress in therapeutic development for familial dyslipidemia by genome editing. We point to the challenges in maximizing efficacy and minimizing safety issues related to the once-and-done therapy focusing on CRISPR/Cas systems. We give an outlook on the potential gene targets prioritized by large-scale genetic studies of cardiovascular diseases and genome editing in precision medicine of dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis.

Keywords

Dyslipidemia · Atherosclerosis · Genome editing · CRISPR/Cas · Familial hypercholesterolemia · Genome-wide association study · Precision medicine

Z. Chen · C. Lehertshuber · H. Schunkert (✉)
Department of Cardiology, Deutsches Herzzentrum München, Technische Universität München, Munich, Germany

Deutsches Zentrum für Herz- und Kreislaufforschung (DZHK), Munich Heart Alliance, Munich, Germany
e-mail: chenz@dhm.mhn.de; schunkert@dhm.mhn.de

1 Dyslipidemia and Atherosclerosis

Atherosclerosis represents the major cause of coronary artery disease and thereby mortality worldwide [1]. The complex etiology of atherosclerosis is initiated by dysfunctional endothelial cells lining the arteries that are no longer capable of appropriately regulating vascular tone and permeability for molecules and cells [2]. Progressive infiltration of lipoprotein particles carrying cholesterol into the vessel wall triggers an inflammatory response mediated by cholesterol-loaded macrophages. Proliferation of smooth muscle cells causes vascular remodeling and ultimately leads to narrowing of the vessel and obstruction of blood flow. Dyslipidemia, a common and strong risk factor for atherosclerosis, describes elevated plasma levels of low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C), lipoprotein(a) (Lp(a)), and/or triglyceride-rich lipoproteins (TRLs, VLDL, and IDL) [3] and/or decreased levels of

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023
J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_10

high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) [4]. In addition to lifestyle and environmental influences, dyslipidemia is largely determined by genetic factors. Its extreme forms are manifested as familial dyslipidemias caused by gene mutations, including hypercholesterolemia (e.g., *LDLR*, *APOB*, *PCSK9*, *LPA*, and *ANGPTL3*) [5–7], hypertriglyceridemia (e.g., *LPL*, *APOC3*, *APOC2*, *APOA5*, *ANGTPL4*, *GPIHBP1*, and *LMF1*), dysbetalipoproteinemia (e.g., *APOE*), analphalipoproteinemia (e.g., *ABCA1*), LCAT deficiency [8], and combined hyperlipidemia (e.g., *USF1*) [9, 10]. Familial hypercholesterolemia (FH), the most common form of the overall rare dyslipidemias, occurs in 1 out of 200,000–250,000 people heterozygously and in 1 out of 160,000–320,000 people homozygously [11, 12]. To fulfill the pressing need of precision medicine, efforts have been increasingly committed to developing targeted therapies for dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis.

2 Current Therapies of Dyslipidemia and Atherosclerosis

2.1 From Traditional Pharmacology to Targeted Therapy

Pharmacological treatment of dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis predominantly focuses on cholesterol lowering [4]. For many years, statin (inhibiting cholesterol synthesis), ezetimibe (suppressing intestine uptake of cholesterol), and bile acid sequestrants have been the major treatments of the conditions [13, 14]. However, a significant proportion of patients do not achieve guideline-recommended cholesterol levels with these medications. Recently approved bempedoic acid further reduces LDL by about ~20% [15]. PCSK9 monoclonal antibodies [16], another new drug type, enable effective LDL reduction in addition to statin therapy but with high costs, hampering the general use. While small molecules targeting PCSK9 are under investigation to bring down the cost, drugs lowering other causal lipids and their inflammatory responses are on the way to treat the residual cardiovascular risk [17]. Revolutionary discoveries of human genetics in the past decade have been a nutritious ground for novel drug developments [18–20]. Genetic studies of atherosclerosis, coronary artery disease [1], and myocardial infarction (MI) not only nominated but also validated causal genes, pathways, and risk factors for the conditions. For instance, genetic studies supported Lp(a) and TGs as causal risk factors for atherosclerosis, which led to intensive investigations of related genes, such as *LPA*, *APOC3*, *ANGPTL3*, and *ANGPTL4* [3, 21–23]. Based on a better understanding of the affected mechanisms, these genes evolved as novel targets for biological drugs, monoclonal antibodies, and nucleic acid-based therapies [24].

2.2 Nucleic Acid-Based Therapy

Nucleic acid-based therapies were initially designed as replacement for dysfunctional genes by delivery of the correct coding sequence [25]. Recently, this concept has been expanded to include gene silencing by antisense oligonucleotides, or short interfering RNAs (siRNA), transcriptional modulation by microRNAs, and long noncoding RNAs (lncRNA), as well as modification of epigenetics and genome editing [25–27]. For instance, gene supplementation of *LDLR* is currently investigated in a phase 1/phase 2a first-in-man trial (NCT02651675) for homozygous FH due to function loss of the gene [28]. AON (antisense oligonucleotide)- and/or siRNA-based therapies targeting several dyslipidemia genes have been intensively tested in large-scale clinical trials for treating atherosclerotic CAD, such as *APOA*, *PCSK9*, *APOC3*, and *ANGPTL3* [29–34]. LncRNA BM450697 was reported to regulate LDLR via epigenetic-dependent mechanism, and siRNAs targeting the lncRNA enhanced hepatic cholesterol uptake [35]. These novel therapeutic strategies not only expand the druggable genome that previously was largely limited to enzymes, membrane proteins, and circulatory factors but also potentially have advantages of

specificity, efficacy, and safety. However, limited half-lives of nucleic acids, requirement of frequent injection, and medication compliance are general limitations. The limitations are not applicable for gene editing-based therapies that could introduce permanent therapeutic changes to specific gene targets. It is conceivable that in the future, a single administration of such drugs mediates durable cure of dyslipidemias and atherosclerosis.

3 Genome Editing

3.1 Evolution of Genome Editing Technology

Genome editing generally refers to the specific modification of nucleotide sequences (mainly DNA) by enzymic activities (e.g., nucleases and nickase) [36]. In a broader sense, it also includes RNA editing. Nucleases usually cut a nucleotide sequence and create damage (typically a double-strand break (DSB)), whereas nickases introduce single-strand breaks (SSB) [37]. Both DSB and SSB in turn trigger natural genetic repair mechanisms, such as nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ) and homology-directed repair (HDR) enabled by a homologous-armed template [38]. The cellular repairing machinery is hijacked to install precise nucleotide manipulations.

In the late 1970s, the first generation of gene editing tools was engineered based on hybrid proteins including zinc finger nucleases (ZFNs) and transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs) [39–41]. Both types of nucleases rely on a recombinant recognition domain to bind the target DNA sequence. Target-specific ZFN and TALEN engineering involves in tedious designing and screening of the optimal recombinant protein with high binding accuracy and affinity. Of note, TALENs have reached clinical experimentation to generate universal allogeneic CAR T-cells for B-cell lymphoma [42, 43].

Ever since 2012, genome editing has become easier, faster, and more economic, due to the discovery and engineering of RNA-guided gene rewriting technology—the CRISPR/Cas system [44]. The new system holds promise to cure genetic diseases through (1) inactivating detrimental or aberrant gene expression, (2) amending disease-causing or associated mutations, or (3) targeted insertion of therapeutical DNA (Fig. 2a–c). CRISPR/Cas harnesses the marriage of two independent components, the small guide RNA (sgRNA) and a Cas protein. The allocation of two functions of the traditional recombinant nucleases into the nucleotide sequence recognition by a sgRNA and the enzymic cutting by a Cas nuclease dramatically simplified the design and construction of the editing tools. The classic CRISPR/Cas9 system creates DSB and relies on NHEJ for gene knockout and HDR for an error-free DNA retyping. For newer types of CRISPR tools, the nuclease activity of a Cas protein was either inactivated to only bring transcriptional activators or suppressors to the targeted genomic site [46–48] or transformed into nickase tandem to other enzymes, such as deaminases in base editors (BEs) [49]. By directly triggering chemical reaction (deamination) on DNA and converting C to T (CBE) or A to G (ABE), BEs allow gene knockout without DSB and individual nucleotide(s) rewriting independent of a template, which hold promise for therapeutic gene editing with minimum off-target effects. In fact, point mutations represent the most common genetic variations associated with human diseases [50]. Recently, more types of Cas proteins, such as Nme2Cas9 and Cas13, have been discovered, extending the coverage of editable genome and enabling RNA manipulation [51, 52].

3.2 In Vivo Delivery of Genome Editing Systems

Intracellular delivery of gene editing tools has been the most challenging step in vivo. Adeno-associated virus (AAV)-, adenovirus-, and lentivirus-mediated delivery systems have been tested for CRISPR-based gene therapy [53, 54]. Due to lower immunogenicity, non-integrative and high efficiency, AAVs are widely used in CRISPR-based ex vivo and in vivo biological research and therapeutic

development. However, the packaging limit of AAV (~4.7 kb) often hampers its applications. Thus, instead of spCas9 (~4.1 kb), saCas9 (~3.2 kb) is usually employed for AAV-based gene editing, which allows all-in-one CRISPR therapy carrying both saCAS9 and sgRNA sequences on the same vector [55]. Generally, immunogenicity and potential transgene integration are of high concern when viral vectors were chosen for therapeutic development. Therefore, efforts have been exerted in seeking nonviral carriers for CRISPR-mediated gene [53].

Another promising in vivo delivery method involves the encapsulation of CRISPR/Cas into nanocarriers, in the forms of RNA-protein complex (RNP) or coding nucleic acids (DNA plasmids or mRNAs). In particular, delivery by lipid nanoparticles (LNP) achieves efficient targeting of specific tissues and protects the loaded proteins and nucleic acids [56–58]. Advanced LNP technologies for gene editing include self-assembled DNA nanoclews [59], cationic LNP and lipoplexes [60–62], gold nanoparticles [63–65], and zeolitic imidazole frameworks [66]. Most approaches harness electrostatic interactions between guest and host. Despite the promise, delivery of RNPs has been the most challenging due to the strong negative charge of sgRNA, the large size of Cas proteins, and the sensitivity of RNPs to denaturation and degradation during formulation and delivery. To date, the development of stable and organ-specific nanoparticles for delivery of CRISPR toolkits remains elusive.

4 Genome Editing in Dyslipidemia and Atherosclerosis

4.1 Genome Editing: A Driving Force for Dyslipidemia and Atherosclerosis Research

Ever since the applicable invention of CRISPR/Cas9 system in 2012 [67], it has been increasingly used in cardiovascular research (Fig. 1) and fosters delicacy of cellular and animal models for dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis research. Patient-induced pluripotent stem cell (hiPSC) line of carrier of heterozygous p.C310R (c.928 T > C) mutation in *LPL*, encoding lipoprotein lipase, has been reprogramed to model familial hypertriglyceridemia (FHTG). In parallel, researchers generated a mutation-corrected isogenic iPSC line (AHQUi001-A-1) using CRISPR/Cas9 technology [68]. The isogenic pair could differentiate into relevant cell types, such as adipocyte and endothelial cells, and test therapeutic modifications for the patient. Cell banks, such as WiCell, provide as precious resources of isogenic hiPSCs for dyslipidemia

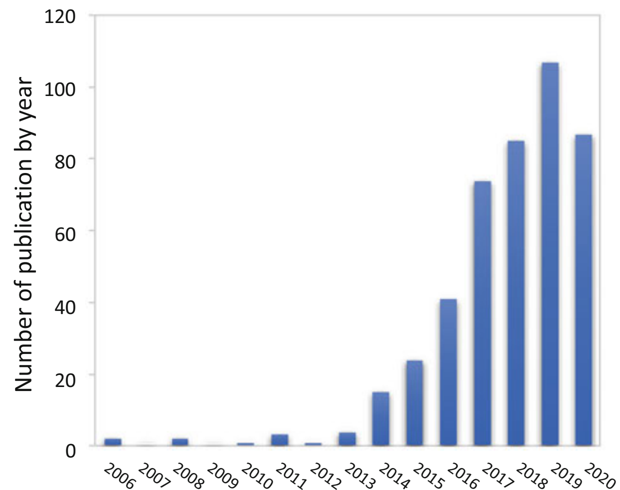


Fig. 1 PubMed search of "gene editing in cardiovascular diseases" for the last 15 years. Numbers of studies by year as indicated, figure adapted from PubMed statistics

and coronary artery disease. Given that the CRISPR/Cas system relies on open chromatin to screen the matched gene code, the efficiency of the gene editing heavily depends on the proliferation and transcription activity of cells. Hyperproliferative cells, such as stem cell and cancer cell, are relatively easy to target with high efficiency. Therefore, gene editing in hiPSC has been valuable in cardiovascular research. It comes with high efficiency for differentiation of many disease relevant cell types that are challenging to access or target, such as hepatocytes, adipocytes, immune cells, endothelium cells, and vascular smooth muscle cells [69].

CRISPR/Cas systems have substantially reduced the time and cost to generate animal models of germline gene knockouts or somatic targeting in vivo. The high efficiency of CRIPSR/Cas allows genetic modification of multiple genes at any time points of an animal's lifespan. The diverse CRISPR tools allow the flexibility in duration of editing, conditional alleles, tissue-specific targeting, and directions of modulation. Yang and Jaenisch et al. have established a protocol to create gene-modified mice by piezo-driven injection of Cas9 mRNA and sgRNA into zygotes. The authors showed that, beginning with target design, the time frame for generation of transgenic mice can be as short as four weeks [70]. Currently, this method and similar others are commonly used for cardiovascular research. For example, Yu and Cowan et al. generated G protein-coupled receptor 146 (GPR146) deficiency mice and showed that the deficiency protected against hypercholesterolemia and atherosclerosis [71]. To establish atherosclerosis mouse models using CRISPR in adult mice, Jarrett et al. performed somatic knockout of *Ldlr* via AAV8 medicated delivery of all-in-one AAV-CRISPR. The approach robustly disrupted *Ldlr* and resulted in severe hypercholesterolemia and atherosclerotic lesions in the mouse aorta [72]. Although the cholesterol increase induced by the somatic *Ldlr* knockdown was not as high as by germline *Ldlr* knockout, it might better model the chronic condition of atherosclerosis which usually develops at higher age [72]. Similar approaches were adopted to generate atherosclerosis animal models in rabbit, pig, and hamster by knocking out *Ldlr*, *Apoe*, or *Lcat* (lecithin-cholesterol acyltransferase) [73–76]. The success of the transgene models, on the other hand, suggested the effectiveness of in vivo CRISPR/Cas system in testing novel gene functions in dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis. Indeed, the novel role of CCC(COMMD-CCDC22-CCDC93) complex in hepatic cholesterol metabolism was explored and confirmed by somatic CRISPR/Cas targeting of *Commd* and *Ccdc22* in mice [77, 78].

However, as for point mutation correction, the editing efficiency of CRISPR/Cas remains low. Omer et al. attempted to correct the loss-of-function mutation E208X in *Ldlr* gene of the mouse liver by AAV-CRISPR/Cas system. The HDR-mediated correction only achieved 6.7% efficiency but resulting in, to some extent, lower serum lipid levels and decreased lesion area [79]. The coming waves of newer types of CRISPR technologies, such as base editor and prime editor, hold potential to improve in this regard.

4.2 Preclinical Investigation of Genome Editing for Dyslipidemia and Atherosclerosis

Gene editing in adult humans, that is, somatic editing, holds the promise to permanently modify one's risk of dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis. In light of the compliance issue with statins, high costs of PCSK9 monoclonal antibodies, and discomfort of lifetime injection of RNA therapies, such once-and-done strategy is attractive. A poll about the acceptance of the gene editing therapy indicated the support from the majority of the participants [80, 81]. Several gene editing strategies against dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis have been intensively investigated in preclinical settings to inactivate pathogenic gene expression, correct disease-causing mutations, mimic atheroprotective effects of natural genetic variations, or insert beneficial transgenes.

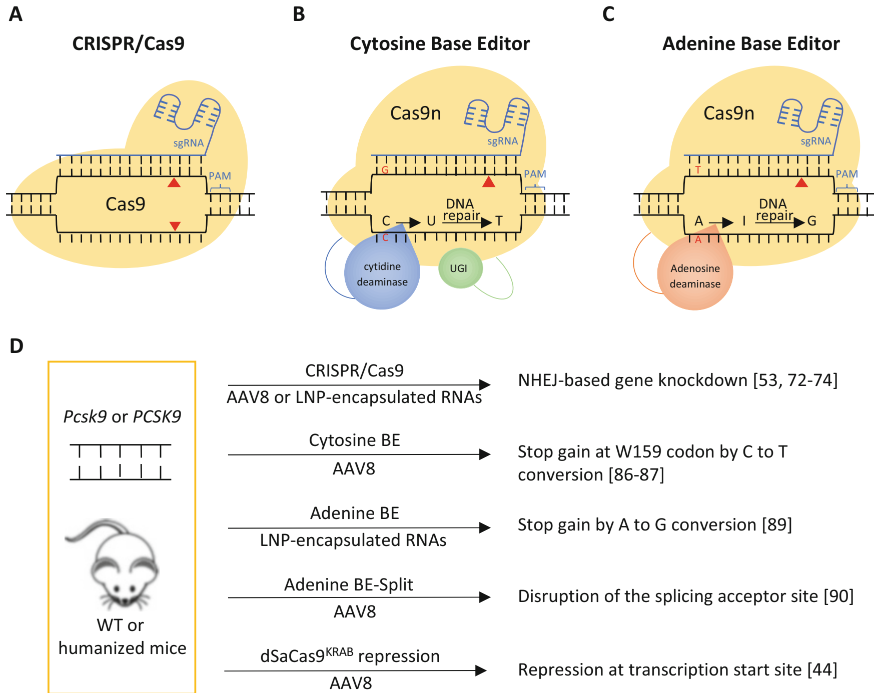


Fig. 2 Therapeutic genome editing of *PCSK9* by CRISPR/Cas and base editing. (**a**, **b**) General overview of DNA editing by CRISPR/Cas9, cytosine base editor (CBE), and adenine base editor (ABE). (**a**) Editing mechanism of CRISPR/Cas9. Cas9 nucleases create double-strand break (DSB) within the guide RNA (gRNA) pairing sequence, usually at 3–4bp ahead of 5′-protospacer adjacent motif [45]. DSB will be fixed through nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ) to create gene knockout or homology directed repair (HDR) to install a genotype or transgene of interest. (**b**) Mechanism of CBE. Cas9 nickase (Cas9n) nicks the top strand, while the cytidine deaminase domain of CBE convers C to U. Uracil glycosylase inhibitor (UGI, an optional component) protects the U intermediate from excision by uracil DNA glycosylase to boost efficiency of base pair editing assisted by nature DNA repair, which ultimately converts a C•G pair to T•A base pair. (**c**) Mechanism of ABE. After DNA nicking, adenosine deaminase domain converts A to inosine intermediate, which will be substituted by G in the subsequent DNA repairing process. ABE replaces A•T to G•C pair. gRNA, guide RNA. (**d**) Overview of strategies investigated to decrease *Pcsk9* or *PCSK9* in vivo. The editing tool is shown above the arrow line and the delivery approach is described below the line. WT, wild type; LNP, lipid nanoparticle; Adenine BE-Split, ABE separated to two domains (split-ABE-Rma573 and split-ABE-Rma674) for virus package, *KRAB* Kruppel-associated box (transcriptional repressor)

The most intensive testing focused on *PCSK9*, given the well-studied biology and rare side effect as a therapeutic target. Gene editing-based therapies allow permanent modification of the culprit and therefore are advantageous as a one shot and one cure for dyslipidemia, especially for FH. Disruption of *Pcsk9* in mice by CRIPSR/Cas9 has been evaluated by AAV- and nanocarrier-based delivery of spCas9 or saCas9 systems [55, 82–87] (Fig. 2d). All led to significant reduction of circulating Pcsk9, plasma total cholesterol (TC), and LDL-C levels. The therapeutic target was further assessed by inactivating the gene using base editing, which result in comparable atheroprotective outcomes [88–91]. A head-to-head comparison of *Pcsk9* gene and base editing in a humanized mouse model showed that the latter introduced no chromosomal translocations, fewer indels, and less new forms of peptides, indicating that it might be a safe strategy for clinical applications [89]. Other gene editing approaches to lower LDL-C level

are pursued, such as CRISPR-/Cas9-based targeting of *Apob* in *Ldlr*$^{-/-}$ mice [55, 72] and replacement of FH mutation of *LDLR* E208X in somatic cells of transgenic mice [55, 79], both of which reduced plasma TC level and atherosclerosis development in mice.

Given that existing lipid-lowering therapies are centered on optimizing cholesterol levels, drugs to reduce levels of non-LDL lipids including TGs and Lp (a) are of an urgent need, particularly for the dyslipidemia patients suffering from obesity, diabetes, or insulin resistance, whose primary risk of atherosclerosis is often related to elevated TGs and other forms of lipids. The attempts beyond LDL-C lowering by gene editing focus on *APOC3* and *ANGPTL3* for reducing TG levels and LPA for decreasing Lp(a).

As naturally occurring loss-of-function (LoF) mutations in *ApoC3* and *ANGPTL3* have found to be atheroprotective [92, 93], CRISPR-/Cas9-mediated inactivation of the two genes was tested to treat hyperlipidemia and atherosclerosis. APOC3, a secretory glycoprotein primarily produced by the liver, inhibits LPL- and hepatic lipase-mediated hydrolysis process of triglycerides in circulation and therefore increases TRL levels. In a human-like animal model (hamster), inactivation of *ApoC3* by CRISPR-Cas9 significantly decreased triglyceride level with no statistical differences in total cholesterol and HDL-C levels, phenocopying APOC3-deficient humans [94]. ApoC3 knockout hamsters also had less atherosclerotic lesions in both thoracic and abdominal arteries, suggesting clinical relevance of APOC3 targeting for the treatment of hypertriglyceridemia and atherosclerosis [95]. In the case of ANGPTL3, an inhibitor of LPL and endothelial lipase, base editing was employed to introduce LoF mutations at Gln-135 site of *Angptl3* in the liver of *Ldlr−/−* mice. This resulted in a median editing rate of 35% in the liver as well as substantially reduced triglycerides (56%) and cholesterol (51%) [96], suggesting a method to treat combined hyperlipidemia and atherosclerosis [96, 97].

LPA, expressed in the liver, encodes for apo (a) that could covalently bound to APOB100, an essential component for both LDL and Lp (a) [98]. Genetic variation of *LPA* was estimated to explain 91% of the variation in Lp(a) levels [22, 99]. Serum Lp(a) level could not be modulated by dietary and lifestyle factors, further necessitating the therapeutic intervention [100]. Lp(a) was also shown as a major carrier of oxidized phospholipids and to induce plaque progression [101–103]. An earlier pioneer study of RNA editing was explored to transform apoB100 mRNA into its truncated form apoB48 by a recombinant adenovirus encoding cytidine deaminase complex (apoBEC-1) to reduce both atherogenic lipoproteins in humanized apoB/apo (a) transgenic mice. This resulted in hepatic editing of human APOB mRNA and reduced plasma levels of human APOB100 and Lp(a). Similar result was observed when the apoB mRNA was edited accordingly in rabbit. These studies demonstrate mRNA editing by apoBEC-1 as a novel approach for lowering plasma concentrations of the atherogenic lipoproteins LDL and Lp(a) [104]. Furthermore, ongoing preclinical studies are investigating the use of base editing to reduce Lp(a) level by inactivating LPA gene.

These proof-of-concept studies demonstrated the feasibility of in vivo gene editing in reducing phenotypes of dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis and triggered industrial interests in developing these further in clinical experimentations. Currently, base editing of *LPA*, *PCSK9*, and *ANGPTL3* are under pharmaceutic development, and ABE-PCSK9 has entered the preclinical toxicology studies. So far, all the tested gene targets address familial dyslipidemia. CRISPR-based therapies could provide personalized treatment for the diseases, which currently cannot be cured. However, whether it could be cost effective to treat nonfamilial forms of dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis should be further investigated. Concerns about its advantage over traditional medications and long-term on- and off-target effects need to be addressed before clinical use. Pilot applications might be firstly available for individuals at high risk for myocardial infarction.

4.3 Further Target Discovery for Dyslipidemia and Atherosclerosis

4.3.1 Gene and Variant Targets Inspired by Human Knockout

Phenotypically healthy humans carrying knockouts of a gene provide evidence that pharmacological knockout of this gene may be safe. For example, LoF variants of *PCSK9* were associated with strikingly low plasma levels of LDL-C, reduced CAD risk [105], and but no apparent adverse health consequences, thus providing reassurance that therapeutic neutralization of *PCSK9* may be safe [106, 107]. Likewise, human knockouts of *ANGPTL3* and *APOC3* led to the development of pre- and clinical drugs for lowering serum levels of cholesterol and triglycerides, and the corresponding alleles related to hypolipidemia are under investigation for treatments using base editing. Increasing discoveries of such "experiments of nature" will be empowered by exome or whole genome sequencing in large-scale biobank cohorts [3]. More gene and allele targets relevant to dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis will emerge [3, 108–111].

4.3.2 Candidate Genes and Variants from Large-Scale Genetic Studies

Genome-wide association studies (GWASs) have discovered over 300 CAD loci and more than 900 loci of blood lipid traits including LDL-C, HDL-C, non-HDL-C, total cholesterol and triglycerides, unveiling novel variants, and genes and pathways underlying dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis with unprecedented speed and mechanistic complexity [20, 112, 113]. GWASs also rediscovered rare variants for dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis, suggesting that beyond these, drug targets are tagged by novel GWAS variants and gene candidates at the many loci associated with lipids and atherosclerosis, especially those loci overlapping for the two traits (Fig. 3). When we explored gene loci shared for CAD and lipids including LDL, TGs, TC, and HDL using the latest statistics of GWAS catalog, EMBL-EBI (2021), we identified 83 loci and classified the mapped genes into related pathophysiological pathways (Fig. 3). Surprisingly, other than the largest portion (~30%) of the genes directly involved lipid metabolism, many genes play roles in known pathways linked to CAD, such as inflammation, angiogenesis, and vascular remodeling. Genes for insulin resistance and glucose metabolism were also identified in our analysis, suggesting that novel genes and pathways for the disease are secondary to dysglycemic regulation. The convenience of CRISPR-based technologies will allow investigation of the novel genetic findings in a high-throughput manner.

Furthermore, by testing causality harnessing genetic information, Mendelian randomization (MR) could identify specific genes as potential therapeutic target and assure efficacy and, importantly, safety before the initiation of drug development [114, 115]. Another genetic approach alerting adverse effect is termed phenome-wide association study (PheWAS), which tests associations of a genetic variant or a gene with hundreds of clinical phenotypes linked to all the organ systems [116, 117]. Using integrative data of individual's genome and electronic health record from large biobank cohort, PheWAS could assess for desirable and adverse clinical outcomes linked to variant and gene of interest. MR and PheWAS provide reassurance for novel gene target selection in pre- and clinical investigations.

4.3.3 Driver Genes and Variants of Systems Genetic Studies

Although compelling efforts have been made to prioritize disease-associated genes utilizing approaches from molecular biology to GWAS, the genetic landscape of atherosclerosis and CAD is not fully elucidated. In the past decade, systems biology based on omic technologies accelerates the understanding of mechanisms underlying complex traits [118, 119]. Systems biology networks, genetic variations, and gene expression with other higher biological layers identify driver variants and genes for complex

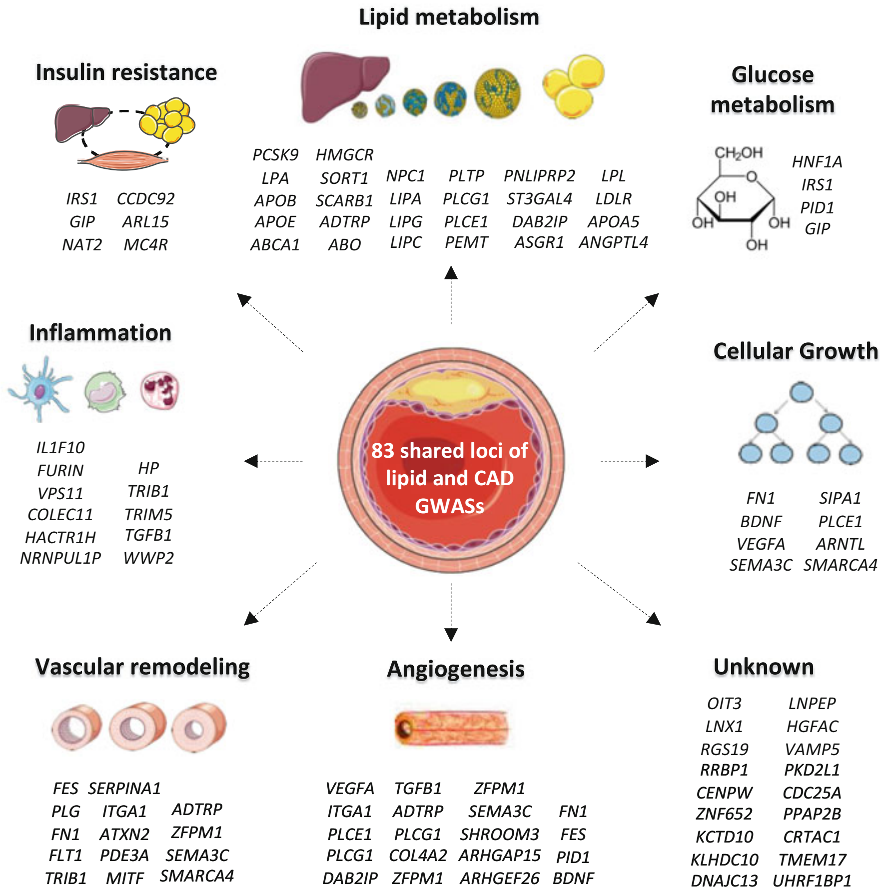


Fig. 3 Genes mapped to 83 shared loci of lipids and CAD GWAS loci and potentially related pathophysiological pathways of atherosclerosis. CAD, coronary artery disease

diseases. Targeting of the key drivers to modulate disease-associated gene or protein networks might enable correction of multiple pathogenic pathways in parallel. Genome editing technologies will play a crucial role in testing related hypothesis and therapeutic potentials [119].

5 Concluding Remarks and Future Perspectives

The possibility of manipulating DNA and RNA has advanced cardiovascular medicine, including understanding gene functions and genetic diseases, as well as the development of novel drug targets. Although the field is still in its infancy, the potentials are exemplified by clinical trials to treat sickle cell disease, to improve effectiveness of chimeric antigen receptor T-cell (CAR-T), or to reverse eye diseases [120]. A clinical trial of base editing targeting *PCSK9* to treat heterozygous familial hypercholesterolemia (HeFH) started in July 2022 (clinicaltrials.gov_NCT05398029). Beyond these examples, many rare genetic disorders, in principle, will be treatable with CRISPR-based therapies.

Despite the exciting progress, many challenges should be tackled before its broader applications. First, tissue-specific delivery of

genome editors has been a long-standing issue. Although AAV systems could allow relatively specific targeting in the liver, brain, muscle, and eye with low immunogenicity [121, 122], they should be further optimized, and many more tissues need to be considered. A new field of research exploiting nanoparticle-based delivery could provide alternative solutions. Second, current genome editing tools strictly rely on specific recognition sequences as well as specific binding sites on the target, such as the protospacer adjacent motif sequences for Cas proteins [45]. The absence of the assisting recognition sequence limits the targeting capability. Therefore, many research teams focus on discovering or engineering editing tools independent of such sequences. Third, substantial variability of editing efficacy depending on genetic loci and cell types was observed, which are partially caused by differences in chromatin accessibility and DNA repairing mechanisms throughout phases of cell cycle. Forth, off-target mutagenesis, although being rare, were detected within sequences of high similarity. While well-designed gRNAs are critical to minimize off-target events, advanced methods have been established to assess unwanted editing in a genome-wide fashion, such as BLISS, GUIDE-Seq, and DISCOVER-seq [123–125]. Finally, a long way has to be gone to fulfill regulatory guidelines and define cost reimbursement for these once-in-a-lifetime therapies. Of note, ongoing therapeutic testing of CRISPR aims to treat patients by modifying their somatic genome. The scientific and social challenges related to human germline editing are discussed elsewhere [126].

Nevertheless, gene editing therapies have to be evaluated carefully case-by-case in extensive pre- and clinical experimentations. Given the recent progress and efforts around the globe to tackle the related issues, genome editing will certainly expand into a new class of therapy to treat many diseases, including dyslipidemia and atherosclerosis.

Acknowledgments We acknowledge the Servier Medical Art for providing basic graph elements for our figures, PubMed for publication statistics, and NHGRI-EBI GWAS Catalog for the latest statistics of lipid traits and CAD.

Competing Financial Interests The authors declare no competing financial interests.

References

1. Liao HK, Hatanaka F, Araoka T, Reddy P, Wu MZ, Sui Y, Yamauchi T, Sakurai M, O'Keefe DD, Nunez-Delicado E, Guillen P, Campistol JM, Wu CJ, Lu LF, Esteban CR, Izpisua Belmonte JC (2017) In vivo target gene activation via CRISPR/Cas9-mediated trans-epigenetic modulation. Cell 171(7):1495–1507
2. Libby P, Buring JE, Badimon L, Hansson GK, Deanfield J, Bittencourt MS, Tokgozoglu L, Lewis EF (2019) Atherosclerosis. Nat Rev Dis Primers 5(1):56
3. Stitziel NO, Stirrups KE, Masca NG, Erdmann J, Ferrario PG, Konig IR, Weeke PE, Webb TR, Auer PL, Schick UM, Lu Y, Zhang H, Dube MP, Goel A, Farrall M, Peloso GM, Won HH, Do R, van Iperen E, Kanoni S, Kruppa J, Mahajan A, Scott RA, Willenberg C, Braund PS, van Capelleveen JC, Doney AS, Donnelly LA, Asselta R, Merlini PA, Duga S, Marziliano N, Denny JC, Shaffer CM, El-Mokhtari NE, Franke A, Gottesman O, Heilmann S, Hengstenberg C, Hoffman P, Holmen OL, Hveem K, Jansson JH, Jockel KH, Kessler T, Kriebel J, Laugwitz KL, Marouli E, Martinelli N, McCarthy MI, Van Zuydam NR, Meisinger C, Esko T, Mihailov E, Escher SA, Alver M, Moebus S, Morris AD, Muller-Nurasyid M, Nikpay M, Olivieri O, Lemieux Perreault LP, AlQarawi A, Robertson NR, Akinsanya KO, Reilly DF, Vogt TF, Yin W, Asselbergs FW, Kooperberg C, Jackson RD, Stahl E, Strauch K, Varga TV, Waldenberger M, Zeng L, Kraja AT, Liu C, Ehret GB, Newton-Cheh C, Chasman DI, Chowdhury R, Ferrario M, Ford I, Jukema JW, Kee F, Kuulasmaa K, Nordestgaard BG, Perola M, Saleheen D, Sattar N, Surendran P, Tregouet D, Young R, Howson JM, Butterworth AS, Danesh J, Ardissino D, Bottinger EP, Erbel R, Franks PW, Girelli D, Hall AS, Hovingh GK, Kastrati A, Lieb W, Meitinger T, Kraus WE, Shah SH, McPherson R, Orho-Melander M, Melander O, Metspalu A, Palmer CN, Peters A, Rader D, Reilly MP, Loos RJ, Reiner AP, Roden DM, Tardif JC, Thompson JR, Wareham NJ, Watkins H, Willer CJ, Kathiresan S, Deloukas P, Samani NJ, Schunkert H (2016) Coding variation in ANGPTL4, LPL, and SVEP1 and the risk of coronary disease. N Engl J Med 374(12):1134–1144
4. Authors/Task Force M, Guidelines ESCCfP, Societies ESCNC (2019) 2019 ESC/EAS guidelines for the management of dyslipidaemias: lipid

modification to reduce cardiovascular risk. Atherosclerosis 290:140–205

5. Braenne I, Kleinecke M, Reiz B, Graf E, Strom T, Wieland T, Fischer M, Kessler T, Hengstenberg C, Meitinger T, Erdmann J, Schunkert H (2016) Systematic analysis of variants related to familial hypercholesterolemia in families with premature myocardial infarction. Eur J Hum Genet 24(2): 191–197
6. Schunkert H, Bourier F (2015) Deciphering unexplained familial dyslipidemias: do we have the tools? Circulation 8(2):250–252
7. Schmidt N, Dressel A, Grammer TB, Gouni-Berthold I, Julius U, Kassner U, Klose G, Konig C, Koenig W, Otte B, Parhofer KG, Reinhard W, Schatz U, Schunkert H, Steinhagen-Thiessen E, Vogt A, Laufs U, Marz W (2018) Lipid-modifying therapy and low-density lipoprotein cholesterol goal attainment in patients with familial hypercholesterolemia in Germany: the CaReHigh Registry. Atherosclerosis 277:314–322
8. Di Minno A, Lupoli R, Calcaterra I, Poggio P, Forte F, Spadarella G, Ambrosino P, Iannuzzo G, Di Minno MND (2020) Efficacy and safety of bempedoic acid in patients with hypercholesterolemia: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. J Am Heart Assoc 9(15):e016262
9. Ripatti P, Ramo JT, Soderlund S, Surakka I, Matikainen N, Pirinen M, Pajukanta P, Sarin AP, Laurila PP, Ehnholm C, Salomaa V, Wilson RK, Palotie A, Freimer NB, Taskinen MR, Ripatti S (2016) The contribution of GWAS loci in familial dyslipidemias. PLoS Genet 12(5):e1006078
10. Klarin D, Damrauer SM, Cho K, Sun YV, Teslovich TM, Honerlaw J, Gagnon DR, DuVall SL, Li J, Peloso GM, Chaffin M, Small AM, Huang J, Tang H, Lynch JA, Ho YL, Liu DJ, Emdin CA, Li AH, Huffman JE, Lee JS, Natarajan P, Chowdhury R, Saleheen D, Vujkovic M, Baras A, Pyarajan S, Di Angelantonio E, Neale BM, Naheed A, Khera AV, Danesh J, Chang KM, Abecasis G, Willer C, Dewey FE, Carey DJ, Concato J, Gaziano JM, O'Donnell CJ, Tsao PS, Kathiresan S, Rader DJ, Wilson PWF, Assimes TL (2018) Genetics of blood lipids among ~300,000 multi-ethnic participants of the million veteran program. Nat Genet 50(11):1514–1523
11. Akioyamen LE, Genest J, Shan SD, Reel RL, Albaum JM, Chu A, Tu JV (2017) Estimating the prevalence of heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ Open 7(9):e016461
12. Cuchel M, Bruckert E, Ginsberg HN, Raal FJ, Santos RD, Hegele RA, Kuivenhoven JA, Nordestgaard BG, Descamps OS, Steinhagen-Thiessen E, Tybjaerg-Hansen A, Watts GF, Averna M, Boileau C, Boren J, Catapano AL, Defesche JC, Hovingh GK, Humphries SE, Kovanen PT, Masana L, Pajukanta P, Parhofer KG, Ray KK, Stalenhoef AF, Stroes E, Taskinen MR, Wiegman A, Wiklund O, Chapman MJ (2014) Homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia: new insights and guidance for clinicians to improve detection and clinical management. A position paper from the Consensus Panel on Familial Hypercholesterolaemia of the European Atherosclerosis Society. Eur Heart J 35(32):2146–2157
13. Lent-Schochet D, Jialal I (2021) Antilipemic agent bile acid sequestrants. In: StatPearls. StatPearls Publishing, Treasure Island
14. Schunkert H, Samani NJ (2015) Statin treatment: can genetics sharpen the focus? Lancet 385(9984): 2227–2229
15. Ray KK, Bays HE, Catapano AL, Lalwani ND, Bloedon LT, Sterling LR, Robinson PL, Ballantyne CM, Trial CH (2019) Safety and efficacy of bempedoic acid to reduce LDL cholesterol. N Engl J Med 380(11):1022–1032
16. Sabatine MS (2019) PCSK9 inhibitors: clinical evidence and implementation. Nat Rev Cardiol 16(3): 155–165
17. Libby P (2021) The changing landscape of atherosclerosis. Nature 592(7855):524–533
18. Samani NJ, Erdmann J, Hall AS, Hengstenberg C, Mangino M, Mayer B, Dixon RJ, Meitinger T, Braund P, Wichmann HE, Barrett JH, Konig IR, Stevens SE, Szymczak S, Tregouet DA, Iles MM, Pahlke F, Pollard H, Lieb W, Cambien F, Fischer M, Ouwehand W, Blankenberg S, Balmforth AJ, Baessler A, Ball SG, Strom TM, Braenne I, Gieger C, Deloukas P, Tobin MD, Ziegler A, Thompson JR, Schunkert H (2007) Genomewide association analysis of coronary artery disease. N Engl J Med 357(5):443–453
19. Schunkert H, Konig IR, Kathiresan S, Reilly MP, Assimes TL, Holm H, Preuss M, Stewart AF, Barbalic M, Gieger C, Absher D, Aherrahrou Z, Allayee H, Altshuler D, Anand SS, Andersen K, Anderson JL, Ardissino D, Ball SG, Balmforth AJ, Barnes TA, Becker DM, Becker LC, Berger K, Bis JC, Boekholdt SM, Boerwinkle E, Braund PS, Brown MJ, Burnett MS, Buysschaert I, Cardiogenics CJF, Chen L, Cichon S, Codd V, Davies RW, Dedoussis G, Dehghan A, Demissie S, Devaney JM, Diemert P, Do R, Doering A, Eifert S, Mokhtari NE, Ellis SG, Elosua R, Engert JC, Epstein SE, de Faire U, Fischer M, Folsom AR, Freyer J, Gigante B, Girelli D, Gretarsdottir S, Gudnason V, Gulcher JR, Halperin E, Hammond N, Hazen SL, Hofman A, Horne BD, Illig T, Iribarren C, Jones GT, Jukema JW, Kaiser MA, Kaplan LM, Kastelein JJ, Khaw KT, Knowles JW, Kolovou G, Kong A, Laaksonen R, Lambrechts D, Leander K, Lettre G, Li M, Lieb W, Loley C, Lotery AJ, Mannucci PM, Maouche S, Martinelli N, PP MK, Meisinger C, Meitinger T, Melander O, Merlini PA, Mooser V, Morgan T, Muhleisen TW, Muhlestein JB, Munzel T, Musunuru K, Nahrstaedt J, Nelson CP, Nothen MM, Olivieri O, Patel RS, Patterson CC, Peters A,

Peyvandi F, Qu L, Quyyumi AA, Rader DJ, Rallidis LS, Rice C, Rosendaal FR, Rubin D, Salomaa V, Sampietro ML, Sandhu MS, Schadt E, Schafer A, Schillert A, Schreiber S, Schrezenmeir J, Schwartz SM, Siscovick DS, Sivananthan M, Sivapalaratnam S, Smith A, Smith TB, Snoep JD, Soranzo N, Spertus JA, Stark K, Stirrups K, Stoll M, Tang WH, Tennstedt S, Thorgeirsson G, Thorleifsson G, Tomaszewski M, Uitterlinden AG, van Rij AM, Voight BF, Wareham NJ, Wells GA, Wichmann HE, Wild PS, Willenborg C, Witteman JC, Wright BJ, Ye S, Zeller T, Ziegler A, Cambien F, Goodall AH, Cupples LA, Quertermous T, Marz W, Hengstenberg C, Blankenberg S, Ouwehand WH, Hall AS, Deloukas P, Thompson JR, Stefansson K, Roberts R, Thorsteinsdottir U, Erdmann J, Samani NJ (2011) Large-scale association analysis identifies 13 new susceptibility loci for coronary artery disease. Nat Genet 43(4):333–338
20. Erdmann J, Kessler T, Munoz Venegas L, Schunkert H (2018) A decade of genome-wide association studies for coronary artery disease: the challenges ahead. Cardiovasc Res 114(9):1241–1257
21. Silbernagel G, Scharnagl H, Kleber ME, Hoffmann MM, Delgado G, Stojakovic T, Gary T, Zeng L, Ritsch A, Zewinger S, Speer T, Schunkert H, Landmesser U, Marz W, Grammer TB (2020) Common APOC3 variants are associated with circulating ApoC-III and VLDL cholesterol but not with total apolipoprotein B and coronary artery disease. Atherosclerosis 311:84–90
22. Zeng L, Moser S, Mirza-Schreiber N, Lamina C, Coassin S, Nelson CP, Annilo T, Franzen O, Kleber ME, Mack S, Andlauer TFM, Jiang B, Stiller B, Li L, Willenborg C, Munz M, Kessler T, Kastrati A, Laugwitz KL, Erdmann J, Moebus S, NoThen MM, Peters A, Strauch K, MuLler-Nurasyid M, Gieger C, Meitinger T, Steinhagen-Thiessen E, MaRz W, Metspalu A, BjoRkegren JLM, Samani NJ, Kronenberg F, Muller-Myhsok B, Schunkert H (2021) Cis-epistasis at the LPA locus and risk of cardiovascular diseases. Cardiovasc Res 118(4): 1088–1102
23. Stitziel NO, Khera AV, Wang X, Bierhals AJ, Vourakis AC, Sperry AE, Natarajan P, Klarin D, Emdin CA, Zekavat SM, Nomura A, Erdmann J, Schunkert H, Samani NJ, Kraus WE, Shah SH, Yu B, Boerwinkle E, Rader DJ, Gupta N, Frossard PM, Rasheed A, Danesh J, Lander ES, Gabriel S, Saleheen D, Musunuru K, Kathiresan S (2017) ANGPTL3 deficiency and protection against coronary artery disease. J Am Coll Cardiol 69(16): 2054–2063
24. Valanti EK, Dalakoura-Karagkouni K, Siasos G, Kardassis D, Eliopoulos AG, Sanoudou D (2021) Advances in biological therapies for dyslipidemias and atherosclerosis. Metabolism 116:154461
25. Wirth T, Parker N, Yla-Herttuala S (2013) History of gene therapy. Gene 525(2):162–169
26. Al Mahmeed W, Bakir S, Beshyah SA, Morcos B, Wajih S, Horack M, Lautsch D, Ambegaonkar B, Brudi P, Baxter CA, Vyas A, Gitt AK (2019) Prevalence of lipid abnormalities and cholesterol target value attainment in patients with stable and acute coronary heart disease in the United Arab Emirates. Heart Views 20(2):37–46
27. Landmesser U, Poller W, Tsimikas S, Most P, Paneni F, Luscher TF (2020) From traditional pharmacological towards nucleic acid-based therapies for cardiovascular diseases. Eur Heart J 41(40): 3884–3899
28. Rodriguez-Calvo R, Masana L (2019) Review of the scientific evolution of gene therapy for the treatment of homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia: past, present and future perspectives. J Med Genet 56(11): 711–717
29. Tsimikas S, Viney NJ, Hughes SG, Singleton W, Graham MJ, Baker BF, Burkey JL, Yang Q, Marcovina SM, Geary RS, Crooke RM, Witztum JL (2015) Antisense therapy targeting apolipoprotein(a): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 1 study. Lancet 386(10002):1472–1483
30. Viney NJ, van Capelleveen JC, Geary RS, Xia S, Tami JA, Yu RZ, Marcovina SM, Hughes SG, Graham MJ, Crooke RM, Crooke ST, Witztum JL, Stroes ES, Tsimikas S (2016) Antisense oligonucleotides targeting apolipoprotein(a) in people with raised lipoprotein(a): two randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-ranging trials. Lancet 388(10057):2239–2253
31. Ray KK, Landmesser U, Leiter LA, Kallend D, Dufour R, Karakas M, Hall T, Troquay RP, Turner T, Visseren FL, Wijngaard P, Wright RS, Kastelein JJ (2017) Inclisiran in patients at high cardiovascular risk with elevated LDL cholesterol. N Engl J Med 376(15):1430–1440
32. Ray KK, Wright RS, Kallend D, Koenig W, Leiter LA, Raal FJ, Bisch JA, Richardson T, Jaros M, Wijngaard PLJ, Kastelein JJP (2020) Two phase 3 trials of inclisiran in patients with elevated LDL cholesterol. N Engl J Med 382(16):1507–1519
33. Witztum JL, Gaudet D, Freedman SD, Alexander VJ, Digenio A, Williams KR, Yang Q, Hughes SG, Geary RS, Arca M, Stroes ESG, Bergeron J, Soran H, Civeira F, Hemphill L, Tsimikas S, Blom DJ, O'Dea L, Bruckert E (2019) Volanesorsen and triglyceride levels in familial chylomicronemia syndrome. N Engl J Med 381(6):531–542
34. Alexander VJ, Xia S, Hurh E, Hughes SG, O'Dea L, Geary RS, Witztum JL, Tsimikas S (2019) N-acetyl galactosamine-conjugated antisense drug to APOC3 mRNA, triglycerides and atherogenic lipoprotein levels. Eur Heart J 40(33):2785–2796
35. Ray RM, Hansen AH, Slott S, Taskova M, Astakhova K, Morris KV (2019) Control of LDL uptake in human cells by targeting the LDLR regulatory long non-coding RNA BM450697. Mol Ther 17:264–276

36. Fu BXH, Smith JD, Fuchs RT, Mabuchi M, Curcuru J, Robb GB, Fire AZ (2019) Target-dependent nickase activities of the CRISPR-Cas nucleases Cpf1 and Cas9. Nat Microbiol 4(5): 888–897
37. Kessler T, Graf T, Hilgendorf I, Rizas K, Martens E, von Zur MC, Kraemer P, Meyer-Saraei R, Neumann FJ, Bode C, Laugwitz KL, Massberg S, Schunkert H, Weil J, Kastrati A, Sager HB (2020) Hospital admissions with acute coronary syndromes during the COVID-19 pandemic in German cardiac care units. Cardiovasc Res 116(11):1800–1801
38. Carusillo A, Mussolino C (2020) DNA damage: from threat to treatment. Cell 9:7
39. Hinnen A, Hicks JB, Fink GR (1978) Transformation of yeast. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 75(4):1929–1933
40. Kim YG, Cha J, Chandrasegaran S (1996) Hybrid restriction enzymes: zinc finger fusions to Fok I cleavage domain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93(3): 1156–1160
41. Christian M, Cermak T, Doyle EL, Schmidt C, Zhang F, Hummel A, Bogdanove AJ, Voytas DF (2010) Targeting DNA double-strand breaks with TAL effector nucleases. Genetics 186(2):757–761
42. Poirot L, Philip B, Schiffer-Mannioui C, Le Clerre D, Chion-Sotinel I, Derniame S, Potrel P, Bas C, Lemaire L, Galetto R, Lebuhotel C, Eyquem J, Cheung GW, Duclert A, Gouble A, Arnould S, Peggs K, Pule M, Scharenberg AM, Smith J (2015) Multiplex genome-edited T-cell manufacturing platform for "off-the-shelf" adoptive T-cell immunotherapies. Cancer Res 75(18):3853–3864
43. Waseem Qasim PJ, Samarasinghe S, Ghorashian S, Zhan H, Stafford S, Butler K, Ahsan G, Gilmour K, Adams S, Pinner D, Chiesa R, Chatters S, Swift S, Goulden N, Peggs K, Thrasher AJ, Veys P, Pule M (2015) First clinical application of Talen engineered universal CAR19 T Cells in B-ALL. Blood 126:23
44. Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2014) Genome editing. The new frontier of genome engineering with CRISPR-Cas9. Science 346(6213):1258096
45. Do R, Willer CJ, Schmidt EM, Sengupta S, Gao C, Peloso GM, Gustafsson S, Kanoni S, Ganna A, Chen J, Buchkovich ML, Mora S, Beckmann JS, Bragg-Gresham JL, Chang HY, Demirkan A, Den Hertog HM, Donnelly LA, Ehret GB, Esko T, Feitosa MF, Ferreira T, Fischer K, Fontanillas P, Fraser RM, Freitag DF, Gurdasani D, Heikkila K, Hypponen E, Isaacs A, Jackson AU, Johansson A, Johnson T, Kaakinen M, Kettunen J, Kleber ME, Li X, Luan J, Lyytikainen LP, Magnusson PK, Mangino M, Mihailov E, Montasser ME, Muller-Nurasyid M, Nolte IM, O'Connell JR, Palmer CD, Perola M, Petersen AK, Sanna S, Saxena R, Shah S, Shungin D, Sidore C, Song C, Strawbridge RJ, Surakka I, Tanaka T, Teslovich TM, Thorleifsson G, Van den Herik EG, Voight BF, Volcik KA, Waite LL, Wong A, Wu Y, Zhang W, Absher D, Asiki G, Barroso I, Been LF, Bolton JL, Bonnycastle LL, Brambilla P, Burnett MS, Cesana G, Dimitriou M, Doney AS, Doring A, Elliott P, Epstein SE, Eyjolfsson GI, Gigante B, Goodarzi MO, Grallert H, Gravito ML, Groves CJ, Hallmans G, Hartikainen AL, Hayward C, Hernandez D, Hicks AA, Holm H, Hung YJ, Illig T, Jones MR, Kaleebu P, Kastelein JJ, Khaw KT, Kim E, Klopp N, Komulainen P, Kumari M, Langenberg C, Lehtimaki T, Lin SY, Lindstrom J, Loos RJ, Mach F, McArdle WL, Meisinger C, Mitchell BD, Muller G, Nagaraja R, Narisu N, Nieminen TV, Nsubuga RN, Olafsson I, Ong KK, Palotie A, Papamarkou T, Pomilla C, Pouta A, Rader DJ, Reilly MP, Ridker PM, Rivadeneira F, Rudan I, Ruokonen A, Samani N, Scharnagl H, Seeley J, Silander K, Stancakova A, Stirrups K, Swift AJ, Tiret L, Uitterlinden AG, van Pelt LJ, Vedantam S, Wainwright N, Wijmenga C, Wild SH, Willemsen G, Wilsgaard T, Wilson JF, Young EH, Zhao JH, Adair LS, Arveiler D, Assimes TL, Bandinelli S, Bennett F, Bochud M, Boehm BO, Boomsma DI, Borecki IB, Bornstein SR, Bovet P, Burnier M, Campbell H, Chakravarti A, Chambers JC, Chen YD, Collins FS, Cooper RS, Danesh J, Dedoussis G, de Faire U, Feranil AB, Ferrieres J, Ferrucci L, Freimer NB, Gieger C, Groop LC, Gudnason V, Gyllensten U, Hamsten A, Harris TB, Hingorani A, Hirschhorn JN, Hofman A, Hovingh GK, Hsiung CA, Humphries SE, Hunt SC, Hveem K, Iribarren C, Jarvelin MR, Jula A, Kahonen M, Kaprio J, Kesaniemi A, Kivimaki M, Kooner JS, Koudstaal PJ, Krauss RM, Kuh D, Kuusisto J, Kyvik KO, Laakso M, Lakka TA, Lind L, Lindgren CM, Martin NG, Marz W, McCarthy MI, Mckenzie CA, Meneton P, Metspalu A, Moilanen L, Morris AD, Munroe PB, Njolstad I, Pedersen NL, Power C, Pramstaller PP, Price JF, Psaty BM, Quertermous T, Rauramaa R, Saleheen D, Salomaa V, Sanghera DK, Saramies J, Schwarz PE, Sheu WH, Shuldiner AR, Siegbahn A, Spector TD, Stefansson K, Strachan DP, Tayo BO, Tremoli E, Tuomilehto J, Uusitupa M, van Duijn CM, Vollenweider P, Wallentin L, Wareham NJ, Whitfield JB, Wolffenbuttel BH, Altshuler D, Ordovas JM, Boerwinkle E, Palmer CN, Thorsteinsdottir U, Chasman DI, Rotter JI, Franks PW, Ripatti S, Cupples LA, Sandhu MS, Rich SS, Boehnke M, Deloukas P, Mohlke KL, Ingelsson E, Abecasis GR, Daly MJ, Neale BM, Kathiresan S (2013) Common variants associated with plasma triglycerides and risk for coronary artery disease. Nat Genet 45(11):1345–1352
46. Chavez A, Scheiman J, Vora S, Pruitt BW, Tuttle M, Lin S, Kiani S, Guzman CD, Wiegand DJ, Ter-Ovanesyan D, Braff JL, Davidsohn N, Housden BE, Perrimon N, Weiss R, Aach J, Collins JJ, Church GM (2015) Highly efficient Cas9-mediated transcriptional programming. Nat Methods 12(4):326–328
47. Konermann S, Brigham MD, Trevino AE, Joung J, Abudayyeh OO, Barcena C, Hsu PD, Habib N, Gootenberg JS, Nishimasu H, Nureki O, Zhang F

(2015) Genome-scale transcriptional activation by an engineered CRISPR-Cas9 complex. Nature 517(7536):583–588
48. Gilbert LA, Larson MH, Morsut L, Liu Z, Brar GA, Torres SE, Stern-Ginossar N, Brandman O, Whitehead EH, Doudna JA, Lim WA, Weissman JS, Qi LS (2013) CRISPR-mediated modular RNA-guided regulation of transcription in eukaryotes. Cell 154(2): 442–451
49. Rees HA, Liu DR (2018) Base editing: precision chemistry on the genome and transcriptome of living cells. Nat Rev Genet 19(12):770–788
50. Landrum MJ, Lee JM, Benson M, Brown G, Chao C, Chitipiralla S, Gu B, Hart J, Hoffman D, Hoover J, Jang W, Katz K, Ovetsky M, Riley G, Sethi A, Tully R, Villamarin-Salomon R, Rubinstein W, Maglott DR (2016) ClinVar: public archive of interpretations of clinically relevant variants. Nucleic Acids Res 44(1):862–868
51. Edraki A, Mir A, Ibraheim R, Gainetdinov I, Yoon Y, Song CQ, Cao Y, Gallant J, Xue W, Rivera-Perez JA, Sontheimer EJ (2019) A compact, high-accuracy Cas9 with a dinucleotide PAM for in vivo genome editing. Mol Cell 73(4):714–726
52. Cox DBT, Gootenberg JS, Abudayyeh OO, Franklin B, Kellner MJ, Joung J, Zhang F (2017) RNA editing with CRISPR-Cas13. Science 358(6366):1019–1027
53. Liu C, Zhang L, Liu H, Cheng K (2017) Delivery strategies of the CRISPR-Cas9 gene-editing system for therapeutic applications. J Control Release 266: 17–26
54. Luther DC, Lee YW, Nagaraj H, Scaletti F, Rotello VM (2018) Delivery approaches for CRISPR/Cas9 therapeutics in vivo: advances and challenges. Expert Opin Drug Deliv 15(9):905–913
55. Ran FA, Cong L, Yan WX, Scott DA, Gootenberg JS, Kriz AJ, Zetsche B, Shalem O, Wu X, Makarova KS, Koonin EV, Sharp PA, Zhang F (2015) In vivo genome editing using Staphylococcus aureus Cas9. Nature 520(7546):186–191
56. Wei T, Cheng Q, Min YL, Olson EN, Siegwart DJ (2020) Systemic nanoparticle delivery of CRISPR-Cas9 ribonucleoproteins for effective tissue specific genome editing. Nat Commun 11(1):3232
57. Finn JD, Smith AR, Patel MC, Shaw L, Youniss MR, van Heteren J, Dirstine T, Ciullo C, Lescarbeau R, Seitzer J, Shah RR, Shah A, Ling D, Growe J, Pink M, Rohde E, Wood KM, Salomon WE, Harrington WF, Dombrowski C, Strapps WR, Chang Y, Morrissey DV (2018) A single administration of CRISPR/Cas9 lipid nanoparticles achieves robust and persistent in vivo genome editing. Cell Rep 22(9):2227–2235
58. Rosenblum D, Gutkin A, Kedmi R, Ramishetti S, Veiga N, Jacobi AM, Schubert MS, Friedmann-Morvinski D, Cohen ZR, Behlke MA, Lieberman J, Peer D (2020) CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing using targeted lipid nanoparticles for cancer therapy. Sci Adv 6:47
59. Sun W, Ji W, Hall JM, Hu Q, Wang C, Beisel CL, Gu Z (2015) Self-assembled DNA nanoclews for the efficient delivery of CRISPR-Cas9 for genome editing. Angew Chem Int Ed 54(41):12029–12033
60. Zuris JA, Thompson DB, Shu Y, Guilinger JP, Bessen JL, Hu JH, Maeder ML, Joung JK, Chen ZY, Liu DR (2015) Cationic lipid-mediated delivery of proteins enables efficient protein-based genome editing in vitro and in vivo. Nat Biotechnol 33(1): 73–80
61. Wang M, Zuris JA, Meng F, Rees H, Sun S, Deng P, Han Y, Gao X, Pouli D, Wu Q, Georgakoudi I, Liu DR, Xu Q (2016) Efficient delivery of genome-editing proteins using bioreducible lipid nanoparticles. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113(11): 2868–2873
62. Gao X, Tao Y, Lamas V, Huang M, Yeh WH, Pan B, Hu YJ, Hu JH, Thompson DB, Shu Y, Li Y, Wang H, Yang S, Xu Q, Polley DB, Liberman MC, Kong WJ, Holt JR, Chen ZY, Liu DR (2018) Treatment of autosomal dominant hearing loss by in vivo delivery of genome editing agents. Nature 553(7687): 217–221
63. Lee K, Conboy M, Park HM, Jiang F, Kim HJ, Dewitt MA, Mackley VA, Chang K, Rao A, Skinner C, Shobha T, Mehdipour M, Liu H, Huang WC, Lan F, Bray NL, Li S, Corn JE, Kataoka K, Doudna JA, Conboy I, Murthy N (2017) Nanoparticle delivery of Cas9 ribonucleoprotein and donor DNA in vivo induces homology-directed DNA repair. Nat Biomed Eng 1:889–901
64. Mout R, Ray M, Yesilbag Tonga G, Lee YW, Tay T, Sasaki K, Rotello VM (2017) Direct cytosolic delivery of CRISPR/Cas9-ribonucleoprotein for efficient gene editing. ACS Nano 11(3):2452–2458
65. Wang P, Zhang L, Xie Y, Wang N, Tang R, Zheng W, Jiang X (2017) Genome editing for cancer therapy: delivery of Cas9 protein/sgRNA plasmid via a gold nanocluster/lipid core-shell nanocarrier. Adv Sci 4(11):1700175
66. Alsaiari SK, Patil S, Alyami M, Alamoudi KO, Aleisa FA, Merzaban JS, Li M, Khashab NM (2018) Endosomal escape and delivery of CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing machinery enabled by nanoscale zeolitic imidazolate framework. J Am Chem Soc 140(1):143–146
67. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
68. Sun X, Zhou X, Dong B, Wang C, Xiao X, Wang Y (2021) Generation of a gene-corrected isogenic iPSC line (AHQUi001-A-1) from a patient with familial hypertriglyceridemia (FHTG) carrying a heterozygous p.C310R (c.928 T > C) mutation in LPL gene using CRISPR/Cas9. Stem Cell Res 52:102230

69. Musunuru K, Sheikh F, Gupta RM, Houser SR, Maher KO, Milan DJ, Terzic A, Wu JC (2018) Induced pluripotent stem cells for cardiovascular disease modeling and precision medicine: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation 11(1):e000043
70. Yang H, Wang H, Jaenisch R (2014) Generating genetically modified mice using CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome engineering. Nat Protoc 9(8): 1956–1968
71. Yu H, Rimbert A, Palmer AE, Toyohara T, Xia Y, Xia F, LMR F, Chen Z, Chen T, Loaiza N, Horwitz NB, Kacergis MC, Zhao L, Consortium B, Soukas AA, Kuivenhoven JA, Kathiresan S, Cowan CA (2019) GPR146 deficiency protects against hypercholesterolemia and atherosclerosis. Cell 179(6): 1276–1288
72. Jarrett KE, Lee C, De Giorgi M, Hurley A, Gillard BK, Doerfler AM, Li A, Pownall HJ, Bao G, Lagor WR (2018) Somatic editing of Ldlr with adeno-associated viral-CRISPR is an efficient tool for atherosclerosis research. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 38(9):1997–2006
73. Niimi M, Yang D, Kitajima S, Ning B, Wang C, Li S, Liu E, Zhang J, Eugene Chen Y, Fan J (2016) ApoE knockout rabbits: a novel model for the study of human hyperlipidemia. Atherosclerosis 245:187–193
74. Yuan T, Zhong Y, Wang Y, Zhang T, Lu R, Zhou M, Lu Y, Yan K, Chen Y, Hu Z, Liang J, Fan J, Cheng Y (2019) Generation of hyperlipidemic rabbit models using multiple sgRNAs targeted CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing system. Lipids Health Dis 18(1):69
75. Huang L, Hua Z, Xiao H, Cheng Y, Xu K, Gao Q, Xia Y, Liu Y, Zhang X, Zheng X, Mu Y, Li K (2017) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated ApoE-/- and LDLR-/- double gene knockout in pigs elevates serum LDL-C and TC levels. Oncotarget 8(23):37751–37760
76. Dong Z, Shi H, Zhao M, Zhang X, Huang W, Wang Y, Zheng L, Xian X, Liu G (2018) Loss of LCAT activity in the golden Syrian hamster elicits pro-atherogenic dyslipidemia and enhanced atherosclerosis. Metabolism 83:245–255
77. Fedoseienko A, Wijers M, Wolters JC, Dekker D, Smit M, Huijkman N, Kloosterhuis N, Klug H, Schepers A, Willems van Dijk K, Levels JHM, Billadeau DD, Hofker MH, van Deursen J, Westerterp M, Burstein E, Kuivenhoven JA, van de Sluis B (2018) The COMMD family regulates plasma LDL levels and attenuates atherosclerosis through stabilizing the CCC complex in endosomal LDLR trafficking. Circ Res 122(12):1648–1660
78. Bartuzi P, Billadeau DD, Favier R, Rong S, Dekker D, Fedoseienko A, Fieten H, Wijers M, Levels JH, Huijkman N, Kloosterhuis N, van der Molen H, Brufau G, Groen AK, Elliott AM, Kuivenhoven JA, Plecko B, Grangl G, McGaughran J, Horton JD, Burstein E, Hofker MH, van de Sluis B (2016) CCC- and WASH-mediated endosomal sorting of LDLR is required for normal clearance of circulating LDL. Nat Commun 7:10961
79. Zhao H, Li Y, He L, Pu W, Yu W, Li Y, Wu YT, Xu C, Wei Y, Ding Q, Song BL, Huang H, Zhou B (2020) In vivo AAV-CRISPR/Cas9-mediated gene editing ameliorates atherosclerosis in familial hypercholesterolemia. Circulation 141(1):67–79
80. Musunuru K, Lagor WR, Miano JM (2017) What do we really think about human germline genome editing, and what does it mean for medicine? Circulation 10:5
81. Delhove J, Osenk I, Prichard I, Donnelley M (2020) Public acceptability of gene therapy and gene editing for human use: a systematic review. Hum Gene Ther 31(1-2):20–46
82. Ibraheim R, Song CQ, Mir A, Amrani N, Xue W, Sontheimer EJ (2018) All-in-one adeno-associated virus delivery and genome editing by Neisseria meningitidis Cas9 in vivo. Genome Biol 19(1):137
83. Wang X, Raghavan A, Chen T, Qiao L, Zhang Y, Ding Q, Musunuru K (2016) CRISPR-Cas9 targeting of PCSK9 in human hepatocytes in vivo-brief report. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 36(5):783–786
84. Yin H, Song CQ, Suresh S, Wu Q, Walsh S, Rhym LH, Mintzer E, Bolukbasi MF, Zhu LJ, Kauffman K, Mou H, Oberholzer A, Ding J, Kwan SY, Bogorad RL, Zatsepin T, Koteliansky V, Wolfe SA, Xue W, Langer R, Anderson DG (2017) Structure-guided chemical modification of guide RNA enables potent non-viral in vivo genome editing. Nat Biotechnol 35(12):1179–1187
85. Ding Q, Strong A, Patel KM, Ng SL, Gosis BS, Regan SN, Cowan CA, Rader DJ, Musunuru K (2014) Permanent alteration of PCSK9 with in vivo CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing. Circ Res 115(5): 488–492
86. Zhang L, Wang L, Xie Y, Wang P, Deng S, Qin A, Zhang J, Yu X, Zheng W, Jiang X (2019) Triple-targeting delivery of CRISPR/Cas9 to reduce the risk of cardiovascular diseases. Angew Chem Int Ed 58(36):12404–12408
87. Li Q, Su J, Liu Y, Jin X, Zhong X, Mo L, Wang Q, Deng H, Yang Y (2021) In vivo PCSK9 gene editing using an all-in-one self-cleavage AAV-CRISPR system. Mol Ther 20:652–659
88. Chadwick AC, Wang X, Musunuru K (2017) In vivo base editing of PCSK9 (proprotein convertase subtilisin/kexin Type 9) as a therapeutic alternative to genome editing. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 37(9):1741–1747
89. Carreras A, Pane LS, Nitsch R, Madeyski-Bengtson-K, Porritt M, Akcakaya P, Taheri-Ghahfarokhi A, Ericson E, Bjursell M, Perez-Alcazar M, Seeliger F, Althage M, Knoll R, Hicks R, Mayr LM, Perkins R, Linden D, Boren J, Bohlooly YM, Maresca M (2019) In vivo genome and base editing of a human PCSK9 knock-in hypercholesterolemic mouse model. BMC Biol 17(1):4

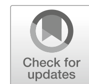
90. Zhang X, Zhao W, Nguyen GN, Zhang C, Zeng C, Yan J, Du S, Hou X, Li W, Jiang J, Deng B, McComb DW, Dorkin R, Shah A, Barrera L, Gregoire F, Singh M, Chen D, Sabatino DE, Dong Y (2020) Functionalized lipid-like nanoparticles for in vivo mRNA delivery and base editing. Sci Adv 6:34
91. Yuxi Chen SZ, Liu W, Wen J, Sihui H, Cao T, Sun H, Li Y, Huang L, Liu Y, Liang P, Huang J (2020) Development of highly efficient dual-AAV split adenosine base editor for in vivo gene therapy. Small Methods 4:2000309
92. Jorgensen AB, Frikke-Schmidt R, Nordestgaard BG, Tybjaerg-Hansen A (2014) Loss-of-function mutations in APOC3 and risk of ischemic vascular disease. N Engl J Med 371(1):32–41
93. Musunuru K, Pirruccello JP, Do R, Peloso GM, Guiducci C, Sougnez C, Garimella KV, Fisher S, Abreu J, Barry AJ, Fennell T, Banks E, Ambrogio L, Cibulskis K, Kernytsky A, Gonzalez E, Rudzicz N, Engert JC, DePristo MA, Daly MJ, Cohen JC, Hobbs HH, Altshuler D, Schonfeld G, Gabriel SB, Yue P, Kathiresan S (2010) Exome sequencing, ANGPTL3 mutations, and familial combined hypolipidemia. N Engl J Med 363(23):2220–2227
94. Saleheen D, Natarajan P, Armean IM, Zhao W, Rasheed A, Khetarpal SA, Won HH, Karczewski KJ, O'Donnell-Luria AH, Samocha KE, Weisburd B, Gupta N, Zaidi M, Samuel M, Imran A, Abbas S, Majeed F, Ishaq M, Akhtar S, Trindade K, Mucksavage M, Qamar N, Zaman KS, Yaqoob Z, Saghir T, Rizvi SNH, Memon A, Hayyat Mallick N, Ishaq M, Rasheed SZ, Memon FU, Mahmood K, Ahmed N, Do R, Krauss RM, MacArthur DG, Gabriel S, Lander ES, Daly MJ, Frossard P, Danesh J, Rader DJ, Kathiresan S (2017) Human knockouts and phenotypic analysis in a cohort with a high rate of consanguinity. Nature 544(7649):235–239
95. Guo M, Xu Y, Dong Z, Zhou Z, Cong N, Gao M, Huang W, Wang Y, Liu G, Xian X (2020) Inactivation of ApoC3 by CRISPR/Cas9 protects against atherosclerosis in hamsters. Circ Res 127(11): 1456–1458
96. Chadwick AC, Evitt NH, Lv W, Musunuru K (2018) Reduced blood lipid levels with in vivo CRISPR-Cas9 base editing of ANGPTL3. Circulation 137(9): 975–977
97. Rhee JW, Wu JC (2018) Dyslipidaemia: in vivo genome editing of ANGPTL3: a therapy for atherosclerosis? Nat Rev Cardiol 15(5):259–260
98. Trieu VN, McConathy WJ (1995) A two-step model for lipoprotein(a) formation. J Biol Chem 270(26): 15471–15474
99. Boerwinkle E, Leffert CC, Lin J, Lackner C, Chiesa G, Hobbs HH (1992) Apolipoprotein(a) gene accounts for greater than 90% of the variation in plasma lipoprotein(a) concentrations. J Clin Investig 90(1):52–60
100. Nordestgaard BG, Langsted A (2016) Lipoprotein (a) as a cause of cardiovascular disease: insights from epidemiology, genetics, and biology. J Lipid Res 57(11):1953–1975
101. Leibundgut G, Scipione C, Yin H, Schneider M, Boffa MB, Green S, Yang X, Dennis E, Witztum JL, Koschinsky ML, Tsimikas S (2013) Determinants of binding of oxidized phospholipids on apolipoprotein (a) and lipoprotein (a). J Lipid Res 54(10): 2815–2830
102. Bergmark C, Dewan A, Orsoni A, Merki E, Miller ER, Shin MJ, Binder CJ, Horkko S, Krauss RM, Chapman MJ, Witztum JL, Tsimikas S (2008) A novel function of lipoprotein [a] as a preferential carrier of oxidized phospholipids in human plasma. J Lipid Res 49(10):2230–2239
103. van der Steeg WA, Holme I, Boekholdt SM, Larsen ML, Lindahl C, Stroes ES, Tikkanen MJ, Wareham NJ, Faergeman O, Olsson AG, Pedersen TR, Khaw KT, Kastelein JJ (2008) High-density lipoprotein cholesterol, high-density lipoprotein particle size, and apolipoprotein A-I: significance for cardiovascular risk: the IDEAL and EPIC-Norfolk studies. J Am Coll Cardiol 51(6):634–642
104. Hughes SD, Rouy D, Navaratnam N, Scott J, Rubin EM (1996) Gene transfer of cytidine deaminase apoBEC-1 lowers lipoprotein(a) in transgenic mice and induces apolipoprotein B editing in rabbits. Hum Gene Ther 7(1):39–49
105. Cohen JC, Boerwinkle E, Mosley TH Jr, Hobbs HH (2006) Sequence variations in PCSK9, low LDL, and protection against coronary heart disease. N Engl J Med 354(12):1264–1272
106. Zhao Z, Tuakli-Wosornu Y, Lagace TA, Kinch L, Grishin NV, Horton JD, Cohen JC, Hobbs HH (2006) Molecular characterization of loss-of-function mutations in PCSK9 and identification of a compound heterozygote. Am J Hum Genet 79(3): 514–523
107. Hooper AJ, Marais AD, Tanyanyiwa DM, Burnett JR (2007) The C679X mutation in PCSK9 is present and lowers blood cholesterol in a Southern African population. Atherosclerosis 193(2):445–448
108. Peloso GM, Lange LA, Varga TV, Nickerson DA, Smith JD, Griswold ME, Musani S, Polfus LM, Mei H, Gabriel S, Quarells RC, Altshuler D, Boerwinkle E, Daly MJ, Neale B, Correa A, Reiner AP, Wilson JG, Kathiresan S (2016) Association of exome sequences with cardiovascular traits among blacks in the Jackson Heart Study. Circulation 9(4): 368–374
109. Abramowitz Y, Roth A, Keren G, Isakov O, Shomron N, Laitman Y, Weissglas-Volkov D, Arbel Y, Banai S, Finkelstein A, Friedman E (2016) Whole-exome sequencing in individuals with multiple cardiovascular risk factors and normal coronary arteries. Coron Artery Dis 27(4):257–266
110. Hu X, Chen L, Gong C, Guo J, Chen Y, Wang Q, Guo R, Li W, Hao C (2021) Whole exome

sequencing for non-selective pediatric patients with hyperlipidemia. Gene 768:145310
111. Hixson JE, Jun G, Shimmin LC, Wang Y, Yu G, Mao C, Warren AS, Howard TD, Heide RSV, Van Eyk J, Wang Y, Herrington DM (2017) Whole exome sequencing to identify genetic variants associated with raised atherosclerotic lesions in young persons. Sci Rep 7(1):4091
112. Liu DJ, Peloso GM, Yu H, Butterworth AS, Wang X, Mahajan A, Saleheen D, Emdin C, Alam D, Alves AC, Amouyel P, Di Angelantonio E, Arveiler D, Assimes TL, Auer PL, Baber U, Ballantyne CM, Bang LE, Benn M, Bis JC, Boehnke M, Boerwinkle E, Bork-Jensen J, Bottinger EP, Brandslund I, Brown M, Busonero F, Caulfield MJ, Chambers JC, Chasman DI, Chen YE, Chen YI, Chowdhury R, Christensen C, Chu AY, Connell JM, Cucca F, Cupples LA, Damrauer SM, Davies G, Deary IJ, Dedoussis G, Denny JC, Dominiczak A, Dube MP, Ebeling T, Eiriksdottir G, Esko T, Farmaki AE, Feitosa MF, Ferrario M, Ferrieres J, Ford I, Fornage M, Franks PW, Frayling TM, Frikke-Schmidt R, Fritsche LG, Frossard P, Fuster V, Ganesh SK, Gao W, Garcia ME, Gieger C, Giulianini F, Goodarzi MO, Grallert H, Grarup N, Groop L, Grove ML, Gudnason V, Hansen T, Harris TB, Hayward C, Hirschhorn JN, Holmen OL, Huffman J, Huo Y, Hveem K, Jabeen S, Jackson AU, Jakobsdottir J, Jarvelin MR, Jensen GB, Jorgensen ME, Jukema JW, Justesen JM, Kamstrup PR, Kanoni S, Karpe F, Kee F, Khera AV, Klarin D, Koistinen HA, Kooner JS, Kooperberg C, Kuulasmaa K, Kuusisto J, Laakso M, Lakka T, Langenberg C, Langsted A, Launer LJ, Lauritzen T, Liewald DC, Lin LA, Linneberg A, Loos RJ, Lu Y, Lu X, Magi R, Malarstig A, Manichaikul A, Manning AK, Mantyselka P, Marouli E, Masca NG, Maschio A, Meigs JB, Melander O, Metspalu A, Morris AP, Morrison AC, Mulas A, Muller-Nurasyid M, Munroe PB, Neville MJ, Nielsen JB, Nielsen SF, Nordestgaard BG, Ordovas JM, Mehran R, O'Donnell CJ, Orho-Melander M, Molony CM, Muntendam P, Padmanabhan S, Palmer CN, Pasko D, Patel AP, Pedersen O, Perola M, Peters A, Pisinger C, Pistis G, Polasek O, Poulter N, Psaty BM, Rader DJ, Rasheed A, Rauramaa R, Reilly DF, Reiner AP, Renstrom F, Rich SS, Ridker PM, Rioux JD, Robertson NR, Roden DM, Rotter JI, Rudan I, Salomaa V, Samani NJ, Sanna S, Sattar N, Schmidt EM, Scott RA, Sever P, Sevilla RS, Shaffer CM, Sim X, Sivapalaratnam S, Small KS, Smith AV, Smith BH, Somayajula S, Southam L, Spector TD, Speliotes EK, Starr JM, Stirrups KE, Stitziel N, Strauch K, Stringham HM, Surendran P, Tada H, Tall AR, Tang H, Tardif JC, Taylor KD, Trompet S, Tsao PS, Tuomilehto J, Tybjaerg-Hansen A, van Zuydam NR, Varbo A, Varga TV, Virtamo J, Waldenberger M, Wang N, Wareham NJ, Warren HR, Weeke PE, Weinstock J, Wessel J, Wilson JG, Wilson PW, Xu M, Yaghootkar H, Young R, Zeggini E, Zhang H, Zheng NS, Zhang W, Zhang Y, Zhou W, Zhou Y, Zoledziewska M, Charge Diabetes Working G, Consortium EP-I, Consortium E-C, Danesh J, McCarthy MI, Cowan CA, Abecasis G, Deloukas P, Musunuru K, Willer CJ, Kathiresan S (2017) Exome-wide association study of plasma lipids in >300,000 individuals. Nat Genet 49(12):1758–1766
113. Tcheandjieu C, et al (2021) A large-scale multi-ethnic genome-wide association study of coronary artery disease. Research Square
114. Jansen H, Samani NJ, Schunkert H (2014) Mendelian randomization studies in coronary artery disease. Eur Heart J 35(29):1917–1924
115. Jansen H, Lieb W, Schunkert H (2016) Mendelian randomization for the identification of causal pathways in atherosclerotic vascular disease. Cardiovasc Drugs Ther 30(1):41–49
116. Denny JC, Ritchie MD, Basford MA, Pulley JM, Bastarache L, Brown-Gentry K, Wang D, Masys DR, Roden DM, Crawford DC (2010) PheWAS: demonstrating the feasibility of a phenome-wide scan to discover gene-disease associations. Bioinformatics 26(9):1205–1210
117. Nikpay M, Mohammadzadeh S (2020) Phenome-wide screening for traits causally associated with the risk of coronary artery disease. J Hum Genet 65(4): 371–380
118. Franzen O, Ermel R, Cohain A, Akers NK, Di Narzo A, Talukdar HA, Foroughi-Asl H, Giambartolomei C, Fullard JF, Sukhavasi K, Koks S, Gan LM, Giannarelli C, Kovacic JC, Betsholtz C, Losic B, Michoel T, Hao K, Roussos P, Skogsberg J, Ruusalepp A, Schadt EE, Bjorkegren JL (2016) Cardiometabolic risk loci share downstream cis- and trans-gene regulation across tissues and diseases. Science 353(6301):827–830
119. Rau CD, Lusis AJ, Wang Y (2020) Systems genetics for mechanistic discovery in heart diseases. Circ Res 126(12):1795–1815
120. Porteus MH (2019) A new class of medicines through DNA editing. N Engl J Med 380(10):947–959
121. Kotterman MA, Schaffer DV (2014) Engineering adeno-associated viruses for clinical gene therapy. Nat Rev Genet 15(7):445–451
122. Samulski RJ, Muzyczka N (2014) AAV-mediated gene therapy for research and therapeutic purposes. Ann Rev Virol 1(1):427–451
123. Yan WX, Mirzazadeh R, Garnerone S, Scott D, Schneider MW, Kallas T, Custodio J, Wernersson E, Li Y, Gao L, Federova Y, Zetsche B, Zhang F, Bienko M, Crosetto N (2017) BLISS is a versatile and quantitative method for genome-wide profiling of DNA double-strand breaks. Nat Commun 8:15058
124. Tsai SQ, Zheng Z, Nguyen NT, Liebers M, Topkar VV, Thapar V, Wyvekens N, Khayter C, Iafrate AJ, Le LP, Aryee MJ, Joung JK (2015) GUIDE-seq

enables genome-wide profiling of off-target cleavage by CRISPR-Cas nucleases. Nat Biotechnol 33(2): 187–197

125. Wienert B, Wyman SK, Yeh CD, Conklin BR, Corn JE (2020) CRISPR off-target detection with DISCOVER-seq. Nat Protoc 15(5):1775–1799

126. Doudna JA (2020) The promise and challenge of therapeutic genome editing. Nature 578(7794): 229–236



Genome Editing to Abrogate Muscle Atrophy

Tingting Yang, Priyanka Gokulnath, Xinxiu Meng, Guoping Li, and Junjie Xiao

Abstract

Muscle atrophy is a multifactor syndrome, which not only decreases the patients' quality of life significantly but also increases the morbidity and mortality of patients with chronic diseases. At present, no effective clinical treatments for muscle atrophy except for exercise are available. The emerging field of genome editing is gaining momentum as it has shown great advantage in the treatment of various diseases, including muscle atrophy. In our current review, we systematically evaluate the etiology and related signaling pathways of muscle atrophy and discuss the application of genome editing in the treatment of muscle atrophy.

T. Yang · X. Meng
Institute of Geriatrics (Shanghai University), Affiliated Nantong Hospital of Shanghai University (The Sixth People's Hospital of Nantong), School of Medicine, Shanghai University, Nantong, China

Cardiac Regeneration and Ageing Lab, Institute of Cardiovascular Sciences, Shanghai Engineering Research Center of Organ Repair, School of Life Science, Shanghai University, Shanghai, China

P. Gokulnath · G. Li
Cardiovascular Division of the Massachusetts General Hospital and Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

J. Xiao (✉)
Institute of Cardiovascular Sciences, Shanghai Engineering Research Center of Organ Repair, School of Life Science, Shanghai University, Shanghai, China
e-mail: junjiexiao@shu.edu.cn

Keywords

Muscle atrophy · Treatment · Genome editing

1 Background

Skeletal muscle is important for body's support, movement, energy consumption, and metabolism [1]. Muscles are the body's largest repository of protein and the source of amino acids [2]. These proteins stay in a dynamic equilibrium during normal physiological conditions, wherein the protein synthesis ratio is equal to that of protein degradation. However, if the protein degradation rate is over that of the synthesis in the skeletal muscle, muscle atrophy happens. Muscle atrophy not only affects the prognosis of patients but also causes a variety of complications [3]. In addition, a massive loss of muscle mass will compromise the efficacy of various different therapeutic interventions [4], which by itself is a poor prognostic indicator. Therefore, maintaining healthy muscles is critical in preventing against metabolic disorders and provide energy to vital organs [5].

The economic burden of muscle atrophy on individuals and the society is enormous. It is urgent to find effective methods of intervention for muscle atrophy. Currently, exercise therapy and nutritional therapy are considered to be good treatment methods for muscle atrophy.

Exercise therapy can not only increase mitochondria and capillary numbers and repair

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023
J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_11

the structure of mitochondria in muscle fibers but also increase muscle fiber numbers and improve the exercise ability of patients [6]. In elderly patients with sarcopenia, exercise training can increase the mitochondrial density by 40% [7]. Moreover, it was observed that exercise therapy increased the mitochondrial function while producing more ATP and antioxidant enzymes [8]. But as patients can no longer cope up with their exercise due to the aggravation of their disease, any efforts in this direction will be counterproductive. Therefore, new treatments for muscle atrophy are urgently needed.

Nutrition uptake done through eating is considered to be an effective way to maintain the muscle by providing sufficient energy for muscle activity. This not only increases muscle calories and amino acid intake but also improves muscle protein synthesis [9]. Increasingly, studies have shown that nutritional therapy has a greater impact on the treatment of muscle atrophy in the elderly population [10]. At present, there are several ongoing clinical trials demonstrating the feasibility of nutritional therapy with respect to muscular atrophy, mainly because of its ability to improve the overall quality of life and more importantly to prolong life [11]. However, nutritional treatments are only effective for patients with early muscle atrophy and are still ineffective in patients with severe muscle atrophy.

In recent years, the technology of genome editing has attracted the attention of most scientists in the translational therapy, primarily because this technology allows researchers to better understand the relationship between genetic mutations and their consequent diseases in human and also identify therapeutic methods to successful intervention. Due to the development of genetic engineering in the 1970s, genome editing became more practically promising [4]. Consequently, there has been a rapid progress in developing various methods of genome editing that has shown extraordinary practicality in several fields [4]. Genome editing has been demonstrated to be an effective gene editing tool both in vivo and in vitro, by precisely targeting genes that can successfully alleviate any disease [12, 13]. Some of these techniques thoroughly investigated by researchers are meganucleases, zinc finger nucleases (ZFN), transcriptional activation-like effector nucleases (TALENs), and clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats/associated related nuclease (CRISPR/CAS), all of which has greatly promoted the development of genome editing from proof of concept to successful application in the clinic [14].

2 Muscle Atrophy

Muscle atrophy is a multifactorial syndrome, which occurs in aging and several other debilitating diseases [15]. Muscle atrophy always leads to protein loss, resulting in the reduction of muscle weight, muscle fiber, and muscle strength and eventually leading to muscle dysfunction [16]. Patients with muscle atrophy cannot perform normal activities and have higher incidence rates of other diseases, bringing about a heavy burden to the family and society [17]. Muscle atrophy is the result of various physiological and pathological conditions, such as aging, sedentary lifestyle, physical nerve injury, fasting, chronic heart failure, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), kidney failure, and tumor cachexia [18]. In this review, we will focus on the etiology of muscle atrophy induced by physiological and pathological conditions.

2.1 Aging

Due to the persistent metabolic changes that occur during aging, skeletal muscles suffer from a gradual loss of muscle mass and function and eventually lead to muscle atrophy [19]. Epidemiological studies show that starting from the age of 40 years, there is a gradual loss of the skeletal muscle mass at the rate of 1–2% per year [20]. The incidence of senile muscle atrophy was 15% in people over 60 years old and about 30–40% in people around 80 years old [21]. In addition, muscle atrophy caused by aging increases the risk of falls and fractures, which can further endanger the health of older people [7].

The mechanism of muscle atrophy caused by aging is still not fully understood. No effective drugs are available to prevent either the loss of muscle weight or the progressive deterioration of muscle function during aging. Physical activity is the only way to slow down the muscle loss caused by aging [22]. A variety of factors may induce muscle atrophy during aging, classified as (1) internal factors including mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress, hormone imbalance, and inflammation and (2) external factors such as reduced physical activity and malnutrition [23].

Mitochondrial dysfunction is one of the main reasons of muscle atrophy as seen in aging [24]. Mitochondrial dysfunction caused by oxidative damage of mitochondrial DNA is the core mechanism driving the aging processing as proposed in the mitochondrial free radical aging theory [25]. The lack of introns in the mitochondrial genome leads to its low repair capacity, which makes it possible for each mutation to affect the integrity of the gene, thus affecting the function of its protein and subsequently leading to muscle atrophy [24].

Oxidative stress, which occurs in pathological conditions, is usually featured by increased reactive oxygen species (ROS) production. This is considered to be the main cause of excessive protein degradation in muscle atrophy [26, 27]. Skeletal muscle balances the antioxidant mechanism by continuously producing oxidative species such as ROS and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) [27]. Sustained production of ROS could lead to oxidative damage and tissue damage. ROS also inhibits the action of insulin [26]. Additionally, increasing evidences show that oxidative stress can accelerate muscle protein breakdown in multiple ways described as follows. Firstly, it activates both the autophagy pathway and the ubiquitin-proteasome system, which individually promote protein breakdown. Secondly, it activates calpain and caspase-3. Thirdly, ROS produced by the myofibroblast during its oxidative modification accelerates the hydrolysis of protein, thereby enhancing the sensitivity of muscle fibers to proteolysis processing [26].

Hormones have a tremendous effect on the growth, differentiation, and metabolism of the skeletal muscle. They are further required to regulate the normal metabolic activities of the skeletal muscle [28]. In fact, there have been reports suggesting that the imbalance of hormone secretion in aging skeletal muscles can affect the activity of insulin which subsequently leads to muscle loss [29].

Inflammation is another important mechanism contributing toward muscle atrophy caused by aging and an important pathogenic factor bringing about skeletal muscle dysfunction. It has been observed to disrupt muscle homeostasis by activating the FOXO transcription factor family, thus worsening muscle atrophy [30]. Systemic inflammation also causes muscle atrophy. Studies have shown that the inflammatory cytokine interleukin 1β (IL-1β) triggers a cascade of catabolic processes in muscles that accelerate and induce muscle atrophy [31].

2.2 Nerve Injury

Muscle atrophy is a common symptom of peripheral nerve injury. Neuronal disorders lead to muscle atrophy and muscle fibrosis [32]. Muscle atrophy caused by nerve injury is usually devastating and incurable [33]. Denervation-induced muscle atrophy is mainly seen in patients who have undergone trauma, childbirth, and improper exercise caused by nerve injury, slowing initiating sensory and functional impairment of the innervated area accompanied by progressive muscle atrophy [34]. With the rapid advancements in the field of surgical technology, the treatment for neuronal muscular atrophy has made great progress. While nerve repair and autologous nerve transplantation is the standard operation for the treatment of peripheral nerve injury, few patients can still undergo complete recovery of their sensory and motor function after the operation. Therefore, each patient shows different degrees of muscle atrophy with clinical efficacy not being ideal in many cases [35].

Muscle atrophy caused by nerve injury can degrade, disarrange, and shrink the motor endplate [9]. The maintenance of structure and function of the motor endplate depend on normal nerve innervation and electrical activity [36]. As the axon regeneration process takes a

considerable amount of time, there will be scar adhesion and fibrosis after the nerve injury [35]. Limb immobilization gradually degenerates the motor endplate, and it becomes very difficult to reconstruct the nerve-muscle joint [37]. Due to the degeneration of the motor endplate, there is a reduction in the connection between nerves and muscles, and consequently muscle cells lose neuronal nutrition leading to their atrophy [38].

Depletion of skeletal muscle satellite cells is also a key factor involved in muscle atrophy. Skeletal muscle satellite cells (MSCs) have the ability of self-replication and differentiate into mature muscle cells, which determines the normal development, regeneration, and repair function of the skeletal muscle [39]. Therefore, changes in the number of MSC have an impact on the structure, morphology, and function of skeletal muscles [40]. Some studies have found that the number of MSC increases significantly in the first two months of denervation, which may be related to skeletal muscle compensation [41]. Therefore, some of the reasons for muscular atrophy involving MSCs are the death of MSC without regenerative replacement after long-term denervation, and the rate of MSC differentiation is greater than the rate of proliferation because the maintenance of MSC proliferation depends on the muscle activity under innervation [42]. Besides, the muscle tube structures differentiated under denervation do not develop into mature muscle fibers except for nerve reinnervation [43]. This repeated formation of non-innervated muscle tubes also causes MSC depletion, and the reduced number of MSC will eventually lead to skeletal muscle atrophy and regeneration disorders [44].

The process of nerve injury in skeletal muscles can lead to changes in protein metabolism and enzyme activity [45]. After denervation, muscle contraction disorders occur, including reduction of volume, decrease of muscle fiber cross-sectional area and wet muscle weight, increase of myoglobin decomposition, and enhancement of K^+- Na^+-ATPase muscle calcium activity. In addition, due to previously mentioned changes, there is an increase in the fibrillation potential that could accelerate the speed of muscle contraction and promote muscle cell necrosis and even fibrosis [46]. The low gene expressions of key enzymes involved in sugar, fat, and protein metabolism in the skeletal muscle after denervation suggest that the energy metabolism of muscle cells is compromised after denervation [47]. Among them, the low expression of phosphofructokinase Iα, branched amino acid transferase, long-chain fatty acid coenzyme A synthase, and ATP synthase has been observed and reported in skeletal muscle atrophy [46]. These under-expressed key enzymes severely limit the energy supply of skeletal muscles and accelerate muscle atrophy.

Apoptotic protein synthesis and myogenic factor secretion also contribute to muscle atrophy caused by nerve injury [48]. After denervation, an increasing number of innervated muscle nuclei undergo apoptosis, and eventually these muscle cells can no longer maintain their number, shape, and function. Progressively, the number of muscle apoptosis continues to increase, and muscle atrophy occurs [49]. Fas is the main component of the apoptotic pathway observed in the denervation of muscle cells [50]. Often, there is a change in the expression of certain apoptotic genes in the atrophic skeletal muscle, such as Bcl-2 protein, which can inhibit apoptosis and is under-expressed in muscle atrophy [51]. Caspase-3 is a major member of the Fas apoptotic pathway that is quite downstream, and activation of Caspase-3 triggers the apoptotic process [52].

It has been observed that skeletal muscle development and repair defects occur in mice with MyoD and Myf-5 gene knockout [53]. The expression of Myogenin can activate the synthesis of skeletal muscle contractile proteins that are key factors required for skeletal muscle reinnervation after denervation [54]. The level of Myogenin expression determines the ability to undergo nerve reinnervation. Therefore, the role of Myogenin in denervation of the skeletal muscle should be further investigated for its specific role in this process.

The underlying mechanism of muscle atrophy induced by denervation is very complicated. Therefore, investigating key targets which can delay the occurrence of muscle atrophy is important. The need of the hour is to find the upstream

players that trigger muscle atrophy, so as to explore interventional therapeutic options for muscle atrophy induced by denervation.

2.3 Immobilization

Skeletal muscle atrophy occurs when in disuse. The skeletal muscle can quickly adapt to the changes of the external environment, showing corresponding hypertrophy under the action of strong mechanical force and muscle atrophy under the disused state [55]. While the common causes of skeletal muscle atrophy are immobilization and weightlessness, they are important methods in the treatment of the bone and arthropathy [56]. The treatment of many diseases also requires the patient to stay in bed for a long time, and the resulting skeletal muscle disuse-induced atrophy will seriously affect the treatment of the disease and the patient's functional recovery [57]. With respect to skeletal muscle disuse atrophy, many researchers have been discussing the possible ways to prevent and relieve muscle atrophy quickly and restore motor ability.

During the state of disuse, the number of type I slow muscle fiber decreases, while the number of type II fast muscle fiber and mixed fibers increase; however, the number of muscle fiber remained unchanged, while only the number of types I to type II changes [56]. Moreover, there is also nuclear degeneration and nuclear membrane invagination along with lots of lysosomes produced and surrounded by dense matter [55]. The long-term disuse more often increases muscle glycogen consumption and reduces the oxidative capacity of long-chain fatty acids, consistent with decrease in acetyl-CoA dehydrogenase activity in muscles (a key enzyme for fatty acid metabolism) after bed rest [58].

Calpain is also associated with disuse muscle atrophy. Since ubiquitin-proteasome pathway (UPP) cannot degrade intact myofibrils during proteolysis, it first activates calpain to degrade membrane-skeleton proteins that causes myofibrils to fall off the cytoskeleton, thus completing protein degradation [59]. Thus, calpain can be considered as the promoter of skeletal muscle protein degradation in a disused state [60]. When skeletal muscle atrophy occurs, the intracellular calcium levels increase significantly, which in turn promotes the transfer and activation of calpain to the cell membrane, releasing the active catalytic subunit, initiating the degradation of cytoskeletal proteins [61].

Oxidative stress is enhanced under disuse and many pathological conditions and is considered to be the main trigger for the imbalance of protein homeostasis in muscle atrophy [62]. At the beginning of disuse (such as paralysis and fracture), due to the effect of oxidative stress, reactive oxygen species and free radicals produced in the body can greatly oxidize the unsaturated fatty acids in the membrane and form lipid peroxide, thus destroying the normal function of the membrane system, resulting in mitochondrial swelling and enhanced lysosomal membrane permeability [63]. Mitochondrial dysfunction leads to oxidative phosphorylation disorders and insufficient energy production, resulting in reduced protein synthesis [64]. The destruction of the lysosome membrane releases various hydrolases and intensifies protein decomposition. These processes work together to reduce the net content of muscle protein, resulting in muscle atrophy [65].

2.4 Fasting

In the absence of adequate nutrient supply, skeletal muscles undergo degeneration to maintain the normal bodily functions. Thus, muscle wasting has always been observed in fasting [66]. Unlike other types of muscle atrophy, degraded proteins are the source of essential amino acids required for gluconeogenesis during fasting [19]. In addition, the changes in insulin growth factor and glucocorticoid levels caused by fasting also affect the normal activity of the skeletal muscle, which cause disorganization in skeletal muscle metabolism and protein degradation [67].

2.5 Chronic Heart Failure

Heart failure imposes a severe social burden. Muscle atrophy occurred in 30–50% of the patients mainly caused by the elevation of Ang II [68]. Muscle atrophy caused by heart failure seriously affects patient prognosis [69].

The mechanism of impaired skeletal muscle function in heart failure involves several pathophysiological aspects such as energy metabolism, neuroendocrine, and gene expression abnormalities [70]. The primary causes for this condition can be summarized as follows. The energy supply mode has undergone a change, wherein glycolysis is the main energy supply mode of skeletal muscles in heart failure, leading to the reduction of type I fibers [71]. Disturbance of neurohumoral factors, leading to enhancement of sympathetic nerve excitability, and activation of renin-angiotensin system not only cause heart failure but also contribute toward impaired skeletal muscle function, cell apoptosis, and abnormal myosin expression, all of which directly affect skeletal muscle function [72]. Calcium overload and change of calcium pump activity also cause attenuation of skeletal muscle excitability, affecting local tissue sodium-potassium pump activity, and consequently trigger skeletal muscle oxidative phosphorylation dysfunction [73]. These factors interact with each other to form a complex regulatory system, and the gradual accumulation of abnormal components brings about vascular endothelial dysfunction, blood perfusion insufficiency, cell death, and muscle atrophy in the skeletal muscle, ultimately leading to the aggravation of heart failure, and further causes poorer patient prognosis [74].

The renin-angiotensin system (RAS) is an essential regulatory system in the regulation of skeletal muscle function. Angiotensin (Ang II) is the major effector of RAS, which maintains the balance of sodium ions and water in the body by regulating the central nervous system, adrenal, vascular system, and kidney [75]. Additionally, Ang II plays an important role in muscle function regulation in certain diseases, such as Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD) [76]. The effects of Ang II on skeletal muscle injury are mainly reflected by the changes in enzyme activity and cellular oxidative activity, ultimately causing muscle weight loss [77]. Furthermore, Ang II could also indirectly trigger muscle protein loss via inflammatory mechanisms. This is because Ang II mediates the catabolism of inflammatory response in damaged muscles by suppressing insulin /IGF-1 signaling pathway [78]. This triggers a series of changes eventually leading to muscle atrophy. Many similar pathological conditions can lead to muscle atrophy, such as chronic kidney disease and chronic diabetes. These pathological conditions causing muscle atrophy can stimulate the RAS system and promote the increase of Ang II circulation in the body.

2.6 Cachexia

Cachexia is characterized by progressive muscle atrophy that cannot be rescued by additional nutritional support. Cachexia occurs in 50% of malignancies and accounts for 20–40% of deaths in patients with malignancies [79]. The mechanism and consequences of skeletal muscle atrophy induced by cachexia are extremely different from those induced by stress and fasting.

Cachexia is a complex metabolic state with complications such as weight loss and muscle atrophy caused by loss of muscle strength [80]. The decrease of protein content is caused by insufficient nutrient transport and abnormal protein apoptosis or autophagy [81]. Protein degradation pathways include ubiquitin-proteasome pathway and autophagy-lysosome pathway.

The pathophysiology of cachexia is characterized by severe deterioration of body functions and organs due to inadequate food intake and metabolic abnormalities, including energy expenditure, excessive catabolism, and inflammation [82]. A large number of literature show that multiple organs are usually involved in the development of cachexia-induced skeletal muscle loss in patients with advanced stages of cancer, including the central nervous system

regulation, white adipose tissue loss, pancreatic dysfunction, and hepatic metabolism imbalance [83].

3 Protein Synthesis and Degradation in Muscle Atrophy

Muscle atrophy is mainly caused by the imbalance between protein synthesis and degradation. The two main protein degradation systems that play a crucial role in muscle atrophy are ubiquitin-proteasome system and autophagy-lysosome system.

3.1 The Ubiquitin-Proteasome System

Ubiquitin-proteasome system (UPS) is activated under several conditions. The classic degradation system requires many enzymes: activating enzymes (E1), conjugating enzymes (E2), and ligating enzymes (E3) [84]. Briefly, ubiquitin links to E1 ubiquitin activator enzyme through a covalent bond and is then transported to E2 ubiquitin binding enzyme. With the help of E3 ubiquitin ligase, the lysine residues are transported to lysosome, and finally the protein labeled with ubiquitin is degraded. As a protein degradation system, the main role of the ubiquitin-proteasome pathway is to degrade intracellular ubiquitinylated proteins [85]. Atrogin-1 and MuRF-1 are considered to be the most important E3 ubiquitin ligases in muscle atrophy, which are observed to be increased in many muscle atrophy models [86].

Some other E3 ligases are also involved in the muscle degradation pathway. TRIM32 has been reported to be another important E3 ligase that degrades thin muscle filaments (such as actin, tropomyosin, and troponins) [87]. TRAF6 is also a member of the E3 ligase family that plays an effective role in mediating the degradation of target proteins in muscle atrophy [87].

ChIP is a ligase of specific ubiquitination of filament C and mediates ubiquitination by causing lysosomal degradation of filament C. Filament protein is an important protein that undergoes folding and unfolding cycles when contact with muscle, and its loss can cause serious muscle injury. Changes in the structure of silk fibroin will cause the chaperone BAG3 composed of HSC70 and HSPB8 to bind to it. Chaperone BAG3 also includes the ubiquitin ligase ChIP [88].

USP14 and USP19 have also been related to muscle atrophy. In addition, many studies have found that E3 ligase is involved in the ubiquitination and decomposition of several muscle proteins, but the exact process and mechanism are still unclear.

3.2 The Autophagy-Lysosome System

The autophagy-lysosome system is another process to carry out protein degradation. This process includes the formation of autophagosome with a bilayer membrane, fusion of the autophagosome and lysosome to form autophagolysosome, breakdown of intima structure after protein hydrolysis in autophagosome, and the contents into material circulation.

Autophagy is also called a nonselective degradation pathway. Early evidence suggests that autophagy not only plays an essential role in maintaining homeostasis in different conditions but also in the transformation of cellular components [89]. Three types of autophagy have been reported in mammals: macro-autophagy, chaperon-mediated autophagy, and micro-autophagy. Currently, most studies on the role of autophagy in muscles are associated with macro-autophagy [90]. Although the micro-autophagy in the skeletal muscle still undetermined, some studies have suggested that when macro-autophagy is blocked, micro-autophagy may be involved in lysosomal glycogen uptake [91].

Current studies have found that the expression of LC3 protein is increased during autophagy while the expression of p62 protein is suppressed. Autophagy is involved in many muscle atrophy

processes [92]. Autophagy participates in the process of muscle fiber atrophy induced by FoxO3 overexpression. Knockdown of the protein LC3 can partially prevent FoxO3-mediated muscle atrophy and superoxide dismutase-induced muscle atrophy [93, 94].

Mitophagy is another type of autophagy that occurs during muscle atrophy. In mammals, Parkin, PINK1, and BNIP3 have all been shown to modulate mitophagy and lead to mitochondrial dysfunction [95]. PINK1 recruits Parkin to the mitochondria, where Parkin recognizes mitochondrial outer membrane proteins via p62 and ubiquitinates outer membrane proteins to enable autophagic vesicles to enter the ubiquitinated mitochondria [96]. It has been reported that NIP3 and BNIP3L can bind directly to LC3 and continuously recruit autophagosomes into mitochondria.

4 Molecular Pathways Underlying Muscle Atrophy

4.1 IGF1-Akt-FoxO Pathway

Insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF1) is a circulating growth factor secreted by many tissues, including skeletal muscles. IGF1-PI3K-Akt is an important signaling pathway that regulates both protein synthesis and degradation during muscle growth [97]. The IGF1-PI3K-Akt pathway is inhibited by metabolic signals during muscle atrophy. Muscle atrophy leads to a decrease in the phosphorylation levels of GSK3β, FOXO, and mTOR downstream of Akt, thus promoting the degradation of proteins and inhibiting the synthesis of proteins [98]. Also, the inhibition of IGF1-PI3K-Akt-mTOR and IGF1-PI3K-Akt-FOXO pathways can activate the autophagy-lysosome system [89].

Akt pathway promotes muscle growth, and this is further demonstrated in Akt transgenic mice wherein Akt promotes muscle hypertrophy and protects against muscle atrophy induced by denervation [99]. Akt can control protein synthesis through mTOR and FOXO transcription factor. mTOR, a rapamycin complex, is a key kinase downstream of insulin and is associated with cell growth. Akt inhibits Atrogin-1, MuRF-1, and other autophagy-related genes by negatively regulating FOXO transcription factor [100]. Akt phosphorylates FOXO protein, facilitating its transportation from the nucleus to the cytoplasm. The muscle mass of FOXO1 transgenic mice is significantly decreased and fiber atrophy increased, which further prove that FOXO protein can promote muscle atrophy [101].

4.2 NF-κB Pathway

High production of inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-6 and TNF-α, is an important pathological feature of muscle atrophy. TNF-α and other inflammatory factors can activate NF-κB, which leads to the increase of MuRF-1 and promotes muscle atrophy [102]. The NF-κB is a transcriptional regulator and plays an important role in the regulation of immune and inflammatory cytokines. It is also expressed in the skeletal muscle and can regulate the role of inflammatory cytokines in muscle atrophy and dysplasia, especially TNF-α. In inactivating state, NF-κB is inhibited by IκB [103]. In response to TNF-α, IKK complex triggers IκB phosphorylation, which causes ubiquitination and proteasome degradation, and activates NF-κB-regulated gene transcription, leading to muscle atrophy. In transgenic mice, muscle-specific overexpression of IKKβ resulted in severe muscle atrophy by promoting MuRF-1, not Atrogin-1 [102]. Moreover, IL-6 can activate the JAK/STAT3 pathway, thereby inhibiting the IGFR1 pathway, inhibiting muscle growth, and promoting muscle atrophy [104].

4.3 Myostatin Pathway

Myostatin is a protein that inhibits muscle growth. Myostatin is a member of the TGF-β superfamily and has been reported to be involved in muscle growth and atrophy. While on one hand, myostatin promotes muscle atrophy through the myostatin-Actriib-ALK4/ALK5-

Smad2/3 pathway, BMP pathway, and myostatin-Smad-Akt pathway[105], on the other hand, myostatin can inhibit the activation of satellite cells and the proliferation and differentiation of myoblasts through a variety of ways, thus inhibiting muscle growth and promoting muscle atrophy [106].

4.4 β2-Adrenoceptor Pathway

The β2-adrenoceptor is inhibited in the metabolic environment of muscle atrophy. Inhibition of β2-adrenoceptor can further inhibit the PI3K/Akt signaling pathway and promote the activation of the FOXO family, thereby promoting the expression of MuRF-1 and atrogin1 [107]. It can also increase the activity of 26S proteasome and promote the occurrence of muscle atrophy [108]. Like myostatin pathway, the β2-adrenoceptor pathway can regulate muscle atrophy in two different ways.

5 Genome Editing in Muscle Atrophy

5.1 Genome Editing

Correcting aberrant molecules is considered to be an effective therapeutic approach for diseases. Consequently, genome editing emerged as a practical methodology for such an approach. Genome editing, which involves precise manipulation of target genes in the genome of organisms, has shown to have some potential in curing certain diseases. By inserting foreign genetic material, correcting mutations, and replacing the aberrant gene, genome editing can cure the disease by acting at a molecular level [14]. Engineered nucleases are some of the leading tools for genome editing, also known as "molecular scissors," which can produce site-specific double-stranded break (DSB) at a specific location in the genome [109]. With the help of a series of engineered nucleases, it has been possible to perform very effective targeted genome editing and thereby open to newer possibilities of genetic research, so that progress can be made in gene therapy and overall genetic improvement [110].

Genome editing includes the usage of homologous recombination of DNA and nucleases. Homologous recombination is one of the earliest techniques used to edit cell genomes [111]. Homologous recombination is the process of synthesizing DNA fragments using a homologous arm of the genome to be edited. The appropriate mutation rectifying fragments can be injected into the recipient cells, and then these recombine with DNA to replace the part of the genome containing the target [112]. The disadvantage of this method is its low efficiency and high error rate [113]. The key process of nuclease gene editing technology is to create double-stranded breaks (DSB) at the specific genomic locus. Restriction endonucleases can recognize and cleave DNA efficiently at multiple sites; however, the low specificity of classic restriction endonucleases limits the widespread use in genomic editing [114]. In order to overcome this problem, four different types of editing system emerged which are meganuclease, ZFNs, TALEN, and CRISPR/Cas9 system [115]. These four different types of gene editing systems could be applied for the treatment of muscle atrophy (Fig. 1).

5.1.1 Meganuclease

Meganuclease is a deoxyribonuclease characterized by its large recognition site, which can recognize 12–40 base pairs of double-stranded DNA sequences. Meganuclease is the most specific naturally occurring nuclease [116].

5.1.2 Zinc Finger Nuclease (ZFN)

Zinc finger nuclease is an artificially modified nuclease, which is produced by fusing the zinc finger DNA binding domain and DNA cutting domain of the nuclease. By designing zinc finger domains, specific DNA sequences of target genes can be recognized, which enables this nuclease to locate unique targeting sequences within complex genomes. By utilizing endogenous DNA repair mechanisms, zinc finger nuclease can be used to precisely modify the genomes [117].

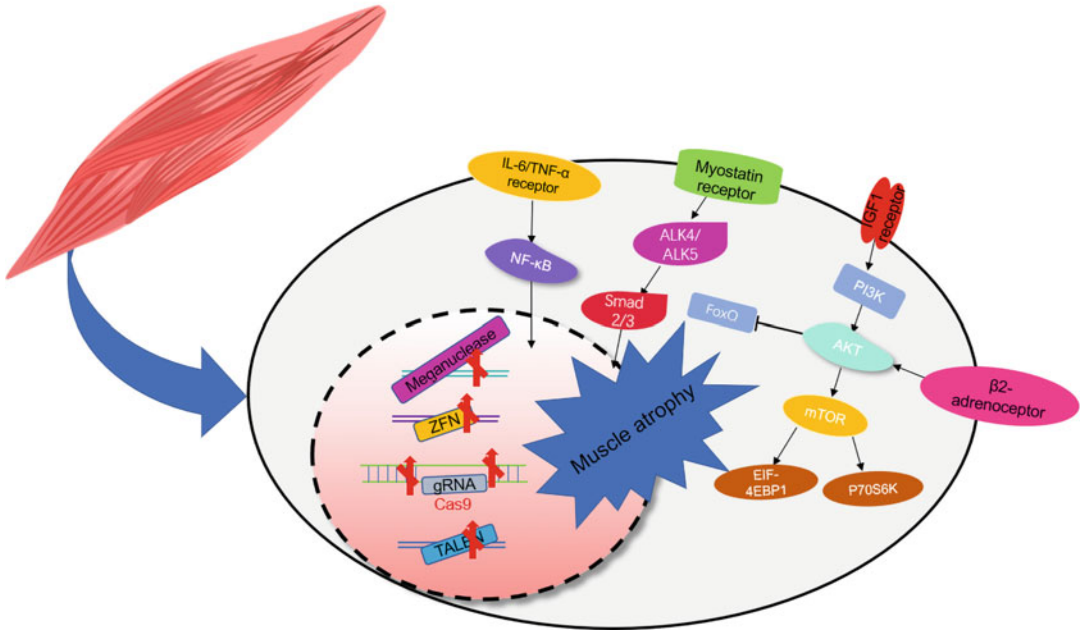


Fig. 1 Genome editing technology for muscle atrophy treatment

5.1.3 Transcriptional Activation-Like Effector Nuclease (TALEN)

TALEN is a restricted enzyme that has been genetically engineered to cut specific DNA sequences. TALEN is obtained by fusing a TAL effector DNA binding domain with a DNA cleavage domain of the nuclease. As TALEN can cut DNA at a specific position when combined with nuclease, it can be designed to bind almost any desired DNA sequence [118].

5.1.4 CRISPR/Cas9 System

CRISPR/Cas9 system is the most widely used gene editing tool. The CRISPR/Cas9 system was originally thought to be an adaptive immune system in bacteria and was later found to edit DNA in mammalian cells [119]. The CRISPR system consists of Cas9 and a directing single-guide RNA molecule (sgRNA), known as transactive RNA. Cas9 binds to sgRNA and recognizes the target DNA sequence via a programmable 20bp sequence located at the 5 'end of sgRNA [120]. There are a number of Cas9 nuclease options available, depending upon the target gene requirement.

CRISPR/Cas9 system has been used for precise genome modification, including targeted gene knock in, simultaneous mutations at two sites, and deletion of small fragments. Because of its high mutation-inducing efficiency, simple fabrication, and low cost, it has been used as a tool for targeted modification of genomes [121]. It has been successfully used to treat a variety of diseases.

CRISPR-Cas9 can edit muscle dystrophy-related genes through nonhomologous connections and homologous recombination repair pathways. Nonhomologous non-ended connection is highly efficient and can be used for splicing within any gene position. Homologous recombination repair is less efficient, but it can achieve accurate gene repair [122]. The CRISPR-Cas9 technology is now widely used in the study of muscle dystrophy-related diseases, which have been successfully studied in the laboratory. One of them has been approved by the FDA (Food and Drug Administration) and is ready for its application in the clinic.

The CRISPR-/Cas9-mediated in vitro editing has shown positive effect on the hematopoietic system [123]. In theory, genome editing could be

useful in the skeletal muscle system in vitro because satellite cells as skeletal muscle adult stem cells can be manipulated. Though the application of this approach can improve local muscle function, the recovery of whole-body muscle function still needs further research [124]. Genome editing in vivo is an effective way to permanently correct the genetic mutations that cause muscle atrophy. However, an efficient delivery system is needed for genome editing to be performed in vivo. In addition to the well-known viral vector delivery systems, physical or chemical delivery methods are also effective methods for delivering, such as delivering the CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing components to target cells using microinjection and electroporation techniques [125].

5.2 Application of Genome Editing in Muscle Atrophy

In recent years, genome editing methods for the treatment of muscle atrophy have gradually come into practice. One of the gene therapy methods, exon hopping, has shown broad applications [126]. In the case of Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD), transcoding mutations in DMD can be modified to non-transcoding mutations in DMD by using exons near the artificial RNA antisense oligonucleotide jump deletion gene [127]. The phase II clinical trial of exon 51 jumps, an international multicenter collaboration, has been nearly completed, demonstrating the expression of anti-muscle dystrophy protein in the skeletal muscle of DMD patients and even improved 6-min walking distance without serious adverse effects [128]. Clinical trials of exon 44, 45, and 53 jumps are also underway. Antisense oligonucleotides (RNA drugs) do not alter the DNA of a person's genes in contrast to the way other genome editing methods alter the DNA. This is important especially to avoid the risk of the treatment being passed on to the next generation or spread among the population [129]. And since it belongs to the category of small molecule drugs, immune rejection is minimum. However, as it works on pre-mRNA rather than DNA-level editing, it needs to be administered for life and can target only at specific gene types [128].

CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing technology edits genes through nonhomologous unconnected and homologous recombination repair pathways. While nonhomologous terminal splicing can be used for splicing at any gene location, homologous recombination repair though less efficient can complete accurate gene repair [130]. For example, nonhomologous unconnected exons can be used for exon hopping therapy in DMD, with excision of one or more exons at will, and repair of dynamic mutations in intron or 3′UTR terminal and can be used to treat amyotrophic lateral sclerosis or frontotemporal dementia caused by C9orf72, as well as tension muscle atrophy type I [131]. Homologous recombination repair can theoretically treat any genetically inherited disease at the DNA level. For example, modification of the T base to C in the initiation region of exon 7 in survival motor neuron 2 (SMN2) gene can express relatively sufficient SMN protein to treat spinal muscular atrophy (SMA), and this has been approved by FDA for clinical application [130].

Systemic delivery of AAV has been effectively utilized in the treatment of SMA [132]. In 2017, 15 infants aged 1–8 months received intravenous AAV9 for the treatment of this disease with good clinical results. SMA is an infant motor dysfunction caused by deletion or mutation of the SMN1gene. Of the four subtypes of the disease, type 1 SMA is one of the most common genetic causes of infant death. In March 2019, Zolgensma—a gene therapy based on this study—was approved by the FDA as a result of the infants' survival at 20 months along with significant clinical benefits.

miR-29b is a common regulator that we identified in many types of muscle atrophy [133]. As exercise is an effective treatment for muscle atrophy [134], we further found that exercise training can attenuate muscle atrophy induced by angiotensin II through downregulation of miR-29b [135]. Recently, we reported a CRISPR-/Cas9-mediated miR-29b editing by targets of the biogenesis processing

sites in pre-miR-29b. In mice, this CRISPR-/Cas9-mediated miR-29b editing can effectively prevent Ang II, immobilization, and denervation-induced muscle atrophy. However, large animal studies are required to further pave its application in the clinic [136].

6 Developing Approaches for Muscle Atrophy

Gene therapy is mainly composed of three main components—gene of interest, vector to carry the gene-modifying component, and target cells. There are two types of target cells: somatic cells and germ cells [126]. The genetic modification of germ cells such as sperm, egg, and zygote as target cells is restricted due to ethical concerns, so it is not possible to progress in this regard. Somatic cells are easy to obtain and have a variety of sources. Even certain somatic cells that are not easy to collect, such as nerve cells, retinal cells, liver cells, and muscle cells, can be used in in vivo targeted gene therapy [137]. Therefore, somatic gene therapy was able to develop rapidly in recent years.

The key to the success of gene therapy is how to safely and effectively introduce foreign genes into cells in vitro or tissues in vivo, which is also a major bottleneck faced currently in this field [138]. Therefore, the selection of appropriate delivery tools is essential and an important deciding factor for the safe and effective implementation of gene therapy. Vectors that are currently widely used are divided into two broad categories—viral vectors and nonviral vectors.

Viruses are the smallest and simplest living parasites with no cellular structure. Because of their very high infectability in human cells and their simple molecular mechanism for delivering the genetic material successfully into cells, viral vectors are more preferred to be efficient delivery vectors than the nonviral ones. Due to this, about 70% of gene therapy regimens use viral vectors for gene delivery [139]. However, as most viruses are pathogenic, their genomes must be engineered such that they retain only their functional components required for DNA integration while eliminating the unnecessary pathogenic components from the original viral genome [140]. At present, the most common viral vectors are retroviruses, lentiviruses, adenoviruses, and adeno-associated viruses.

Retrovirus is a type of virus with plus-stranded RNA as its genetic material and synthesizes the complementary DNA strand by reverse transcription in the infected cells. The complementary DNA is randomly integrated into the host cell genome and can be expressed stably for a long time [141]. While the retroviral infection efficiency is high, its toxicity is low, and since the infected cells do not produce any pathological changes, long-term expression of the target gene stable cell line can be established. But at the same time, as the retrovirus can only infect divided cells, the viral integration may accidentally activate oncogenes or insert mutations, posing a certain risk of cancer [142]. Lentiviruses, another type of retroviruses, have larger volumes and can carry larger and more complex genome sequences. While lentiviral vectors also have the ability to integrate transgenes into the host genome for stable long-term expression of products, they pose a similar risk as adenoviral vectors due to the semi-random integration of the genetic material that could potentially lead to the introduction of hazardous mutations [143]. Adenoviruses are double-stranded non-enveloped nonintegrated DNA viruses, suitable to infect almost all cell lines and primary cells, and can also mediate gene delivery in various tissues, such as the liver, lung, brain, blood vessel, and nervous system [144]. However, it takes multiple infections to achieve repair, and repeated treatment can lead to an increased immune response, which not only affects gene expression but also the effectiveness of gene therapy. Adeno-associated virus (ADV) is one of the most widely used viral vectors [145]. ADV causes no pathogenicity to the host and has long-term stable expression in a variety of tissues and cells. Recombinant adeno-associated virus (rAAV) vectors used in gene therapy, after their introduction into the host with recombinant genes, can cause a stable expression of functional proteins in the host cells [146]. This genetic

vector has several advantages such as high biosafety level, wide host range, long expression time, and low immunogenicity making AAV a more sought-after vector for its application in gene therapy.

Many viral vectors have been used for genomic therapeutic delivery, such as lentiviruses, retroviruses, poxviruses, adenoviruses, adeno-associated viruses, and baculoviruses [147]. Among them, adeno-associated virus AAV can successfully deliver genome editing components directly to the muscle tissue. AAV is a non-enveloped DNA virus with two major ORFs that have been successfully used in genome editing delivery systems [148]. Because AAV is not pathogenic either in humans or animals, it is considered a safe delivery system for genome editing [149]. In addition, AAV-mediated CRISPR/Cas9 has been reported to have a favorable therapeutic effect in in vivo genome editing [150]. Therefore, based on these studies, we can conclude that the combination of the delivery system of AAV with CRISPR-/Cas9-mediated genome editing is an effective method for neuromuscular diseases with single-gene mutation treatment.

In addition, adeno-associated virus (AAV)-mediated anti-dystrophy gene therapy focuses on delivery of anti-dystrophy genes into the host through AAV vectors, so that anti-dystrophy proteins can be produced in the host cells due to constitutive expression of the introduced genes. Even just simply increasing the expression of this protein or promoting the transcription of the gene that encodes it may delay the progression of muscle atrophy [151].

The other broad category of gene delivery mechanisms are nonviral vectors. Nonviral vectors can carry DNA across the cell membrane, protecting DNA from degradation by DNA-degrading enzymes before their entry into the cells, lysosomal degradation after their entry into the cells, prevention of their removal from the cell by biodegradation, and non-cytotoxicity [152]. The nanoscale particle size of the nonviral vector contributes toward proper targeting and effectiveness of the vector. At present, cationic polymer carrier, liposome carrier, and nanoparticle carrier are widely used as nonviral vectors.

In conclusion, genome editing is promising in the treatment of muscle atrophy.

Acknowledgment This work was supported by the National Key Research and Development Project (2018YFE0113500 to JJ Xiao), the grants from the National Natural Science Foundation of China (82020108002 and 81911540486 to JJ Xiao), the grant from the Science and Technology Commission of Shanghai (20DZ2255400 and 21XD1421300 to JJ Xiao), and the "Dawn" Program of Shanghai Education Commission (19SG34 to JJ Xiao).

References

1. Xi Y, Hao M, Liang Q, Li Y, Gong DW, Tian Z (2021) Dynamic resistance exercise increases skeletal muscle-derived FSTL1 inducing cardiac angiogenesis via DIP2A-Smad2/3 in rats following myocardial infarction. J Sport Health Sci 10(5):594–603
2. Ji LL, Yeo D, Kang C, Zhang T (2020) The role of mitochondria in redox signaling of muscle homeostasis. J Sport Health Sci 9(5):386–393
3. Popovic D, Vucic D, Dikic I (2014) Ubiquitination in disease pathogenesis and treatment. Nat Med 20(11): 1242–1253
4. Andres-Mateos E, Brinkmeier H, Burks T, Mejias R, Files D, Steinberger M, Soleimani A, Marx R, Simmers J, Lin B, Finanger Hedderick E, Marr T, Lin B, Hourdé C, Leinwand L, Kuhl D, Föller M, Vogelsang S, Hernandez-Diaz I, Vaughan D, Alvarez de la Rosa D, Lang F, Cohn R (2013) Activation of serum/glucocorticoid-induced kinase 1 (SGK1) is important to maintain skeletal muscle homeostasis and prevent atrophy. EMBO Mol Med 5(1):80–91
5. Xin F, Zhu Z, Chen S, Chen H, Hu X, Ma X, Liang K, Liu Y, Wang L, Cai Y, Chen A, Tang Y (2021) Prevalence and correlates of meeting the muscle-strengthening exercise recommendations among Chinese children and adolescents: results from 2019 Physical Activity and Fitness in China-The Youth Study. J Sport Health Sci. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jshs.2021.09.010
6. Liu Q, Gao J, Deng J, Xiao J (2020) Current studies and future directions of exercise therapy for muscle atrophy induced by heart failure. Front Cardiovasc Med 7:593429
7. Marzuca-Nassr GN, SanMartin-Calisto Y, Guerra-Vega P, Artigas-Arias M, Alegria A, Curi R (2020) Skeletal muscle aging atrophy: assessment and exercise-based treatment. Adv Exp Med Biol 1260: 123–158
8. He N, Ye H (2020) Exercise and muscle atrophy. Adv Exp Med Biol 1228:255–267

9. Tokinoya K, Shirai T, Ota Y, Takemasa T, Takekoshi K (2020) Denervation-induced muscle atrophy suppression in renalase-deficient mice via increased protein synthesis. Physiol Rep 8(15):e14475
10. Ato S, Kido K, Sase K, Fujita S (2020) Response of resistance exercise-induced muscle protein synthesis and skeletal muscle hypertrophy are not enhanced after disuse muscle atrophy in rat. Front Physiol 11: 469
11. Smeuninx B, Elhassan YS, Manolopoulos KN, Sapey E, Rushton AB, Edwards SJ, Morgan PT, Philp A, Brook MS, Gharahdaghi N, Smith K, Atherton PJ, Breen L (2021) The effect of short-term exercise prehabilitation on skeletal muscle protein synthesis and atrophy during bed rest in older men. J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle 12(1):52–69
12. Ghosh D, Venkataramani P, Nandi S, Bhattacharjee S (2019) CRISPR-Cas9 a boon or bane: the bumpy road ahead to cancer therapeutics. Cancer Cell Int 19:12
13. Gaj T, Gersbach C, Barbas C (2013) ZFN, TALEN, and CRISPR/Cas-based methods for genome engineering. Trends Biotechnol 31(7):397–405
14. Doudna J (2020) The promise and challenge of therapeutic genome editing. Nature 578(7794):229–236
15. Schiaffino S, Dyar K, Ciciliot S, Blaauw B, Sandri M (2013) Mechanisms regulating skeletal muscle growth and atrophy. FEBS J 280(17):4294–4314
16. Bodine S, Baehr L (2014) Skeletal muscle atrophy and the E3 ubiquitin ligases MuRF1 and MAFbx/atrogin-1. Am J Phys Endocrinol Metab 307(6): E469–E484
17. Stringer H, Wilson D (2018) The role of ultrasound as a diagnostic tool for sarcopenia. J Frailty Aging 7(4):258–261
18. Balestrino M, Adriano E (2019) Beyond sports: efficacy and safety of creatine supplementation in pathological or paraphysiological conditions of brain and muscle. Med Res Rev 39(6):2427–2459
19. Wu CS, Wei Q, Wang H, Kim DM, Balderas M, Wu G, Lawler J, Safe S, Guo S, Devaraj S, Chen Z, Sun Y (2020) Protective effects of ghrelin on fasting-induced muscle atrophy in aging mice. J Gerontol 75(4):621–630
20. Zhu S, Tian Z, Torigoe D, Zhao J, Xie P, Sugizaki T, Sato M, Horiguchi H, Terada K, Kadomatsu T, Miyata K, Oike Y (2019) Aging- and obesity-related peri-muscular adipose tissue accelerates muscle atrophy. PLoS One 14(8):e0221366
21. Miller BF, Baehr LM, Musci RV, Reid JJ, Peelor FF 3rd, Hamilton KL, Bodine SC (2019) Muscle-specific changes in protein synthesis with aging and reloading after disuse atrophy. J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle 10(6):1195–1209
22. Distefano G, Goodpaster B (2018) Effects of exercise and aging on skeletal muscle. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 8(3):29785
23. Brook M, Wilkinson D, Phillips B, Perez-Schindler J, Philp A, Smith K, Atherton P (2016) Skeletal muscle homeostasis and plasticity in youth and ageing: impact of nutrition and exercise. Acta Physiol 216(1):15–41
24. Hyatt H, Deminice R, Yoshihara T, Powers S (2019) Mitochondrial dysfunction induces muscle atrophy during prolonged inactivity: A review of the causes and effects. Arch Biochem Biophys 662:49–60
25. Faitg J, Reynaud O, Leduc-Gaudet J, Gouspillou G (2017) Skeletal muscle aging and mitochondrial dysfunction: an update. Med Sci 33(11):955–962
26. Powers S (2014) Can antioxidants protect against disuse muscle atrophy? Sports Med 2014:155–165
27. Zuo L, Pannell B (2015) Redox characterization of functioning skeletal muscle. Front Physiol 6:338
28. Osmak-Tizon L, Poussier M, Cottin Y, Rochette L (2014) Non-genomic actions of thyroid hormones: molecular aspects. Arch Cardiovasc Dis 107(4): 207–211
29. Verga Falzacappa C, Mangialardo C, Raffa S, Mancuso A, Piergrossi P, Moriggi G, Piro S, Stigliano A, Torrisi M, Brunetti E, Toscano V, Misiti S (2010) The thyroid hormone T3 improves function and survival of rat pancreatic islets during in vitro culture. Islets 2(2):96–103
30. Huang Z, Fang Q, Ma W, Zhang Q, Qiu J, Gu X, Yang H, Sun H (2019) Skeletal muscle atrophy was alleviated by salidroside through suppressing oxidative stress and inflammation during denervation. Front Pharmacol 10:997
31. Braun T, Zhu X, Szumowski M, Scott G, Grossberg A, Levasseur P, Graham K, Khan S, Damaraju S, Colmers W, Baracos V, Marks D (2011) Central nervous system inflammation induces muscle atrophy via activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. J Exp Med 208(12): 2449–2463
32. Tuffaha S, Singh P, Budihardjo J, Means K, Higgins J, Shores J, Salvatori R, Höke A, Lee W, Brandacher G (2016) Therapeutic augmentation of the growth hormone axis to improve outcomes following peripheral nerve injury. Expert Opin Ther Targets 20(10):1259–1265
33. Chiono V, Tonda-Turo C (2015) Trends in the design of nerve guidance channels in peripheral nerve tissue engineering. Prog Neurobiol 131:87–104
34. Yang X, Xue P, Chen H, Yuan M, Kang Y, Duscher D, Machens HG, Chen Z (2020) Denervation drives skeletal muscle atrophy and induces mitochondrial dysfunction, mitophagy and apoptosis via miR-142a-5p/MFN1 axis. Theranostics 10(3): 1415–1432
35. Miyawaki A, Rojasawasthien T, Hitomi S, Aoki Y, Urata M, Inoue A, Matsubara T, Morikawa K, Habu M, Tominaga K, Kokabu S (2020) Oral administration of geranylgeraniol rescues denervation-induced muscle atrophy via suppression of atrogin-1. In Vivo 34(5):2345–2351
36. Mori R, Yokokawa T, Fujita S (2020) Modified expression of vitamin D receptor and CYP27B1 in

denervation-induced muscle atrophy. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 529(3):733–739
37. Shirakawa T, Miyawaki A, Matsubara T, Okumura N, Okamoto H, Nakai N, Rojasawasthien T, Morikawa K, Inoue A, Goto A, Washio A, Tsujisawa T, Kawamoto T, Kokabu S (2020) Daily oral administration of protease-treated royal jelly protects against denervation-induced skeletal muscle atrophy. Nutrients 12(10):3089
38. Chen CM, Chung MN, Chiu CY, Liu SH, Lan KC (2020) Inorganic arsenic exposure decreases muscle mass and enhances denervation-induced muscle atrophy in mice. Molecules 25(13):3057
39. Wang H, He K, Zeng X, Zhou X, Yan F, Yang S, Zhao A (2021) Isolation and identification of goose skeletal muscle satellite cells and preliminary study on the function of C1q and tumor necrosis factor-related protein 3 gene. Anim Biosci 34(6):1078–1087
40. Iio H, Kikugawa T, Sawada Y, Sakai H, Yoshida S, Yanagihara Y, Ikedo A, Saeki N, Fukada SI, Saika T, Imai Y (2021) DNA maintenance methylation enzyme Dnmt1 in satellite cells is essential for muscle regeneration. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 534:79–85
41. Chen D, Chen S, Wang W, Liu F, Zhang C, Zheng H (2010) Modulation of satellite cells in rat facial muscle following denervation and delayed reinnervation. Acta Otolaryngol 130(12):1411–1420
42. Su R, Wang B, Zhang M, Luo Y, Wang D, Zhao L, Su L, Duan Y, Faucitano L, Jin Y (2021) Effects of energy supplements on the differentiation of skeletal muscle satellite cells. Food Sci Nutr 9(1):357–366
43. Xu J, Strasburg GM, Reed KM, Velleman SG (2021) Response of turkey pectoralis major muscle satellite cells to hot and cold thermal stress: Effect of growth selection on satellite cell proliferation and differentiation. Comp Biochem Physiol 252:110823
44. Shang M, Cappellesso F, Amorim R, Serneels J, Virga F, Eelen G, Carobbio S, Rincon MY, Maechler P, De Bock K, Ho PC, Sandri M, Ghesquiere B, Carmeliet P, Di Matteo M, Berardi E, Mazzone M (2020) Macrophage-derived glutamine boosts satellite cells and muscle regeneration. Nature 587(7835):626–631
45. Miletic G, Sullivan KM, Dodson AM, Lippitt JA, Schneider JA, Miletic V (2011) Changes in calcineurin message, enzyme activity and protein content in the spinal dorsal horn are associated with chronic constriction injury of the rat sciatic nerve. Neuroscience 188:142–147
46. Satake H, Honma R, Naganuma Y, Shibuya J, Takagi M (2020) Strategy for the treatment of lateral epicondylitis of the elbow using denervation surgery. JSES Int 4(1):21–24
47. Osorio TG, Chierchia GB, Maj R, Coutino HE, Stroker E, Sieira J, Salghetti F, Terasawa M, Calburean PA, Rizzo A, Borio G, Scala O, Galli A, Brugada P, Asmundis C (2019) Standardized quantification of vagal denervation by extracardiac vagal stimulation during second generation cryoballoon ablation: a vein per vein analysis. J Atrial Fibril 12(3):2223
48. Fan XX, Cao ZY, Liu MX, Liu WJ, Xu ZL, Tu PF, Wang ZZ, Cao L, Xiao W (2021) Diterpene ginkgolides meglumine injection inhibits apoptosis induced by optic nerve crush injury via modulating MAPKs signaling pathways in retinal ganglion cells. J Ethnopharmacol 279:114371
49. Xia N, Gao Z, Hu H, Li D, Zhang C, Mei X, Wu C (2021) Nerve growth factor loaded macrophage-derived nanovesicles for inhibiting neuronal apoptosis after spinal cord injury. J Biomater Appl 36(2): 276–288
50. Li Y, Sun Y, Cai M, Zhang H, Gao N, Huang H, Cui S, Yao D (2018) Fas ligand gene (Faslg) plays an important role in nerve degeneration and regeneration after rat sciatic nerve injury. Front Mol Neurosci 11: 210
51. Wang D, Zhang P, Li Z, Liu Y (2015) Effects of mecobalamin on Bax and Bcl-2 in neurons after peripheral nerve injury. Chin J Ind Hyg Occup Dis 33(11):841–843
52. Hannan JL, Matsui H, Sopko NA, Liu X, Weyne E, Albersen M, Watson JW, Hoke A, Burnett AL, Bivalacqua TJ (2016) Caspase-3 dependent nitrergic neuronal apoptosis following cavernous nerve injury is mediated via RhoA and ROCK activation in major pelvic ganglion. Sci Rep 6:29416
53. Joung H, Eom GH, Choe N, Lee HM, Ko JH, Kwon DH, Nam YS, Min H, Shin S, Kook J, Cho YK, Kim JC, Seo SB, Baik YH, Nam KI, Kook H (2014) Ret finger protein mediates Pax7-induced ubiquitination of MyoD in skeletal muscle atrophy. Cell Signal 26(10):2240–2248
54. Shin K, Ko YG, Jeong J, Kwon H (2018) Fbxw7beta is an inducing mediator of dexamethasone-induced skeletal muscle atrophy in vivo with the axis of Fbxw7beta-myogenin-atrogenes. Mol Biol Rep 45(4):625–631
55. Kimura K, Morisasa M, Mizushige T, Karasawa R, Kanamaru C, Kabuyama Y, Hayasaka T, Mori T, Goto-Inoue N (2021) Lipid dynamics due to muscle atrophy induced by immobilization. J Oleo Sci 70(7): 937–946
56. Kim C, Kim MB, Hwang JK (2020) Red bean extract inhibits immobilization-induced muscle atrophy in C57BL/6N mice. J Med Food 23(1):29–36
57. Edwards SJ, Smeuninx B, McKendry J, Nishimura Y, Luo D, Marshall RN, Perkins M, Ramsay J, Joanisse S, Philp A, Breen L (2020) High-dose leucine supplementation does not prevent muscle atrophy or strength loss over 7 days of immobilization in healthy young males. Am J Clin Nutr 112(5):1368–1381
58. Kilroe SP, Fulford J, Jackman SR, Wall BT (2020) Temporal muscle-specific disuse atrophy during one week of leg immobilization. Med Sci Sports Exerc 52(4):944–954

59. Zahariou A, Karamouti M, Georgantzis D, Papaioannou P (2008) Are there any UPP changes in women with stress urinary incontinence after pelvic floor muscle exercises? Urol Int 80(3):270–274
60. Talbert EE, Smuder AJ, Min K, Kwon OS, Powers SK (2013) Calpain and caspase-3 play required roles in immobilization-induced limb muscle atrophy. J Appl Physiol 114(10):1482–1489
61. Pompeani N, Rybalka E, Latchman H, Murphy RM, Croft K, Hayes A (2014) Skeletal muscle atrophy in sedentary Zucker obese rats is not caused by calpain-mediated muscle damage or lipid peroxidation induced by oxidative stress. J Negat Results Biomed 13:19
62. Dettleff P, Zuloaga R, Fuentes M, Gonzalez P, Aedo J, Estrada JM, Molina A, Valdes JA (2020) Physiological and molecular responses to thermal stress in red cusk-eel (Genypterus chilensis) juveniles reveals atrophy and oxidative damage in skeletal muscle. J Therm Biol 94:102750
63. Sharma B, Dutt V, Kaur N, Mittal A, Dabur R (2020) Tinospora cordifolia protects from skeletal muscle atrophy by alleviating oxidative stress and inflammation induced by sciatic denervation. J Ethnopharmacol 254:112720
64. Owen AM, Patel SP, Smith JD, Balasuriya BK, Mori SF, Hawk GS, Stromberg AJ, Kuriyama N, Kaneki M, Rabchevsky AG, Butterfield TA, Esser KA, Peterson CA, Starr ME, Saito H (2019) Chronic muscle weakness and mitochondrial dysfunction in the absence of sustained atrophy in a preclinical sepsis model. elife 8:e49920
65. Kadoguchi T, Shimada K, Miyazaki T, Kitamura K, Kunimoto M, Aikawa T, Sugita Y, Ouchi S, Shiozawa T, Yokoyama-Nishitani M, Fukao K, Miyosawa K, Isoda K, Daida H (2020) Promotion of oxidative stress is associated with mitochondrial dysfunction and muscle atrophy in aging mice. Geriatr Gerontol Int 20(1):78–84
66. Ucci S, Renzini A, Russi V, Mangialardo C, Cammarata I, Cavioli G, Santaguida M, Virili C, Centanni M, Adamo S, Moresi V, Verga-Falzacappa C (2019) Thyroid hormone protects from fasting-induced skeletal muscle atrophy by promoting metabolic adaptation. Int J Mol Sci 20(22):5754
67. de Theije C, Schols A, Lamers W, Neumann D, Köhler S, Langen R (2018) Hypoxia impairs adaptation of skeletal muscle protein turnover- and AMPK signaling during fasting-induced muscle atrophy. PLoS One 13(9):e0203630
68. Ponikowski P, Voors A, Anker S, Bueno H, Cleland J, Coats A, Falk V, González-Juanatey J, Harjola V, Jankowska E, Jessup M, Linde C, Nihoyannopoulos P, Parissis J, Pieske B, Riley J, Rosano G, Ruilope L, Ruschitzka F, Rutten F, van der Meer P (2016) 2016 ESC Guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of acute and chronic heart failure: The Task Force for the diagnosis and treatment of acute and chronic heart failure of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). Developed with the special contribution of the Heart Failure Association (HFA) of the ESC. Eur J Heart Fail 18(8):891–975
69. Du Bois P, Pablo Tortola C, Lodka D, Kny M, Schmidt F, Song K, Schmidt S, Bassel-Duby R, Olson E, Fielitz J (2015) Angiotensin II induces skeletal muscle atrophy by activating TFEB-mediated MuRF1 expression. Circ Res 117(5): 424–436
70. Lavine KJ, Sierra OL (2017) Skeletal muscle inflammation and atrophy in heart failure. Heart Fail Rev 22(2):179–189
71. Martinez PF, Okoshi K, Zornoff LA, Carvalho RF, Oliveira Junior SA, Lima AR, Campos DH, Damatto RL, Padovani CR, Nogueira CR, Dal Pai-Silva M, Okoshi MP (2010) Chronic heart failure-induced skeletal muscle atrophy, necrosis, and changes in myogenic regulatory factors. Med Sci Monit 16(12): 374–383
72. Carvalho RF, Cicogna AC, Campos GE, De Assis JM, Padovani CR, Okoshi MP, Pai-Silva MD (2003) Myosin heavy chain expression and atrophy in rat skeletal muscle during transition from cardiac hypertrophy to heart failure. Int J Exp Pathol 84(4): 201–206
73. Cunha TF, Bacurau AV, Moreira JB, Paixao NA, Campos JC, Ferreira JC, Leal ML, Negrao CE, Moriscot AS, Wisloff U, Brum PC (2012) Exercise training prevents oxidative stress and ubiquitin-proteasome system overactivity and reverse skeletal muscle atrophy in heart failure. PLoS One 7(8): e41701
74. Heineke J, Auger-Messier M, Xu J, Sargent M, York A, Welle S, Molkentin JD (2010) Genetic deletion of myostatin from the heart prevents skeletal muscle atrophy in heart failure. Circulation 121(3): 419–425
75. Werner C, Pöss J, Böhm M (2010) Optimal antagonism of the Renin-Angiotensin-aldosterone system: do we need dual or triple therapy? Drugs 70(10): 1215–1230
76. Bushby K, Finkel R, Birnkrant D, Case L, Clemens P, Cripe L, Kaul A, Kinnett K, McDonald C, Pandya S, Poysky J, Shapiro F, Tomezsko J, Constantin C (2010) Diagnosis and management of Duchenne muscular dystrophy, part 1: diagnosis, and pharmacological and psychosocial management. Lancet Neurol 9(1):77–93
77. Menduti G, Rasà D, Stanga S, Boido M (2020) Drug screening and drug repositioning as promising therapeutic approaches for spinal muscular atrophy treatment. Front Pharmacol 11:592234
78. Fulop G, Ramirez-Perez F, Kiss T, Tarantini S, Valcarcel Ares M, Toth P, Yabluchanskiy A, Conley S, Ballabh P, Martinez-Lemus L, Ungvari Z, Csiszar A (2019) IGF-1 deficiency promotes pathological remodeling of cerebral arteries: a potential mechanism contributing to the pathogenesis of

intracerebral hemorrhages in aging. J Gerontol 74(4): 446–454

79. Chen R, Lei S, Jiang T, She Y, Shi H (2020) Regulation of skeletal muscle atrophy in cachexia by microRNAs and long non-coding RNAs. Front Cell Dev Biol 8:577010
80. de Castro G, Simoes E, Lima J, Ortiz-Silva M, Festuccia W, Tokeshi F, Alcântara P, Otoch J, Coletti D, Seelaender M (2019) Human cachexia induces changes in mitochondria, autophagy and apoptosis in the skeletal muscle. Cancer 11(9):1264
81. Lok C (2015) Cachexia: the last illness. Nature 528(7581):182–183
82. Nishikawa H, Goto M, Fukunishi S, Asai A, Nishiguchi S, Higuchi K (2021) Cancer cachexia: its mechanism and clinical significance. Int J Mol Sci 22(16):8491
83. Belli R, Ferraro E, Molfino A, Carletti R, Tambaro F, Costelli P, Muscaritoli M (2021) Liquid biopsy for cancer cachexia: focus on muscle-derived microRNAs. Int J Mol Sci 22(16):9007
84. Bonaldo P, Sandri M (2013) Cellular and molecular mechanisms of muscle atrophy. Dis Model Mech 6(1):25–39
85. Rom O, Reznick A (2016) The role of E3 ubiquitin-ligases MuRF-1 and MAFbx in loss of skeletal muscle mass. Free Radic Biol Med 98:218–230
86. Chen R, Jiang T, She Y, Xu J, Li C, Zhou S, Shen H, Shi H, Liu S (2017) Effects of cobalt chloride, a hypoxia-mimetic agent, on autophagy and atrophy in skeletal C2C12 myotubes. Biomed Res Int 2017: 7097580
87. Paul P, Bhatnagar S, Mishra V, Srivastava S, Darnay B, Choi Y, Kumar A (2012) The E3 ubiquitin ligase TRAF6 intercedes in starvation-induced skeletal muscle atrophy through multiple mechanisms. Mol Cell Biol 32(7):1248–1259
88. Arndt V, Dick N, Tawo R, Dreiseidler M, Wenzel D, Hesse M, Fürst D, Saftig P, Saint R, Fleischmann B, Hoch M, Höhfeld J (2010) Chaperone-assisted selective autophagy is essential for muscle maintenance. Curr Biol 20(2):143–148
89. Mizushima N, Levine B, Cuervo A, Klionsky D (2008) Autophagy fights disease through cellular self-digestion. Nature 451(7182):1069–1075
90. Mizushima N, Yamamoto A, Matsui M, Yoshimori T, Ohsumi Y (2004) In vivo analysis of autophagy in response to nutrient starvation using transgenic mice expressing a fluorescent autophagosome marker. Mol Biol Cell 15(3): 1101–1111
91. Takikita S, Schreiner C, Baum R, Xie T, Ralston E, Plotz P, Raben N (2010) Fiber type conversion by PGC-1α activates lysosomal and autophagosomal biogenesis in both unaffected and Pompe skeletal muscle. PLoS One 5(12):e15239
92. Wang Y, Shao Y, Gao Y, Wan G, Wan D, Zhu H, Qiu Y, Ye X (2019) Catalpol prevents denervated muscular atrophy related to the inhibition of autophagy and reduces BAX/BCL2 ratio via mTOR pathway. Drug Des Devel Ther 13:243–253
93. Dusabimana T, Kim S, Kim H, Park S, Kim H (2019) Nobiletin ameliorates hepatic ischemia and reperfusion injury through the activation of SIRT-1/FOXO3a-mediated autophagy and mitochondrial biogenesis. Exp Mol Med 51(4):1–16
94. Matsuzaki T, Alvarez-Garcia O, Mokuda S, Nagira K, Olmer M, Gamini R, Miyata K, Akasaki Y, Su A, Asahara H, Lotz M (2018) FoxO transcription factors modulate autophagy and proteoglycan 4 in cartilage homeostasis and osteoarthritis. Sci Transl Med 10:428
95. Narendra D, Youle R (2011) Targeting mitochondrial dysfunction: role for PINK1 and Parkin in mitochondrial quality control. Antioxid Redox Signal 14(10): 1929–1938
96. Hanna R, Quinsay M, Orogo A, Giang K, Rikka S, Gustafsson Å (2012) Microtubule-associated protein 1 light chain 3 (LC3) interacts with Bnip3 protein to selectively remove endoplasmic reticulum and mitochondria via autophagy. J Biol Chem 287(23): 19094–19104
97. Li T, Wu C, Li C, Wu F, Liao L, Liu C, Lin C, Wang M, Yang C, Lin C (2020) Interactions among IGF-1, AKT2, FOXO1, and FOXO3 variations and between genes and physical activities on physical performance in community-dwelling elders. PLoS One 15(9):e0239530
98. Cheng S, Tseng Y, Wu S, Tsai S, Tsai L (2017) Whey protein concentrate renders MDA-MB-231 cells sensitive to rapamycin by altering cellular redox state and activating GSK3β/mTOR signaling. Sci Rep 7(1):15976
99. Bodine S, Stitt T, Gonzalez M, Kline W, Stover G, Bauerlein R, Zlotchenko E, Scrimgeour A, Lawrence J, Glass D, Yancopoulos G (2001) Akt/mTOR pathway is a crucial regulator of skeletal muscle hypertrophy and can prevent muscle atrophy in vivo. Nat Cell Biol 3(11):1014–1019
100. Milan G, Romanello V, Pescatore F, Armani A, Paik J, Frasson L, Seydel A, Zhao J, Abraham R, Goldberg A, Blaauw B, DePinho R, Sandri M (2015) Regulation of autophagy and the ubiquitin-proteasome system by the FoxO transcriptional network during muscle atrophy. Nat Commun 6:6670
101. Ratti F, Ramond F, Moncollin V, Simonet T, Milan G, Méjat A, Thomas J, Streichenberger N, Gilquin B, Matthias P, Khochbin S, Sandri M, Schaeffer L (2015) Histone deacetylase 6 is a FoxO transcription factor-dependent effector in skeletal muscle atrophy. J Biol Chem 290(7):4215–4224
102. Ma W, Zhang R, Huang Z, Zhang Q, Xie X, Yang X, Zhang Q, Liu H, Ding F, Zhu J, Sun H (2019) PQQ ameliorates skeletal muscle atrophy, mitophagy and fiber type transition induced by denervation via inhibition of the inflammatory signaling pathways. Ann Transl Med 7(18):440

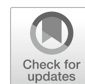
103. Thoma A, Lightfoot A (2018) NF-kB and inflammatory cytokine signalling: role in skeletal muscle atrophy. Adv Exp Med Biol 1088:267–279
104. Toth K, McKay B, De Lisio M, Little J, Tarnopolsky M, Parise G (2011) IL-6 induced STAT3 signalling is associated with the proliferation of human muscle satellite cells following acute muscle damage. PLoS One 6(3):e17392
105. Rodriguez J, Vernus B, Chelh I, Cassar-Malek I, Gabillard J, Hadj Sassi A, Seiliez I, Picard B, Bonnieu A (2014) Myostatin and the skeletal muscle atrophy and hypertrophy signaling pathways. Cell Mol Life Sci 71(22):4361–4371
106. Watts R, McAinch A, Dixon J, O'Brien P, Cameron-Smith D (2013) Increased Smad signaling and reduced MRF expression in skeletal muscle from obese subjects. Obesity 21(3):525–528
107. Voltarelli V, Bechara L, Bacurau A, Mattos K, Dourado P, Bueno C, Casarini D, Negrao C, Brum P (2014) Lack of β2 -adrenoceptors aggravates heart failure-induced skeletal muscle myopathy in mice. J Cell Mol Med 18(6):1087–1097
108. Shimamoto S, Ijiri D, Kawaguchi M, Nakashima K, Tada O, Inoue H, Ohtsuka A (2017) β- and β-adrenergic receptor stimulation differ in their effects on PGC-1α and atrogin-1/MAFbx gene expression in chick skeletal muscle. Comp Biochem Physiol 211:1–6
109. Zhang J, Adikaram P, Pandey M, Genis A, Simonds W (2016) Optimization of genome editing through CRISPR-Cas9 engineering. Bioengineered 7(3): 166–174
110. Gao Q, Dong X, Xu Q, Zhu L, Wang F, Hou Y, Chao C (2019) Therapeutic potential of CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing in engineered T-cell therapy. Cancer Med 8(9):4254–4264
111. Martin R, Ikeda K, Cromer M, Uchida N, Nishimura T, Romano R, Tong A, Lemgart V, Camarena J, Pavel-Dinu M, Sindhu C, Wiebking V, Vaidyanathan S, Dever D, Bak R, Laustsen A, Lesch B, Jakobsen M, Sebastiano V, Nakauchi H, Porteus M (2019) Highly efficient and marker-free genome editing of human pluripotent stem cells by CRISPR-Cas9 RNP and AAV6 donor-mediated homologous recombination. Cell Stem Cell 24(5): 821–828.e825
112. Rogers G, Chen H, Morales H, Cannon P (2019) Homologous recombination-based genome editing by clade F AAVs is inefficient in the absence of a targeted DNA break. Mol Ther 27(10):1726–1736
113. Gourley C, Miller R, Hollis R, Ledermann J (2020) Role of poly (ADP-Ribose) polymerase inhibitors beyond breast cancer gene-mutated ovarian tumours: definition of homologous recombination deficiency? Curr Opin Oncol 32(5):442–450
114. Ui A, Chiba N, Yasui A (2020) Relationship among DNA double-strand break (DSB), DSB repair, and transcription prevents genome instability and cancer. Cancer Sci 111(5):1443–1451
115. Fajardo-Ortiz D, Shattuck A, Hornbostel S (2020) Mapping the coevolution, leadership and financing of research on viral vectors, RNAi, CRISPR/Cas9 and other genomic editing technologies. PLoS One 15(4):e0227593
116. Razzaq A, Saleem F, Kanwal M, Mustafa G, Yousaf S, Imran Arshad H, Hameed M, Khan M, Joyia F (2019) Modern trends in plant genome editing: an inclusive review of the CRISPR/Cas9 toolbox. Int J Mol Sci 20:16
117. Maeder M, Gersbach C (2016) Genome-editing technologies for gene and cell therapy. Mol Ther 24(3):430–446
118. Wang S, Wen F, Tessneer K, Gaffney P (2016) TALEN-mediated enhancer knockout influences TNFAIP3 gene expression and mimics a molecular phenotype associated with systemic lupus erythematosus. Genes Immun 17(3):165–170
119. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna J, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
120. Gee P, Xu H, Hotta A (2017) Cellular reprogramming, genome editing, and alternative CRISPR Cas9 technologies for precise gene therapy of duchenne muscular dystrophy. Stem Cells Int 2017:8765154
121. Karimian A, Azizian K, Parsian H, Rafieian S, Shafiei-Irannejad V, Kheyrollah M, Yousefi M, Majidinia M, Yousefi B (2019) CRISPR/Cas9 technology as a potent molecular tool for gene therapy. J Cell Physiol 234(8):12267–12277
122. Zhang Y, Long C, Bassel-Duby R, Olson E (2018) Myoediting: toward prevention of muscular dystrophy by therapeutic genome editing. Physiol Rev 98(3):1205–1240
123. Gundry M, Brunetti L, Lin A, Mayle A, Kitano A, Wagner D, Hsu J, Hoegenauer K, Rooney C, Goodell M, Nakada D (2016) Highly efficient genome editing of murine and human hematopoietic progenitor cells by CRISPR/Cas9. Cell Rep 17(5): 1453–1461
124. Zhu P, Wu F, Mosenson J, Zhang H, He T, Wu W (2017) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated genome editing corrects dystrophin Mutation in skeletal muscle stem cells in a mouse model of muscle dystrophy. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 7:31–41
125. Niu Y, Shen B, Cui Y, Chen Y, Wang J, Wang L, Kang Y, Zhao X, Si W, Li W, Xiang A, Zhou J, Guo X, Bi Y, Si C, Hu B, Dong G, Wang H, Zhou Z, Li T, Tan T, Pu X, Wang F, Ji S, Zhou Q, Huang X, Ji W, Sha J (2014) Generation of gene-modified cynomolgus monkey via Cas9/RNA-mediated gene targeting in one-cell embryos. Cell 156(4):836–843
126. Lin G, Revia RA, Zhang M (2021) Inorganic nanomaterial-mediated gene therapy in combination with other antitumor treatment modalities. Adv Funct Mater 31(5):2007096

127. Queen NJ, Bates R, Huang W, Xiao R, Appana B, Cao L (2021) Visceral adipose tissue-directed FGF21 gene therapy improves metabolic and immune health in BTBR mice. Mol Ther Methods Clin Dev 20:409–422
128. Nakamura A, Fueki N, Shiba N, Motoki H, Miyazaki D, Nishizawa H, Echigoya Y, Yokota T, Aoki Y, Takeda S (2016) Deletion of exons 3-9 encompassing a mutational hot spot in the DMD gene presents an asymptomatic phenotype, indicating a target region for multiexon skipping therapy. J Hum Genet 61(7):663–667
129. Wang JZ, Wu P, Shi ZM, Xu YL, Liu ZJ (2017) The AAV-mediated and RNA-guided CRISPR/Cas9 system for gene therapy of DMD and BMD. Brain Dev 39(7):547–556
130. Wan DY, Guo Y, Cheng Y, Hu Y, Xiao S, Wang Y, Wen YQ (2020) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated mutagenesis of VvMLO3 results in enhanced resistance to powdery mildew in grapevine (Vitis vinifera). Hortic Res 7(1):116
131. Munoz-Fernandez G, Jimenez A, Revuelta JL (2020) Genomic edition of Ashbya gossypii using one-vector CRISPR/Cas9. Bio-protocol 10(12): e3660
132. Termini JM, Martinez-Navio JM, Gao G, Fuchs SP, Desrosiers RC (2021) Glycoengineering of AAV-delivered monoclonal antibodies yields increased ADCC activity. Mol Ther Methods Clin Dev 20:204–217
133. Li J, Chan MC, Yu Y, Bei Y, Chen P, Zhou Q, Cheng L, Chen L, Ziegler O, Rowe GC, Das S, Xiao J (2017) miR-29b contributes to multiple types of muscle atrophy. Nat Commun 8:15201
134. Wang R, Tian H, Guo D, Tian Q, Yao T, Kong X (2020) Impacts of exercise intervention on various diseases in rats. J Sport Health Sci 9(3):211–227
135. Liu Q, Chen L, Liang X, Cao Y, Zhu X, Wang S, Li J, Gao J, Xiao J (2021) Exercise attenuates angiotensin-induced muscle atrophy by targeting PPARgamma/miR-29b. J Sport Health Sci. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jshs.2021.06.002
136. Li J, Wang L, Hua X, Tang H, Chen R, Yang T, Das S, Xiao J (2020) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated miR-29b editing as a treatment of different types of muscle atrophy in mice. Mol Ther 28(5):1359–1372
137. Wang S, Wang D, Cai X, Wu Q, Han Y (2020) Identification of the ZEB2 gene as a potential target for epilepsy therapy and the association between rs10496964 and ZEB2 expression. J Int Med Res 48(12):300060520980527
138. Kirschner J, Cathomen T (2020) Gene therapy for monogenic inherited disorders. Deut Arzteblatt Int 117(51-52):878–885
139. Chen CL, Huang Y, Yuan JJ, Li HM, Han XR, Martinez-Garcia MA, de la Rosa-Carrillo D, Chen RC, Guan WJ, Zhong NS (2020) The roles of bacteria and viruses in bronchiectasis exacerbation: a prospective study. Arch Bronconeumol 56(10):621–629
140. Kumar R, Mishra S, Shreya, Maurya SK (2021) Recent advances in the discovery of potent RNA-dependent RNA-polymerase (RdRp) inhibitors targeting viruses. RSC Med Chem 12(3):306–320
141. Liu T, Xing Y, Fan X, Chen Z, Zhao C, Liu L, Zhao M, Hu X, Dong B, Wang J, Cui H, Gong D, Geng T (2021) Fasting and overfeeding affect the expression of the immunity- or inflammation-related genes in the liver of poultry via endogenous retrovirus. Poult Sci 100(2):973–981
142. Tatkiewicz W, Dickie J, Bedford F, Jones A, Atkin M, Kiernan M, Maze EA, Agit B, Farnham G, Kanapin A, Belshaw R (2020) Characterising a human endogenous retrovirus (HERV)-derived tumour-associated antigen: enriched RNA-Seq analysis of HERV-K(HML-2) in mantle cell lymphoma cell lines. Mob DNA 11(1):31
143. Echeverria I, de Miguel R, Asin J, Rodriguez-Largo-A, Fernandez A, Perez M, de Andres D, Lujan L, Reina R (2020) Replication of small ruminant lentiviruses in aluminum hydroxide-induced granulomas in sheep: a potential new factor for viral dissemination. J Virol 95(2):e01859
144. Liang Y, He J, Zhao Y (2020) Modification of oncolytic adenovirus and its application in cancer therapy. Discov Med 30(161):129–144
145. Rankovic V, Vogl C, Dorje NM, Bahader I, Duque-Afonso CJ, Thirumalai A, Weber T, Kusch K, Strenzke N, Moser T (2020) Overloaded adeno-associated virus as a novel gene therapeutic tool for otoferlin-related deafness. Front Mol Neurosci 13: 600051
146. Yan H, Wang H, Zhu X, Huang J, Li Y, Zhou K, Hua Y, Yan F, Wang DZ, Luo Y (2021) Adeno-associated virus-mediated delivery of anti-miR-199a tough decoys attenuates cardiac hypertrophy by targeting PGC-1alpha. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 23: 406–417
147. Wang L, Li F, Dang L, Liang C, Wang C, He B, Liu J, Li D, Wu X, Xu X, Lu A, Zhang G (2016) In vivo delivery systems for therapeutic genome editing. Int J Mol Sci 17:5
148. Srivastava A, Lusby E, Berns K (1983) Nucleotide sequence and organization of the adeno-associated virus 2 genome. J Virol 45(2):555–564
149. Samulski R, Muzyczka N (2014) AAV-mediated gene therapy for research and therapeutic purposes. Annu Rev Virol 1(1):427–451
150. Kemaladewi D, Maino E, Hyatt E, Hou H, Ding M, Place K, Zhu X, Bassi P, Baghestani Z, Deshwar A, Merico D, Xiong H, Frey B, Wilson M, Ivakine E, Cohn R (2017) Correction of a splicing defect in a mouse model of congenital muscular dystrophy type 1A using a homology-directed-repair-independent mechanism. Nat Med 23(8):984–989
151. Radukic MT, Brandt D, Haak M, Muller KM, Kalinowski J (2020) Nanopore sequencing of native adeno-associated virus (AAV) single-stranded DNA

using a transposase-based rapid protocol. NAR Genom Bioinf 2(4):74
152. Vakilian H, Andres Rojas E, Habibi Rezaei L, Behmanesh M (2020) Fabrication and optimization of linear pei-modified crystal nanocellulose as an efficient non-viral vector for in-vitro gene delivery. Rep Biochem Mol Biol 9(3):297–308

Part IV

Genome Editing in Metabolic Diseases



Genome Editing and Obesity

Davide Masi, Rossella Tozzi, and Mikiko Watanabe

Abstract

Defined as a condition of body fat excess leading to significant morbidity, obesity is a chronic metabolic illness associated with a significant number of diseases. The incidence of obesity does not solely depend on dietary habits, with energy balance being regulated by the complex interactions between genetic, behavioural and environmental factors. Genome-wide association studies (GWASs) have demonstrated that several genes are linked to obesity, and these findings shed light on a growing number of novel potential therapeutics for weight management, including genome editing. In this regard, the cutting-edge technology known as clustered regularly interspaced palindromic repeats (CRISPR)/CRISPR-associated protein (Cas), thanks to its ability to edit DNA or modulate gene expression in eukaryotic cells, undoubtedly enables to understand the genetic mechanisms implicated in obesity and could be a promising tool for its treatment. This chapter summarizes the genetics underlying obesity and currently available obesity treatments, further discussing the research progress of genome editing in the knowledge and treatment of body fat excess.

Keywords

Obesity · Fat · Waist circumference · Nutrition · Genome · GWAS · CRISPR

1 Introduction

The World Health Organization has defined obesity as "the twenty-first century epidemic", since its prevalence has been rising steadily for the past decades all over the world, leading to high morbidity and mortality [1]. Defined as a condition of body fat excess leading to significant morbidity [2], obesity is a chronic metabolic illness associated with a significant number of diseases, including type 2 diabetes mellitus (DM2) [3], cardiovascular diseases [4], obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome (OSAS) [5] and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) [6]. Many strategies have been proposed for the treatment of weight excess, ranging from dietary patterns and physical activity to pharmacological treatments and bariatric surgery in the most severe cases. The incidence of obesity does not solely depend on dietary habits; in fact, energy balance is regulated

Davide Masi and Rossella Tozzi contributed equally.

D. Masi · M. Watanabe (✉)
Department of Experimental Medicine, Section of Medical Pathophysiology, Food Science and Endocrinology, Sapienza University of Rome, Rome, Italy
e-mail: mikiko.watanabe@uniroma1.it

R. Tozzi
Department of Molecular Medicine, Sapienza University of Rome, Rome, Italy

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_12

by the complex interactions between genetic, behavioural and environmental factors [7].

Noteworthy, genome-wide association studies (GWASs) have demonstrated that several genes are linked to obesity, and these findings shed light on a growing number of novel potential therapeutics for weight management, including genome editing. In this regard, the molecular technology known as clustered regularly interspaced palindromic repeats (CRISPR)/CRISPR-associated protein (Cas), thanks to its ability to edit DNA or modulate gene expression in eukaryotic cells, undoubtedly represents a valid technology to understand the genetic mechanisms implicated in obesity and could be a promising tool for its treatment [8].

This chapter summarizes mono and polygenic forms of obesity and currently available obesity treatments, further discussing the research progress of genome editing in the treatment of non-communicable diseases in nutrition, such as obesity.

2 The Genetics Underlying Obesity

Obesity is a multifactorial pathology, and heritable traits and genetics have an indisputable impact on its epidemiology. As a matter of fact, genetic factors have been reported to contribute up to 25% in the determination even of the most common expressions of obesity.

In this regard, only a small number of patients present monogenic forms of obesity (5%), resulting from mutations of specific genes. On the other hand, polygenic forms of obesity, also defined as common obesity, represent a heterogeneous group of disorders that accurately depict the complex interplay between genetic and environmental factors. Noteworthy, several genetic diseases, including Bardet-Biedl's syndrome, Cohen's syndrome, Alstrom's syndrome and Prader-Willi's syndrome, share obesity among their clinical features, though they will not be discussed in this chapter.

2.1 Monogenic Obesity

Monogenic forms of obesity are generally more severe, with a typical juvenile onset, and show a Mendelian-type inheritance, which can be autosomal or recessive [9]. In the late 1990s, molecular studies conducted in agouti *ob/ob* and *db/db* mouse models, presenting a homozygous mutation in the leptin (LEP) gene and its receptor (LEPR), respectively, allowed to achieve new insights into the regulation of energy balance. Upon food intake, the increase in adipocyte-produced leptin circulating levels stimulates proopiomelanocortin (POMC) production in the arcuate nucleus of the hypothalamus. POMC is subsequently processed by proprotein convertase subtilisin/kexin type 1 (PCSK1) into melanocortin peptides such as α- and β-melanocyte-stimulating hormone (α-MSH and β-MSH), which in turn can bind and consequently inactivate melanocortin 4 receptor (MC4R), thus reducing food intake [10].

Monogenic forms of obesity are due to single mutations which generally involve genes coding for appetite regulation molecules, including LEP, *LEP*R, *POMC*, *MC4R*, *PCSK1* and sarcoma homology 2 B adaptor protein 1 (*SH2B1*) (Table 1). The most relevant ones are herein presented:

- LEP/LEPR: Congenital LEP deficiency, resulting from both homozygous frameshift and missense mutation in the *ob* gene, is characterized by severe and early-onset obesity, intense hyperphagia, hyperinsulinemia, advanced bone age and profound abnormalities of T-cell number and function associated with high rates of childhood infection. A similar phenotype can also be observed in children suffering from LEPR deficiency. This condition is caused by a homozygous mutation that truncates the receptor before the transmembrane domain, thus resulting in an aberrant circulating molecule consisting of LEP and LEPR bound together.
- POMC: On the contrary, the *POMC* gene can be affected by a wide range of alterations,

Table 1 Monogenic forms of human obesity

Gene	Type of inheritance	Prevalence	Obesity onset
LEPTIN	Homozygous recessive	Rare	First days of life
LEPR	Homozygous recessive	Moderate	First days of life
POMC	Homozygous or compound heterozygous	Extremely rare	Early childhood
PCSK1	Homozygous or compound heterozygous	Extremely rare	Childhood
SH2B1	homozygote and heterozygote	Extremely rare	
NTRK2	De novo heterozygous mutation	Extremely rare	Early childhood

LEPR leptin receptor, *POMC* proopiomelanocortin, PCSK1 proprotein convertase subtilisin/Kexin type 1, *SH2B1* adaptor protein 1, *NTRK2* neurotrophic receptor tyrosine kinase 2

including homozygous or compound heterozygous missense, cleavage site and complete loss-of-function mutations. The onset is often precocious and not limited to weight excess; patients with POMC deficiency indeed usually present hypoglycaemic crises, hyperbilirubinaemia and cholestasis secondary to isolated corticotrophin (ACTH) deficiency and consequently congenital hypocortisolism in the neonatal period.

- MC4R: Furthermore, the most common monogenic cause of obesity is undoubtedly represented by a heterozygous mutation in the *MC4R* gene, which follows a dominant-type inheritance. Its prevalence has been estimated around 3–6% of the entire population [9, 11], whereas its penetrance is often equal to 100%, depending on environmental- and ethnic-specific factors. Moreover, *MC4R* homozygote patients display a more severe form of obesity than the heterozygotes, who can be in some cases normal or overweight. For this reason, many authors have hypothesized a genetic model characterized by "codominance", with multiple genes modulating the expression and penetrance of the phenotype. Different to what is observed in congenital LEP deficiency, subjects with MC4R mutations show increased lean mass, accelerated linear growth, early hyperinsulinemia and less hyperphagia. The disease also tends to be milder in adults than in paediatric patients. Interestingly, Farooqi et al. found that the severity in the MC4R dysfunction, as observed in in vitro assays, directly correlates with patients' food intake and subsequently with the grade of obese phenotype [9].
- PCSK1: As of today, only heterozygous mutations of PCSK1 have been described. The resulting enzyme deficiency causes an ineffective cleavage of both POMC and glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1), thus leading to severe obesity, high proinsulin levels, hypocortisolaemia and elevated POMC concentrations.
- SH2B1: SH2B1 belongs to a family of scaffold proteins implicated in the downstream signalling of a variety of tyrosine kinase receptors like leptin, insulin and GH and IGF-1 receptors. Its deficiency has been traced to at least seven mutations affecting the C-terminal tails of the four SH2B1 isoforms. Noteworthy, these mutations (both homozygote and heterozygote) have been identified in severe, early-onset obese patients, suggesting a potential pathogenetic role [12].
- NTRK2: Mutations in genes coding for proteins with a predominantly neuronal activity have also been associated with severe childhood obesity and developmental delay. For instance, a deletion or heterozygous missense mutation occurring in neurotrophin receptor TrkB (*NTRK2*) or in its natural ligand, the brain-derived neurotrophic factor (*BDNF*), can be responsible for severe early-onset obesity and impaired food intake regulation, underlining the importance of neuronal plasticity in the hypothalamus for the maintenance of a correct eating behaviour and body weight stability [13].

The great advantage of identifying specific obesity-inducing mutations mainly lies in the fact that it opens up the possibility of highly individualized therapies, capable of reversing the disorder [11]. In this regard, subcutaneous injections of leptin replacement therapy (metreleptin) showed significant beneficial effects in children affected by congenital leptin deficiency, thus resulting in markedly body weight and fat mass reduction [14]. Similarly, encouraging results have also been observed regarding its application in patients suffering from familial lipodystrophies as well [15].

Another promising approach is now represented by setmelanotide, an MC4R agonist. A single-arm open-label multicentre phase 3 trial, conducted on 11 subjects with *LEPR* mutations and 10 with *POMC* mutations, recently evaluated the efficacy of setmelanotide administration, showing a significant reduction in body weight (13–25%), with no side effects other than nausea and hyperpigmentation in the POMC group [10].

Despite these promising novel approaches, it is still difficult to find an effective and completely individualized therapy, as seen in patients carrying heterozygous leptin mutations, who do not show significant reductions in leptin concentrations and therefore do not significantly benefit from the implementation of recombinant leptin. For this reason, it remains mandatory to pursue other treatment strategies.

2.2 Polygenic Obesity

In recent years, a rise in the prevalence of obesity has been reported. Several factors including socioeconomic status, intrauterine environment, sleep deprivation and gastrointestinal microbiome can play a crucial role in the pathogenesis of this disease, along with other well-known determinants such as endocrine disruptors, excessive caloric intake, energy expenditure and sedentary lifestyle. Taken together, these elements suggest that an increasing obesogenic environment may amplify the inherited genetic risk for obesity.

Multiple twin and family studies aimed at establishing the heritability of obesity in order to assess the individual's risk of developing the disease. In this regard, the Framingham Heart Study reported a 40–50% of heritability for increased BMI and similarly the HERITAGE (HEalth, RIsk factors, exercise Training, And GEnetics) Family Study reported a moderate-to-high heritability rate (62–63%) for body fat. As far as waist circumference is concerned, heritability estimates are more heterogeneous, ranging from 37% to 81%, while a smaller rate (6–30%) has been associated with waist-to-hip ratio (WHR) [16]. Such discrepancy could be attributed to the absence of overlapping between the *loci* for WHR and BMI, suggesting that the genetic regulation of fat distribution is independent from that of total adiposity [17].

As previously affirmed, obesity is a complex trait which most commonly does not show a typical Mendelian transmission pattern, since it depends on several susceptibility genes with low or moderate effects, including genes that influence energy homeostasis and thermogenesis, adipogenesis, leptin-insulin transduction and hormonal signalling peptides.

Since the advent of genome-wide association studies (GWASs) in the early 2000s, several single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) have been associated with obesity, allowing for a giant leap towards a better understanding of the genetics underlying fat excess (Fig. 1). In 2007, four reports linked the presence of SNPs in the first intron of the fat mass and obesity-associated gene (FTO) to obesity-related traits. As of today, among 100 different *loci* found to be linked to BMI, FTO remains the genetic region showing the strongest association with obesity development [18].

Moreover, studies conducted on genes regulating the glyco-lipid metabolism and thermogenesis revealed that a specific polymorphism (Pro12Ala) in the peroxisome proliferative activated receptor gamma gene (PPARγ) is associated with lower BMI and higher insulin sensitivity [19].

Similarly, recent meta-analyses involving up to 7000 subjects demonstrated a significant association between BMI and two other polymorphisms such as the Trp64Arg SNP in the β3-adrenergic receptor gene (ADRB3) [20]

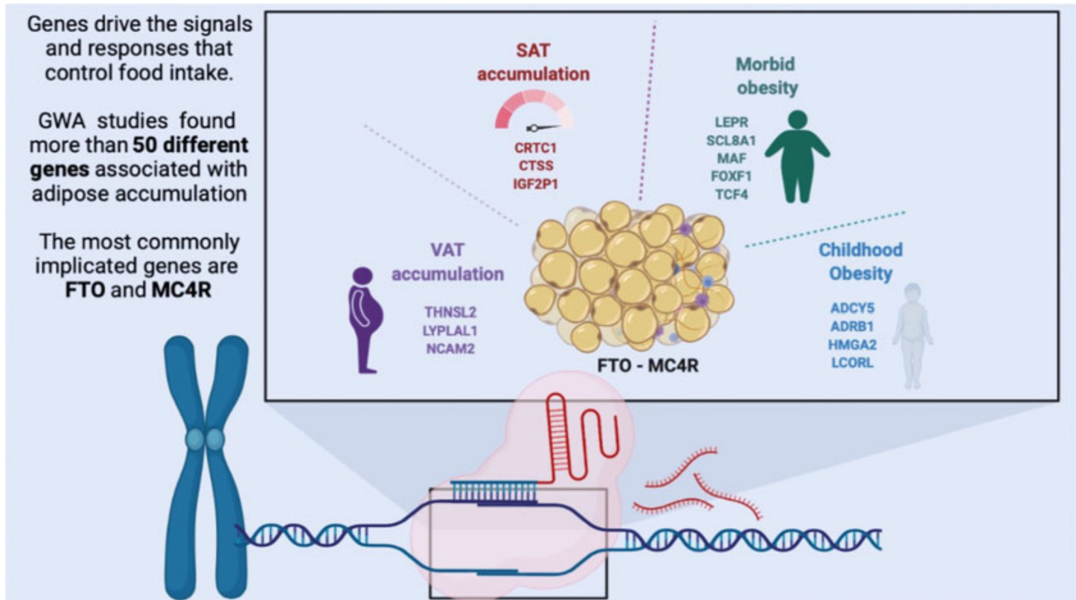


Fig. 1 Major GWAS identified loci associated with obesity-related parameters. *THNSL2* threonine synthase-like 2, *LYPLAL1* lysophospholipase-like 1, *FTO* fat mass and obesity-associated gene, *MC4R* melanocortin 4 receptor, *CRTC1* CREB regulated transcription coactivator 1, *CTSS* cathepsin S, *IGF2BP1* insulin-like growth factor 2 MRNA binding protein 1, *LEPR* leptin receptor, *SCL8A1* sodium-calcium exchanger, *FOXF1* forkhead box F1, *MAF* MAF BZIP transcription factor, *TCF4* transcription factor 4, *NCAM2* neural cell adhesion molecule 2, *ADCY5* adenylate cyclase 5, *ADRB1* adrenoceptor beta 1, *HMGA2* high-mobility group AT-hook 2, *LCORL* ligand-dependent nuclear receptor corepressor like

and the insertion/deletion (I/D) polymorphism in the uncoupling protein 2 gene (UCP-2) [16]. On the contrary, findings regarding the impact on obesity of the 2G866A SNP in the UCP-2 gene still remain inconclusive [21].

As already seen in monogenic obesity, MC4R mutations may also play a relevant role in polygenic forms of obesity, with more than 40 mutations detected [22]. More specifically, the MC4R V103I polymorphism has been found to be negatively associated with obesity, and robust data revealed that, among obese cases, the carrier frequency is about 2%, whereas in non-obese controls the rate is 3.5% [22].

Indeed, polygenic obesity derives from the complex interplay between the above-mentioned genes and the surrounding environment, physical activity, diet and gender, as described in a recent study conducted on a very large European population [23]. Noteworthy, fat distribution-related traits (WHR, WHR-adjusted BMI, WC-adjusted BMI and HIP-adjusted BMI) display a sexually dysmorphic pattern with higher heritability estimates in females compared with males, thus suggesting a stronger genetic contribution to these traits in females [24].

Studies investigating the relationship between dietary patterns and genetic predisposition to an elevated BMI have demonstrated that the genetic association with obesity was stronger among subjects with higher intake of sugar-sweetened beverages, as reported in the Nurses' Health Study (NHS) and in the Health Professionals Follow-Up Study (HPFS) cohorts [25].

Moreover, it should be noted that most GWAS, including those regarding obesity's susceptibility, have largely been conducted in European or East Asian populations, thus causing a gap in the genetic epidemiology of obesity in other populations [26].

3 Currently Available Obesity Treatments

The prevalence of obesity has increased worldwide in the last decades, reaching pandemic proportions. As a consequence, the development of preventive and therapeutic strategies for obesity management has become a major concern of public health and can only be accomplished through a multidisciplinary team [27].

The regulation of body weight is complex, and it is determined by a fine balance between energy intake and expenditure. An initial weight loss of 5–10% of total body weight constitutes one of the main goals in the therapy of obese patients, as it has proven to ameliorate life quality and reduce the risk of future comorbidities and all-cause mortality [28]. Beyond weight and BMI reduction, appropriate treatment aims include improvements in waist circumference and body composition [29]. The decision on which approach is the best one to adopt in order to treat individuals with overweight or obesity depends on many factors that encompass patients' health status, daily energy requirements and available resources.

3.1 Dietary Changes, Exercise and Behaviour Therapy

The first-line therapy for obesity is always represented by lifestyle modifications including both dietary interventions and increased physical activity, though they often fail to produce sustained weight loss [30]. In these circumstances, other weight-loss treatments, briefly discussed further on, may be considered, such as pharmacotherapy and bariatric surgery, depending on BMI risk category. Several obese patients are able to obtain considerable short-term weight loss by changing their eating habits alone, but long-term success is significantly more difficult to achieve [30]. There are many different suggested dietary patterns which vary according to their energy content or macronutrient composition. As far as dietary intervention is concerned, as recommended by the National Institute of Health (NIH), people with overweight and class I obesity should decrease their daily energy intake by approximately 500 kcal/day. Among different existing diets, very low carbohydrate diets have recently been described as novel successful and safe therapies for patients in obesity [31–33], even in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and chronic kidney disease [34, 35]. The use of food supplements in subjects with obesity has rapidly gained popularity: the benefits, although limited, may be a valid and safe support to lifestyle modifications [36].

Moreover, the addition of regular exercise to a weight-loss programme has considerable effects on obesity management. In this regard, people with obesity should practise at least 150 min of moderate-intensity physical activity per week, both to prevent further weight gain and to increase weight loss [37].

Furthermore, behavioural changes represent a crucial step in the treatment of obesity, as the latter often recognizes a psychological substrate and may be associated with psychopathological patterns such as depression and personality disorders. For these reasons, counselling with mental health experts and support groups can offer significant help in recognizing specific factors, stresses or situations which may have contributed to obesity development [38].

3.2 Prescription Weight-Loss Medication

Along with dietary interventions, in certain situations, pharmacological treatments may be considered in the management of obesity. Weight-loss medications approved by the European Medicines Agency (EMA) include three types of drugs, as follows:

- Orlistat is an intestinal lipase inhibitor which works by decreasing the absorption of fat ingested with the diet of about 30% [39].
- Liraglutide is an incretin-mimetic drug, used at a higher dose than that in diabetes. It works by binding to specific receptors in the

hypothalamic areas involved in food intake, thus increasing the sense of satiety and reducing appetite [39].
- The association of naltrexone and bupropion. The first drug is an opioid receptor antagonist, while the second one is an antidepressant, and they act synergistically at the arcuate nucleus of the hypothalamus, lowering the stimulus of appetite [39].

3.3 Metabolic Surgery

When dietary or pharmacological approaches fail, bariatric surgery may represent a valid option. Less invasive procedures with minor gastrointestinal involvement lead to significantly lower weight loss but have a substantially lower perioperative risk. Bariatric surgery is indicated in patients with severe obesity (BMI> 35 kg/m^2) with comorbidities such as diabetes or high blood pressure or in patients with morbid obesity BMI> 40 kg/m^2 [40].

Numerous lines of evidence indicate that surgery-induced weight loss is strongly associated with a reduction in early mortality and morbidity [41].

Common weight-loss surgeries include the following:

- Restrictive techniques which cause weight loss by decreasing gastric capacity (vertical ring gastroplasty, adjustable gastric banding, sleeve gastrectomy) [42]
- Malabsorptive techniques which shorten the length of the functional intestine and produce weight loss through a reduced absorption capacity of nutrients (biliopancreatic diversion with duodenal switch) [42]
- Mixed or partially malabsorptive restrictive techniques (Roux-en-Y gastric bypass) [42]

4 Latest Strategies for Obesity Treatment

A huge medical need exists for novel weight-loss therapies, with better efficacy and fewer side effects compared to the anti-obesity drugs currently approved. Latest weight-loss approaches, thanks to genome-wide association studies (GWASs), focused on obesity genetics and aimed at identifying additional genetic loci implicated in obesity risk, as novel therapeutical targets.

Among different pathways, in both the central nervous system (CNS) and the periphery, the leptin-melanocortin axis, the opioid system, the GLP-1/GLP-1 system and the FGF21/FGFR1c/b-Klotho axis are the most studied ones since they play an important role in the regulation of feeding behaviour and energy homeostasis [43].

4.1 Genome Editing Tools for Therapeutics in Obesity

CRISPR-based genome editing is a promising therapeutic technology for correcting genetic mutations in model systems ranging from cells in vitro to animals in vivo, and it has recently found possible applications in the treatment of many diseases, including obesity and metabolic syndrome [8, 44].

When energy intake overcomes expenditure, energy excess is stored primarily as lipids in white adipocytes. Mammals have two types of adipose tissue: white adipose tissue (WAT) and brown adipose tissue (BAT). WAT is used for energy storage, while BAT—due to its unique expression of uncoupling protein 1 (*UCP1*)—can transfer energy from food into heat, through the so-called classical non-shivering thermogenesis [45]. BAT is prevalent in newborn babies, representing a defence against hypothermia, but it progressively reduces with age, and in adult humans, BAT may even be absent [46]. In the last decade, growing interest has been directed to BAT, which has been proposed as a novel appealing therapeutic target to treat metabolic disorders [47].

As described by Wang et al., human brown-like (HUMBLE) cells can be created by engineering human white pre-adipocytes using CRISPR-Cas9-SAM-gRNA to activate endogenous uncoupling protein 1 expression. It has been demonstrated that transplantation of

HUMBLE cells in mice highly improves glucose tolerance and insulin sensitivity, through the activation of endogenous murine BAT mediated by arginine/nitric oxide (NO) metabolism. By treating obesity and metabolic disorders in mice, these results highlight the therapeutic potential of CRISPR-engineered HUMBLE cells [48].

Furthermore, it is well known that several genes are associated with obesity, and as a result, another potential approach of genome editing is represented by CRISPR-Cas9 targeting of mutated loci in pluripotent stem cells isolated from obese patients. In this regard, fat mass and obesity- associated (*FTO*) region is the first locus unequivocally associated with adiposity [49]. Over the last years, a clearer understanding of FTO function has been achieved, and a single nucleotide variant (SNV) of FTO allele (rs1421085 T-to-C) has been linked to the development of obesity [50]. Claussnitzer and colleagues have recently showed that this SNV can disrupt a conserved motif for the AT-rich interaction domain 5B (ARID5B) repressor, which can consequently determine an increase in iroquois homeobox 3 (*IRX3)* and iroquois homeobox 5 (*IRX5*) expression during early adipocyte differentiation. This results in the shift from beige to white adipocytes, with a concomitant reduction in mitochondrial thermogenesis and an increase in lipid storage. Interestingly, through the adoption of CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing, the repair of the ARID5B motif in primary adipocytes can revert *IRX3* and *IRX5* function, thus resulting in restored thermogenesis and activated browning expression [50].

Through genome editing strategies, researchers may also have the possibility to create animal models which recapitulate specific human genetic diseases, as well as monogenic forms of obesity. Along this line, CRISPR-Cas9 system has recently been adopted in mice to induce deletion mutations in the leptin (*Lep*) and leptin receptor (*Lepr*) genes—which have been already associated with obesity and diabetes in humans—thus generating obese and diabetic mouse models. In more details, co-microinjection of Cas9 mRNA and sgRNAs which specifically target *Lep* or *Lepr* in C57BL/6J embryos gives rise to mice exhibiting an obese phenotype, even in the first generation. These models are similar to the existing *ob*/*ob* and *db*/*db* lines that show weight gain, hepatic steatosis and hyperglycaemia. When compared to the latters, *Lep* and *Lepr* knockout models are easier to genotype, making them an attractive model for future metabolic disorder research [51].

A wide range of genes have been reported to cause human diseases due to haploinsufficiency that is the loss-of-function mutation in one gene copy which can consequently lead to reduced amounts of encoded protein. In this regard, among the emerging applications of CRISPR-Cas9-based gene editing, there are also novel techniques to treat obesity caused by haploinsufficient genes such as single-minded 1 (SIM1), MC4R, PCSK1, melanocortin 2 receptor accessory protein 2 (MRAP2) in the brain and IRX3 in fat or uncoupling protein 3 (UCP3) in mitochondria [52]. Intriguingly, as reported in a recent study, the CRISPR-mediated activation (CRISPRa)-recombinant adeno-associated virus injection into the hypothalamus leads to reversal of the obesity phenotype in SIM1 and MC4R haploinsufficient mice. These results suggest that CRISPRa can be used as a tool to rescue haploinsufficiency by up-regulating the expression of the endogenous functional allele [53].

Nevertheless, despite the fascinating putative use of CRISPR/Cas9 for treating obesity, strict ethical argument and monitoring regulation are essential when carrying out these therapeutic strategies in human patients in the next future.

5 Conclusions

Genome-wide association studies allowed us to identify additional genetic loci implicated in obesity risk. Thanks to these new discoveries, it has been possible to recognize genetic traits expressed in some populations. This led to the establishment of a genome editing model capable of repairing the associated defect in obesity and metabolic disorders. These futuristic approaches opened up exciting scenarios on how to treat monogenic forms and, even more importantly,

polygenic ones, which are the most common and currently represent a major burden worldwide. However, the analysis of the evidence reveals some aspects to be critically investigated starting from the population-specific interaction and the failure to replicate findings across GWAS. Even more delicate is the ethical question that could arise following the use of this genomic technique in non-communicable diseases in nutrition, unlike applications in fatal and/or oncological diseases.

Acknowledgements This work was supported by the PRIN 2017 Prot.2017L8Z2E, Italian Ministry of Education, Universities and Research.

Competing Financial Interests The authors declare no competing financial interests.

References

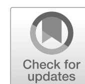
1. Watanabe M, Risi R, De Giorgi F, Tuccinardi D, Mariani S, Basciani S, Lubrano C, Lenzi A, Gnessi L (2021) Obesity treatment within the Italian national healthcare system tertiary care centers: what can we learn? Eat Weight Disord 26(3):771–778
2. World Health Organization (2020) Health topics. Obesity. https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/obesity-and-overweight
3. Okamura T, Hashimoto Y, Hamaguchi M, Obora A, Kojima T, Fukui M (2019) Ectopic fat obesity presents the greatest risk for incident type 2 diabetes: a population-based longitudinal study. Int J Obes 43(1):139–148
4. Seravalle G, Grassi G (2017) Obesity and hypertension. Pharmacol Res 122:1–7
5. Mariani S, Fiore D, Varone L, Basciani S, Persichetti A, Watanabe M, Saponara M, Spera G, Moretti C, Gnessi L (2012) Obstructive sleep apnea and bone mineral density in obese patients. Diabetes 5: 395–401
6. Risi R, Tuccinardi D, Mariani S, Lubrano C, Manfrini S, Donini LM, Watanabe M (2020) Liver disease in obesity and underweight: the two sides of the coin. A narrative review. Eat Weight Disord. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40519-020-01060-w
7. Braud S, Ciufolini M, Harosh I (2010) 'Energy expenditure genes' or 'energy absorption genes': a new target for the treatment of obesity and Type II diabetes. Future Med Chem 2(12):1777–1783
8. Franco-Tormo MJ, Salas-Crisostomo M, Rocha NB, Budde H, Machado S, Murillo-Rodriguez E (2018) CRISPR/Cas9, the powerful new genome-editing tool for putative therapeutics in obesity. J Mol Neurosci 65(1):10–16
9. Farooqi IS, O'Rahilly S (2004) Monogenic human obesity syndromes. Recent Prog Horm Res 59:409–424
10. Clement K, van den Akker E, Argente J, Bahm A, Chung WK, Connors H, De Waele K, Farooqi IS, Gonneau-Lejeune J, Gordon G, Kohlsdorf K, Poitou C, Puder L, Swain J, Stewart M, Yuan G, Wabitsch M, Kuhnen P, Setmelanotide P, Investigators LPT (2020) Efficacy and safety of setmelanotide, an MC4R agonist, in individuals with severe obesity due to LEPR or POMC deficiency: single-arm, open-label, multicentre, phase 3 trials. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 8(12):960–970
11. Huvenne H, Dubern B, Clement K, Poitou C (2016) Rare genetic forms of obesity: clinical approach and current treatments in 2016. Obes Facts 9(3):158–173
12. Pearce LR, Joe R, Doche ME, Su HW, Keogh JM, Henning E, Argetsinger LS, Bochukova EG, Cline JM, Garg S, Saeed S, Shoelson S, O'Rahilly S, Barroso I, Rui L, Farooqi IS, Carter-Su C (2014) Functional characterization of obesity-associated variants involving the alpha and beta isoforms of human SH2B1. Endocrinology 155(9):3219–3226
13. Gray J, Yeo G, Hung C, Keogh J, Clayton P, Banerjee K, McAulay A, O'Rahilly S, Farooqi IS (2007) Functional characterization of human NTRK2 mutations identified in patients with severe early-onset obesity. Int J Obes 31(2):359–364
14. Wabitsch M, Funcke JB, Lennerz B, Kuhnle-Krahl U, Lahr G, Debatin KM, Vatter P, Gierschik P, Moepps B, Fischer-Posovszky P (2015) Biologically inactive leptin and early-onset extreme obesity. N Engl J Med 372(1):48–54
15. Araujo-Vilar D, Santini F (2019) Diagnosis and treatment of lipodystrophy: a step-by-step approach. J Endocrinol Investig 42(1):61–73
16. Yang W, Kelly T, He J (2007) Genetic epidemiology of obesity. Epidemiol Rev 29:49–61
17. Goodarzi MO (2018) Genetics of obesity: what genetic association studies have taught us about the biology of obesity and its complications. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 6(3):223–236
18. Locke AE, Kahali B, Berndt SI, Justice AE, Pers TH, Day FR, Powell C, Vedantam S, Buchkovich ML, Yang J, Croteau-Chonka DC, Esko T, Fall T, Ferreira T, Gustafsson S, Kutalik Z, Luan J, Magi R, Randall JC, Winkler TW, Wood AR, Workalemahu T, Faul JD, Smith JA, Zhao JH, Zhao W, Chen J, Fehrmann R, Hedman AK, Karjalainen J, Schmidt EM, Absher D, Amin N, Anderson D, Beekman M, Bolton JL, Bragg-Gresham JL, Buyske S, Demirkan A, Deng G, Ehret GB, Feenstra B, Feitosa MF, Fischer K, Goel A, Gong J, Jackson AU, Kanoni S, Kleber ME, Kristiansson K, Lim U, Lotay V, Mangino M, Leach IM, Medina-Gomez C, Medland SE, Nalls MA, Palmer CD, Pasko D, Pechlivanis S, Peters MJ, Prokopenko I, Shungin D, Stancakova A, Strawbridge RJ, Sung YJ, Tanaka T, Teumer A, Trompet S, van der Laan SW, van Setten J,

Van Vliet-Ostaptchouk JV, Wang Z, Yengo L, Zhang W, Isaacs A, Albrecht E, Arnlov J, Arscott GM, Attwood AP, Bandinelli S, Barrett A, Bas IN, Bellis C, Bennett AJ, Berne C, Blagieva R, Bluher M, Bohringer S, Bonnycastle LL, Bottcher Y, Boyd HA, Bruinenberg M, Caspersen IH, Chen YI, Clarke R, Daw EW, de Craen AJM, Delgado G, Dimitriou M, Doney ASF, Eklund N, Estrada K, Eury E, Folkersen L, Fraser RM, Garcia ME, Geller F, Giedraitis V, Gigante B, Go AS, Golay A, Goodall AH, Gordon SD, Gorski M, Grabe HJ, Grallert H, Grammer TB, Grassler J, Gronberg H, Groves CJ, Gusto G, Haessler J, Hall P, Haller T, Hallmans G, Hartman CA, Hassinen M, Hayward C, Heard-Costa NL, Helmer Q, Hengstenberg C, Holmen O, Hottenga JJ, James AL, Jeff JM, Johansson A, Jolley J, Juliusdottir T, Kinnunen L, Koenig W, Koskenvuo M, Kratzer W, Laitinen J, Lamina C, Leander K, Lee NR, Lichtner P, Lind L, Lindstrom J, Lo KS, Lobbens S, Lorbeer R, Lu Y, Mach F, Magnusson PKE, Mahajan A, McArdle WL, McLachlan S, Menni C, Merger S, Mihailov E, Milani L, Moayyeri A, Monda KL, Morken MA, Mulas A, Muller G, Muller-Nurasyid M, Musk AW, Nagaraja R, Nothen MM, Nolte IM, Pilz S, Rayner NW, Renstrom F, Rettig R, Ried JS, Ripke S, Robertson NR, Rose LM, Sanna S, Scharnagl H, Scholtens S, Schumacher FR, Scott WR, Seufferlein T, Shi J, Smith AV, Smolonska J, Stanton AV, Steinthorsdottir V, Stirrups K, Stringham HM, Sundstrom J, Swertz MA, Swift AJ, Syvanen AC, Tan ST, Tayo BO, Thorand B, Thorleifsson G, Tyrer JP, Uh HW, Vandenput L, Verhulst FC, Vermeulen SH, Verweij N, Vonk JM, Waite LL, Warren HR, Waterworth D, Weedon MN, Wilkens LR, Willenborg C, Wilsgaard T, Wojczynski MK, Wong A, Wright AF, Zhang Q, LifeLines Cohort S, Brennan EP, Choi M, Dastani Z, Drong AW, Eriksson P, Franco-Cereceda A, Gadin JR, Gharavi AG, Goddard ME, Handsaker RE, Huang J, Karpe F, Kathiresan S, Keildson S, Kiryluk K, Kubo M, Lee JY, Liang L, Lifton RP, Ma B, McCarroll SA, McKnight AJ, Min JL, Moffatt MF, Montgomery GW, Murabito JM, Nicholson G, Nyholt DR, Okada Y, Perry JRB, Dorajoo R, Reinmaa E, Salem RM, Sandholm N, Scott RA, Stolk L, Takahashi A, Tanaka T, AAE V, Westra HJ, Zheng W, Zondervan KT, Mu TC, Arveiler D, Bakker SJ, Beilby J, Bergman RN, Blangero J, Bovet P, Campbell H, Caulfield MJ, Cesana G, Chakravarti A, Chasman DI, Chines PS, Collins FS, Crawford DC, Cupples LA, Cusi D, Danesh J, de Faire U, den Ruijter HM, Dominiczak AF, Erbel R, Erdmann J, Eriksson JG, Farrall M, Felix SB, Ferrannini E, Ferrieres J, Ford I, Forouhi NG, Forrester T, Franco OH, Gansevoort RT, Gejman PV, Gieger C, Gottesman O, Gudnason V, Gyllensten U, Hall AS, Harris TB, Hattersley AT, Hicks AA, Hindorff LA, Hingorani AD, Hofman A, Homuth G, Hovingh GK, Humphries SE, Hunt SC, Hypponen E, Illig T, Jacobs KB, Jarvelin MR, Jockel KH, Johansen B, Jousilahti P, Jukema JW, Jula AM, Kaprio J, JJP K, Keinanen-Kiukaanniemi SM, Kiemeney LA, Knekt P, Kooner JS, Kooperberg C, Kovacs P, Kraja AT, Kumari M, Kuusisto J, Lakka TA, Langenberg C, Marchand LL, Lehtimaki T, Lyssenko V, Mannisto S, Marette A, Matise TC, McKenzie CA, McKnight B, Moll FL, Morris AD, Morris AP, Murray JC, Nelis M, Ohlsson C, Oldehinkel AJ, Ong KK, PAF M, Pasterkamp G, Peden JF, Peters A, Postma DS, Pramstaller PP, Price JF, Qi L, Raitakari OT, Rankinen T, Rao DC, Rice TK, Ridker PM, Rioux JD, Ritchie MD, Rudan I, Salomaa V, Samani NJ, Saramies J, Sarzynski MA, Schunkert H, Schwarz PE, Sever P, Shuldiner AR, Sinisalo J, Stolk RP, Strauch K, Tonjes A, Tregouet DA, Tremblay A, Tremoli E, Virtamo J, Vohl MC, Volker U, Waeber G, Willemsen G, Witteman JC, Zillikens MC, Adair LS, Amouyel P, Asselbergs FW, Assimes TL, Bochud M, Boehm BO, Boerwinkle E, Bornstein SR, Bottinger EP, Bouchard C, Cauchi S, Chambers JC, Chanock SJ, Cooper RS, de Bakker PI, Dedoussis G, Ferrucci L, Franks PW, Froguel P, Groop LC, Haiman CA, Hamsten A, Hui J, Hunter DJ, Hveem K, Kaplan RC, Kivimaki M, Kuh D, Laakso M, Liu Y, Martin NG, Marz W, Melbye M, Metspalu A, Moebus S, Munroe PB, Njolstad I, Oostra BA, CNA P, Pedersen NL, Perola M, Perusse L, Peters U, Power C, Quertermous T, Rauramaa R, Rivadeneira F, Saaristo TE, Saleheen D, Sattar N, Schadt EE, Schlessinger D, Slagboom PE, Snieder H, Spector TD, Thorsteinsdottir U, Stumvoll M, Tuomilehto J, Uitterlinden AG, Uusitupa M, van der Harst P, Walker M, Wallaschofski H, Wareham NJ, Watkins H, Weir DR, Wichmann HE, Wilson JF, Zanen P, Borecki IB, Deloukas P, Fox CS, Heid IM, O'Connell JR, Strachan DP, Stefansson K, van Duijn CM, Abecasis GR, Franke L, Frayling TM, MI MC, Visscher PM, Scherag A, Willer CJ, Boehnke M, Mohlke KL, Lindgren CM, Beckmann JS, Barroso I, North KE, Ingelsson E, Hirschhorn JN, Loos RJ, Speliotes EK (2015) Genetic studies of body mass index yield new insights for obesity biology. Nature 518(7538):197–206

19. Vidal-Puig AJ, Considine RV, Jimenez-Linan M, Werman A, Pories WJ, Caro JF, Flier JS (1997) Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gene expression in human tissues. Effects of obesity, weight loss, and regulation by insulin and glucocorticoids. J Clin Investig 99(10):2416–2422
20. Hsueh WC, Cole SA, Shuldiner AR, Beamer BA, Blangero J, Hixson JE, MacCluer JW, Mitchell BD (2001) Interactions between variants in the beta3-adrenergic receptor and peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma2 genes and obesity. Diabetes Care 24(4):672–677

21. Wang H, Chu WS, Lu T, Hasstedt SJ, Kern PA, Elbein SC (2004) Uncoupling protein-2 polymorphisms in type 2 diabetes, obesity, and insulin secretion. Am J Phys Endocrinol Metab 286(1):1–7
22. Dempfle A, Hinney A, Heinzel-Gutenbrunner M, Raab M, Geller F, Gudermann T, Schafer H, Hebebrand J (2004) Large quantitative effect of melanocortin-4 receptor gene mutations on body mass index. J Med Genet 41(10):795–800
23. Tyrrell J, Wood AR, Ames RM, Yaghootkar H, Beaumont RN, Jones SE, Tuke MA, Ruth KS, Freathy RM, Davey Smith G, Joost S, Guessous I, Murray A, Strachan DP, Kutalik Z, Weedon MN, Frayling TM (2017) Gene-obesogenic environment interactions in the UK Biobank study. Int J Epidemiol 46(2):559–575
24. Pulit SL, Karaderi T, Lindgren CM (2017) Sexual dimorphisms in genetic loci linked to body fat distribution. Biosci Rep 37(1):184
25. Qi Q, Chu AY, Kang JH, Jensen MK, Curhan GC, Pasquale LR, Ridker PM, Hunter DJ, Willett WC, Rimm EB, Chasman DI, Hu FB, Qi L (2012) Sugar-sweetened beverages and genetic risk of obesity. N Engl J Med 367(15):1387–1396
26. Young KL, Graff M, Fernandez-Rhodes L, North KE (2018) Genetics of obesity in diverse populations. Curr Diab Rep 18(12):145
27. Mariani S, Watanabe M, Lubrano C, Basciani S, Migliaccio S, Gnessi L (2015) Interdisciplinary approach to obesity. In: Multidisciplinary approach to obesity: from assessment to treatment. Springer, New York, pp 337–342
28. Ryan DH, Yockey SR (2017) Weight loss and improvement in comorbidity: differences at 5%, 10%, 15%, and over. Curr Obes Rep 6(2):187–194
29. Yumuk V, Tsigos C, Fried M, Schindler K, Busetto L, Micic D, Toplak H (2015) European guidelines for obesity management in adults. Obes Facts 8(6): 402–424
30. Montesi L, El Ghoch M, Brodosi L, Calugi S, Marchesini G, Dalle Grave R (2016) Long-term weight loss maintenance for obesity: a multidisciplinary approach. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obesity J 9:37–46
31. Watanabe M, Tuccinardi D, Ernesti I, Basciani S, Mariani S, Genco A, Manfrini S, Lubrano C, Gnessi L (2020) Scientific evidence underlying contraindications to the ketogenic diet: an update. Obes Rev. https://doi.org/10.1111/obr.13053
32. Castellana M, Conte E, Cignarelli A, Perrini S, Giustina A, Giovanella L, Giorgino F, Trimboli P (2019) Efficacy and safety of very low calorie ketogenic diet (VLCKD) in patients with overweight and obesity: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Rev Endocr Metab Disord. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11154-019-09514-y
33. Basciani S, Camajani E, Contini S, Persichetti A, Risi R, Bertoldi L, Strigari L, Prossomariti G, Watanabe M, Mariani S, Lubrano C, Genco A, Spera G, Gnessi L (2020) Very-low-calorie ketogenic diets with whey, vegetable or animal protein in patients with obesity: a randomized pilot study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. https://doi.org/10.1210/clinem/dgaa336
34. Watanabe M, Tozzi R, Risi R, Tuccinardi D, Mariani S, Basciani S, Spera G, Lubrano C, Gnessi L (2020) Beneficial effects of the ketogenic diet on nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a comprehensive review of the literature. Obes Rev 21(8):e13024
35. Masi D, Risi R, Basciani S, Tuccinardi D, Mariani S, Lubrano C, Gnessi L, Watanabe M (2020) Very low-calorie ketogenic diets to treat patients with obesity and chronic kidney disease. J Ren Nutr. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.jrn.2020.09.001
36. Watanabe M, Risi R, Masi D, Caputi A, Balena A, Rossini G, Tuccinardi D, Mariani S, Basciani S, Manfrini S, Gnessi L, Lubrano C (2020) Current evidence to propose different food supplements for weight loss: a comprehensive review. Nutrients 12:9
37. Kim BY, Choi DH, Jung CH, Kang SK, Mok JO, Kim CH (2017) Obesity and physical activity. J Obesity Metabol Syndr 26(1):15–22
38. Kheniser K, Saxon DR, Kashyap SR (2021) Long-term weight loss strategies for obesity. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. https://doi.org/10.1210/clinem/dgab091
39. Khera R, Murad MH, Chandar AK, Dulai PS, Wang Z, Prokop LJ, Loomba R, Camilleri M, Singh S (2016) Association of Pharmacological Treatments for Obesity with weight loss and adverse events: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Am Med Assoc 315(22): 2424–2434
40. Nguyen NT, Varela JE (2017) Bariatric surgery for obesity and metabolic disorders: state of the art. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 14(3):160–169
41. Wolfe BM, Kvach E, Eckel RH (2016) Treatment of obesity: weight loss and bariatric surgery. Circ Res 118(11):1844–1855
42. Arterburn DE, Telem DA, Kushner RF, Courcoulas AP (2020) Benefits and risks of bariatric surgery in adults: a review. J Am Med Assoc 324(9):879–887
43. Jackson VM, Breen DM, Fortin JP, Liou A, Kuzmiski JB, Loomis AK, Rives ML, Shah B, Carpino PA (2015) Latest approaches for the treatment of obesity. Expert Opin Drug Discovery 10(8):825–839
44. Carroll D (2016) Genome editing: progress and challenges for medical applications. Genome Med 8(1):120
45. Ouellet V, Labbe SM, Blondin DP, Phoenix S, Guerin B, Haman F, Turcotte EE, Richard D, Carpentier AC (2012) Brown adipose tissue oxidative metabolism contributes to energy expenditure during acute cold exposure in humans. J Clin Invest 122(2): 545–552
46. Leitner BP, Huang S, Brychta RJ, Duckworth CJ, Baskin AS, McGehee S, Tal I, Dieckmann W, Gupta G, Kolodny GM, Pacak K, Herscovitch P, Cypess AM, Chen KY (2017) Mapping of human brown adipose tissue in lean and obese young men. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 114(32):8649–8654

47. Weir G, Ramage LE, Akyol M, Rhodes JK, Kyle CJ, Fletcher AM, Craven TH, Wakelin SJ, Drake AJ, Gregoriades ML, Ashton C, Weir N, van Beek EJR, Karpe F, Walker BR, Stimson RH (2018) Substantial metabolic activity of human brown adipose tissue during warm conditions and cold-induced lipolysis of local triglycerides. Cell Metab 27(6):1348–1355
48. Wang CH, Lundh M, Fu A, Kriszt R, Huang TL, Lynes MD, Leiria LO, Shamsi F, Darcy J, Greenwood BP, Narain NR, Tolstikov V, Smith KL, Emanuelli B, Chang YT, Hagen S, Danial NN, Kiebish MA, Tseng YH (2020) CRISPR-engineered human brown-like adipocytes prevent diet-induced obesity and ameliorate metabolic syndrome in mice. Sci Transl Med 12: 558
49. Frayling TM, Timpson NJ, Weedon MN, Zeggini E, Freathy RM, Lindgren CM, Perry JR, Elliott KS, Lango H, Rayner NW, Shields B, Harries LW, Barrett JC, Ellard S, Groves CJ, Knight B, Patch AM, Ness AR, Ebrahim S, Lawlor DA, Ring SM, Ben-Shlomo Y, Jarvelin MR, Sovio U, Bennett AJ, Melzer D, Ferrucci L, Loos RJ, Barroso I, Wareham NJ, Karpe F, Owen KR, Cardon LR, Walker M, Hitman GA, Palmer CN, Doney AS, Morris AD, Smith GD, Hattersley AT, McCarthy MI (2007) A common variant in the FTO gene is associated with body mass index and predisposes to childhood and adult obesity. Science 316(5826):889–894
50. Claussnitzer M, Dankel SN, Kim KH, Quon G, Meuleman W, Haugen C, Glunk V, Sousa IS, Beaudry JL, Puviindran V, Abdennur NA, Liu J, Svensson PA, Hsu YH, Drucker DJ, Mellgren G, Hui CC, Hauner H, Kellis M (2015) FTO obesity variant circuitry and adipocyte browning in humans. N Engl J Med 373(10):895–907
51. Roh JI, Lee J, Park SU, Kang YS, Lee J, Oh AR, Choi DJ, Cha JY, Lee HW (2018) CRISPR-Cas9-mediated generation of obese and diabetic mouse models. Exp Anim 67(2):229–237
52. Wang Z, Yang L, Qu S, Zhang C (2019) CRISPR-mediated gene editing to rescue haploinsufficient obesity syndrome. Protein Cell 10(10):705–708
53. Matharu N, Rattanasopha S, Tamura S, Maliskova L, Wang Y, Bernard A, Hardin A, Eckalbar WL, Vaisse C, Ahituv N (2019) CRISPR-mediated activation of a promoter or enhancer rescues obesity caused by haploinsufficiency. Science 363:6424



Genome Editing and Fatty Liver

Umar Hayat, Ali A. Siddiqui, Muhammad L. Farhan,
Ahmed Haris, and Nasir Hameed

Abstract

Fatty liver disease is characterized as nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and alcoholic liver disease (ALD). Fatty liver disease is one of the most common causes of chronic liver disease worldwide among adults and children. It is characterized by excessive fat accumulation in the liver cells. It has a genetically heterogenous background with complex pathogenesis and progressions and is accompanied by significant morbidity, mortality, and healthcare costs. NAFLD's risk factors include metabolic syndrome, abdominal obesity, type 2 diabetes, and atherogenic dyslipidemia. ALD is associated with the excessive consumption of alcohol. Here, we describe the functions of various proteins encoded by gene variants contributing to the pathogenesis of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and alcoholic fatty liver disease. Advancements in genome engineering technology have generated various in vivo and in vitro fatty liver disease models reflecting the genetic abnormalities contributing toward fatty liver disease. We will discuss currently developed different ALD and NAFLD models using the clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR/Cas9) genome editing tool.

Furthermore, we will also discuss the salient features of CRISPR/Cas9 editing technology and Cas9 variants such as prime and base editors to replicate genetic topographies linked specifically to ALD and NAFLD. The advantages and limitations of currently available genome delivery methods necessary for optimal gene editing will also be discussed in this review. This review will provide the essential guidance for appropriate genome editing tool selection and proper gene delivery approaches for the effective development of ALD and NAFLD models, leading to the development of clinical therapeutics for fatty liver disease.

Keywords

Fatty liver disease · Genome editing · Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) · Alcoholic liver disease (ALD) · Clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR/Cas9)

U. Hayat (✉)
Department of Population and Public Health, University of Kansas, Wichita, KS, USA

A. A. Siddiqui
Rocky Vista University College of Osteopathic Medicine, Denver, CO, USA

M. L. Farhan
Hospital Medicine United Regional Hospital, Wichita Falls, TX, USA

A. Haris
Hospital Medicine Wesley Medical Center, Wichita, KS, USA

N. Hameed
Guthrie Robert Packer Hospital, Sayre, PA, USA

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023
J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_13

1 Background

Alcoholic liver disease (ALD) and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) are the leading causes of chronic liver disease and have a worldwide prevalence of over 25% [1]. Both ALD and NAFLD are incredibly complex, multifactorial diseases and have multistage disease presentation and share common histological features such as hepatic triglyceride contents greater than 5%, steatohepatitis, hepatic fibrosis, and cirrhosis [1].

1.1 Pathophysiology of Alcoholic Liver Disease

The relationship between heavy long-term alcohol consumption and progressive damage of the liver cells has been widely accepted; however, only a minority of people who consume substantial levels of alcohol are at the risk of developing progressive liver disease [2]. Several human and animal studies have shown that sustained moderate to high alcohol consumption is associated with early and predictable hepatic steatosis. However, only a small subset progress to more advanced disease such as alcoholic steatohepatitis and hepatic fibrosis [3–5]. Permanent liver damage such as cirrhosis develops ultimately in approximately 10–20% of heavy drinkers [6, 7]. Genetic factors are also believed to contribute a 30–50% risk of developing liver cirrhosis [8]. Among the women and men who consume a similar amount of alcohol, women are more susceptible to developing ALD than men [9]. Twin studies and studies of ethnic differences have also highlighted that the genetic factors determine ALD development risk [10]. The prevalence of ALD is threefold higher among monozygotic twins than controlled pairs of adults independent of alcohol consumption [11, 12]. These findings provide strong evidence that there is a genetic predisposition of alcoholism to organ-specific complications. Heavy drinkers with cirrhosis are more likely to report a paternal death from liver disease than nondrinkers, adding further evidence to the genetic susceptibility [13]. Furthermore, Hispanic Whites (12.6 of 100,000) have the highest mortality from ALD, followed by non-Hispanic African Americans (7.4 of 100,000), non-Hispanic Whites (5.2 of 100,000), and Hispanic African Americans (1.8 of 100,000) [14].

1.2 Pathophysiology of Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease

NAFLD is defined as the excessive accumulation of triglyceride fat in more than 5% of the liver cells without any clear etiology such as viral hepatitis, drug use, and excessive alcohol consumption (>30 g/day for men and >20 g/day for women) [15]. NAFLD includes not only simple fatty liver but also more severe nonalcoholic steatohepatitis called NASH [16]. Histologically, NASH is defined as the presence of macrovascular steatosis, lobular inflammation, and ballooning of the hepatic cells [17]. NAFLD can progress to nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) due to hepatic injury, inflammation, and fibrosis, which can further progress to liver fibrosis, cirrhosis, liver failure, liver cancer, and many cardiovascular complications [18–23]. NAFLD diagnosis can only be made in the absence of significant alcohol use as the pathology of NAFLD is indistinguishable from the alcoholic fatty liver disease [16]. The ongoing global obesity pandemic has made NAFLD recognized as the most common metabolic disorder worldwide. It is also associated with long-term adverse events and mortality from complications such as liver failure, liver cirrhosis, and cardiovascular complications. Also, NASH is the second most common indication for liver transplantation after chronic hepatitis in the USA [24].

Risk factors associated with NAFLD include obesity, insulin resistance resulting from obesity, and metabolic syndrome. NAFLD can also be related to genetic polymorphisms, and they are also correlated with metabolic disorder and obesity [25]. A recent body of evidence has shown that genetic factors play a critical role in

determining NAFLD prevalence, the severity of the disease, and consequent prognosis. Moreover, studies have shown that NAFLD can also occur in 20% of the nonobese population, in association with recent weight gain, central obesity, dietary, and genetic factors [26].

In Asian countries, the incidence and prevalence of NAFLD are increasing despite lower obesity prevalence compared to the Western world [27]. Therefore, it is crucial to determine the contributing risk factors and the natural course of NAFLD development. According to the available research, the underlying disease etiology is considered to be multifactorial, and genetic factors play a substantial role. Depending on the study design, study methodology, and patient population ethnicity, NAFLD's heritability estimates range from 20 to 70% [28]. Furthermore, the heritability risk for fatty liver disease may be independent of the body mass index (BMI) heritability risk. Some family studies have shown that the prevalence of fatty liver disease could be lower in siblings than in parents of overweight children without NAFLD. It was noted to be more prevalent among siblings and parents of children with NAFLD [29] (Fig. 1).

Serum levels of liver injury markers such as alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and aspartate aminotransferase (AST) are used to diagnose ALD and NAFLD. Liver ultrasound and computerized tomography (CT) scans are used to detect liver steatosis and liver cirrhosis, respectively. Finally, liver biopsy is the standard test to diagnose the severity of the ongoing liver inflammation and the presence of liver fibrosis [30]. There is no approved treatment for fatty liver disease other than weight loss through physical activity and dietary changes

2 Genetic Variants and Fatty Liver Disease

2.1 Candidate Gene Studies

Several epidemiological studies have revealed many key genetic variants associated with fatty liver disease. Since both ALD and NAFLD share the same pathogenesis mechanism, similar gene categories have been selected for study based on the phenotypical characteristics of the encoded proteins [31]. These genes include those involved in alcohol metabolism, lipid metabolism, insulin resistance, and another common group of genes regulating cellular oxidative stress, endoplasmic reticulum stress, and cellular response to injury in hepatic cells. These genes have been selected from a limited pool of relevant genes that are already found associated with fatty liver disease [32].

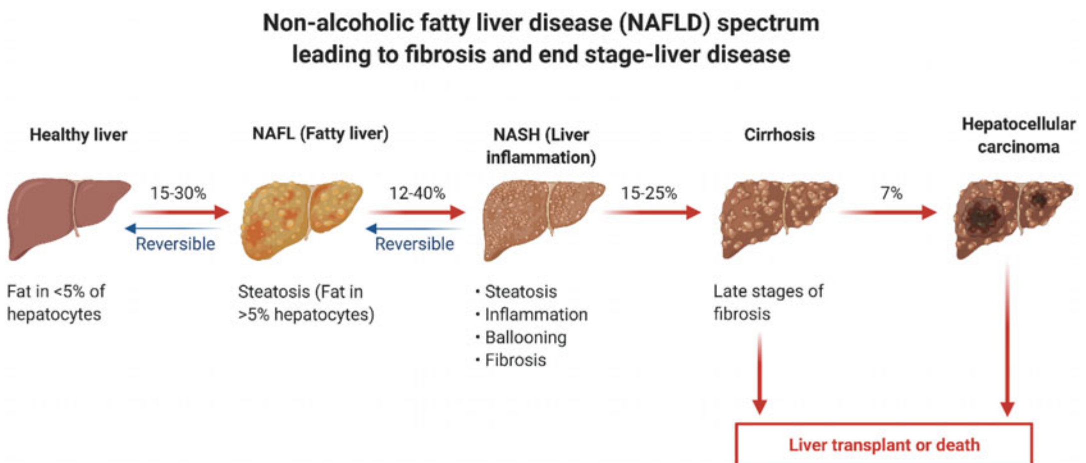


Fig. 1 Schematic illustration of fatty liver disease progression (Created with BioRender.com)

2.2 GWAS Findings

Also, several genome-wide association studies (GWAS) with single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) analysis have identified many genetic alleles associated with both ALD and NAFLD [33]. The research and understanding of these genetic variants can better understand the molecular pathology of fatty liver disease occurrence and progression. Some of the NAFLD-associated genetic variants were also subsequently found associated with ALD. The primary gene variants related to ALD and NAFLD have been described in Table 1.

2.3 Transmembrane 6 Superfamily 2 (TM6SF2)

Transmembrane 6 superfamily 2 (TM6SF2) is a genetic variant that encodes a protein containing 351 amino acids. This protein resides in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) and ER-Golgi apparatus intermediate compartment of human liver cells [25]. Studies in mice have shown that a small hairpin RNA (shRNA)-mediated TM6SF2 impairs very low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) from the hepatocytes [49]. Another study has identified an SNP in the TM6SF2 gene variant (rs58542926, C > T, E167K), which is associated with the development of fatty liver disease predominantly among European individuals. This variant is positively associated with increased levels of hepatocyte triglycerides and liver enzymes such as ALT. These allele carriers are slightly more likely to accumulate fats in the hepatocytes and develop fatty liver disease than those who do not have this allele [34, 50]. Furthermore, some recent studies have identified that the TM6SF2 rs58542926 gene variant is strongly correlated with chronic liver disease and severity of fatty liver diseases such as NASH, liver fibrosis, and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) [35, 51]. Another TM6SF2 variant (rs10401969, C > T) was identified in an expression quantitative trait locus (eQTL) analysis, which is also associated with the reduced expression of the TM6SF2 gene variant. Together these data suggest the critical role of TM6SF2 gene variant in triglyceride metabolism in hepatocytes and

Table 1 Genetic variations associated with ALD and NAFLD

Gene	Variant	Function	Phenotype
TM6SF2	rs58542926 C > T (E167K) rs10401969 C > T rs58542926	Hepatic VLDL secretion and triglyceride metabolism ALD associated with cirrhosis	Elevated serum ALT, AST, and triglycerides [34] Low levels of hepatic TM6SF2 mRNA correlated with larger hepatocellular lipid droplets [35] Increased serum lipid profile [36]
GCKR	rs1260326 T>C/T>G (P446L) rs780094 (C > T)	Glucokinase regulator	Associated with an increased hepatic TGs and LDL cholesterol levels, correlated with NASH severity [37] Associated with an increased hepatic TGs and a higher risk of liver fibrosis [38]
PNPLA3	rs738409 C > G rs738409	Triglyceride lipase function ALD associated with cirrhosis	Increased hepatic fat content, associated with a high risk of hepatic steatosis, fibrosis, and HCC [28] Increased serum lipid profile [15, 39, 40]
MBOAT7	rs641738 C > T rs626283	Phospholipid re-acylation ALD associated with cirrhosis	Associated with an increased hepatic TG and NAFLD, higher risk of HCC [41–44] Increased serum lipid profile
HMOX1	rs2071746 A > T	Protects against the hepatic oxidative stress	Increased serum ALT enzyme in pediatric NAFLD patients [45, 46]
ADH	ADH2*B, ADH2*1	Increased hepatic lipid droplets	Associated with ALD, more prevalent in cirrhosis. Also, associated with cirrhosis [47, 48]
ALDH	ALDH2*1 ALDH2*2	Increased hepatic lipid droplets	More frequent in ALD/cirrhosis Less frequent in ALD/cirrhosis [47, 48]

provide evidence of association of NAFLD formation with TM6SF2 gene variant (rs10401969) [52].

A recent candidate gene study has demonstrated an association between the TM6SF2 (E167K), ALD, and cirrhosis. This study provided evidence that this gene variant increases ALD risk and cirrhosis by 1.9-fold [53]. Moreover, a GWAS performed by Buch et al. provided evidence that TM6SF2 (rs58542926) increased the risk of ALD-associated risk of cirrhosis by 1.4-fold ($p = 0.022$). After adjusting for confounders (age, sex, body mass index, and type 2 diabetes), these results pointed out the common pathologic mechanism of ALD and NAFLD [36].

2.4 Glucokinase Regulator (GCKR)

Glucokinase regulator is a gene variant expressed in the hepatocytes and controls glucose metabolism by binding and transporting glucokinase. While some rare mutations in GCKR cannot be detected, it is suspected that p. Arg227Ter mutant allele is associated with the NAFLD in young adults [54, 55]. Recent meta-analyses have demonstrated that single-nucleotide polymorphisms in GCKR (rs1260326 and rs780094) are associated with the NASH and NAFLD picture of the liver [15, 29, 37]. These variants are also associated with increased levels of serum low-density lipoproteins (LDL) and triglycerides. Another epidemiological study further verified that the high TG and glucose levels are correlated with the rs780094 (C > T) variant of GCKR. This variant is also associated with the severity of liver fibrosis [38].

2.5 Patatin-Like Phospholipase Domain-Containing Protein 3 (PNPLA3)

Patatin-like phospholipase domain-containing protein 3 (PNPLA3) gene variant encodes a 481amino acid protein, which is highly expressed in the hepatocytes in humans and adipose tissue in mice. PNPLA3 is also called adiponutrin and is a triglyceride lipase mediating triglyceride hydrolysis in the fat cells [25]. African Americans, Hispanic, and European Americans are found to have SNP in this gene variant (PNPLA3, rs738409, C > G) known by GWAS, and this variant is positively associated with the development of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease [56]. This variant results in the substitution of base guanine for cytosine, changing isoleucine to methionine at codon 148 of gene variant PNPLA3. This subsequent polymorphism results in an increased level of fats in liver cells of these three populations. Several recent cohort studies have shown that the PNPLA3 polymorphism (rs738409, C > G) variant confers a high risk of NASH development, liver fibrosis, and HCC [50, 57, 58].

Furthermore, some theoretical gene studies also have demonstrated the role of PNPLA3 as a modifier of alcoholic liver disease [15]. This variant was also associated with the severity of ALD in a study done on the Mestizo population with an ancestry-adjusted odds ratio of 1.9 [39]. A recent meta-analysis of ten studies has shown that PNPLA3 (I148M) is linked with increased odds of cirrhosis in ALD by 2.1-fold in persons heterozygous for CG sequence and 3.37-fold in persons homozygous for GG allele sequence [40].

2.6 Membrane-Bound O-acetyltransferase Domain-Containing 7 (MBOAT7)

GWAS has identified a single-nucleotide polymorphism in membrane-bound O-acetyltransferase domain-containing 7 (MBOAT7), which encodes an enzyme protein involved in phospholipid re-acylation in the context of phospholipid remodeling in human liver cells [25]. Studies have shown that this genetic variant MBOAT7 (rs641738, C > T) confers an increased risk of hepatic triglycerides and is associated with increased NAFLD severity among Europeans [57, 58]. This variant is also associated with an increased level of liver enzymes such as ALT [41]. Moreover, this SLP also increases hepatocellular carcinoma risk

according to GWAS of an Italian NAFLD cohort [42].

2.7 Heme Oxygenase (HMOX1)

Heme oxygenase (HMOX1) is an enzyme in the liver that has a hepatoprotective effect from the oxidative stress caused by excessive heme in liver cells [25]. Genetic single-nucleotide polymorphisms in this enzyme's promoter region are associated with an increased serum ALT among NAFLD children [43]. Studies in mice have shown that the overexpression of HMOX1 (rs2071746 A < T) has a protective effect on NASH and NAFLD [44, 59].

2.8 Alcohol Dehydrogenase (ADH) and Aldehyde Dehydrogenase (ALDH)

Allelic variants of the genes encoding class I ADH and ALDH can encrypt enzymes with various activity levels. These variant enzymes have a role in modifying the susceptibility of liver damage by alcohol consumption and alcohol dependence leading to ALD [47]. CYP2E1 is another enzyme, and there are several polymorphic loci within this gene. CYP2E1 c2 expresses higher levels of protein and is more common in ALD patients [48].

3 Gene Editing Models for Fatty Liver Disease

Gene editing technology has provided scientists with an unprecedented opportunity to establish various gene models to treat several diseases lacking specific treatment. Some recent advances in gene editing science include the development of CRISPR-/Cas9-associated protein and transcription activator-like effecter nucleases (TALENs) gene editing techniques [60]. The CRISPR/Cas9 technique has revolutionized the gene editing industry and is the most widely used technique. It is easy to use, is not time-consuming, and is cost-effective [61].

3.1 CRISPR/Cas9: A Genome Editing Tool

CRISPR/Cas9 system was originally discovered in the eighteenth century as the molecular basis of the bacterial immune system, providing natural protection to the prokaryotic cells against the foreign viral pathogenic attack. CRISPR/Cas9 was reengineered by Doudna and Charpentier, and they identified it as a two-component more manageable system. It comprises a guide RNA (mRNA) and an enzyme part called Cas9 endonuclease. Furthermore, Church and Zhang practically applied this system for the genetic editing of the cultured human cells. Now, CRISPR/Cas9 has been used in the gene editing of many organisms for the identification and treatment of many diseases.

3.2 Mechanism of CRISPR/Cas9 Genome Editing

Genome editing by using CRISPR/Cas9 is a multistep process. It starts with the recognition and complementary binding to the foreign DNA sequence by gRNA [62]. The Cas9 endonuclease part then recognizes the adjacent protospacer motif (PAM) locus on the target DNA to generate a double-stranded break within the target region, three nucleotides upstream from PAM in a 5-NGG-3 sequence [63–66]. A DNA repair system then kicks off, either homology-directed repair (HDR) or a nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ) to rejoin the already created double-stranded DNA breaks. The HDR-mediated system works to integrate the donor DNA template into the breakpoints, whereas NHEJ-mediated system works to delete a part of DNA to generate deletion mutations. The system is commonly used for short deletions and works highly efficiently. Insertions of single gRNA into the target cells can generate deletions of less than ten base pairs

(bp) in length, whereas injecting multiple mRNAs into the cells can target many different DNA sites to generate large deletions of several kilobases [67]. This technique can also be used to insert or replace the specific DNA sequences in the genome, which requires the introduction of a donor DNA template and CRISPR/Cas9 simultaneously into the target cells.

3.3 CRISPR/Cas9-Mediated Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease (NAFLD) Models

Recently, advancements in the CRISPR/Cas9-mediated gene editing tools have enabled several NAFLD models both in vitro and in vivo. After verifying SNPs' specific links with NAFLD by functional analysis, the genetic variants can be modified to treat NAFLD [46]. Some of the CRISPR/Cas9-mediated NAFLD models have been described in Table 2.

3.3.1 Transmembrane 6 Superfamily 2 (TM6SF2)-Targeted Fatty Liver Disease Models

TM6SF2 rs58542926 (C > T) gene variant has been revealed by GWAS study that it plays a crucial role in cholesterol metabolism and is closely associated with the higher hepatic triglyceride accumulation and resulting high serum ALT levels [34, 49]. Fan et al. explored the pathophysiological role of TM6SF2 by disrupting this gene variant using CRISPR/Cas9 editing technology in mice [68]. They obtained TM6SF2 mutant mice containing a different base pair (C/G) insertion immediately after the gene's start codon. The mice with resultant TM6SF2 mutant gene variant showed a slight increase in the serum triglycerides, but there was no accumulation of hepatic TGs and rise of hepatic enzymes (ALT, AST) when compared with the wild-type mice-phenotype landscapes that did not correspond to features observed in human carriers of TM6SF2 rs58542926 gene variant [49]. These mutant mice showed a different lipid metabolism picture, and their plasma showed lower LDL levels, high-density lipids (HDL), and total cholesterol. These findings were consistent with the genetic studies done on human cells in the past. Another study used CRISPR /Cas9 editing technology to disrupt the TM6SF2 gene in zebra fish. They co-injected fish larvae with Cas9 mRNA and gRNA by targeting specific exons (3 or 4) of TM6SF2. Mutation of both lines showed an increased lipid accumulation in the zebra fish liver [69].

3.3.2 PNPLA3-Targeted Models

As described earlier, the PNPLA3 rs738409 (1148M) gene variant is an SNP associated with both ALD and NAFLD developments and is found in 30–50% of all subjects [28]. Luukkonen et al. determined the biological function of this

Table 2 CRISPR/Cas9-mediated NAFLD models

Target gene	Model organism	Outcome of genotype	Cas9 delivery method	Phenotype
TM6SF2 (rs58542926)	Mouse Zebrafish	Base C/G insertion after the start codon Partial deletion of exon 3 or exon 4	Microinjection Microinjection	A high-fat diet resulted in increased serum TGs [68] Increased lipid accumulation in hepatocytes [69]
GCKR (rs1260326)	Mouse	P446L	Microinjection	N/A (76)
PNPLA3 (rs738409)	Human epidermal carcinoma cell line (A431)	Two-base pair deletion after 146C I148M	Transfection Transfection	Increased hepatic lipids droplets [70] Increased accumulation of neutral lipids [70]
MBOAT7 (rs641738)	Human hepatocellular carcinoma cell line (HepG2)	Deletion of 31-base pair, 91-base pair, or 101-base pair	N/A	Increased hepatic fat accumulation [71]

SNP for the first time. They used CRISPR/Cas9 technique to introduce two different types of PNPLA3 mutations into the human cells [70]. As a result of this procedure, the HDR donor attained two cell lines: a homozygous PNPLA3 knockout (KO) cell line which contains a two-base pair deletion after 146 C and a homozygous PNPLA3-I148M knock-in (KI) cell line with a single (C > G)-nucleotide substitution. Both cell lines showed a frameshift of the PNPLA3 variant and a resultant premature termination of the translation process. Interestingly, the PNPLA3-I148M knock-in (KI) cell line showed increased triglycerides and other neutral lipids. Then they introduced both saturated and polyunsaturated fatty acids into these mutant cells and found that the polyunsaturated fatty acid introduction resulted in more lipid accumulation into both mutant cell lines (PNPLA3-I148M knock-in (KI), PNPLA3 knockout (KO)). They concluded that the PNPLA3 variant might serve as a polyunsaturated fatty acid hydrolase. This gene variant's loss can sequester liver triglycerides in polyunsaturated fatty acid direction, preventing ALD and NAFLD liver picture [65]. Further studies have demonstrated that the PNPLA3-I148M variant increases hepatocellular triglycerides and the risk of NASH, alcoholic, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, and hepatocellular carcinoma [72].

3.3.3 Miscellaneous Models

Some other gene variants are also associated with the NAFLD development, including the GCKR and MBOAT7 variants. In an experiment, Meroni et al. used BHEJ-mediated CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing technique to generate three human liver cell lines with deleted MBOAT7 gene containing 31-, 101-, and 917-bp deletions [71]. All the mutant cells showed an increased accumulation of fatty acids resulting in NAFLD. The mutant cells with the most extensive base deletion (917 bp) exhibited dramatically saturated and monounsaturated TGs in liver cells resulting in NAFLD. They found that the MBOAT7 variant plays a critical role in NAFLD development.

Similarly, Codner et al. determined the functional role of the GCKR variant. They used HDR-mediated CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing technique to establish GCKR 9446L in mice [73].

4 "Good Fit" Genome Editing Tool Selection for ALD and NAFLD Variant Replication

CRISPR/Cas9-mediated genome editing has opened a new era in the gene editing field; however, certain limitations are still associated with this technology. For instance, there are many limitations in generating precise target-specific point mutations and targeted precise base pair sequence replacement by using this technique. The efficiency of this system is very low (<5%) while performing HDR-mediated nucleotide insertion [74]. Also, nonhomologous end junction (NHEJ)-mediated CRISPR/Cas9 editing can only produce random point mutations and insertions [40]. Researchers have attempted to overcome these issues by generating advanced genome editing tools by using different Cas9 variants. Specific Cas9 variants are useful for reassembling ALD and NAFLD SNPs, and a careful selection of a good fit model from these variants can help establish research models mirroring specific genetic features of fatty liver disease [75].

4.1 Cutting-Edge Cas9 Variants

4.1.1 Base Editor for Fatty Liver Disease Genome Variants

The current gene editing techniques require a template double-stranded DNA breaks to be introduced at the target gene locus to start the gene correction [64]. Moreover, these techniques are inefficient and prone to error in introducing random base insertions and deletions at the locus site of interest [76]. Liu and colleagues used CRISPR/Cas9 variant to develop a base editor for generating specific point mutations. This base editor is unique in the way that it does not even require the donor DNA templates for functioning and can enable the direct irreversible conversion of one DNA base into another in a precise

programmable manner [77]. This base editor uses catalytically impaired Cas9 nuclease enzymes such as deadCas9 or Cas9 nickase. Both enzymes are incapable of inducing double-stranded base pairs (DBSs) [78]. They also linked the CRISPR/Cas9 to cytosine deaminase enzyme to form a cytosine base editor (CBE), which can substitute cytosine (C) for thymine (T) and is extremely efficient in producing point mutations; however, its ability to perform nucleotide substitutions is very limited to conversion of cytosine to thymine only. To address this issue and to broaden the target nucleotide range, they further developed an adenosine base editor (ABE) by linking adenosine deaminase with Cas9 enzymes (deadCas9 and Cas9 nickase) [79]. This new base editor functions by mutating adenosine (A) to guanine (G). Both editors are highly efficient in producing point mutations and are extremely useful for substituting single nucleotides in ALD and NAFLD producing gene variants. For instance, CBE could be used for mirroring TM6SF2 rs10401969 (C > T), TM6SF2 rs58542926 (C > T), GCKR rs780094 (T > C), GCKR rs1260326 (T > C), MBOAT7 rs641738 (T > C) NAFLD genome variants.

4.1.2 Prime Editor for ALD and NAFLD Genome Variants

One of the base editor's limitations is that it can only mutate a specific single nucleotide, and the replacement of a short stretch of DNA is technically challenging. To address this issue, Liu et al. further developed another editor known as a prime editor, which is highly specific in making insertions and point mutations without introducing DNA templates and DSBs within the target cells [80]. The prime editor used a prime editing gRNA (pegRNA) and a CRISPR/Cas9 nickase, further linked to another reverse transcriptase enzyme. The pegRNA is an extended version of the gRNA and contains a prime binding site and a reverse transcriptase template sequence for binding.

Mechanism of Action

Once the pegRNA portion of the prime editor recognizes the target gene sequence, the CRISPR/Cas9 nickase enzyme breaks and introduces a nick in the target genome adjacent to the recognition site called PAM. As a result, reverse transcriptase activates and forms a new DNA fragment by using pegRNA as a template starting at the 3-end sequence. As a result of this process, the newly synthesized DNA strand will incorporate into the target gene's nicked DNA strand. Furthermore, the complementary DNA strand is repaired by using the genome-edited strand as a template strand. Consequently, the prime editor can engender all types of DNA mutations, such as short insertions, short deletions, DNA sequence replacement, and other point mutations [80].

Advantages

The prime editor has several advantages over CRISPR/Cas9 and the base editor. Firstly, it can harvest more precise gene insertions and point mutations than NHEJ-mediated CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing. Secondly, its target range is more flexible than the NDR-mediated genome insertions as it can introduce a point mutation far from the nick site (>30 bp) introduced by nickase [63]. Lastly, the prime editors are capable of generating both transversion (purine base to pyrimidine, A or G to T or C) and transition mutations (purine to purine, C to T or G to A) [66, 67]. These advantages make the prime editor a better choice to generate NAFLD polymorphisms such as PNPLA3 rs738409 (C > G) and HMOX1 (rs2071746 (A > T).

4.2 Gene Delivery Methods for Refining Efficacy of Gene Editing Process

4.2.1 Nonviral Delivery Methods

CRISPR/Cas9-based genome editing is evolving and is one of the most powerful strategies available (Table 3). Currently, various gene delivery methods for CRISPR/Cas9 have been investigated to optimize genome editing efficacy and efficiency in treating different diseases. The components of the CRISPR/Cas9 system can be introduced into the cells in three different

Table 3 Gene delivery methods for genome editing

Type	Method of delivery	Advantages	Limitations	Reference
Nonviral	Liposomes	Simple method, cost-effective, and easy to manipulate	It can be performed in vitro only, endosomal degradation of cargo system, and specific cell tropism	[64, 75, 77, 79]
	Gold nanoparticles	Inert and have low immune reaction and response	N/A	[81]
	Electroporation/ nucleofection	Well-characterized method, delivery to cell population	Can be performed in vitro only; some cells are not suitable	[65, 82]
	Microinjection	Efficient germline cell delivery	Laborious procedure, technically challenging	[67, 83]
Viral	Adeno-associated virus (AVV)	Efficient delivery to both nondividing and dividing cells	Low genome capacity, only 5 kb nucleic acids can be delivered	[84, 85]
	Adenovirus	High genome capacity up to 30 kb nucleic acids, higher efficiency	Induce adaptive immune responses	[86]
	Retrovirus	High efficiency, persistent gene expression	Infect only dividing cells may cause unwanted genome integration	[87]
	Lentivirus	Higher genome capacity of 10 kb causes long-term gene expression	Unwanted gene integration induces a strong reactive immune response	[88]
	Baculoviral	Extremely high genome capacity (>100 kb), minimal immune response	N/A	[89]

platforms. It can be introduced as gRNA and Cas9 mRNA and DNA plasmids which encode gRNA and/or Cas9 and lastly in the form of gRNA and a Cas9 protein [64, 83, 90, 91]. Initial studies have shown the introduction of Cas9 into the cells and mouse embryos in the form of mRNA and DNA plasmids. Afterward, the CRISPR/Cas9 system has been introduced in the form of ribonucleoprotein. However, several studies have reported a little off-target cleavage rate compared to the plasmid DNA form [81, 82, 92].

There are two well-characterized and guaranteed gene delivery methods for CRISPR/Cas9. Electroporation has been the most common in vitro delivery method for CRISPR/Cas9 into the cells, and for in vivo delivery, microinjection has been the standard method for all models in animal cells [65, 93–95]. The efficacy of the electroporation methods is mainly dependent on the type of cell to be engineered. On the other hand, the microinjection method requires a skillful hand and is technically challenging [96, 97]. Specific CRISPR/Cas9 variants such as base editors and prime editors have been introduced into the cells in the form of DNA plasmids [77, 79, 80]. Liposomes are used to deliver these DNA plasmids because they are cost-effective and can easily be managed; however, their use is limited only to in vivo delivery [94]. This delivery method can be affected by the endosomal degradation of the liposomes. An altered way of Cas9 delivery method is the use of gold nanoparticles, which are very effective in introducing the CAS9 into the cells and organs in the form of mRNA or protein [98]. These particles are also inert and produce no or very little immune response if they are better characterized by clinical application.

4.2.2 Viral Delivery Methods

Various viral vectors have been used for gene editing to improve the gene delivery system's efficacy further (Table 3). Adeno-associated viruses (AVVs) is one of these viral vectors; they have been widely used and are known for their efficacy infecting both dividing and nondividing cells [84]. However, this viral vector has a small genome packaging capacity (4.7 kb) relative to the Cas9 size (4.1kb) and is not suitable for

the introduction of the donor DNA template. However, it has been very effective for the smaller CRISPR/Cas9 gene variants such as vjCas9 (2.95 kb), saCas9 (3.116 kb), and Cpf (3.9 kb) [85, 99–101]. Adenoviruses can also be used as viral vectors for gene delivery, and they have a much larger genome capacity to carry than the adeno-associated viruses, but they can induce a strong reactive immune response in host cells [96]. Furthermore, lentiviral or retroviral vectors have a larger gene-carrying capacity than AVVs, but they can induce undesirable genome incorporation into the host cells. They are also linked with causing a strong unwanted immune response in the hosts [98]. Some recent studies have reported the use of baculoviral vectors for gene editing [89, 100]. They possess the essential capacity to carry gRNA expression constructs and nuclease along with the HDR targeting sequences. Baculoviral (>100 kb) vectors have certain advantages over the other viral vectors [102]. Firstly, they have a much larger genome transfer capacity; secondly, they are safer than other viral vectors as they can only replicate within their original host insect cells, leading to fewer chances for host immune response induction [103]. Future studies are needed for baculoviral vectors to validate their clinical application in genome editing.

5 Discussion

Fatty liver disease is the most common chronic liver disease worldwide. It is a multifactorial disease that is influenced by both genetic and environmental factors. Environmental factors are the major determinants of NAFLD and include a sedentary lifestyle, obesity, and inapt dietary patterns. Excessive alcohol consumption is exponentially associated with ALD development. Moreover, certain genetic factors also provide the basis for the onset of the disease and its severity. Several recent cohort studies and GWAS have identified several genetic variants (SNPs) associated with fatty liver disease [39, 49, 56, 59]. However, some functional studies are required to truly verify these SNPs' physiological role in the progression of ALD and NAFLD. Many NAFLD models have been generated using shRNA, siRNA morpholinos, or conventional Cre/loxP recombination technique and have been described in the literature. However, these tools can only inhibit gene expressions but are incapable of carrying out single-nucleotide gene substitutions required for copying NAFLD-associated single-nucleotide proteins (SNPs). The conventional Cre/loxP system can cause single-nucleotide mutations and may lead to NAFLD model mutations; however, it is technically challenging and arduous to perform [49, 104–107].

CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing tool has been swiftly adopted for gene editing and generation of NAFLD models since its development. Recently, remarkable progress has been made to improve the CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing tool efficacy and safety. Safe CRISPR/Cas9 delivery systems can help edit specific diseased tissues in vivo and enhance broad clinical translation [68, 70, 71, 73]. The CRISPR/Cas9 system has a larger Cas9 nuclease, which makes its encapsulation in both viral and nonviral delivery systems a challenge. However, several approaches have been used to overcome these impediments, and these large molecules are delivered as nucleic acids or protein molecules in the hepatic cells. The NHEJ-mediated CRISPR/Cas9 system can produce gene deletions, but its efficacy is very low. Similarly, the efficacy of HDR-mediated insertion is also quite low [64, 65].

Most of the ALD and NAFLD models generated and studied are from animals and do not correlate well with the human data. The current study suggests that certain CRISPR/Cas9 variants such as the prime editor and the base editors can be used to introduce SNPs into NAFLD model generation cells. We recommend using a prime editor for establishing purine-pyrimidine mutations, and ABE and CBE would be suitable for generating purine-to-purine mutations for NAFLD models. Together these tools ensure more sophisticated and precise genome editing.

6 Future Implications

The gene editing field has been revolutionized by the advent of various Cas9 variants and CRISPR/Cas9. However, this gene editing technique is also associated with some off-target events which have been problematic from clinical application standpoints [86, 107]. For instance, base editors can generate some undesirable bystander edits during the gene editing process [71]. Several recent studies on whole-genome sequencing analyses have demonstrated that ABEs are associated with inducing much lower off-target gene effects than CBEs [108]. However, there is not much known about prime editors' off-target effects and more studies need to be done. Also, to optimize the efficacy of the gene editing system for many modern diseases, selecting an appropriate delivery method is imperative.

Furthermore, more studies are needed to elaborate on the precise benefits and shortcomings of the gene delivery systems. Among the available gene delivery options, gold nanoparticles and baculoviral vectors are considered a good fit for in vitro and in vivo gene delivery, respectively. A successful establishment and promotion of genuine ALD and NAFLD models require a systematic strategy for selecting a good fit gene editing tool and a suitable gene delivery method into the target cells. Consequently, these ALD and NAFLD models will identify the underlying disease onset and pathophysiology progression, which can be fixed using proper CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing tools. Lastly, both ALD and NAFLD SNPs can also serve as biomarkers for disease diagnosis and clinical targets for genome therapy.

7 Conclusions

The revolution in genome engineering has helped establish various disease models that can mimic genetic variants. CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing can primarily generate deletion mutations of the target genome, and it has been used to generate both in vivo and in vitro fatty liver disease models. Additionally, Cas9 variants such as prime and base editors can generate specific point mutations and gene sequence substitutions. The successful establishment of the fatty liver disease models for therapeutic development requires a suitable genome editing tool and an efficient and robust gene delivery method.

Acknowledgments and Financial Interests The authors declare no financial interests linked to this book chapter.

References

1. Brunt EM, Wong VW, Nobil V, Day CP, Sookoian S, Maher JJ, Bugianesi E, Sirlin CB, Neuschwander-Tetri BA, Rinella ME (2015) Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Nat Rev Dis Primers 2015:1–61
2. Anstee QM, Targher G, Day CP (1965) Progression of NAFLD to diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular disease or cirrhosis. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 10: 330–344
3. Lieber CS, Jones DP, Decarli LM (1965) Effects of prolonged ethanol intake: production of fatty liver despite adequate diets. J Clin Investig 44:1009–1021
4. Lieber CS, Decarli LM (1976) Animal models of ethanol dependence and liver injury in rats and baboons. Fed Proc 35:1232–1236
5. Brandon-Warner E, Schrum LW, Schmidt CM (2012) Rodent models of alcoholic liver disease: of mice and men. Alcohol 46(8):715–725
6. Bellentani S, Saccoccio G, Costa G (1997) Drinking habits as cofactors of risk for alcohol induced liver damage. Gut 41(6):845–850
7. Becker U, Deis A, Sorensen T (1996) Prediction of risk of liver disease by alcohol intake, sex, and age: a prospective population study. Hepatology 23(5): 1025–1029
8. Hirschhorn JN, Gajdos ZK (2011) Genome-wide association studies: results from the first few years and potential implications for clinical medicine. Annu Rev Med 62:11–24
9. Sato N, Lindros KO, Baraona E (2001) Sex difference in alcohol-related organ injury. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 25(5):40S–45S
10. Stinson FS, Grant BF, Dufour MC (2001) The critical dimension of ethnicity in liver cirrhosis mortality statistics. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 25:1181–1187
11. Reed T, Page WF, Viken RJ (1996) Genetic predisposition to organ-specific endpoints of alcoholism. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 20(9):1528–1533
12. Hrubec Z, Omenn GS (1981) Evidence of genetic predisposition to alcoholic cirrhosis and psychosis: twin concordances for alcoholism and its biological

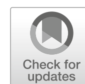
end points by zygosity among male veterans. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 5(2):207–215
13. Whitfield JB, Rahman K, Haber PS (2015) Brief report: genetics of alcoholic cirrhosis-GenomALC multinational study. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 39:836–842
14. Said A, Williams J, Holden J (2004) The prevalence of alcohol-induced liver disease and hepatitis C and their interaction in a tertiary care setting. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2(10):928–934
15. Anstee QM, Day CP (2013) The genetics of NAFLD. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 10:645–655
16. Masuoka HC, Chalasani N (2013) Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: an emerging threat to obese and diabetic individuals. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1281(1):106–122
17. Sanyal AJ, Brunt EM, Kleiner DE (2011) Endpoints and clinical trial design for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Hepatology 54(1):344–353
18. Bettermann K, Hohensee T, Haybaeck J (2014) Steatosis and steatohepatitis: complex disorders. Int J Mol Sci 15(6):9924–9944
19. Haybaeck J, Stumptner C, Thueringer A (2012) Genetic background effects of keratin 8 and 18 in a DDC-induced hepatotoxicity and Mallory-Denk body formation mouse model. Lab Investig 92:857–867
20. Zatloukal B, Kufferath I, Thueringer A (2014) Sensitivity and specificity of in situ proximity ligation for protein interaction analysis in a model of steatohepatitis with Mallory-Denk bodies. PLoS ONE 9(5):e96690
21. Younossi ZM, Koenig AB, Abdelatif D (2016) Global epidemiology of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-meta-analytic assessment of prevalence, incidence, and outcomes. Hepatology 64(1):73–84
22. Bettermann K, Mehta AK, Hofer EM (2016) Keratin 18-deficiency results in steatohepatitis and liver tumors in old mice: A model of steatohepatitis-associated liver carcinogenesis. Oncotarget 7(45): 73309–73322
23. Golob-Schwarzl N, Bettermann K, Mehta AK (2019) High keratin 8/18 ratio predicts aggressive hepatocellular cancer phenotype. Transl Oncol 12:256–268
24. Mikolasevic I, Milic S, Turk Wensveen T (2016) Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease - a multisystem disease? World J Gastroenterol 22(43):9488–9505
25. Severson TJ, Besur S, Bonkovsky HL (2016) Genetic factors that affect nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic clinical review. World J Gastroenterol 22(29):6742–6756
26. Younes R, Bugianesi E (2019) NASH in lean individuals. Semin Liver Dis 39(1):86–95
27. Kim HJ, Kim HJ, Lee KE (2004) Metabolic significance of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in nonobese, nondiabetic adults. Arch Intern Med 164(19): 2169–2175
28. Sookoian S, Pirola CJ (2017) Genetic predisposition in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 23(1):1–12
29. Loomba R, Schork N, Chen CH (2015) Heritability of hepatic fibrosis and steatosis based on a prospective twin study. Gastroenterology 149:1784–1793
30. Machado MV, Cortez-Pinto H (2014) Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: what the clinician needs to know. World J Gastroenterol 20:12956–12980
31. Cardon LR, Bell JI (2001) Association study designs for complex diseases. Nat Rev Genet 2:91–99
32. Hirschhorn JN (2009) Genomewide association studies– illuminating biologic pathways. N Engl J Med 360:1699–1701
33. Chalasani N, Guo X, Loomba R (2010) Genome-wide association study identifies variants associated with histologic features of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Gastroenterology 139:1567–1576
34. Liu YL, Reeves HL, Burt AD, Tiniakos D, McPherson S, Leathart JB, Allison ME, Alexander GJ, Piguet AC (2014) TM6SF2 rs58542926 influences hepatic fibrosis progression in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Nat Commun 5:4309
35. Mahdessian H, Taxiarchis A, Popov S, Silveira A (2014) TM6SF2 is a regulator of liver fat metabolism influencing triglyceride secretion and hepatic lipid droplet content. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111(24): 8913–8918
36. Buch S, Stickel F, Trepo E (2015) A genome-wide association study confirms PNPLA3 and identifies TM6SF2 and MBOAT7 as risk loci for alcohol-related cirrhosis. Nat Genet 47:1443–1448
37. Speliotes EK, Yerges-Armstrong LM, Wu J, Hernaez R, Kim LJ, Palmer CD (2011) Genome-wide association analysis identifies variants associated with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease that have distinct effects on metabolic traits. PLoS Genet 7:1001324
38. Petta S, Miele L, Bugianesi E, Camma C, Rosso C, Boccia S, Cabibi D, Di Marco V, Grimaudo S, Grieco A (2014) Glucokinase regulatory protein gene polymorphism affects liver fibrosis in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. PLoS ONE 9:e87523
39. Falleti E, Cussigh A, Cmet S (2016) PNPLA3 rs738409 and TM6SF2 rs58542926 variants increase the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in alcoholic cirrhosis. Dig Liver Dis 48:69–75
40. Hayashi S, Watanabe J, Kawajiri K (1991) Genetic polymorphisms in the 50 flanking regions change transcriptional regulation of the human cytochrome P450 IIE1 gene. J Biochem 10:559–565
41. Buch S, Stickel F, Trepo E, Way M, Herrmann A, Nischalke HD, Brosch M, Rosendahl J, Berg T, Ridinger M (2015) A genome-wide association study confirms PNPLA3 and identifies TM6SF2 and MBOAT7 as risk loci for alcohol-related cirrhosis. Nat Genet 47:1443–1448
42. Mancina RM, Dongiovanni P, Petta S, Pingitore P, Meroni M, Rametta R, Boren J, Montalcini T, Pujia A, Wiklund O (2016) The MBOAT7-TMC4 variant rs641738 increases risk of nonalcoholic fatty

liver disease in individuals of European descent. Gastroenterology 150:1219–1230.e6
43. Viitasalo A, Eloranta AM, Atalay M, Romeo S, Pihlajamaki J, Lakka TA (2016) Association of MBOAT7 gene variant with plasma ALT levels in children: the PANIC study. Pediatr Res 80(5): 651–655
44. Donati B, Dongiovanni P, Romeo S, Meroni M, McCain M, Miele L, Petta S, Maier S, Rosso C, De Luca L (2017) MBOAT7 rs641738 variant and hepatocellular carcinoma in non-cirrhotic individuals. Sci Rep 7:4492
45. Salley TN, Mishra M, Tiwari S, Jadhav A, Ndisang JF (2013) The heme oxygenase system rescues hepatic deterioration in the condition of obesity co-morbid with type-2 diabetes. PLoS ONE 8:e79270
46. Hinds TD Jr, Sodhi K, Meadows C, Fedorova L, Puri N, Kim DH, Peterson SJ, Shapiro J, Abraham NG, Kappas A (2014) Increased HO-1 levels ameliorate fatty liver development through a reduction of heme and recruitment of FGF21. Obesity 22:705–712
47. Tian C, Stokowski RP, Kershenobich D (2010) Variant in PNPLA3 is associated with alcoholic liver disease. Nat Genet 42:21–23
48. Salameh H, Raff E, Erwin A (2015) PNPLA3 gene polymorphism is associated with predisposition to and severity of alcoholic liver disease. Am J Gastroenterol 110:846–856
49. Kozlitina J, Smagris E, Stender S (2014) Exome-wide association study identifies a TM6SF2 variant that confers susceptibility to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Nat Genet 46:352–356
50. Sookoian S, Castaño GO, Scian R, Mallardi P, Fernández Gianotti T, Burgueño AL, San Martino J, Pirola CJ (2015) Genetic variation in transmembrane 6 superfamily member 2 and the risk of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and histological disease severity. Hepatology 61(2):515–525
51. Chen X, Zhou P, De L, Li B (2019) The roles of transmembrane 6 superfamily member 2 rs58542926 polymorphism in chronic liver disease: a meta-analysis of 24,147 subjects. Mol Genet Genom Med 7(8):e824
52. DiStefano JK, Kingsley C, Craig Wood G, Chu X, Argyropoulos G, Still CD, Doné SC, Legendre C, Tembe W, Gerhard GS (2015) Genome-wide analysis of hepatic lipid content in extreme obesity. Acta Diabetol 52(2):373–382
53. Way M, Atkinson S, McQuillin A (2015) A functional variant in tm6sf2 associates with alcohol related cirrhosis risk in a British and Irish population. J Hepatol 62(Suppl 2):S772
54. Pirola CJ, Flichman D, Dopazo H, Fernández Gianotti T, San Martino J, Rohr C, Garaycoechea M, Gazzi C, Castaño GO, Sookoian S (2018) A rare nonsense mutation in the glucokinase regulator gene is associated with a rapidly progressive clinical form of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Hepatol Commun 2(9):1030–1036
55. Li J, Zhao Y, Zhang H, Hua W, Jiao W, Du X, Rui J, Li S, Teng H, Shi B, Yang X, Zhu L (2020) Contribution of Rs780094 and Rs1260326 polymorphisms in GCKR gene to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a meta-analysis involving 26,552 participants. Endocr Metab Immune Disord 20:1696–1708
56. Romeo S, Kozlitina J, Xing C, Pertsemlidis A, Cox D, Pennacchio LA, Boerwinkle E, Cohen JC, Hobbs HH (2008) Genetic variation in PNPLA3 confers susceptibility to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Nat Genet 40:1461–1465
57. Liu YL, Patman GL, Leathart JB, Piguet AC, Burt AD, Dufour JF, Day CP, Daly AK, Reeves HL, Anstee QM (2014) Carriage of the PNPLA3 rs738409 C > G polymorphism confers an increased risk of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease associated hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 61:75–81
58. Xu R, Tao A, Zhang S, Deng Y, Chen G (2015) Association between patatin-like phospholipase domain containing 3 gene (PNPLA3) polymorphisms and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: HuGE review and meta-analysis. Sci Rep 5:9284
59. Chang PF, Lin YC, Liu K, Yeh SJ, Ni YH (2015) Heme oxygenase-1 gene promoter polymorphism and the risk of pediatric nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Int J Obes 39:1236–1240
60. Gaj T, Gersbach CA, Barbas CF (2013) ZFN, TALEN, and CRISPR/Cas-based methods for genome engineering. Trends Biotechnol 31:397–405
61. Alves-Bezerra M, Furey N, Johnson CG, Bissig KD (2019) Using CRISPR/Cas9 to model human liver disease. JHEP Rep 1:392–402
62. Barrangou R (2015) The roles of CRISPR-Cas systems in adaptive immunity and beyond. Curr Opin Immunol 32:36–41
63. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337:816–821
64. Cong L, Ran FA, Cox D, Lin S, Barretto R, Habib N, Hsu PD, Wu X, Jiang W, Marraffini LA (2013) Multiplex genome engineering using CRISPR/Cas systems. Science 339:819–823
65. Mali P, Yang L, Esvelt KM, Aach J, Guell M, DiCarlo JE, Norville JE, Church GM (2013) RNA-guided human genome engineering via Cas9. Science 339:823–826
66. Hsu PD, Lander ES, Zhang F (2014) Development and applications of CRISPR-Cas9 for genome engineering. Cell 157:1262–1278
67. Shin HY, Wang C, Lee HK, Yoo KH, Zeng X, Kuhns T, Yang CM, Mohr T, Liu C, Hennighausen L (2017) CRISPR/Cas9 targeting events cause complex deletions and insertions at 17 sites in the mouse genome. Nat Commun 8:15464
68. Fan Y, Lu H, Guo Y, Zhu T, Garcia-Barrio MT, Jiang Z, Willer CJ, Zhang J, Chen YE (2016) Hepatic

transmembrane 6 superfamily member 2 regulates cholesterol metabolism in mice. Gastroenterology 150:1208–1218

69. O'Hare EA, Yang R, Yerges-Armstrong LM, Sreenivasan U, McFarland R, Leitch CC, Wilson MH, Narina S, Gorden A, Ryan KA (2017) TM6SF2 rs58542926 impacts lipid processing in liver and small intestine. Hepatology 65:1526–1542
70. Luukkonen PK, Nick A, Holtta-Vuori M, Thiele C, Isokuortti E, Lallukka-Bruck S, Zhou Y, Hakkarainen A, Lundbom N, Peltonen M (2019) Human PNPLA3-I148M variant increases hepatic retention of polyunsaturated fatty acids. JCI Insight 4:e127902
71. Meroni M, Dongiovanni P, Longo M, Carli F, Baselli G, Rametta R, Pelusi S, Badiali S, Maggioni M, Gaggini M (2020) Mboat7 down-regulation by hyper-insulinemia induces fat accumulation in hepatocytes. EBioMedicine 52:102658
72. Trépo E, Romeo S, Zucman-Rossi J, Nahon P (2016) PNPLA3 gene in liver diseases. J Hepatol 65(2): 399–412
73. Codner GF, Mianne J, Caulder A, Loeffler J, Fell R, King R, Allan AJ, Mackenzie M, Pike FJ, McCabe CV (2018) Application of long single-stranded DNA donors in genome editing: generation and validation of mouse mutants. Br Med J 16:70
74. Liu M, Rehman S, Tang X, Gu K, Fan Q, Chen D, Ma W (2018) Methodologies for improving HDR efficiency. Front Genet 9:691
75. Anzalone AV, Koblan LW, Liu DR (2020) Genome editing with CRISPR-Cas nucleases, base editors, transposases and prime editors. Nat Biotechnol 38: 824–844
76. Cox DB, Platt RJ, Zhang (2015) Therapeutic genome editing: prospects and challenges. Medicine 21(2): 121–131
77. Komor AC, Kim YB, Packer MS, Zuris JA, Liu DR (2016) Programmable editing of a target base in genomic DNA without double-stranded DNA cleavage. Nature 533:420–424
78. Ran FA, Hsu PD, Lin CY, Gootenberg JS, Konermann S, Trevino AE, Scott DA, Inoue A, Matoba S, Zhang Y (2013) Double nicking by RNA-guided CRISPR Cas9 for enhanced genome editing specificity. Cell 154:1380–1389
79. Gaudelli NM, Komor AC, Rees HA, Packer MS, Badran AH, Bryson DI, Liu DR (2017) Programmable base editing of A*T to G*C in genomic DNA without DNA cleavage. Nature 551:464–471
80. Anzalone AV, Randolph PB, Davis JR, Sousa AA, Koblan LW, Levy JM, Chen PJ, Wilson C, Newby GA, Raguram A (2019) Search-and-replace genome editing without double-strand breaks or donor DNA. Nature 576:149–157
81. Mout R, Ray M, Yesilbag Tonga G, Lee YW, Tay T, Sasaki K, Rotello VM (2017) Direct cytosolic delivery of CRISPR/Cas9-ribonucleoprotein for efficient gene editing. ACS Nano 11:2452–2458
82. Liang X, Potter J, Kumar S, Zou Y, Quintanilla R, Sridharan M, Carte J, Chen W, Roark N, Ranganathan S (2015) Rapid and highly efficient mammalian cell engineering via Cas9 protein transfection. J Biotechnol 208:44–53
83. Yang H, Wang H, Shivalila CS, Cheng AW, Shi L, Jaenisch R (2013) One-step generation of mice carrying reporter and conditional alleles by CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome engineering. Cell 154:1370–1379
84. Lau CH, Suh Y (2017) In vivo genome editing in animals using AAV-CRISPR system: applications to translational research of human disease. F1000Res 6: 2153
85. Ran FA, Cong L, Yan WX, Scott DA, Gootenberg JS, Kriz AJ, Zetsche B, Shalem O, Wu X, Makarova KS (2015) In vivo genome editing using Staphylococcus aureus Cas9. Nature 520:186–191
86. Wang Y, Wang M, Zheng T, Hou Y, Zhang P, Tang T, Wei J, Du Q (2020) Specificity profiling of CRISPR system reveals greatly enhanced off-target gene editing. Sci Rep 10:2269
87. Lindel F, Dodd CR, Weidner N, Noll M, Bergemann F, Behrendt R, Fischer S, Dietrich J, Cartellieri M, Hamann MV (2019) TraFo-CRISPR: enhanced genome engineering by transient foamy virus vector-mediated delivery of CRISPR/Cas9 components. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 18:708–726
88. Huo W, Zhao G, Yin J, Ouyang X, Wang Y, Yang C, Wang B, Dong P, Wang Z, Watari H (2017) Lentiviral CRISPR/Cas9 vector mediated miR-21 gene editing inhibits the epithelial to mesenchymal transition in ovarian cancer cells. J Cancer 8:57–64
89. Mansouri M, Ehsaei Z, Taylor V, Berger P (2017) Baculovirus-based genome editing in primary cells. Plasmid 90:5–9
90. Chen S, Lee B, Lee AY, Modzelewski AJ, He L (2016) Highly efficient mouse genome editing by CRISPR ribonucleoprotein electroporation of zygotes. J Biol Chem 291:14457–14467
91. Shin HY, Willi M, HyunYoo K, Zeng X, Wang C, Metser G, Hennighausen L (2016) Hierarchy within the mammary STAT5-driven Wap super-enhancer. Nat Genet 48:904–911
92. Kim S, Kim D, Cho SW, Kim J, Kim JS (2014) Highly efficient RNA-guided genome editing in human cells via delivery of purified Cas9 ribonucleoproteins. Genome Res 24:1012–1019
93. Horii T, Arai Y, Yamazaki M, Morita S, Kimura M, Itoh M, Abe Y, Hatada I (2014) Validation of microinjection methods for generating knockout mice by CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome engineering. Sci Rep 4:4513
94. Chuang CK, Chen CH, Huang CL, Su YH, Peng SH, Lin TY, Tai HC, Yang TS, Tu CF (2017) Generation of GGTA1 mutant pigs by direct pronuclear microinjection of CRISPR/Cas9 plasmid vectors. Anim Biotechnol 28:174–181

95. Crispo M, Mulet AP, Tesson L, Barrera N, Cuadro F, dos Santos-Neto PC, Nguyen TH, Creneguy A, Brusselle L, Anegon (2015) Efficient generation of myostatin knock-out sheep using CRISPR/Cas9 technology and microinjection into zygotes. PLoS ONE 10:e0136690
96. Lino CA, Harper JC, Carney JP, Timlin JA (2018) Delivering CRISPR: a review of the challenges and approaches. Drug Deliv 25:1234–1257
97. Li L, Hu S, Chen X (2018) Non-viral delivery systems for CRISPR/Cas9-based genome editing: challenges and opportunities. Biomaterials 171:207–218
98. Biagioni A, Laurenzana A, Margheri F, Chilla A, Fibbi G, Del Rosso M (2018) Delivery systems of CRISPR/Cas9-based cancer gene therapy. J Biol Eng 12:33
99. Kim E, Koo T, Park SW, Kim D, Kim K, Cho HY, Song DW, Lee KJ, Jung MH, Kim S (2017) In vivo genome editing with a small Cas9 orthologue derived from Campylobacter jejuni. Nat Commun 8:14500
100. Yoo KH, Hennighausen L, Shin HY (2019) Dissecting tissue-specific super-enhancers by integrating genome-wide analyses and CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing. J Mam Gland Biol 24:47–59
101. Kim HK, Song M, Lee J, Menon AV, Jung S, Kang YM, Choi JW, Woo E, Koh HC, Nam JW (2017) In vivo high-throughput profiling of CRISPR-Cpf1 activity. Nat Methods 14:153–159
102. Ono C, Okamoto T, Abe T, Matsuura Y (2018) Baculovirus as a tool for gene delivery and gene therapy. Viruses 10:510
103. Volkman LE, Goldsmith PA (1983) In vitro survey of autographa californica nuclear polyhedrosis virus interaction with nontarget vertebrate host cells. Appl Environ Microbiol 45:1085–1093
104. Smagris E, BasuRay S, Huang LJ, Lai KM, Gromada J, Cohen JC, Hobbs HH (2015) Pnpla3I148M knockin mice accumulate PNPLA3 on lipid droplets and develop hepatic steatosis. Hepatology 61:108–118
105. O’Hare EA, Yerges-Armstrong LM, Perry JA, Shuldiner AR, Zaghloul NA (2016) Assignment of functional relevance to genes at type 2 diabetes-associated loci through investigation of beta-cell mass deficits. Mol Endocrinol 30:429–445
106. Tanaka Y, Shimanaka Y, Caddeo A, Kubo T, Mao Y, Kubota T, Kubota N, Yamauchi T, Mancina RM, Baselli G (2020) LPIAT1/MBOAT7 depletion increases triglyceride synthesis fueled by high phosphatidylinositol turnover. Gut 70(1):180–193
107. Zhang XH, Tee LY, Wang XG, Huang QS, Yang SH (2015) Off-target effects in CRISPR/Cas9-mediated genome engineering. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 4:e264
108. Lee HK, Willi M, Miller SM, Kim S, Liu C, Liu DR, Hennighausen L (2018) Targeting fidelity of adenine and cytosine base editors in mouse embryos. Nat Commun 9:4804



Genomic Editing and Diabetes

Parth Shah

Abstract

The diabetes types and its complications have varying developmental and metabolic pathways. There is an interplay of nongenetic and genetic components in pathogenesis of diabetes and its complications. There are several established genes such as ABCC8, TCF7L2, SLC2A2, and CAPN10 which are known to influence blood insulin and glucose levels. Current management of diabetes types may include lifetime burdensome use of insulin, insulin sensitizers, insulin secretagogues, etc. There has been increasing interest in improving genetic editing tools such as CRISPR/Cas9 and using genetically edited stem cells to alter diabetes disease course or possibly cure it. Current research on microRNAs and long noncoding RNAs may provide insights into the pathways involved in development of diabetes and its complications. Consequently, developing further understanding of genetics and its messenger pathways in diabetes would enhance our ability to develop precise and accurate genetic editing tools which can translate into clinically useful therapeutics.

Keywords

CRISPR/Cas9 · Diabetes · MicroRNA · Long noncoding RNA · Genetic editing

1 Background

In a clinical setting, there are typically two well-accepted diabetes mellitus types: diabetes mellitus type I (DM1) and diabetes mellitus type II (DM2). DM1 is defined by the lack of insulin production by the pancreas whereas DM2 is the result of growing insulin resistance eventually leading to pancreas burnout. As per the World Health Organization (WHO), the incidence of diabetes since 1980 in adults has doubled across each of the regions worldwide [1]. Furthermore, in 2014, an estimated 422 million (8.5%) people worldwide had diabetes with age-standardized prevalence in adults being highest in Polynesia and Micronesia (~25%) and lowest in Northwestern Europe [1, 2]. The global diabetes prevalence in adults rose from 4.7% in 1980 to 8.5% in 2014 [1], and diabetes was directly responsible for ~1.6 million deaths worldwide in 2016 [3]. The incidence and prevalence of DM1 have been rising globally with recent report showing 15 per 100,000 and 9.5%, respectively [4].

Diabetes is associated with several chronic debilitating complications which can be macro- and microvascular, including kidney failure, cardiomyopathy, myocardial infarction, stroke,

P. Shah (✉)
ObvioHealth, New York, NY, USA

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_14

blindness, and peripheral neuropathy. Given the rising prevalence of the diabetes, it is imperative that known risk factors and etiologies and current therapeutic management of diabetes be understood to develop future therapies based on the use of genomic editing.

2 Risk Factors

2.1 Interplay of Nongenetic Risk Factors

The diabetes mellitus type I risk factors and its prevention still remain an enigma. It is known that there is a genetic disposition to DM1, but the trigger(s) of an autoimmune destruction of pancreatic beta cells is unknown. In a male with DM1, the likelihood of child developing diabetes is 1/17, and in women with DM1 with child born at <25 years of age, it is 1/25 and for ≥ 25 years of age, it is 1/100 [5]. Regardless of the gender, if the parent developed diabetes at <11 years of age, the risk of child for DM1 development is doubled [5]. If both parents have DM1, then the risk of child is 1/10 to 1/4 [5]. There is some recent literature to suggest that this destruction may be triggered by infection [6], but more supportive research is needed to prove this etiology.

The diabetes mellitus type II risk factors include weight, centripetal obesity, family history, diet, sedentary lifestyle, age, race and ethnicity, gestational diabetes, and insulin resistance syndrome [7]. It is not entirely clear why there is a higher likelihood that people of Hispanic, Black, Native Americans, Asian, and Pacific Islanders are more likely to develop DM2 [7]. Development of insulin resistance syndrome—also known as polycystic ovarian syndrome in women—increases the risk of DM2. Approximately 50% of women with gestational diabetes mellitus develop DM2 [8]. Over a lifetime, these risk factors are thought to alter proteins involved in cellular glucose transport and signaling pathways leading to insulin resistance, impaired glucose uptake, and ultimately DM2.

2.2 Genetics of Diabetes

There are several genes which are known to regulate insulin production and secretion and glucose metabolism (Table 1). The TCF7L2 gene affects insulin secretion and glucose production. ABCC8 gene is responsible for SUR1 protein which helps regulate blood insulin levels by influencing pancreatic beta cells. Encoded by SLC2A2 gene in humans, GLUT2 is a transport protein which can move the glucose into the pancreas. GCGR is a gene coding for protein which regulates glucagon hormone release which can influence cellular glucose release. Recently, Phase 2 clinical trials have been conducted with an anti-sense oligonucleotide therapy targeting GCGR pre-mRNA which would ultimately lead to degradation of target RNA and inhibit glucagon release. The trials showed some promise in lowering hemoglobin A1C, but there was a trade-off at higher treatment doses indicating elevated liver transaminases and increased hepatic lipid content. Variations in CAPN10 have been associated with development of insulin resistance and ultimately DM2 in Mexican-Americans [9].

2.2.1 Transcription Factor 7-Like 2 (TCF7L2) Gene

The transcription factor (TCF7L2 protein) coded by TCF7L2 gene is known as the strongest influencer in DM2 development out of all genes to date [10]. The polymorphism in rs7903146 of TCF7L2 is most prominently associated with DM2 across multiple ethnic populations [11, 12]. Furthermore, T-allele in TCF7L2 (rs7903146) is associated with significant risk of DM2 when the either parent or both parents are diabetic compared to nondiabetic parents [11]. The T-allele of TCF7L2 (rs7903146) has also been found in women with gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM); consequently, the T-allele GDM women also show failure of early postprandial glucose control and may require insulin therapy [13]. In patients with metabolic syndrome, TCF7L2 variants rs12255372 and rs7093146 have both been associated with development of

Table 1 Genes regulating blood insulin and glucose levels

Gene	Protein	Role
Transcription factor 7 like 2 (TCF7L2)	High-mobility group (HMG) box-containing transcription factor (TCF7L2 protein)	Insulin secretion and glucose production
ATP binding cassette subfamily C member 8 (ABCC8)	Sulfonylurea receptor 1 (SUR1)	Regulate blood insulin level
Solute carrier family 2 member 2 (SLC2A2)	Glucose transporter type 2 (GLUT2)	Regulate glucose uptake by pancreas
Calcium-activated neutral proteinase 10 (CAPN10)	Calcium-sensitive cysteine proteases	Regulate blood glucose levels
Glucagon receptor gene (GCGR gene)	Glucagon receptor (GCGR)	Inhibit glucagon release

impaired fasting glucose, an indicator of DM2 development [14].

Although, the clear mechanism by which TCFL2 leads to DM2 remains unclear, there have been some studies showing its potential impact on some key pathways of insulin resistance and adipogenesis. The Wnt/B-catenin signaling pathway involves TCF7L2 protein as the key factor, and this pathway negatively regulates adipogenesis. In vivo findings have indicated that inactivation of TCF7L2 protein leads to impaired whole-body glucose intolerance and increased adipocyte hypertrophy and inflammation [10, 15]. Data from T-allele of variant rs7903146 in TCF7L2 carrying individuals also points to a possible pathway affecting insulin pulse characteristics of pancreatic beta cells such as decreased orderliness and pulse dispersion independent of hyperglycemia [16]. Further understanding of similar pathways or relationships to DM2 development will permit development of future therapies.

2.2.2 ATP Binding Cassette Subfamily C Member 8 (ABCC8)

The ABCC8 encoding for SUR1 protein is the target for antidiabetic sulfonylurea class of medications which increases pancreatic secretion of insulin into the blood. Up to 5% of diabetes maybe maturity-onset diabetes of young (MODY) which starts in adolescence or in early adulthood. There are 11 different genes which lead to 11 different types of MODY [17]. This is an autosomal dominant condition, and on consistent basis, ABCC8 variant has been found in individuals with MODY. The neonatal diabetes mellitus marked by persistent hyperglycemia in first six months of life occurs in 1:100,000 to 1: 400,000 neonates and can convert to permanent neonatal diabetes mellitus (PNDM) in half of those cases [18, 19]. The gene variation of ABCC8 and KCNJ11 which influence ATP-dependent potassium channels of beta cells has been found in the neonatal diabetes cases [19]. In patients with early-onset diabetes, eight missense variants of ABCC8 (p.R306C, p. E1326K, p.R1379H, p.R298C, p.F1176C, p. R1221W, p.K1358R, and p.I1404V) have been identified [20]. Overall, the MODY types or PNDM may have long-term consequences similar to those of DM2 and need to be medically managed appropriately after patient is diagnosed using appropriate genetic and biomarker tests. Gene variations of ABCC8 and their role in pathogenesis or complicating diabetes can provide future therapeutic targeting for genomic editing.

2.2.3 Solute Carrier Family 2 Member 2 (SLC2A2)

For the DM2 individuals, SCL2A2 C-allele variant appears to play a major role in insulin sensitivity of GLUT2 protein. At the time of diabetes diagnosis, the C variant of allele of SLC2A2 (rs8192675) has been associated with greater diabetes symptoms [21]. The SLC2A2 gene's allele C of rs8192675 which encodes for GLUT2 has been found to be associated with greater metformin-induced glucose reduction as evidenced by hemoglobin A1C (HbA1C), and this effect has been even more pronounced in obese C-homozygote individuals [22].

SCL2A2 mutations can lead to a rare autosomal recessively inherited glycogen storage disease called Fanconi Bickel syndrome. In this condition, glycogen accumulated in the liver and kidneys because of GLUT2 protein defect. The symptoms may include hepatosplenomegaly, rickets, failure to thrive, kidney malfunction, hypoglycemia, bowed legs, and abdominal distension [23]. Overall, the SCL2A2 mutations can create variation in GLUT2 such that it can be the etiology of rare Fanconi Bickel syndrome or affect insulin sensitivity during DM2 and may also impact efficacy of insulin-sensitizing therapy in DM2 patients.

2.2.4 Calcium-Activated Neutral Proteinase 10 (CAPN10)

GLUT4 protein is a protein found in adipocytes and striated muscle cells and is involved in glucose transport as regulated by insulin. CAPN10 is thought to be involved in translocation of GLUT4 protein from Golgi apparatus matrix [24]. The prevalence of DM2 in Mexico in 2015 was ~11.5 million, sixth highest in the world, and CAPN10 is one of the 21 genes which is associated with DM2 in this population [25]. The gestational diabetes mellitus and CAP10 single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) have been found to be associated. Consequently, in a large population of women, it was found that TT genotype in SNP 63 was most associated with increased risk of GDM [26]. Overall, the CAPN10 variants are associated with DM2, particularly in Mexican ethnicity, and GDM across multi-ethnic women population.

3 Overview of Current Diabetes Management

3.1 Diabetes Mellitus Type I

The treatment for DM1 involves various regimens of injectable insulin which can be short acting, moderate acting, long acting, and ultra-long acting. The insulin regimen may require multiple injections per day which may lead to side effects such as bruising, dizziness, nausea, hypoglycemia, etc. and may impact patient's quality of life. Additionally, the insulin regimen may need to be adjusted based on meal intake and daily activity. The overall management of DM1 requires an inconvenient lifetime commitment to taking insulin.

3.2 Diabetes Mellitus Type II

The development of insulin resistance ultimately leading to pancreas burnout is responsible for the development of DM2. This can be thought of as process over a patient's lifetime. There are many different treatment regimens available for DM2, and these include insulin sensitizers, insulin secretagogues, influencing kidney's glucose excretion, affecting gastro-intestinal absorption of glucose, insulin, etc. There can be different combinations of treatment medications which can be given to optimize glucose control. The insulin injections are reserved for cases of DM2 where other treatment regimens fail to control blood glucose. There are now continuous glucose monitoring and insulin injection devices which patients can wear to optimize the blood glucose levels in more complex DM2 cases. Even though several treatment regimens are available, the key to DM2 therapy lies in its prevention or its complete reversal. In the event of development of DM2 complications, the genetic influence on metabolic pathways leading to the complications needs to be understood to create better therapeutic targets.

4 Genomic Editing

4.1 Genetic Modification of Stem Cells

The genetic makeup of pluripotent stem cells can be modified to generate cellular therapies to address the etiology of a disease with possibility of its cure. As discussed earlier, our current management of diabetes stems from detecting preventative risk factors or finding potential drug targets to control the diabetes after its onset. Through

development of genomic editing, it can be envisioned that someday, one can modify genes to prevent or reverse diabetes. The genetic modification of human pluripotent stems cell-derived beta cells (SC-β) can be used to understand beta-cell development and model their function in diabetes. One of the challenges with β-cell transplantation is recurrent autoimmunity in the host [27]. There is some hope that stem cells derived from other human cell types such as mesenchymal cells, embryonic stem cells, etc. could be used to design a personalized transplantable cell without risk of autoimmunity.

4.2 CRISPR/Cas9 Gene Editing

CRISPR/Cas9 (clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats)-Cas9 (CRISPR-associated protein 9) gene editing technique opens the possibility of understanding developmental cellular biology, regulation of cell function, and its viability which can ultimately lead to pioneering of new diabetes therapies. Consequently, this can provide us the means of treating and possibly curing the disease through genetic correction and transplantation of modified cells. CRISPR/Cas9 uses 20 nucleotide RNA (gRNA) as a guide, and this allows CRISPR/Cas9 to search and excise DNA protospacer exactly three base pairs upstream of protospacer adjacent motif (PAM). Then repairing of the excised DNA is repaired by nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ) resulting in insertion-deletion variant or homology-directed repair (HDR) resulting in desired gene or nucleotide replacement [28].

This tool is user-friendly and cost-effective, but there are few areas which need improvement. The first area of concern is the guide RNA (gRNA) imperfectly matching with excised DNA sites, indicating off-target activity of CRISPR-Cas9 as the accuracy needs to be spot on to be used for clinical purposes [28]. The second area of concern is that there is genome editing frequency restriction imposed by PAM requirements in addition to poor predictability in efficiency of CRISPR-Cas9 excision at varying DNA target sites [28]. The potential clinical use of CRISPR-Cas9 gene tool relies on advancements in understanding of cellular development, function and viability, and in overcoming several challenges posed while using this tool.

4.3 MicroRNAs

There has been an immense recent interest in studying microRNAs (miRNAs) to understand their role in mediating metabolic transitions in DM2 and in complications of DM2. In vivo experiment has shown role of miRNA-26a in β-cell insulin secretion and replication and is thought to regulate peripheral insulin sensitivity through exosomes [29]. This finding is of interest as it shows β-cells being able to influence a broad group of cells. Another study in mice and on pancreatic β-cells of obese and DM2 patients showed overexpression of miRNA-96 which promoted β-cell's proliferative ability and apoptosis inhibition [30]. The impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) is a risk factor for DM2 development, and miRNA-21 was investigated as a potential biomarker for predicting DM2 as it has an impact on generation of reactive oxygen species, manganese superoxide dismutase-2, and 4-hydroxynonenal. In patients who had IGT or DM2, miRNA-21 levels showed a significant positive correlation with glycemic indicators [31]. In women with gestational diabetes mellitus, circulating levels of miRNA-223 and miR-23a were found to be upregulated compared to non-GDM women; hence, these can serve as potential first trimester biomarkers in predicting GDM [32].

The role of miRNA is also being investigated in complications of DM2. A study looked at development of insulin resistance in cardiac cells which causes decreased glucose uptake and increased mitochondrial uptake of fatty acids ultimately leading to dominance of free fatty acid utility for energy production [33]. Furthermore, a lab study of miRNA-320 showed that DM2 cardiomyopathy may be caused by upregulation of miRNA-320 by its induction of CD36 expression leading to cardiac lipotoxicity from increased fatty acid uptake [34]. Insufficient angiogenesis

during the diabetic cardiomyopathy leads to cardiac ischemia, and miRNA-320-3p have been found in exosomes of diabetic cardiomyocytes as a potential regulator of this process [35]. The miRNA-126 and miRNA-210 level assessment in diabetics with and without coronary artery disease (CAD) shows significant correlation in discriminating between diabetes with or without CAD and can serve as potential biomarkers for early detection or progression of CAD in diabetics [36].

Type I diabetes develops due to autoantibodies to islet cells, and T-cells are a major player involved in this destructive process. In obese diabetic mice, induction of miRNA-142-3p has been found to be involved in autoimmunity process, and its inhibition enhances Treg induction/stability leading to reduction in islet cell autoimmunity [37]. Further research into miRNA types involved in the autoimmunity process is warranted. The investigations of miRNA on its influence on pathways leading to diabetes, worsening of diabetes, and causing diabetic complications may allow us to implement genomic editing to influence these pathways.

4.4 Long Noncoding RNA

The long noncoding RNA (lncRNA) and its influence in development of diabetes and its complications warrant consideration when thinking about genomic editing approaches for treatment or cure of diabetes. Two lncRNAs, LY86-AS1 and HCG27_201 expression levels, were studied in diabetic and nondiabetic patients, and it was found that both were expressed at low levels in DM2 patients vs. non-DM2 patients [38]. This would indicate both lncRNA's roles in DM2 and LY86-AS1 serving as a potential diagnostic biomarker for DM2. In DM1, lncRNA which contains single-nucleotide polymorphism Lnc13 rs917997*CC leads to an increase in pancreatic β-cell inflammation [39]. There have also been circulating or placental lncRNA expressions found to be correlated with β-cell dysfunction and insulin resistance which can lead to gestational diabetes mellitus [40].

Increasing evidence suggests that long noncoding RNAs are involved in progression of diabetic cardiovascular complications. The lncRNA Neat1 was investigated in diabetic rat's myocardial tissues, and it was found that during the period of ischemia-reperfusion injury, it was worsened by Neat1's promotion of myocardial apoptosis and autophagy [41]. If findings of this investigation hold true in human studies, it can help us better target diabetic cardiomyopathy. Evidence from animal experiments show that NONRATT021972 lncRNA's atypical expression may contribute to the development of DM2. Furthermore, this NONRATT021972 has numerous functions which may be contributory to pathogenesis of diabetic neuropathy and cardiac autonomic neuropathy, hepatic dysfunction of glucokinase, and myocardial ischemia [42].

5 Conclusion

The diabetes types have varying metabolic pathways which lead to its development and complications. There are some accepted genes and its variants which are found in those who are likely to develop diabetes or have it. Along with the genetic predispositions or changes, there are influential environmental, dietary, and demographic factors which play a role in pathoetiology of diabetes and its complications. Given the developing preclinical evidence, it is necessary to investigate further on the role of genetics and its influence on diabetes from bench to bedside. This understanding will allow us to improve precision and accuracy of genomic editing such that the therapeutics of diabetes and its complications can be developed.

Acknowledgments None.

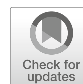
Conflicts of Interest None to declare.

References

1. Roglic G (2016) Global report on diabetes. World Health Organization, Geneva

2. Zhou B, Lu Y, Hajifathalian K, Bentham J, Di Cesare M, Danaei G, Bixby H, Cowan M, Ali M, Taddei C, Lo W, Reis-Santos B, Stevens G, Riley L, Miranda J, Bjerregaard P, Rivera J, Fouad H, Ma G, Mbanya J (2016) Worldwide trends in diabetes since 1980: a pooled analysis of 751 population-based studies with 4.4 million participants. Lancet 387(10027): 1513–1530
3. World Health Organization (2020) Diabetes. WHO, Geneva
4. Mobasseri M, Shirmohammadi M, Amiri T, Vahed N, Hosseini Fard H, Ghojazadeh M (2020) Prevalence and incidence of type 1 diabetes in the world: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Health Promot Perspect 10(2):98–115
5. American Diabetes Association (2021) Genetics of diabetes. ADA, Arlington
6. Shah P (2017) Infectious pathoetiology of type I diabetes and its interventional implications. J Clin Exp Endocrinol 1(1):1–1
7. Mayo Clinic (2021) Type 2 diabetes - symptoms and causes. Mayo Clinic, Rochester
8. CDC (2019) Gestational diabetes. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta
9. del Bosque-Plata L, Aguilar-Salinas CA, Tusié-Luna MT, Ramirez-Jiménez S, Rodriguez-Torres M, Aurón-Gómez M, Ramirez E, Velasco-Pérez ML, Ramirez-Silva A, Gómez-Pérez F, Hanis CL, Tsuchiya T, Yoshiuchi I, Cox NJ, Bell GI (2004) Association of the calpain-10 gene with type 2 diabetes mellitus in a Mexican population. Mol Genet Metab 81(2):122–126
10. Chen X, Ayala I, Shannon C, Fourcaudot M, Acharya NK, Jenkinson CP, Heikkinen S, Norton L (2018) The diabetes gene and Wnt pathway effector TCF7L2 regulates adipocyte development and function. Diabetes 67(4):554–568
11. Juttada U, Kumpatla S, Parveen R, Viswanathan V (2020) TCF7L2 polymorphism a prominent marker among subjects with Type-2-Diabetes with a positive family history of diabetes. Int J Biol Macromol 159: 402–405
12. Ding W, Xu L, Zhang L, Han Z, Jiang Q, Wang Z, Jin S (2018) Meta-analysis of association between TCF7L2 polymorphism rs7903146 and type 2 diabetes mellitus. BMC Med Genet 19(1):38
13. Potasso L, Perakakis N, Lamprinou A, Polyzou E, Kassanos D, Peter A, Päth G, Seufert J, Laubner K (2019) Clinical impact of the TCF7L2 gene rs7903146 type 2 diabetes mellitus risk polymorphism in women with gestational diabetes mellitus: impaired glycemic control and increased need of insulin therapy. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes 128(10):663–666
14. Katsoulis K, Paschou SA, Hatzi E, Tigas S, Georgiou I, Tsatsoulis A (2018) TCF7L2 gene variants predispose to the development of type 2 diabetes mellitus among individuals with metabolic syndrome. Hormones 17(3):359–365
15. Geoghegan G, Simcox J, Seldin MM, Parnell TJ, Stubben C, Just S, Begaye L, Lusis AJ, Villanueva CJ (2019) Targeted deletion of Tcf7l2 in adipocytes promotes adipocyte hypertrophy and impaired glucose metabolism. Mol Metabol 24:44–63
16. Laurenti MC, Dalla Man C, Varghese RT, Andrews JC, Rizza RA, Matveyenko A, De Nicolao G, Cobelli C, Vella A (2020) Diabetes-associated genetic variation in TCF7L2 alters pulsatile insulin secretion in humans. JCI Insight 5(7):136136
17. Harvard Health Publishing (2021) Maturity onset diabetes of the young (MODY) - Harvard health. In: Harvard health. https://www.health.harvard.edu/a_to_z/maturity-onset-diabetes-of-the-young-mody-a-to-z. Accessed 8 Apr 2021
18. De Franco E, Saint-Martin C, Brusgaard K, Knight Johnson AE, Aguilar-Bryan L, Bowman P, Arnoux J, Larsen AR, Sanyoura M, Greeley SAW, Calzada-León R, Harman B, Houghton JAL, Nishimura-Meguro E, Laver TW, Ellard S, Gaudio D, Christesen HT, Bellanné-Chantelot C, Flanagan SE (2020) Update of variants identified in the pancreatic β-cell K ATP channel genes KCNJ11 and ABCC8 in individuals with congenital hyperinsulinism and diabetes. Hum Mutat 41(5):884–905
19. Gaál Z, Balogh I (2019) Monogenic forms of diabetes mellitus. Experientia Suppl 111:385–416
20. Li M, Gong S, Han X, Zhang S, Ren Q, Cai X, Luo Y, Zhou L, Zhang R, Liu W, Zhu Y, Zhou X, Sun Y, Li Y, Ma Y, Ji L (2021) Genetic variants of ABCC8 and phenotypic features in Chinese early onset diabetes. J Diabetes 13(7):542–553
21. Rathmann W, Strassburger K, Bongaerts B, Kuss O, Müssig K, Burkart V, Szendroedi J, Kotzka J, Knebel B, Al-Hasani H, Roden M (2018) A variant of the glucose transporter gene SLC2A2 modifies the glycaemic response to metformin therapy in recently diagnosed type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia 62(2): 286–291
22. Zhou K, Yee SW, Seiser EL, van Leeuwen N, Tavendale R, Bennett AJ, Groves CJ, Coleman RL, van der Heijden AA, Beulens JW, de Keyser CE, Zaharenko L, Rotroff DM, Out M, Jablonski KA, Chen L, Javorský M, Židzik J, Levin AM, Williams LK (2016) Variation in the glucose transporter gene SLC2A2 is associated with glycemic response to metformin. Nat Genet 48(9):1055–1059
23. National Institutes of Health (2017) Fanconi Bickel syndrome. Genetic and Rare Diseases Information Center (GARD) – an NCATS Program. https://rarediseases.info.nih.gov/diseases/2268/fanconi-bickel-syndrome. Accessed 12 Apr 2021
24. Pánico P, Hiriart M, Ostrosky-Wegman P, Salazar AM (2020) TUG is a calpain-10 substrate involved in the translocation of GLUT4 in adipocytes. J Mol Endocrinol 65(3):45–57
25. García-Chapa EG, Leal-Ugarte E, Peralta-Leal V, Durán-González J, Meza-Espinoza JP (2017) Genetic epidemiology of type 2 diabetes in Mexican mestizos. Biomed Res Int 2017:1–10

26. Cui J, Xu X, Yin S, Chen F, Li P, Song C (2016) Meta-analysis of the association between four CAPN10 gene variants and gestational diabetes mellitus. Arch Gynecol Obstet 294(3):447–453
27. Dadheech N, James Shapiro AM (2018) Human induced pluripotent stem cells in the curative treatment of diabetes and potential impediments ahead. Adv Exp Med Biol 1144:25–35
28. Zhang J-H, Adikaram P, Pandey M, Genis A, Simonds WF (2016) Optimization of genome editing through CRISPR-Cas9 engineering. Bioengineered 7(3): 166–174
29. Xu H, Du X, Xu J, Zhang Y, Tian Y, Liu G, Wang X, Ma M, Du W, Liu Y, Dai L, Huang W, Tong N, Wei Y, Fu X (2020) Pancreatic β cell microRNA-26a alleviates type 2 diabetes by improving peripheral insulin sensitivity and preserving β cell function. PLoS Biol 18(2):e3000603
30. Qi H, Yao L, Liu Q (2019) MicroRNA-96 regulates pancreatic β cell function under the pathological condition of diabetes mellitus through targeting Foxo1 and Sox6. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 519(2): 294–301
31. La Sala L, Mrakic-Sposta S, Tagliabue E, Prattichizzo F, Micheloni S, Sangalli E, Specchia C, Uccellatore AC, Lupini S, Spinetti G, de Candia P, Ceriello A (2019) Circulating microRNA-21 is an early predictor of ROS-mediated damage in subjects with high risk of developing diabetes and in drug-naïve T2D. Cardiovasc Diabetol 18(1):18
32. Yoffe L, Polsky A, Gilam A, Raff C, Mecacci F, Ognibene A, Crispi F, Gratacós E, Kanety H, Mazaki-Tovi S, Shomron N, Hod M (2019) Early diagnosis of gestational diabetes mellitus using circulating microRNAs. Eur J Endocrinol 181(5): 565–577
33. Hathaway QA, Pinti MV, Durr AJ, Waris S, Shepherd DL, Hollander JM (2018) Regulating microRNA expression: at the heart of diabetes mellitus and the mitochondrion. Am J Phys Heart Circ Phys 314(2): 293–310
34. Li H, Fan J, Zhao Y, Zhang X, Dai B, Zhan J, Yin Z, Nie X, Fu X-D, Chen C, Wang DW (2019) Nuclear miR-320 mediates diabetes-induced cardiac dysfunction by activating transcription of fatty acid metabolic genes to cause lipotoxicity in the heart. Circ Res 125(12):1106–1120
35. Beuzelin D, Kaeffer B (2018) Exosomes and miRNA-loaded biomimetic nanovehicles, a focus on their potentials preventing type-2 diabetes linked to metabolic syndrome. Front Immunol 9:2711
36. Amr K, Abdelmawgoud H, Ali Z, Shehata S, Raslan H (2018) Potential value of circulating microRNA-126 and microRNA-210 as biomarkers for type 2 diabetes with coronary artery disease. Br J Biomed Sci 75(2): 82–87
37. Scherm MG, Serr I, Zahm AM, Schug J, Bellusci S, Manfredini R, Salb VK, Gerlach K, Weigmann B, Ziegler A-G, Kaestner KH, Daniel C (2019) miRNA142-3p targets Tet2 and impairs Treg differentiation and stability in models of type 1 diabetes. Nat Commun 10(1):5697
38. Saeidi L, Ghaedi H, Sadatamini M, Vahabpour R, Rahimipour A, Shanaki M, Mansoori Z, Kazerouni F (2018) Long non-coding RNA LY86-AS1 and HCG27_201 expression in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Mol Biol Rep 45(6):2601–2608
39. Gonzalez-Moro I, Olazagoitia-Garmendia A, Colli ML, Cobo-Vuilleumier N, Postler TS, Marselli L, Marchetti P, Ghosh S, Gauthier BR, Eizirik DL, Castellanos-Rubio A, Santin I (2020) The T1D-associated lncRNA Lnc13 modulates human pancreatic β cell inflammation by allele-specific stabilization of STAT1 mRNA. Proc Natl Acad Sci 117(16):9022–9031
40. Filardi T, Catanzaro G, Mardente S, Zicari A, Santangelo C, Lenzi A, Morano S, Ferretti E (2020) Non-coding RNA: role in gestational diabetes pathophysiology and complications. Int J Mol Sci 21(11): 4020
41. Ma M, Hui J, Zhang Q, Zhu Y, He Y, Liu X (2018) Long non-coding RNA nuclear-enriched abundant transcript 1 inhibition blunts myocardial ischemia reperfusion injury via autophagic flux arrest and apoptosis in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. Atherosclerosis 277:113–122
42. Suwal A, Hao J, Liu X, Zhou D, Pant OP, Gao Y, Hui P, Dai X, Lu C (2019) NONRATT021972 long-noncoding RNA: A promising lncRNA in diabetes-related diseases. Int J Med Sci 16(6):902–908



Genome Editing and Protein Energy Malnutrition

Sergio Moreno-Nombela, Javier Romero-Parra, Francisco Javier Ruiz-Ojeda, Patricio Solis-Urra, Aiman Tariq Baig, and Julio Plaza-Diaz

Abstract

Protein-energy malnutrition is a state of disordered catabolism resulting from metabolic derangements or starvation. It is associated with chronic disease, hypoglycemia, hypothermia, serious infections, and even an increased prevalence of morbidity and mortality in countries with poor socioeconomic or environmental factors. Adequate food administration is essential to satisfy the main caloric and nutritional demands of humans. The most significant factors seen in the development of protein-energy malnutrition in areas of high incidence, such as underdeveloped countries, are inadequate food and nutrient supplies. It has been well established that one of the strategies to alleviate undernourishment is the biofortification of staple crops. This is because vegetables and plants are significant sources of

It is worth noting that Sergio Moreno-Nombela and Javier Romero-Parra contributed equally as first authors, while Aiman Tariq Baig and Julio Plaza-Diaz contributed equally as last authors.

S. Moreno-Nombela
Institute of Nutrition and Food Technology "José Mataix", Center of Biomedical Research, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

J. Romero-Parra
Departamento de Química Orgánica y Fisicoquímica, Facultad de Ciencias Químicas y Farmacéuticas, Universidad de Chile, Santiago, Chile

F. J. Ruiz-Ojeda
Institute of Nutrition and Food Technology "José Mataix", Center of Biomedical Research, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology II, School of Pharmacy, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria IBS.GRANADA, Complejo Hospitalario Universitario de Granada, Granada, Spain

RG Adipocytes and Metabolism, Institute for Diabetes and Obesity, Helmholtz Diabetes Center at Helmholtz Center Munich, Munich, Germany

P. Solis-Urra
Faculty of Education and Social Sciences, Universidad Andres Bello, Viña del Mar, Chile

PROFITH "PROmoting FITness and Health Through Physical Activity" Research Group, Sport and Health University Research Institute (iMUDS), Department of Physical Education and Sports, Faculty of Sport Sciences, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

A. T. Baig
Children's Hospital of Eastern Ontario Research Institute, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Department of Cellular Molecular Medicine, University of Ottawa, Ottawa, ON, Canada
e-mail: abaig034@uottawa.ca

J. Plaza-Diaz (✉)
Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology II, School of Pharmacy, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria IBS.GRANADA, Complejo Hospitalario Universitario de Granada, Granada, Spain

Children's Hospital of Eastern Ontario Research Institute, Ottawa, ON, Canada
e-mail: jrplaza@ugr.es

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023
J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_15

crucial nutrients for human growth and development. To enhance plant nutrition, recent tactics aim to formulated balanced and diverse diets with acceptable levels of vitamins and minerals that benefit human health. New advances in plant biotechnology and animal productivity could control key enzymes in several metabolic pathways, enriching important nutrients such as iron and vitamins and decreasing the content of disadvantageous compounds such as acrylamide-forming amino acids and phytic acids. Numerous biofortified crops such as rice, maize, and wheat have been created to resolve the problem of nutrition deficiencies. Some examples of these methodologies are genome editing engineered nucleases, transcriptional activator-like effector nucleases, zinc finger nucleases, and clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats and associated Cas9 endonuclease which have been created and widely studied for their application, efficiency, and specificity.

Keywords

Protein-energy malnutrition · Gene editing · Malnutrition

1 Background

The World Health Organization describes malnutrition as "the cellular imbalance between the supply of nutrients and energy and the body's demand for them to ensure growth, maintenance, and specific functions" [1]. This disorder is associated with physiological and neurological defects such as growth deficits and tissue damage, reduction in synapses, delayed myelination, and reduced development of dendritic arborization [2]. Although malnutrition can be caused by both deficiency or excess caloric intake [3], this chapter will focus on malnutrition and specifically protein-energy malnutrition (PEM).

PEM is a state of disordered catabolism resulting from metabolic derangements [4] or starvation. It is associated with chronic disease, hypoglycemia, hypothermia, serious infections, and even an increased prevalence of morbidity and mortality in countries with poor socioeconomic or environmental factors [3, 5]. PEM can lead to premature birth, mental disorders, and a higher risk of parasitic disease causing vomiting, among other consequences [2]. The terminology "PEM" envelops a collection of associated disorders that include kwashiorkor, marasmus, and intermediate states of marasmus-kwashiorkor [2].

2 Marasmus

Marasmus, from the Greek word *marasmos* meaning exhaustion, includes insufficient intake of calories and proteins. This results in an overall caloric deficit with depletion of subcutaneous fat stores and muscle wasting. Marasmus is clinically characterized by extreme slimming without any tissue swelling (absence of edema). It is usually contracted by children under five years old as a result of their elevated caloric requirements. These children, apart from being emaciated, emerge weak and lethargic, and their risk of suffering bradycardia, hypotension, and hypothermia is high. As a result of the loss of subcutaneous fat, these kids have the skin that is xerotic and wrinkled but do not have dermatitis. The muscle mass loss is beginning in the groin and axilla. It is followed by the thighs and hips, followed by the abdomen and chest, and finally the facial muscles, whose metabolic rate is lower. Children with marasmus are often apathetic but can become irritable and testy on occasion [3].

3 Kwashiorkor

Another form of PEM, kwashiorkor, which comes from the language Kwa of Ghana means "the one who is displaced," is considered "the sickness of weaning." This is because it is contracted predominantly by children who get

weaned as a result of the birth of a newborn baby and are not capable of raising protein intake through their diet. Kwashiorkor, a term first used as a term in the '30s, appears because of inadequate protein intake even though patients have an adequate caloric intake. The symptoms of kwashiorkor, according to the English Health Service (NHS, https://www.nhs.uk/), are muscle mass loss, an enlarged stomach denoted to as "potbelly," hepatomegaly and hepatic steatosis, regular infections, dermatoses, red and inflamed patches of the skin that darken, and more importantly edema that is distinguishing from marasmus. This edema appears as a result of a mixture of increased cortisol, low serum albumin (hypoalbuminemia), and incorrect inactivation of antidiuretic hormone. Apart from skin changes, children with kwashiorkor suffer changes to their hair texture and color, as it becomes dry, brittle, and depigmented, acquiring a reddish-yellow appearance. Another valid term to define children with this disorder is "sugar baby," because of their inadequate supply of protein but high intake of carbohydrates [3].

A patient with an intermediate state of marasmus-kwashiorkor typically presents as a mixed clinical case with the most common types of both kwashiorkor and marasmus. Those patients are affected with concurrent fat wasting and edema and become atrophied in most cases. The liver grows into a distended tangible fatty liver and the skin and hair turn smooth as well. Findings indicate that kwashiorkor characterizes a maladaptive response to starvation, whereas marasmus indicates an adaptive response to starvation [3].

As we have just seen, these two forms of PEM can result in systemic alterations. On this matter, patients can experience affectations in the endocrine system, symptoms can include reduced levels of thyroid hormone and insulin and increased cortisol and growth hormone levels, and the immune system can also be affected as a result of thymus deteriorate, tonsils and lymph nodes, and impaired phagocytosis. In the gastrointestinal system, a loss of disaccharidases altered intestinal permeability, and pancreatic atrophy, driving to malabsorption, can be seen. The cardiovascular system presents with impaired contractility, bradycardia, hypotension, and consequently a higher risk of arrhythmias. Moreover, these patients possess hematological, neurological, and respiratory alterations, consisting of normochromic anemia and delays in cerebral, motor, and memory functions, as well as a reduction in minute ventilation due to reduced thoracic muscle mass and a damaged ventilatory response to hypoxia as a result of electrolyte imbalances [3].

Other types of PEM have more prevalence among the elderly populations and children in impoverished regions [3], although it is still considered an underestimated problem [6]. Older populations are particularly vulnerable to the development of PEM. It is especially of concern in the older population because it increases rates of morbidity and leads to increased healthcare needs and levels of dependence [7]. One of the main causes of PEM in older population is the insufficient quality of diet as a result of isolation the elderly population is prone to. In line with this, low calorie intake (energy) and high protein intake are nutritional patterns common that are related to PEM in this population. Thus, nutrition is an imperative lifestyle change that is considered as a form of management and treatment in these patients [7]. Treatment of PEM is very critical in this population because it can lead to many other diagnoses such as cardiovascular, liver, renal, and gastrointestinal disorders, among others [8]. PEM also exacerbates other clinical illnesses and is a significant burden on the healthcare system. Interestingly, studies report the frequency of PEM ranges from 20% to 50% among hospitalized patients [5, 9].

According to some studies, there are differences among the sexes when it comes to the prevalence of PEM: females are 45% more prone to be undernourished than men [6]. Looking at different regions of the world, studies indicate that Northern Europe has the smallest malnutrition prevalence (<1%) whereas Southeast Asia holds the highest prevalence (>25%). It is noteworthy that South America and East Asia have a

very small percentage of malnutrition, even with relatively poor socioeconomic conditions, while some advanced areas in Europe have a remarkable prevalence of approximately 17% [6]. This percentage increases to 48.4% if we talk about the risk of suffering malnutrition [10]. Africa and non-Australia Oceania are regions that are understudied; therefore, investigations in these areas are still necessary [6]. People who live in rural areas are more likely to suffer malnutrition and, consequently, complications such as PEM. Rustic areas have fewer access to family support and health assistance and facilities, which explains the increased prevalence [6].

The most traditional treatment for PEM is nutritional interventions; focusing on an increased caloric and protein intake is the main strategy. However, there is no consistent evidence of effective treatments for several of the underlying conditions related to PEM such as pulmonary diseases, heart diseases, and dementia, among others [5]. The nutritional intervention has not been robustly associated with mortality outcomes in these patients; the data does suggest that the PEM associated with chronic illnesses might indicate the severity of their disease [5].

4 Strategic Regulations of Protein-Energy Malnutrition

Adequate food administration is essential to meet the main caloric and nutritional demands of humans [11]. The most significant factors seen in the development of PEM in areas of high incidence, such as underdeveloped countries, are inadequate food and nutrient supplies [12]. On the other hand, developed countries have taken up nutritional strategies to diminish PEM, using nationwide policies to approach dietary modification, supplementation, commercial fortification, and biofortification [13]. Biofortification is a cost-effective and practical procedure that distributes some nutrients to people who may have restricted access to different regimes and foods and other interventions based on micronutrients [14]. The biofortification process increases vitamin and mineral density in a crop through transgenic techniques, plant breeding, or agronomic practices. Biofortified crops will produce quantifiable enhancements in human nutrition and health [15–17]. Efforts have also been made to fight dietary deficits by food-processing approaches and food supplementation; however, many drawbacks have been found [18]. For example, feeding fish with long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids, omega-3, required for neural development and cardiovascular diseases was attempted [19], to supply the daily requirements; however, the idea was unsustainable [20].

5 Protein Malnutrition and Genetic Modification

As has been well established, malnutrition corresponds to an excess, imbalance, or insufficiency of nutrient intake [21]. It should be noted that a state of nutrient deficiency is not exclusively due to lack of nutrients but also because of an inadequate food supply. Different illnesses such as enteric infections are caused by fungi or bacteria leading to intestinal inflammation with the consequent malabsorption of nutrients [22, 23]. Malnutrition can also be transmitted from mother to child, as affected mothers pass a low birthweight condition to their offspring [22]. To reduce this nutritional disease, one must consider the polymorphisms of genes that modify host genes and the gut microbiome. This affects the effective gathering of nutrients from the diet, the prevalence of enteropathogenic infections, and intestinal inflammation which can result in nutrient malabsorption [22].

As mentioned above, malnutrition is caused by macronutrient or micronutrient deficiencies. Particularly, PEM corresponds to a deficiency of protein ingredients in the diet that exists, constituting a dangerous syndrome that could cause poor brain and body development or even death [24]. Therefore, it is of critical significance to mitigate PEM, especially considering that the mankind is rising, and as a consequence, it is necessary to improve food quality [25]. In this

sense, genome editing has demonstrated to be a significant, preferred, and versatile instrument for crop improvement, together with functional genomics in pulses, cereals, legumes, and fruits and even in animal species in order to create high-quality food in terms of its nutritional use to reduce PEM [25, 26].

PEM is a common condition among children of developing countries [27] causing deficits in their growth, cognitive development, learning ability, and social behavior, among others [28]. Due to the variability of PEM, it is classified into different stages or types: mild, moderate, and acute; the acute stage of PEM being the greatest malnutrition form, which in turn, is subdivided into marasmus and kwashiorkor. Marasmus is predominantly seen in children under one year where they present with deficiency of muscle mass and subcutaneous fat, mainly in the higher limbs and buttocks [24, 29], as well as kwashiorkor [30], where the lack of proteins affects infants manifesting considerable edema in feet and hands [29, 31], as well as fatty liver, hairy discoloration, electrolyte imbalance, irritability, and desquamate rash [32, 33].

Nonetheless, dietary modification, as well as the improvement of agricultural productivity has not yet solved PEM syndrome [24, 34]. Therefore, other strategies and approaches have been evaluated in order to reduce and eradicate PEM. Another approach toward mitigating PEM is the genetic engineering (genome editing) of plants and staple crops as food resources, as well as genome editing in food animals (especially farm animal productivity) which has been the subject of significant controversy.

6 Genetic Engineering: An Opportunity to Control Protein-Energy Malnutrition

Genetic engineering is a terminology that was originally presented in the 1970s to explain the developing area of recombinant DNA technology. Gene editing offers the probability to fix the current biological systems for needed alterations [35]. Recombinant DNA technology began with simple steps such as cloning small DNA sections and producing them in bacteria. It has advanced in an enormous area wherever whole genomes can be moved and cloned from cell to cell operating technique alternatives [35, 36]. Gene editing includes the insertion of leveled DNA at double-stranded breaks created with nucleases. This introduction is monitored through a DNA restoration that happens via both homologous or nonhomologous DNA restoration method. The nonhomologous end joining restoration process involves deletion and insertion in the coding region of the gene [36]. The gene deletion directs to gene silencing/gene knockdown while the gene insertion directs to gene overexpression [36].

7 Strategies to Improve Plants' Nutritional Status Using Genetic Engineering

Plants and vegetables are the principal supply of essential nutrients for normal development and growth. However, 50% of the whole population, mainly Asian and African people, experience deficiency of nutrients as they trust in cereal crops for food [37–39]. The initial verified use of genome editing in plants where the oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis application, in which oligonucleotides bearing the required nucleotide replacement, would related to triplex DNA and include discrepancy edits by endogenous mechanisms [40]. Mario Capecchi was the first to start gene targeting knowledge and technique, with harnessing double-stranded break (DSB) view for edition of genome [41]. A few years later, the capacity to fix/repair genomes by creating site-specific DSBs was established [42]. After DSBs were created, the cell's restoration system was used to produce the desired genetic product through the imprecise restoration activity of nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ) or the detailed restoration activity of homology-directed repair (HDR) [36, 43–45].

NHEJ can lead to the deletion or insertion of some base pairs and consequently generate functional gene knockouts [46–48]. Chromosomal

deletions, gene inversions, and chromosomal translocations are generated using more than one DSB [49, 50]. On the other hand, HDR creates a correct amendment and allows the sequence to be reshaped in a user-defined approach [51, 52]. HDR is used for genome editing and particular adjustment of the genome with diverse manners of restoration templates, varying from small oligonucleotides to hundred base pairs in distance, all the way up to full genes with homologous ends or even arms flanking the DSB site [53, 54].

To increase the plant's nutrition, recent methodologies aim to offer balanced and diverse diets with acceptable vitamin and mineral levels that improve human health. New improvements in plant biotechnology create it achievable to control the vital enzymes in specific metabolic pathways, enriching crucial nutrients such as iron and vitamins and decreasing the content of disadvantageous compounds such as acrylamide-forming amino acids and phytic acids. Numerous biofortified crops such as maize, rice, and wheat have been created to resolve the problematic of nutrition deficits [55–57].

Methodologies using genome editing engineered nucleases have demonstrated high efficiency. Several genome editing engineered nucleases, reagent-engineered meganucleases, transcriptional activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs), zinc finger nucleases, and clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats and associated Cas9 endonuclease (CRISPR/Cas9) have been created and expansively studied for their efficiency, specificity, and use in numerous systems [58, 59]. The phytopathogen *Xanthomonas oryzae* (Xanthomonas) manufactures transcriptional activator-like effectors (TALEs), which arrive in the cell nucleus and rewrite the transcription machinery to help the pathogen in the plant [60]. These TALEs could be created to bind any DNA sequence [61]. The TALE binding with a nuclease makes an enzyme that can produce DSBs in a site-specific manner in both in vitro and in vivo approaches [62, 63]. The CRISPR/Cas9 is a system constituted with the Cas9 enzyme and a single-guide RNA (sgRNA) molecules [64].

8 Plants, Crops, and Vegetable Nutrition

It has been well established that one of the strategies to combat malnutrition is the biofortification (densification with nutrients) of staple crops, considering that plants and vegetables are essential sources of fundamental nutrients for human growth and development [15]. The HarvestPlus-Consultative Group, through its Biofortification Challenge Program, has focused on the biofortification of some crops such as beans, maize, rice, and pearl millet, among others, mainly targeting Zn, Fe, and vitamin A [65].

An example of biofortification is carried out in certain millet classifications due to its nutritional richness, which contains a high protein amount, iron, zinc, dietary fibers, calcium, potassium, phosphorus, vitamin B, and essential amino acids [66, 67]. However, millet also contains compounds that impair the digestion and absorption of protein, vitamins, and minerals like polyphenols, phytates, and tannins with the ability to reduce cation bioavailability (Fe, Zn, Ca, Mg, and K) by chelation. Thus, millets are susceptible to biofortification by increasing the nutrient collection in milled grains and through decreasing the polyphenol, phytate, and tannin levels to improve the mineral bioavailability [68]. The aforementioned is carried out by taking into account the significance of germplasm description of millets to extend biofortified mixtures and the usage of omic methodologies to increase grain nutrient density [68]. Since PEM is related to protein deficiency, it should be noted that finger millets (one of the existing types of millets) contain a significant proportion of essential amino acids compared to cereals [69]. Indeed, high lysine and tryptophan can be found in this species.

In this sense, different finger millet genotypes were assessed for diversity looking at germ protein abundance with PCR-based methodology, revealing specific marks discerning low- and high-protein genotypes. The aforementioned study has the objective of choosing superior genotypes for use to produce high-quality

proteins in traditional breeding [70]. One of the features of the high amounts of tryptophan and lysine in finger millet is recognized to the transcriptional process in the order of amino acid catabolism genes via Opaque2 (o2), where o2 transformers (*Opm*) decrease lysine ketoglutarate reductase dehydrogenase [71] and upregulate aspartate kinase [72], developing tryptophan and lysine levels in the endosperm. Molecular description of *Opm alleles* is operated with simple sequence repetitions, and single-nucleotide polymorphisms can efficiently recognize quantitative trait loci (QTLs) inducing amino acid levels [73]. Utilizing the functional potential of comparative genomics, elevated tryptophan finger millet genotypes were identified from a global collection using genic simple sequence repeats for *Opm* genes [68]. Remarkably, a 220-bp allele of simple sequence repeats locus OM5 indicator planned from the 27-kDa γ-zein gene of *Opm* was predominant in the great tryptophan-containing genotypes [74]. This indicator can be used in marker-assisted breeding for introgression of *Opm* allele into over-yielding cultivars. Fine mapping of the *Opm* genes related to QTLs can lead to genetic improvement of germ protein quality in small millets and cereals [75]. Hence, crop-specific genes for high protein content can be beneficial in the engineering of other millets, as well as for protein fortification/supplementation in different types of cereals and staple crops.

Another approach to obtain better food nutrition in terms of resources, quantity, and quality is to reduce gene overexpression or gene silencing, respectively [76]. In this manner, genetic engineering biofortification requires knowledge of some key information, such as gene identification and molecular markers. The latter allows improved growth, development, yield, health, and nutritional value among other properties of food crops that include legumes, fruits, cereals, and so on [77]. A possible strategy to regulate PEM is genetic engineering or gene editing. This technique involves the introduction of a targeted DNA using a nuclease which is responsible for the DNA double-strand breaking with a subsequent deletion and insertion in the gene coding region [36] leading to an overexpression.

Many studies reporting improvements in plant's biochemical composition by genetic engineering have been done [78–140] and were extensively reviewed by Praveen Guleria et al. [24]. Some examples of improved nutritional transgenic food are golden rice (rice transgenic rice, abundant in α-carotene), transgenic maize, carrots, soybeans, and potatoes, among others. Table 1 summarizes some examples from these transgenic plants.

There are several methods to obtain transgenic organisms; in the case of golden rice, it was produced by overexpression of the carotenoid biosynthetic pathway genes [92]. Furthermore, a golden rice two was also developed, which indicated 23-fold higher α-carotene content than golden rice due to a substitution in the daffodil *Phytoene synthase* gene with the *maize Phytoene synthase* gene [115]. Transgenic carrot is another case of α-carotene-rich source, where an overexpressing of *α-carotene ketolase Haematococcus pluvialis* cDNA allows an increase of this bio-substance [132]. Similarly, transgenic soybeans represented a good goal in editing genes, as it showed higher amounts of α-carotene than control plants. In fact, the endosperm of transgenic seeds is more orange than usual [133]. It is interesting to note that an increase in the oleic acid and protein levels of transgenic soybean was also seen when the *Phytoene synthase* gene from *Pantoea ananatis* was overexpressed. Considering protein importance, a transgenic rice altered with two novel iron-binding proteins, soybean ferritin and human lactoferrin, has been established [87, 104]. The lactoferrin importance lies in that it binds with two iron atoms, increasing their iron content by 120%. Unfortunately, it has been demonstrated to be inadequate to balance the deficiency of iron in adults [18, 141]. Nevertheless, transgenic rice has shown a greater expression of soybean ferritin gene which showed an enhancement by double threefold its iron content (see Fig. 1) [18, 24, 87].

It should be noted that *Phaseolus vulgaris Ferritin*, *Oryza sativa metallothionein*-like, and *Aspergillus fumigatus phytase* gene expressions were able to improve the iron content by twofold

Table 1 Genetic changes presented in plants for increasing biochemically effective transgenic plants

Reference	Genetically modified plants	Transgene	Introduced adjustment
Falco et al. [79]	Canola	Lysine feedback-insensitive dihydrodipicolinic acid synthase	Increased lysine content
Dehesh et al. [81]	Canola	*Cuphea hookeriana* Acyl-ACP thioesterase Ch FatB2 gene	Greater accumulation of 8:0 and 10:0 fatty acids in seeds
Shewmaker et al. [88]	Canola	Bacterial phytoene synthase gene	50-fold increment in total carotenoid levels
Römer et al. [93]	Tomato	Bacterial carotenoid gene	Increased b-carotene content
Rosati et al. [94]	Tomato	Lycopene beta-cyclase gene	Augmented b-carotene content
Fraser et al. [99]	Tomato	*Phytoene desaturase* gene or *Erwinia uredovora phytoene synthase*	Threefold increase in b-carotene content
Mehta et al. [101]	Tomato	Yeast S-adenosylmethionine decarboxylase gene bonded with a ripening-inducible E8 promoter	Augmented polyamine and lycopene levels. Improved lifetime and juice quality
Goto et al. [87]	Rice	Soybean ferritin gene	Increased iron content
Lucca et al. [97]	Rice	*Phaseolus vulgaris* ferritin gene	Improvement in iron, cysteine residues, and phytase contents
Vasconcelos et al. [106]	Rice	Soybean ferritin gene under endosperm-specific glutelin promoter regulations	Greater zinc and iron content
Kawakatsu et al. [129]	Rice	Lysine-rich binding protein	Augmented lysine content

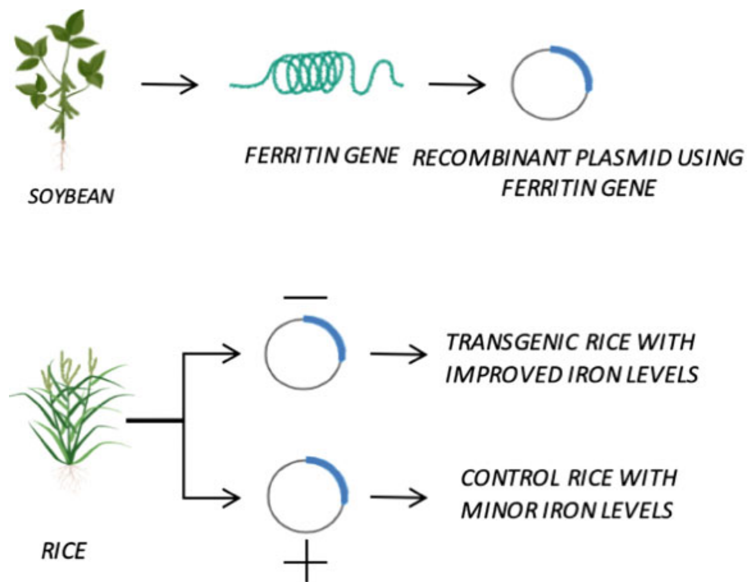


Fig. 1 Improvement of iron-fortified transgenic rice. Ferritin gene was extracted from soybean and hosted to rice plants via genetic engineering strategy [24]

and cysteine sevenfold. Given that cysteine helps in iron absorption, transgenic rice supplemented with cysteine and iron residues can balance iron insufficiency and combat anemia [97]. Concerning the importance of amino acids and proteins, several attempts have been made to

increase these nutrients into the food crop to reduce PEM; several transgenic methods have been developed in order to achieve this task. For example, the expression of the *Corynebacterium* lysine feedback-insensitive dihydrodipicolinic acid synthase (*DHDPS*) gene in canola resulted in a 100-fold rise in lysine expansion. Similar results of this amino acid increase were obtained when co-expression of lysine feedback-insensitive *E. coli* aspartokinase gene along with *DHDPS* gene in soybean was performed [79], and a comparable effect was obtained in the lysine levels of transgenic maize grain [86]. Moreover, potato transgenics where the *Threonine synthase* gene is downregulated by antisense inhibition have been demonstrated to store 239-fold greater methionine than control plants. In the same way, sweet potato has a low percentage of proteins; and then to improve their amino acid, protein, and polyphenolic contents, high expression of the amaranth seed storage albumin gene was made with positive results [142]. Regarding other species, the amaranth plant possesses a fundamental amino acid-rich storage protein named amaratin, which is encoded by the *11S globulin gene*. Thus, overexpression of *11S globulin* cDNA increases the essential amino acid and total protein contents of maize transgenics [111]. Finally, in another effort to solve the PEM problem, a study has reported that overexpressing the rice phosphate transporter gene OsPT2 leads to nitrogen fixation and ammonium assimilation in soybean plants, helping the growth of legumes (whose protein content is high) in nutrient inadequate soil [143].

9 Animal Nutrition

Currently, a higher requirement for animal protein is expected, where it is estimated that milk fabrication will need to grow by 63% and meat production by 76% [144]. In this sense, genetic improvement represents cheaper, faster, healthier, and more efficient animal fabrication, with abridged impact on the environment [25]. From the 1960s to 2005, consumption and production of pigs were increased in kilograms of feed intake. In the case of chickens, the time to obtain 2 kg of mass is condensed from 100 days to 40, the breast meat percentage is augmented from 12 to 20%, eggs produced per year are augmented by 30%, and eggs per ton of feed increased by 80%. Also, in cattle, milk production augmented by 67% [145].

Farm animal genetic engineering differs from that of plants since animals can simply progress from germline cells. Two basic approaches to produce genetically engineered animals are cytoplasmic injection (pronuclear injection or microinjection) and somatic cell nuclear transfer (cloning) [146]. In cloning, primary cells are used in vitro and are transfected by viral transfection or electroporation. Once the chosen DNA modifications are made, the genome-edited somatic cell is joined with an enucleated egg cell to generate a viable, genome-edited embryo. Conversely, microinjection implies a genome editing complex injection into a zygote. However, microinjection usually results in mosaicism (a combination of unedited and edited alleles) [147], and that is why, cloning methods are still extensively utilized in the genome editing process for animals [148, 149], although normally it does entail abortions, birth defects, and early postnatal death [148].

Presently, there are no commercial genetically modified farm animals available worldwide, except genetically modified salmon in the USA and Canada [150]. Nonetheless, market-oriented analyses of genome-edited farm animals have been recently growing [148, 151] indicating that in the near future, genome-edited farm animals as food could be marketed. In any case, genome-edited farm animals exist. In general terms, all of them are produced to increase productivity (e.g., enhanced muscle growth in cows) or increase efficiency of production (e.g., increased antibacterial properties in cow's milk), being the most used molecular mechanisms the SDN-1, SDN-2, and SDN-3 [148, 152]. Nowadays, programs for aquaculture species and major livestock now regularly include genomic selection, which has been an innovatory transformation for food production and selective breeding [25]. The major farm animal genomes have been sequenced [153–155]. Hence, based on the latter, genomic

tools [156, 157] and cheaper and novel sequencing technologies [158, 159] have been a main step forward. This will contribute to the productivity of farmed animals and enhanced modern animal breeding.

Genome editing and transgenic tools offer new opportunities for genetic development. In this manner, genetic modification has positive applications, as well as genome editing to improve farm animal productivity [25]. In the case of genetic modification, the task specifically aims to enhance food production efficiency and upsurge animal health and welfare. One of the most relevant features to improve is the muscle development (body mass) by the liver and pituitary gland, as well as the growth hormone-insulin-like growth factor axis. Through the expression of muscle- and/or liver-derived insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1), muscular hypertrophy can be induced. A study inserted genes encoding two growth-related hormones (growth hormone and IGF-1) into pigs through a microinjection of DNA into zygotes, obtaining positive results for the pigs expressing the transgene encoding growth hormone [160]. Another transgenic pig study (considering only the IGF-1) leads to the obtaining of less fat and leaner tissue by these animals. Unfortunately, the project had to cease due to pigs demonstrating an augmented lethargy, gastric ulcers, lameness, and a minor capacity to reply efficiently to stress [161]. Dairy cattle are susceptible to suffer mastitis owing to *Staphylococcus aureus*; thereby transgenic strategies have been applied such as the case of goats expressing human lysozyme that has been shown to inhibit the mastitis by bacterial growth [162, 163] or transgenic cattle that express the antibiotic lysostaphin in their milk [164]. As was mentioned above, the first genetically engineered salmon for sale, a landmark of genetically modified food animals, has proven to work well for consumption in the USA and Canada. The genetically modified task produced a rapid-growth salmon phenotype relative to wild types due to growth hormone gene integration in Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) together with a promoter from the cold-water ray-finned fish ocean pout (*Macrozoarces americanus*) [165]. Regarding Atlantic salmon, genome editing targets the dead-end protein encoded by the dnd gene in order to induce sterility in them preventing the escapees from breeding with wild stocks [166].

Genome editing is used to try and make precise and specific changes in the animals' genome increasing their productivity and disease resistance [25]. Up to the present time, the farmed animals in which the myostatin gene has been modified include cattle [167], sheep [167, 168], goat [169], and channel catfish [170]. The pig myostatin gene has been the most commonly targeted [171–177] and extensively studied by researchers, such as Ning Li and colleagues [178], Kang et al. [179], and Wang et al. [172], among others, although development problems and health issues were reported in homozygous knockout pigs. Sonstegard and colleagues knockouted the *KISS1R* gene of pigs, which encodes a receptor for the puberty onset in vertebrates and is intricated in the regulation of gonadotropin-releasing hormone [180]. The latter was done in an attempt to reduce aggressive behavior and to avoid the boar taint taste and odor of non-castrated male pork. Nonetheless, genome-wide association studies further emphasize that the boar taint mechanisms and testicular trait regions have pleiotropic properties, which might influence the genetic intervention applicability for this trait [181, 182].

In polled livestock, the natural hornless cattle is thought to have this particular trait due to one of two alleles [183, 184]. Thus, to reduce physical dehorning in dairy cattle, Carlson and colleagues [185] used TALENs to insert the allele Pc POLLED into the genome of bovine embryo fibroblasts from four lines of cattle. These were cloned with somatic cell transfer, resulting in full-term pregnancies for three of the four lines. Five live calves were created and all of them were regulated to have a likely polled phenotype at birth, where the two surviving calves were confirmed to be polled, strongly suggesting the Pc POLLED allele the causality [25].

Finally, genome editing, combined in some cases with transgenic technology, permits the insertion of novel properties to animal protein

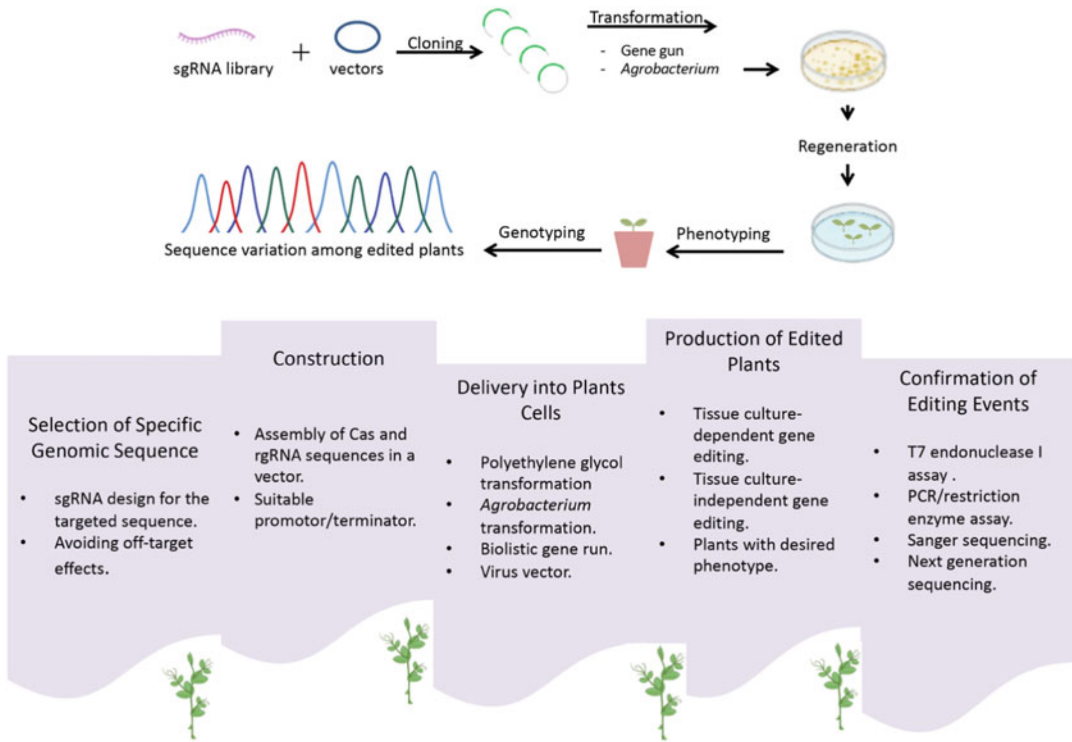


Fig. 2 Gene editing process [64]

that can have possible benefits for the diet in humans. These are the cases of cloned pigs expressing a *fat-1* gene from *Caenorhabditis elegans*. This gene reduces omega-6 to omega-3 fatty acids which is more beneficial [186]; these pigs now encode an omega-3 fatty acid desaturase due to having the *C. elegans fat-1* gene [187, 188]. In fact, Li and colleagues used CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing knowledge for directed integration of the *fat-1* gene from *C. elegans* into the porcine *Rosa* 26 locus [189]. Finally, Fig. 2 summarizes the gene editing process and steps.

Acknowledgments Julio Plaza-Diaz is part of the "UGR Plan Propio de Investigación 2016" and the "Excellence actions: Unit of Excellence on Exercise and Health (UCEES), University of Granada." Julio Plaza-Diaz is supported by a grant awarded to postdoctoral researchers at foreign universities and research centers from the "Fundación Ramón Areces," Madrid, Spain. We are grateful to Belen Vazquez-Gonzalez for assistance with the illustration service.

Competing Financial Interests The authors declare no competing financial interests.

Funding This research received no external funding.

References

1. De Onis M, Monteiro C, Akré J, Glugston G (1993) The worldwide magnitude of protein-energy malnutrition: an overview from the WHO Global Database on Child Growth. Bull World Health Organ 71(6): 703
2. Batool R, Butt MS, Sultan MT, Saeed F, Naz R (2015) Protein–energy malnutrition: a risk factor for various ailments. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 55(2): 242–253
3. Grover Z, Ee LC (2009) Protein energy malnutrition. Pediatr Clin 56(5):1055–1068
4. Adejumo AC, Akanbi O, Pani L (2019) Protein energy malnutrition is associated with worse outcomes in sepsis—a nationwide analysis. J Acad Nutr Diet 119(12):2069–2084
5. Akner G, Cederholm T (2001) Treatment of protein-energy malnutrition in chronic nonmalignant disorders. Am J Clin Nutr 74(1):6–24. https://doi.org/10.1093/ajcn/74.1.6

6. Crichton M, Craven D, Mackay H, Marx W, van der Schueren M, Marshall S (2019) A systematic review, meta-analysis and meta-regression of the prevalence of protein-energy malnutrition: associations with geographical region and sex. Age Ageing 48(1): 38–48. https://doi.org/10.1093/ageing/afy144
7. Hengeveld LM, Wijnhoven HA, Olthof MR, Brouwer IA, Harris TB, Kritchevsky SB, Newman AB, Visser M (2018) Prospective associations of poor diet quality with long-term incidence of protein-energy malnutrition in community-dwelling older adults: the Health, Aging, and Body Composition (Health ABC) Study. Am J Clin Nutr 107(2): 155–164
8. Price DM (2008) Protein-energy malnutrition among the elderly: implications for nursing care. Holist Nurs Pract 22(6):355–360. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.HNP.0000339347.03629.41
9. Norman K, Pichard C, Lochs H, Pirlich M (2008) Prognostic impact of disease-related malnutrition. Clin Nutr 27(1):5–15. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.clnu.2007.10.007
10. Leij-Halfwerk S, Verwijs MH, van Houdt S, Borkent JW, Guaitoli PR, Pelgrim T, Heymans MW, Power L, Visser M, Corish CA, van der Schueren MA, Manu EL (2019) Prevalence of protein-energy malnutrition risk in European older adults in community, residential and hospital settings, according to 22 malnutrition screening tools validated for use in adults >/=65 years: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Maturitas 126:80–89. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.maturitas.2019.05.006
11. Milner J, Goldberg I (1994) Functional foods. Chapman & Hall, London
12. Mayer JE, Pfeiffer WH, Beyer P (2008) Biofortified crops to alleviate micronutrient malnutrition. Curr Opin Plant Biol 11(2):166–170
13. Tontisirin K, Nantel G, Bhattacharjee L (2002) Food-based strategies to meet the challenges of micronutrient malnutrition in the developing world. Proc Nutr Soc 61(2):243–250
14. Bouis HE, Saltzman A (2017) Improving nutrition through biofortification: a review of evidence from HarvestPlus, 2003 through 2016. Glob Food Sec 12: 49–58. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gfs.2017.01.009
15. Bouis HE, Hotz C, McClafferty B, Meenakshi J, Pfeiffer WH (2011) Biofortification: a new tool to reduce micronutrient malnutrition. Food Nutr Bull 32(1):31–40
16. Saltzman A, Birol E, Bouis HE, Boy E, De Moura FF, Islam Y, Pfeiffer WH (2013) Biofortification: progress toward a more nourishing future. Glob Food Sec 2(1):9–17
17. Yadav PK, Singh A, Agrawal S (2020) An overview on management of micronutrients deficiency in plants through biofortification: a solution of hidden hunger. In: Sustainable solutions for elemental deficiency and excess in crop plants. Springer, Cham, pp 183–208
18. Lonnerdal B (2003) Genetically modified plants for improved trace element nutrition. J Nutr 133(5): 1490S–1493S
19. Gil A, Serra-Majem L, Calder PC, Uauy R (2012) Systematic reviews of the role of omega-3 fatty acids in the prevention and treatment of disease. Br J Nutr 107(S2):S1–S2
20. Naylor RL, Hardy RW, Bureau DP, Chiu A, Elliott M, Farrell AP, Forster I, Gatlin DM, Goldburg RJ, Hua K (2009) Feeding aquaculture in an era of finite resources. Proc Natl Acad Sci 106(36): 15103–15110
21. Duggal P, Petri WA Jr (2018) Does malnutrition have a genetic component? Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet 19:247–262
22. Ahmed T, Haque R, Shamsir Ahmed AM, Petri WA Jr, Cravioto A (2009) Use of metagenomics to understand the genetic basis of malnutrition. Nutr Rev 67(2):201–206
23. Kotut J, Wafula S, Ettyang G, Mbagaya G (2014) Protein-energy malnutrition among women of child bearing age in semiarid areas of Keiyo district, Kenya. Adv Life Sci Technol 24:80–92
24. Guleria P, Kumar V, Guleria S (2017) Genetic engineering: a possible strategy for protein-energy malnutrition regulation. Mol Biotechnol 59(11):499–517
25. Tait-Burkard C, Doeschl-Wilson A, McGrew MJ, Archibald AL, Sang HM, Houston RD, Whitelaw CB, Watson M (2018) Livestock 2.0–genome editing for fitter, healthier, and more productive farmed animals. Genome Biol 19(1):1–11
26. Ahmar S, Saeed S, Khan MHU, Ullah Khan S, Mora-Poblete F, Kamran M, Faheem A, Maqsood A, Rauf M, Saleem S (2020) A revolution toward gene-editing technology and its application to crop improvement. Int J Mol Sci 21(16):5665
27. Haider M, Haider SQ (1984) Assessment of protein-calorie malnutrition. Clin Chem 30(8):1286–1299
28. Gilgen D, Mascie-Taylor C, Rosetta L (2001) Intestinal helminth infections, anaemia and labour productivity of female tea pluckers in Bangladesh. Trop Med Int Health 6(6):449–457
29. Chakraborty S, Gupta S, Chaturvedi B, Chakraborty S (2006) A study of protein energy malnutrition (PEM) in children (0 to 6 year) in a rural population of Jhansi district (UP). Indian J Community Med 31(4):291
30. Duggan C, Watkins JB, Koletzko B, Walker WA (2016) Nutrition in pediatrics: basic science, clinical applications, vol 1. PMPH USA, Ltd, Shelton
31. Badaloo AV, Forrester T, Reid M, Jahoor F (2006) Lipid kinetic differences between children with kwashiorkor and those with marasmus. Am J Clin Nutr 83(6):1283–1288
32. Ahmed T, Rahman S, Cravioto A (2009) Oedematous malnutrition. Indian J Med Res 130(5): 651–655

33. Manary M, Brewster D (1997) Potassium supplementation in kwashiorkor. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 24(2):194–201
34. Campos-Bowers MH, Wittenmyer BF (2007) Biofortification in China: policy and practice. Health Res Policy Syst 5(1):1–7
35. Esvelt KM, Wang HH (2013) Genome-scale engineering for systems and synthetic biology. Mol Syst Biol 9(1):641
36. Bortesi L, Fischer R (2015) The CRISPR/Cas9 system for plant genome editing and beyond. Biotechnol Adv 33(1):41–52
37. White PJ, Broadley MR (2005) Biofortifying crops with essential mineral elements. Trends Plant Sci 10(12):586–593. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tplants.2005.10.001
38. Hirschi KD (2009) Nutrient biofortification of food crops. Annu Rev Nutr 29:401–421. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-nutr-080508-141143
39. Zhao FJ, McGrath SP (2009) Biofortification and phytoremediation. Curr Opin Plant Biol 12(3):373–380. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pbi.2009.04.005
40. Beetham PR, Kipp PB, Sawycky XL, Arntzen CJ, May GD (1999) A tool for functional plant genomics: chimeric RNA/DNA oligonucleotides cause in vivo gene-specific mutations. Proc Natl Acad Sci 96(15):8774–8778
41. Capecchi MR (1980) High efficiency transformation by direct microinjection of DNA into cultured mammalian cells. Cell 22(2):479–488
42. Jasin M (1996) Genetic manipulation of genomes with rare-cutting endonucleases. Trends Genet 12(6):224–228
43. Trevino AE, Zhang F (2014) Genome editing using Cas9 nickases. Methods Enzymol 546:161–174
44. Baltes NJ, Voytas DF (2015) Enabling plant synthetic biology through genome engineering. Trends Biotechnol 33(2):120–131. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tibtech.2014.11.008
45. Schaart JG, van de Wiel CCM, Lotz LAP, Smulders MJM (2016) Opportunities for products of new plant breeding techniques. Trends Plant Sci 21(5):438–449. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tplants.2015.11.006
46. Gorbunova V, Levy AA (1997) Non-homologous DNA end joining in plant cells is associated with deletions and filler DNA insertions. Nucleic Acids Res 25(22):4650–4657. https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/25.22.4650
47. Charbonnel C, Allain E, Gallego ME, White CI (2011) Kinetic analysis of DNA double-strand break repair pathways in Arabidopsis. DNA Repair 10(6):611–619. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dnarep.2011.04.002
48. Lloyd AH, Wang D, Timmis JN (2012) Single molecule PCR reveals similar patterns of non-homologous DSB repair in tobacco and Arabidopsis. PLoS One 7(2):e32255. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0032255
49. Morgan WF, Corcoran J, Hartmann A, Kaplan MI, Limoli CL, Ponnaiya B (1998) DNA double-strand breaks, chromosomal rearrangements, and genomic instability. Mutat Res 404(1-2):125–128
50. Ferguson DO, Alt FW (2001) DNA double strand break repair and chromosomal translocation: lessons from animal models. Oncogene 20(40):5572–5579. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.onc.1204767
51. Puchta H, Dujon B, Hohn B (1996) Two different but related mechanisms are used in plants for the repair of genomic double-strand breaks by homologous recombination. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93(10):5055–5060. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.93.10.5055
52. Puchta H (2005) The repair of double-strand breaks in plants: mechanisms and consequences for genome evolution. J Exp Bot 56(409):1–14
53. Song F, Stieger K (2017) Optimizing the DNA donor template for homology-directed repair of double-strand breaks. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 7:53–60. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.omtn.2017.02.006
54. Boel A, De Saffel H, Steyaert W, Callewaert B, De Paepe A, Coucke PJ, Willaert A (2018) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated homology-directed repair by ssODNs in zebrafish induces complex mutational patterns resulting from genomic integration of repair-template fragments. Dis Model Mech 11(10):35352. https://doi.org/10.1242/dmm.035352
55. Ye X, Al-Babili S, Kloti A, Zhang J, Lucca P, Beyer P, Potrykus I (2000) Engineering the provitamin A (beta-carotene) biosynthetic pathway into (carotenoid-free) rice endosperm. Science 287(5451):303–305. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.287.5451.303
56. Gil-Humanes J, Piston F, Barro F, Rosell CM (2014) The shutdown of celiac disease-related gliadin epitopes in bread wheat by RNAi provides flours with increased stability and better tolerance to over-mixing. PLoS One 9(3):e91931. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0091931
57. Mugode L, Ha B, Kaunda A, Sikombe T, Phiri S, Mutale R, Davis C, Tanumihardjo S, De Moura FF (2014) Carotenoid retention of biofortified provitamin A maize (Zea mays L.) after Zambian traditional methods of milling, cooking and storage. J Agric Food Chem 62(27):6317–6325. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf501233f
58. Gaj T, Gersbach CA, Barbas CF (2013) ZFN, TALEN, and CRISPR/Cas-based methods for genome engineering. Trends Biotechnol 31(7):397–405. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tibtech.2013.04.004
59. Osakabe Y, Osakabe K (2015) Genome editing with engineered nucleases in plants. Plant Cell Physiol 56(3):389–400. https://doi.org/10.1093/pcp/pcu170
60. Doyle EL, Stoddard BL, Voytas DF, Bogdanove AJ (2013) TAL effectors: highly adaptable phytobacterial virulence factors and readily engineered DNA-targeting proteins. Trends Cell

Biol 23(8):390–398. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tcb.2013.04.003
61. Li L, Piatek MJ, Atef A, Piatek A, Wibowo A, Fang X, Sabir JS, Zhu JK, Mahfouz MM (2012) Rapid and highly efficient construction of TALE-based transcriptional regulators and nucleases for genome modification. Plant Mol Biol 78(4-5): 407–416. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11103-012-9875-4
62. Christian M, Cermak T, Doyle EL, Schmidt C, Zhang F, Hummel A, Bogdanove AJ, Voytas DF (2010) Targeting DNA double-strand breaks with TAL effector nucleases. Genetics 186(2):757–761. https://doi.org/10.1534/genetics.110.120717
63. Mahfouz MM, Li L, Shamimuzzaman M, Wibowo A, Fang X, Zhu J-K (2011) De novo-engineered transcription activator-like effector (TALE) hybrid nuclease with novel DNA binding specificity creates double-strand breaks. Proc Natl Acad Sci 108(6):2623–2628
64. Sedeek KEM, Mahas A, Mahfouz M (2019) Plant genome engineering for targeted improvement of crop traits. Front Plant Sci 10:114. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2019.00114
65. Welch RM, Graham RD (2004) Breeding for micronutrients in staple food crops from a human nutrition perspective. J Exp Bot 55(396):353–364
66. Hegde PS, Rajasekaran NS, Chandra T (2005) Effects of the antioxidant properties of millet species on oxidative stress and glycemic status in alloxan-induced rats. Nutr Res 25(12):1109–1120
67. Saleh AS, Zhang Q, Chen J, Shen Q (2013) Millet grains: nutritional quality, processing, and potential health benefits. Compr Rev Food Sci Food Saf 12(3): 281–295
68. Vinoth A, Ravindhran R (2017) Biofortification in millets: a sustainable approach for nutritional security. Front Plant Sci 8:29
69. Mbithi-Mwikya S, Van Camp J, Yiru Y, Huyghebaert A (2000) Nutrient and antinutrient changes in finger millet (Eleusine coracan) during sprouting. LWT - Food Sci Technol 33(1):9–14
70. Kumar A, Sharma N, Panwar P, Gupta AK (2012) Use of SSR, RAPD markers and protein profiles based analysis to differentiate Eleusine coracana genotypes differing in their protein content. Mol Biol Rep 39(4):4949–4960
71. Kemper EL, Neto GC, Papes F, Moraes KCM, Leite A, Arruda P (1999) The role of opaque2 in the control of lysine-degrading activities in developing maize endosperm. Plant Cell 11(10):1981–1993
72. Brennecke K, Neto AJS, Lugli J, Lea PJ, Azevedo RA (1996) Aspartate kinase in the maize mutants Ask1-LT19 and opaque-2. Phytochemistry 41(3): 707–712
73. Goron TL, Raizada MN (2015) Genetic diversity and genomic resources available for the small millet crops to accelerate a New Green Revolution. Front Plant Sci 6:157
74. Babu BK, Agrawal P, Pandey D, Kumar A (2014) Comparative genomics and association mapping approaches for opaque2 modifier genes in finger millet accessions using genic, genomic and candidate gene-based simple sequence repeat markers. Mol Breed 34(3):1261–1279
75. Muthamilarasan M, Prasad M (2015) Advances in Setaria genomics for genetic improvement of cereals and bioenergy grasses. Theor Appl Genet 128(1): 1–14
76. Comai L, Schilling-Cordaro C, Mergia A, Houck CM (1983) A new technique for genetic engineering of Agrobacterium Ti plasmid. Plasmid 10(1):21–30
77. Pereira A (2000) A transgenic perspective on plant functional genomics. Transgenic Res 9(4):245–260
78. Stark DM, Timmerman KP, Barry GF, Preiss J, Kishore GM (1992) Regulation of the amount of starch in plant tissues by ADP glucose pyrophosphorylase. Science 258(5080):287–292
79. Falco S, Guida T, Locke M, Mauvais J, Sanders C, Ward R, Webber P (1995) Transgenic canola and soybean seeds with increased lysine. Biotechnology 13(6):577–582
80. Caimi PG, McCole LM, Klein TM, Kerr PS (1996) Fructan accumulation and sucrose metabolism in transgenic maize endosperm expressing a Bacillus amyloliquefaciens SacB gene. Plant Physiol 110(2): 355–363
81. Dehesh K, Jones A, Knutzon DS, Voelker TA (1996) Production of high levels of 8: 0 and 10: 0 fatty acids in transgenic canola by overexpression of Ch FatB2, a thioesterase cDNA from Cuphea hookeriana. Plant J 9(2):167–172
82. Molvig L, Tabe LM, Eggum BO, Moore AE, Craig S, Spencer D, Higgins TJ (1997) Enhanced methionine levels and increased nutritive value of seeds of transgenic lupins (Lupinus angustifolius L.) expressing a sunflower seed albumin gene. Proc Natl Acad Sci 94(16):8393–8398
83. Zou J, Katavic V, Giblin EM, Barton DL, MacKenzie SL, Keller WA, Hu X, Taylor DC (1997) Modification of seed oil content and acyl composition in the Brassicaceae by expression of a yeast sn-2 acyltransferase gene. Plant Cell 9(6):909–923
84. Shintani D, DellaPenna D (1998) Elevating the vitamin E content of plants through metabolic engineering. Science 282(5396):2098–2100
85. Sévenier R, Hall RD, van der Meer IM, Hakkert HJ, van Tunen AJ, Koops AJ (1998) High level fructan accumulation in a transgenic sugar beet. Nat Biotechnol 16(9):843–846
86. Mazur B, Krebbers E, Tingey S (1999) Gene discovery and product development for grain quality traits. Science 285(5426):372–375
87. Goto F, Yoshihara T, Shigemoto N, Toki S, Takaiwa F (1999) Iron fortification of rice seed by the soybean ferritin gene. Nat Biotechnol 17(3):282–286
88. Shewmaker CK, Sheehy JA, Daley M, Colburn S, Ke DY (1999) Seed-specific overexpression of phytoene

synthase: increase in carotenoids and other metabolic effects. Plant J 20(4):401–412

89. Jain AK, Nessler CL (2000) Metabolic engineering of an alternative pathway for ascorbic acid biosynthesis in plants. Mol Breed 6(1):73–78
90. Chakraborty S, Chakraborty N, Datta A (2000) Increased nutritive value of transgenic potato by expressing a nonallergenic seed albumin gene from Amaranthus hypochondriacus. Proc Natl Acad Sci 97(7):3724–3729
91. Chakraborty S, Chakraborty N, Agrawal L, Ghosh S, Narula K, Shekhar S, Naik PS, Pande P, Chakrborti SK, Datta A (2010) Next-generation protein-rich potato expressing the seed protein gene AmA1 is a result of proteome rebalancing in transgenic tuber. Proc Natl Acad Sci 107(41):17533–17538
92. Ye X, Al-Babili S, Klöti A, Zhang J, Lucca P, Beyer P, Potrykus I (2000) Engineering the provitamin A (β-carotene) biosynthetic pathway into (carotenoid-free) rice endosperm. Science 287(5451):303–305
93. Römer S, Fraser PD, Kiano JW, Shipton CA, Misawa N, Schuch W, Bramley PM (2000) Elevation of the provitamin A content of transgenic tomato plants. Nat Biotechnol 18(6):666–669
94. Rosati C, Aquilani R, Dharmapuri S, Pallara P, Marusic C, Tavazza R, Bouvier F, Camara B, Giuliano G (2000) Metabolic engineering of beta-carotene and lycopene content in tomato fruit. Plant J 24(3):413–420
95. Chapman KD, Austin-Brown S, Sparace SA, Kinney AJ, Ripp KG, Pirtle IL, Pirtle RM (2001) Transgenic cotton plants with increased seed oleic acid content. J Am Oil Chem Soc 78(9):941–947
96. Li L, Liu S, Hu Y, Zhao W, Lin Z (2001) Increase of sulphur-containing amino acids in transgenic potato with 10 ku zein gene from maize. Chin Sci Bull 46(6):482–484
97. Lucca P, Hurrell R, Potrykus I (2001) Genetic engineering approaches to improve the bioavailability and the level of iron in rice grains. Theor Appl Genet 102(2-3):392–397
98. Zeh M, Casazza AP, Kreft O, Roessner U, Bieberich K, Willmitzer L, Hoefgen R, Hesse H (2001) Antisense inhibition of threonine synthase leads to high methionine content in transgenic potato plants. Plant Physiol 127(3):792–802
99. Fraser PD, Römer S, Kiano JW, Shipton CA, Mills PB, Drake R, Schuch W, Bramley PM (2001) Elevation of carotenoids in tomato by genetic manipulation. J Sci Food Agric 81(9):822–827
100. Dinkins RD, Reddy MS, Meurer CA, Yan B, Trick H, Thibaud-Nissen F, Finer JJ, Parrott WA, Collins GB (2001) Increased sulfur amino acids in soybean plants overexpressing the maize 15 kDa zein protein. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol 37(6):742–747
101. Mehta RA, Cassol T, Li N, Ali N, Handa AK, Mattoo AK (2002) Engineered polyamine accumulation in tomato enhances phytonutrient content, juice quality, and vine life. Nat Biotechnol 20(6):613–618
102. Lu S, Van Eck J, Zhou X, Lopez AB, O'Halloran DM, Cosman KM, Conlin BJ, Paolillo DJ, Garvin DF, Vrebalov J (2006) The cauliflower Or gene encodes a DnaJ cysteine-rich domain-containing protein that mediates high levels of β-carotene accumulation. Plant Cell 18(12):3594–3605
103. Agius F, González-Lamothe R, Caballero JL, Muñoz-Blanco J, Botella MA, Valpuesta V (2003) Engineering increased vitamin C levels in plants by overexpression of a D-galacturonic acid reductase. Nat Biotechnol 21(2):177–181
104. Suzuki YA, Kelleher SL, Yalda D, Wu L, Huang J, Huang N, Lönnerdal B (2003) Expression, characterization, and biologic activity of recombinant human lactoferrin in rice. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 36(2):190–199
105. Cahoon EB, Hall SE, Ripp KG, Ganzke TS, Hitz WD, Coughlan SJ (2003) Metabolic redesign of vitamin E biosynthesis in plants for tocotrienol production and increased antioxidant content. Nat Biotechnol 21(9):1082–1087
106. Vasconcelos M, Datta K, Oliva N, Khalekuzzaman M, Torrizo L, Krishnan S, Oliveira M, Goto F, Datta SK (2003) Enhanced iron and zinc accumulation in transgenic rice with the ferritin gene. Plant Sci 164(3):371–378
107. Chen Z, Young TE, Ling J, Chang S-C, Gallie DR (2003) Increasing vitamin C content of plants through enhanced ascorbate recycling. Proc Natl Acad Sci 100(6):3525–3530
108. Anai T, Koga M, Tanaka H, Kinoshita T, Rahman S, Takagi Y (2003) Improvement of rice (Oryza sativa L.) seed oil quality through introduction of a soybean microsomal omega-3 fatty acid desaturase gene. Plant Cell Rep 21(10):988–992
109. LeDuc DL, Tarun AS, Montes-Bayon M, Meija J, Malit MF, Wu CP, AbdelSamie M, Chiang C-Y, Tagmount A, deSouza M (2004) Overexpression of selenocysteine methyltransferase in Arabidopsis and Indian mustard increases selenium tolerance and accumulation. Plant Physiol 135(1):377–383
110. Pilon-Smits EA, Hwang S, Lytle CM, Zhu Y, Tai JC, Bravo RC, Chen Y, Leustek T, Terry N (1999) Overexpression of ATP sulfurylase in Indian mustard leads to increased selenate uptake, reduction, and tolerance. Plant Physiol 119(1):123–132
111. Rascón-Cruz Q, Sinagawa-Garcia S, Osuna-Castro J, Bohorova N, Paredes-López O (2004) Accumulation, assembly, and digestibility of amarantin expressed in transgenic tropical maize. Theor Appl Genet 108(2):335–342
112. Abbadi A, Domergue F, Bauer J, Napier JA, Welti R, Zähringer U, Cirpus P, Heinz E (2004) Biosynthesis of very-long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids in transgenic oilseeds: constraints on their accumulation. Plant Cell 16(10):2734–2748

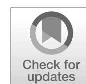
113. de la Garza RD, Quinlivan EP, Klaus SM, Basset GJ, Gregory JF, Hanson AD (2004) Folate biofortification in tomatoes by engineering the pteridine branch of folate synthesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci 101(38):13720–13725
114. Enfissi EM, Fraser PD, Lois LM, Boronat A, Schuch W, Bramley PM (2005) Metabolic engineering of the mevalonate and non-mevalonate isopentenyl diphosphate-forming pathways for the production of health-promoting isoprenoids in tomato. Plant Biotechnol J 3(1):17–27
115. Paine JA, Shipton CA, Chaggar S, Howells RM, Kennedy MJ, Vernon G, Wright SY, Hinchliffe E, Adams JL, Silverstone AL (2005) Improving the nutritional value of golden rice through increased pro-vitamin A content. Nat Biotechnol 23(4): 482–487
116. Cho EA, Lee CA, Kim YS, Baek SH, Reyes BG, Yun SJ (2005) Expression of γ-tocopherol methyltransferase transgene improves tocopherol composition in lettuce (Lactuca sativa L.). Mol Cell 19(1):16–22
117. Ducreux LJ, Morris WL, Hedley PE, Shepherd T, Davies HV, Millam S, Taylor MA (2005) Metabolic engineering of high carotenoid potato tubers containing enhanced levels of β-carotene and lutein. J Exp Bot 56(409):81–89
118. Shin YM, Park HJ, Yim SD, Baek NI, Lee CH, An G, Woo YM (2006) Transgenic rice lines expressing maize C1 and R-S regulatory genes produce various flavonoids in the endosperm. Plant Biotechnol J 4(3): 303–315
119. Drakakaki G, Marcel S, Glahn RP, Lund EK, Pariagh S, Fischer R, Christou P, Stoger E (2005) Endosperm-specific co-expression of recombinant soybean ferritin and Aspergillus phytase in maize results in significant increases in the levels of bioavailable iron. Plant Mol Biol 59(6):869–880
120. Tavva VS, Kim Y-H, Kagan IA, Dinkins RD, Kim K-H, Collins GB (2007) Increased α-tocopherol content in soybean seed overexpressing the Perilla frutescens γ-tocopherol methyltransferase gene. Plant Cell Rep 26(1):61–70
121. Storozhenko S, De Brouwer V, Volckaert M, Navarrete O, Blancquaert D, Zhang G-F, Lambert W, Van Der Straeten D (2007) Folate fortification of rice by metabolic engineering. Nat Biotechnol 25(11):1277–1279
122. Diretto G, Al-Babili S, Tavazza R, Papacchioli V, Beyer P, Giuliano G (2007) Metabolic engineering of potato carotenoid content through tuber-specific overexpression of a bacterial mini-pathway. PLoS One 2(4):e350
123. Aluru M, Xu Y, Guo R, Wang Z, Li S, White W, Wang K, Rodermel S (2008) Generation of transgenic maize with enhanced provitamin A content. J Exp Bot 59(13):3551–3562
124. Badejo AA, Tanaka N, Esaka M (2008) Analysis of GDP-D-mannose pyrophosphorylase gene promoter from acerola (Malpighia glabra) and increase in ascorbate content of transgenic tobacco expressing the acerola gene. Plant Cell Physiol 49(1):126–132
125. Upadhyaya CP, Akula N, Young KE, Chun SC, Kim DH, Park SW (2010) Enhanced ascorbic acid accumulation in transgenic potato confers tolerance to various abiotic stresses. Biotechnol Lett 32(2): 321–330
126. Wang X, Wang Y, Tian J, Lim BL, Yan X, Liao H (2009) Overexpressing AtPAP15 enhances phosphorus efficiency in soybean. Plant Physiol 151(1): 233–240
127. Badejo AA, Eltelib HA, Fukunaga K, Fujikawa Y, Esaka M (2009) Increase in ascorbate content of transgenic tobacco plants overexpressing the acerola (Malpighia glabra) phosphomannomutase gene. Plant Cell Physiol 50(2):423–428
128. Shen B, Allen WB, Zheng P, Li C, Glassman K, Ranch J, Nubel D, Tarczynski MC (2010) Expression of ZmLEC1 and ZmWRI1 increases seed oil production in maize. Plant Physiol 153(3):980–987
129. Kawakatsu T, Wang S, Wakasa Y, Takaiwa F (2010) Increased lysine content in rice grains by over-accumulation of BiP in the endosperm. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 74(12):2529–2531
130. Zhang J, Martin JM, Beecher B, Lu C, Hannah LC, Wall ML, Altosaar I, Giroux MJ (2010) The ectopic expression of the wheat Puroindoline genes increase germ size and seed oil content in transgenic corn. Plant Mol Biol 74(4):353–365
131. Oakes J, Brackenridge D, Colletti R, Daley M, Hawkins DJ, Xiong H, Mai J, Screen SE, Val D, Lardizabal K (2011) Expression of fungal diacylglycerol acyltransferase2 genes to increase kernel oil in maize. Plant Physiol 155(3):1146–1157
132. Ahn M-J, Noh SA, Ha S-H, Back K, Lee SW, Bae JM (2012) Production of ketocarotenoids in transgenic carrot plants with an enhanced level of β-carotene. Plant Biotechnol Rep 6(2):133–140
133. Kim M-J, Kim JK, Kim HJ, Pak JH, Lee J-H, Kim D-H, Choi HK, Jung HW, Lee J-D, Chung Y-S (2012) Genetic modification of the soybean to enhance the β-carotene content through seed-specific expression. PLoS One 7(10):e48287
134. Masuda H, Ishimaru Y, Aung MS, Kobayashi T, Kakei Y, Takahashi M, Higuchi K, Nakanishi H, Nishizawa NK (2012) Iron biofortification in rice by the introduction of multiple genes involved in iron nutrition. Sci Rep 2(1):1–7
135. Bulley S, Wright M, Rommens C, Yan H, Rassam M, Lin-Wang K, Andre C, Brewster D, Karunairetnam S, Allan AC (2012) Enhancing ascorbate in fruits and tubers through over-expression of the l-galactose pathway gene GDP-l-galactose phosphorylase. Plant Biotechnol J 10(4):390–397
136. Nguyen HC, Hoefgen R, Hesse H (2012) Improving the nutritive value of rice seeds: elevation of cysteine and methionine contents in rice plants by ectopic

expression of a bacterial serine acetyltransferase. J Exp Bot 63(16):5991–6001
137. Schmidt MA, Parrott WA, Hildebrand DF, Berg RH, Cooksey A, Pendarvis K, He Y, McCarthy F, Herman EM (2015) Transgenic soya bean seeds accumulating β-carotene exhibit the collateral enhancements of oleate and protein content traits. Plant Biotechnol J 13(4):590–600
138. Betancor M, Sprague M, Usher S, Sayanova O, Campbell P, Napier JA, Tocher DR (2015) A nutritionally-enhanced oil from transgenic Camelina sativa effectively replaces fish oil as a source of eicosapentaenoic acid for fish. Sci Rep 5(1):1–10
139. Kumar V, Chattopadhyay A, Ghosh S, Irfan M, Chakraborty N, Chakraborty S, Datta A (2016) Improving nutritional quality and fungal tolerance in soya bean and grass pea by expressing an oxalate decarboxylase. Plant Biotechnol J 14(6):1394–1405
140. Hu T, Zhu S, Tan L, Qi W, He S, Wang G (2016) Overexpression of OsLEA4 enhances drought, high salt and heavy metal stress tolerance in transgenic rice (Oryza sativa L.). Environ Exp Bot 123:68–77
141. Lönnerdal B, Iyer S (1995) Lactoferrin: molecular structure and biological function. Annu Rev Nutr 15(1):93–110
142. Shekhar S, Agrawal L, Mishra D, Buragohain AK, Unnikrishnan M, Mohan C, Chakraborty S, Chakraborty N (2016) Ectopic expression of amaranth seed storage albumin modulates photoassimilate transport and nutrient acquisition in sweetpotato. Sci Rep 6(1):1–14
143. Zhu W, Yang L, Yang S, Gai J, Zhu Y (2016) Overexpression of rice phosphate transporter gene OsPT2 enhances nitrogen fixation and ammonium assimilation in transgenic soybean under phosphorus deficiency. J Plant Biol 59(2):172–181
144. Alexandratos N, Bruinsma J (2012) World agriculture towards 2030/2050: the 2012 revision
145. Van der Steen H, Prall G, Plastow G (2005) Application of genomics to the pork industry. J Anim Sci 83(13):1–8
146. Kawall K, Cotter J, Then C (2020) Broadening the GMO risk assessment in the EU for genome editing technologies in agriculture. Environ Sci 32(1):1–24
147. Lamas-Toranzo I, Galiano-Cogolludo B, Cornudella-Ardiaca F, Cobos-Figueroa J, Ousinde O, Bermejo-Álvarez P (2019) Strategies to reduce genetic mosaicism following CRISPR-mediated genome edition in bovine embryos. Sci Rep 9(1):1–8
148. Tan W, Proudfoot C, Lillico SG, Whitelaw CBA (2016) Gene targeting, genome editing: from Dolly to editors. Transgenic Res 25(3):273–287
149. Yum S-Y, Youn K-Y, Choi W-J, Jang G (2018) Development of genome engineering technologies in cattle: from random to specific. J Anim Sci Biotechnol 9(1):1–9
150. Bruce A (2017) Genome edited animals: learning from GM crops? Transgenic Res 26(3):385–398
151. West J, Gill WW (2016) Genome editing in large animals. J Equine Vet 41:1–6
152. Liu X, Wang Y, Tian Y, Yu Y, Gao M, Hu G, Su F, Pan S, Luo Y, Guo Z (2014) Generation of mastitis resistance in cows by targeting human lysozyme gene to β-casein locus using zinc-finger nucleases. Proc R Soc B Biol Sci 281(1780):20133368
153. Consortium ICGS (2004) Sequence and comparative analysis of the chicken genome provide unique perspectives on vertebrate evolution. Nature 432(7018):695–716
154. Groenen MA, Archibald AL, Uenishi H, Tuggle CK, Takeuchi Y, Rothschild MF, Rogel-Gaillard C, Park C, Milan D, Megens H-J (2012) Analyses of pig genomes provide insight into porcine demography and evolution. Nature 491(7424):393–398
155. Elsik CG, Tellam RL, Worley KC (2009) The genome sequence of taurine cattle: a window to ruminant biology and evolution. Science 324(5926):522–528
156. Kranis A, Gheyas AA, Boschiero C, Turner F, Yu L, Smith S, Talbot R, Pirani A, Brew F, Kaiser P (2013) Development of a high density 600K SNP genotyping array for chicken. BMC Genomics 14(1):1–13
157. Ramos AM, Crooijmans RP, Affara NA, Amaral AJ, Archibald AL, Beever JE, Bendixen C, Churcher C, Clark R, Dehais P (2009) Design of a high density SNP genotyping assay in the pig using SNPs identified and characterized by next generation sequencing technology. PLoS One 4(8):e6524
158. Watson M (2014) Illuminating the future of DNA sequencing. Genome Biol 15(2):1–2
159. Loman NJ, Watson M (2015) Successful test launch for nanopore sequencing. Nat Methods 12(4):303–304
160. Pursel V, Hammer R, Bolt D, Palmiter R, Brinster R (2018) Expression of growth hormone transgenes in swine. J Reprod Fertil Suppl 10:235–245
161. Pursel VG, Pinkert CA, Miller KF, Bolt DJ, Campbell RG, Palmiter RD, Brinster RL, Hammer RE (1989) Genetic engineering of livestock. Science 244(4910):1281–1288
162. Maga EA, Cullor JS, Smith W, Anderson GB, Murray JD (2006) Human lysozyme expressed in the mammary gland of transgenic dairy goats can inhibit the growth of bacteria that cause mastitis and the cold-spoilage of milk. Foodbourne Pathog Dis 3(4):384–392
163. Maga EA, Sargent RG, Zeng H, Pati S, Zarling DA, Oppenheim SM, Collette NM, Moyer AL, Conrad-Brink JS, Rowe JD (2003) Increased efficiency of transgenic livestock production. Transgenic Res 12(4):485–496
164. Wall RJ, Powell AM, Paape MJ, Kerr DE, Bannerman DD, Pursel VG, Wells KD, Talbot N, Hawk HW (2005) Genetically enhanced cows resist intramammary Staphylococcus aureus infection. Nat Biotechnol 23(4):445–451

165. Waltz E (2017) First genetically engineered salmon sold in Canada. Nat News 548(7666):148
166. Wargelius A, Leininger S, Skaftnesmo KO, Kleppe L, Andersson E, Taranger GL, Schulz RW, Edvardsen RB (2016) DND knockout ablates germ cells and demonstrates germ cell independent sex differentiation in Atlantic salmon. Sci Rep 6(1):1–8
167. Proudfoot C, Carlson DF, Huddart R, Long CR, Pryor JH, King TJ, Lillico SG, Mileham AJ, McLaren DG, Whitelaw CBA (2015) Genome edited sheep and cattle. Transgenic Res 24(1):147–153
168. Crispo M, Mulet A, Tesson L, Barrera N, Cuadro F, dos Santos-Neto P, Nguyen T, Crénéguy A, Brusselle L, Anegón I (2015) Efficient generation of myostatin knock-out sheep using CRISPR/Cas9 technology and microinjection into zygotes. PLoS One 10(8):e0136690
169. Wang X, Niu Y, Zhou J, Zhu H, Ma B, Yu H, Yan H, Hua J, Huang X, Qu L (2018) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated MSTN disruption and heritable mutagenesis in goats causes increased body mass. Anim Genet 49(1):43–51
170. Khalil K, Elayat M, Khalifa E, Daghash S, Elaswad A, Miller M, Abdelrahman H, Ye Z, Odin R, Drescher D (2017) Generation of myostatin gene-edited channel catfish (Ictalurus punctatus) via zygote injection of CRISPR/Cas9 system. Sci Rep 7(1):1–12
171. Kang J-D, Kim S, Zhu H-Y, Jin L, Guo Q, Li X-C, Zhang Y-C, Xing X-X, Xuan M-F, Zhang G-L (2017) Generation of cloned adult muscular pigs with myostatin gene mutation by genetic engineering. RSC Adv 7(21):12541–12549
172. Wang K, Tang X, Xie Z, Zou X, Li M, Yuan H, Guo N, Ouyang H, Jiao H, Pang D (2017) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated knockout of myostatin in Chinese indigenous Erhualian pigs. Transgenic Res 26(6): 799–805
173. Cai C, Qian L, Jiang S, Sun Y, Wang Q, Ma D, Xiao G, Li B, Xie S, Gao T (2017) Loss-of-function myostatin mutation increases insulin sensitivity and browning of white fat in Meishan pigs. Oncotarget 8(21):34911
174. Bi Y, Hua Z, Liu X, Hua W, Ren H, Xiao H, Zhang L, Li L, Wang Z, Laible G (2016) Isozygous and selectable marker-free MSTN knockout cloned pigs generated by the combined use of CRISPR/Cas9 and Cre/LoxP. Sci Rep 6(1):1–12
175. Rao S, Fujimura T, Matsunari H, Sakuma T, Nakano K, Watanabe M, Asano Y, Kitagawa E, Yamamoto T, Nagashima H (2016) Efficient modification of the myostatin gene in porcine somatic cells and generation of knockout piglets. Mol Reprod Dev 83(1):61–70
176. Wang K, Ouyang H, Xie Z, Yao C, Guo N, Li M, Jiao H, Pang D (2015) Efficient generation of myostatin mutations in pigs using the CRISPR/Cas9 system. Sci Rep 5(1):1–11
177. Cyranoski D (2015) Super-muscly pigs created by small genetic tweak. Nat News 523(7558):13
178. Kang Q, Hu Y, Zou Y, Hu W, Chang F (2014) Improving pig genetic resistance and muscle production through molecular biology. In: Proceedings of the 10th world congress of genetics applied to livestock production, pp 17–22
179. Cattle GI welfare implications of dehorning and disbudding cattle
180. Sonstegard T, Carlson D, Lancto C, Fahrenkrug S (2016) Precision animal breeding as a sustainable, non-GMO solution for improving animal production and welfare. In: Biennial Conf Aust Soc Anim Prod, pp 316–317
181. Große-Brinkhaus C, Storck LC, Frieden L, Neuhoff C, Schellander K, Looft C, Tholen E (2015) Genome-wide association analyses for boar taint components and testicular traits revealed regions having pleiotropic effects. BMC Genet 16(1):1–16
182. Rowe SJ, Karacaören B, De Koning D-J, Lukic B, Hastings-Clark N, Velander I, Haley CS, Archibald AL (2014) Analysis of the genetics of boar taint reveals both single SNPs and regional effects. BMC Genomics 15(1):1–11
183. Medugorac I, Seichter D, Graf A, Russ I, Blum H, Göpel KH, Rothammer S, Förster M, Krebs S (2012) Bovine polledness–an autosomal dominant trait with allelic heterogeneity. PLoS One 7(6):e39477
184. Rothammer S, Capitan A, Mullaart E, Seichter D, Russ I, Medugorac I (2014) The 80-kb DNA duplication on BTA1 is the only remaining candidate mutation for the polled phenotype of Friesian origin. Genet Sel Evol 46(1):1–5
185. Carlson DF, Lancto CA, Zang B, Kim E-S, Walton M, Oldeschulte D, Seabury C, Sonstegard TS, Fahrenkrug SC (2016) Production of hornless dairy cattle from genome-edited cell lines. Nat Biotechnol 34(5):479–481
186. Lai L, Kang JX, Li R, Wang J, Witt WT, Yong HY, Hao Y, Wax DM, Murphy CN, Rieke A (2006) Generation of cloned transgenic pigs rich in omega-3 fatty acids. Nat Biotechnol 24(4):435–436
187. Zhang P, Zhang Y, Dou H, Yin J, Chen Y, Pang X, Vajta G, Bolund L, Du Y, Ma RZ (2012) Handmade cloned transgenic piglets expressing the nematode fat-1 gene. Cell Reprogram 14(3):258–266
188. Liu X, Pang D, Yuan T, Li Z, Li Z, Zhang M, Ren W, Ouyang H, Tang X (2016) N-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids attenuates triglyceride and inflammatory factors level in h fat-1 transgenic pigs. Lipids Health Dis 15(1):1–7
189. Li M, Ouyang H, Yuan H, Li J, Xie Z, Wang K, Yu T, Liu M, Chen X, Tang X (2018) Site-specific Fat-1 knock-in enables significant decrease of n-6PUFAs/n-3PUFAs ratio in pigs. G3 8(5): 1747–1754

Part V

Therapeutic Implications



Gene Therapy and Cardiovascular Diseases

Dongchao Lu, Sarah Cushman, Thomas Thum, and Christian Bär

Abstract

Cardiovascular diseases (CVDs) are the leading causes of death globally and urgently require new novel therapeutic strategies. Gene therapy is the application of gene modulation technology to treat abnormal gene expression under disease conditions. Viral- and nonviral-based gene delivery systems are the foundation of gene modulation in target cells. Moreover, plasmid- or oligo-based gene modulation tools as well as new advancements in gene editing using CRISPR/Cas technology are currently being tested in a variety of clinical trials. Here, we summarized state-of-the-art gene therapy technologies as well as recent clinical trials and discuss the applications and lessons of gene therapy in CVDs.

D. Lu · S. Cushman
Institute of Molecular and Translational Therapeutic Strategies, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany

T. Thum · C. Bär (✉)
Institute of Molecular and Translational Therapeutic Strategies, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany

REBIRTH Center for Translational Regenerative Medicine, Hannover Medical School, Hannover, Germany

Fraunhofer Institute for Toxicology and Experimental Medicine (ITEM), Hannover, Germany
e-mail: baer.Christian@mh-hannover.de

Keywords

Gene therapy · RNA therapy · Cardiovascular diseases

1 Background

Genes, originating from segments of DNA or RNA, are the basic building blocks for the traits that make up organisms [1]. Phenotypic traits derive from a combination of our genetic material and the environment we stem from. This genetic material, including nuclear and mitochondrial DNA, is expressed through the transcription into RNA, which can act as functional molecules themselves or which can be translated into functional proteins [2, 3].

Importantly, gene sequences can exhibit dysfunctional behaviors which are known as mutations, and these mutations have the potential to lead to the development of diseases. These diseases caused by gene mutations are categorized as chromosomal diseases, gene disorders, or mitochondrial dysfunction [4]. In addition, certain infectious diseases such as acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) as well as some noncommunicable diseases like cancer, are known to be mediated by gene abnormalities. For example, mutations in the DNA repair gene, breast cancer gene 1 (BRCA1), are associated with an increased risk of a variety of cancers such as prostate,

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_16

breast, and ovarian cancers owing to high loads of DNA damage and resulting in genomic instability [5, 6]. It is reported that people with a BRCA1 mutation have an extremely high risk for developing breast cancer (87%) and ovarian cancer (44%) compared to noncarriers of this mutation [7].

Several traditional treatments such as surgery, chemotherapy, and radiation as well as novel approaches such as hormone-based therapies, stem cell therapies, or immunotherapies, are widely used for cancer treatments and for targeting cardiovascular diseases (CVDs) [8–14]. Quite often, traditional therapies are not always successful at correcting the mechanism by which the disease occurs and rather treats the symptoms of the disease instead. Gene therapy, on the other hand, aims to target and potentially correct any genetic mutation causing a disease, providing a new treatment option which focuses on the initial source of any illness [15]. Initially, gene therapy was designed to introduce a new healthy copy where a gene was either mutated or absent in cells via a vector. The restoration of gene function following a therapeutic modification results in the correction of genetic abnormalities stemming from hereditary or environmental processes. With the advancement of gene therapy, however, also comes new techniques by which to manipulate the genome. New mechanisms involving gene editing and inactivation have emerged in recent years such as the CRISPR/Cas system and antisense strategies encompassing RNA-based therapeutics. While the disruption and silencing of genes through direct DNA and RNA editing tools are new and exciting developments in this field, we will primarily focus here on the state-of-the-art vehicle delivery approaches of introducing genes into cells [16].

2 History of Gene Therapy

The concept of gene therapy as a gene modification tool has been around since the 1970s. Despite the beneficial potential in reversing possibly life-threatening mutations, gene therapy also raised deep ethical concerns surrounding genetic modifications [17]. However, the field of gene therapy continued to grow since the 1980s, when the retroviral vector system was developed to efficiently deliver transgenes into mammalian cells and modify preexisting genes [18]. By the 1990s, the first approved gene therapy was applied to two children in the USA who suffered from adenosine deaminase deficiency-severe combined immunodeficiency (ADA-SCID). Two years after the gene therapy treatment, which was performed ex vivo after T cell apheresis using cell culture expansion and reinfusion into the patients after 9–12 days, the integrated vector-mediated ADA gene remained expressed in T cells [19]. This report was the first positive indicator that gene therapy could be an efficient and safe treatment option for patients suffering from immune deficient diseases [19]. Apart from genomic modifications, RNA interference (RNAi), in particular small interfering RNA (siRNA), has also been developed as a gene silencing therapy to block abnormal RNA or protein expression which may lead to disease [20, 21]. In 2003, siRNAs were first shown to mediate Fas cell surface death receptor (FAS) knockdown in vivo, which allowed for a reduced threat from fulminant hepatitis [22]. Notably, the first human trial targeting the vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and kinesin spindle protein (KSP) used lipid nanoparticle (LNP) formulation of siRNAs. This technique was applied to cancer patients in 2013, providing both safe and pharmacokinetically sound evidence that siRNA-mediated gene therapy could be used effectively in humans [23]. In 2008, treatment of Leber's congenital amaurosis (a rare disease typically causing severe visual impairment) by recombinant adeno-associated virus 2 (rAAV2)-

RPE65 became the first effective AAV-mediated gene therapy to show clinical efficacy and disease improvement in patients. Three parallel trials proved that patients who got a single subretinal injection of rAAV2-RPE65, to complement the causative mutation in the RPE65 gene, had long-term improvement in vision and light sensitivity [24–26]. Importantly, the follow-up studies showed persistent visual improvements in patients and did not raise any safety concerns [27–29]. Despite the successes seen with viral vectors in clinical trials, other gene editing techniques were advancing in parallel. With the development of the engineered clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR) and CRISPR-associated (Cas) nuclease technology, the ability to manipulate DNA became increasingly simplified, efficient, and cost effective [30, 31]. The CRISPR-Cas technology improved the possibility of gene therapy mediated by engineered cells such as chimeric antigen receptor T cells (CAR-T) [32]. These engineered CAR-Ts were produced to recognize, target, and destroy cancerous cells in a more effective and localized manner [33]. After the first successful clinical trials using engineered CAR-T therapy for lung cancer in 2016, they have since been further utilized in active clinical trials for the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma, and solid tumors [34–38]. The existence of clinical trials using multiple gene therapeutic techniques brings to light the high demand and great advancements of multiple technologies that are being pursued to treat genetic abnormalities.

3 Material and Approach of Gene Therapy

Currently, the field of gene therapy has been broadly studied; however, it is still a therapeutic concept predominantly based in research laboratories with only a limited number of ongoing clinical trials [39]. The efficiency and specificity of gene delivery as well as gene regulation utilized in target cells are the two major obstacles that must be overcome to successfully achieve safe and effective genetic modifications [40]. In this part, we will summarize the viral and nonviral approaches that are currently utilized in gene therapy.

4 CRISPR-Cas-Mediated Gene Editing

Primarily, we see gene therapy as using a vector to replace a mutated or missing copy of a gene. Another form of treatment that is newer to the field of gene therapy involving editing and inactivation is the CRISPR/Cas system. This mechanism avoids the complications and risks associated with some viral vector delivery and the correlating toxicities and safety concerns that have been seen in several clinical trials over the years [41]. The CRISPR/Cas system was the most recent gene editing technique after the foundational mechanisms using transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs) and first zinc finger nucleases (ZFN). This genome editing tool can be delivered to cells through AAV vectors [42], which have a safer history comparative to other viral vectors, as well as through other non-viral delivery strategies. CRISPR/Cas operates via the specific targeting of a segment of DNA in the genome by utilizing a particularly designed single-guide RNA (sgRNA) to identify only the region requiring intervention. Optimizing this specificity allowed by sgRNAs will continue to help reduce off-target effects currently seen by this gene editing technique [43, 44]. The Cas protein, an endonuclease allowing for breaks in DNA at the target site, can also be modified to reduce side effects. These modifications, however, do not make the CRISPR/Cas system superior or inferior to standard gene replacement therapy using viral vectors. Both methods have different advantages and flaws unique to their mode of action and delivery mechanism [41]. The mechanism by which the Cas protein cuts DNA inducing double-stranded breaks (DSBs) can also lead to the unintended activation of apoptosis pathways, such as triggering p53, instead of editing the DNA segment after the break [45]. One recent development with this technique is using the base editing (BE) system.

This allows for a single targeted base pair to be exchanged, for example, a C-G base pair can be exchanged for a T-A by cytidine base editors (CBEs) and the reverse mutation can also be corrected for A-T pairs exchanged for G-C using adenosine base editors (ABEs). This occurs by using a catalytically deactivated Cas9 endonuclease (dCas9) that does not induce DSBs, allowing for single base pair edits [46, 47]. RNA is also edited using CRISPR technology with the endonuclease Cas13 (Cas9 can be modified to target RNA instead of DNA as well; however, Cas13 exclusively targets RNA). Since this system does not require the protospacer adjacent motif (PAM) sequence that is necessary at the DNA editing sites, Cas13 can be more broadly used. There is an additional advantage, in that the Cas13 system does not permanently edit the genome since it is targeting RNA after transcription, resulting in nonpermanent changes (which could trigger immune reactions or lead to incorrect editing with DNA [48]). The method for base pair editing is similar to that of the dCas9 system, using dead Cas13 (dCas13) with the ADAR2 domain to edit adenosine to inosine in what is known as the REPAIR mechanism or with APOBEC1 for exchanging a cytidine to uridine using the RESCUE technique [41, 48–50].

The first CRISPR clinical trial utilized PD-1 edited T cells to treat non-small-cell lung cancer in China. Most patients had minimal side- and off-target effects, and a decrease in disease progression was also seen when edited T cells reached higher levels in patients [51, 52]. Edited PD-1 and CAR-T cells were also used as a combined treatment for the first CRISPR clinical trial to take place in the USA in 2018 to treat myeloma and sarcoma. The study was also deemed a success, in that it provided initial findings in combination with the first Chinese trial that CRISPR editing as a treatment for disease progression seemed to be relatively safe with acceptable side effects. Treatments in both trails did not produce an overwhelming immune response either, which was an early problem that was observed in some of the first clinical trials using gene replacement therapy [53]. Both off-target and on-target mutations were seen in both trials; however, while this safety concern is still valid and needs to be closely monitored in all future DNA editing trials, neither effects were detrimental to the patients and were found to take place primarily in noncoding segments of the genome.

Aside from cancers, CRISPR has also taken its first step in 2019 to treat a genetic disease, sickle cell disease (SCD), by increasing fetal hemoglobin levels in isolated and edited autologous blood stem cells [54]. These stem cells are reintroduced into the body of the patient and can then create a new population of hemoglobin-producing blood cells from the bone marrow. This technique is also quite specific as it involves ex vivo editing of the blood cells directly, which greatly reduces off- and on-target side effects seen with CRISPR editing through a delivery vector into the patient [55]. Overall, CRISPR editing to treat diseases of both genetic and acquired origins is still in its early stages. So far, the clinical trials that have taken place in the last few years have been used to primarily assess feasibility, toxicity, tolerability, and practicality before shifting the focus to successfully cure a disease [56].

5 Nonviral-Mediated Gene Therapy Methods

In the early 2000s, nonviral approaches were not a common tool for gene therapy due to low delivery efficiency and specificity [57]. In the past few years, production and modification of nonviral methods have greatly improved and led to a higher gene transfer efficiency while also allowing for long-term gene expression, not only in vitro but also in vivo. In addition, the low cost, ease of production, and reduced pathogenicity of nonviral applications have important manufactory and safety advantages over viral approaches [58]. Currently, siRNAs or RNA inhibitors, RNA mimics, modified mRNAs (modRNA), and other

oligonucleotide-based molecular products are gaining attention as potential therapeutic materials in the application for gene therapy [59].

6 siRNA and RNA Inhibitors

Since the first RNAi phenomenon was reported in 1990 [60] and the mechanisms behind it were clarified in 1998 [61], siRNAs have become a regular tool to perform gene inhibition in cell culture. SiRNAs are small RNA transcripts with a length of approximately 20–22 nucleotides and can disrupt protein translation by promoting the degradation of RNA transcripts through binding to the targeted mRNA [62]. Similar gene silencing can also be reached by antisense oligonucleotides (ASOs). These synthetic, single-stranded oligonucleotides prevent expression of a target protein by blocking the specific region of target RNA or DNA [63, 64]. For example, locked nucleic acid (LNA) is a kind of modified ASO with a bridged, bicyclic sugar moiety. LNA will bind to the target RNA forming a DNA-RNA hybrid, and RNase H-dependent degradation of the targeted RNA will then be activated [65].

MiR-132 is a breakthrough example of RNA gene therapy and is the first antisense gene therapy to treat CVDs. Since 2011, miR-132 has been reported as a regulator of cardiac fibrosis [66, 67], cardiac hypertrophy, and cardiomyocyte autophagy [68]. A series of preclinical investigations further proved that the inhibitor of miR-132 (antimiR-132) could rescue cardiac hypertrophy and heart failure in mice and more importantly in pigs [68–70]. Notably, CDR132L, the miR-132 inhibitor applied in pigs, is a synthetic LNA-ASO modified with a fully phosphorylated backbone. In addition, large animal investigations reported a safe administration, high cardiac delivery efficiency, and clear reduction of miR-132 expression in the myocardium and plasma [69, 70]. With these promising preclinical results, CDR132L moved forward for the first-in-human study in 2019 involving 28 patients with stable chronic heart failure of ischemic origin (NCT04045405). Safety, pharmacokinetics, and heart failure relevant pharmacodynamic parameters are all intensively evaluated in this phase I clinical trial. After a 1-year follow-up, CDR132L has proved to be safe to administer to patients and can also be well tolerated without an apparent dose-limiting toxicity. Interesting, reductions of NT-proBNP, significant QRS narrowing, and positive trends for relevant cardiac fibrosis biomarkers were reported after CDR132L treatment in heart failure patients with the standard care of treatment [71].

Notably, several siRNA-mediated gene therapies have been approved and applied in the clinics [72]. For example, Alnylam's Onpattro (Patisiran) (NCT01960348) was approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as a novel RNA interference drug to treat hereditary transthyretin-mediated amyloidosis (hATTR), a rare disease characterized by extracellular amyloid protein deposition leading to multiple organ dysfunction [73]. In addition, several siRNA-mediated RNAi drugs are currently in clinical trials (phase II/III) such as SYL1001Sylentis (NCT 03108664) for dry eye disease or QPI-1007 Quark (NCT 02341560) for non-arteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. Detailed siRNA and RNA inhibitor clinical trials are excellently summarized elsewhere [72, 74].

7 Nucleic Acid Drugs

The first successful genetic transfer in mice occurred in the 1990s with an overexpression of chloramphenicol acetyltransferase, luciferase, and β-galactosidase by an in vitro transcribed (IVT) RNA or DNA plasmid in the skeletal muscle [75]. In the following years, IVT mRNA was introduced for diverse applications, including protein substitution and vaccination approaches for cancer and infectious diseases [76–79]. IVT RNAs are synthesized RNAs that can be transcribed in vitro from DNA templates containing the sequence from either protein coding genes or noncoding RNA transcripts [80]. ModRNAs are IVT RNAs with modified nucleosides or synthetic nucleoside analogues which could reduce the innate immune response of the host cell and

improve tissue specificity. IVT RNAs have come into focus as novel drugs to revise abnormal genetic disorders, allowing for the overall improvement in the field of RNA pharmacology [81].

Although oligo nucleic drugs remain in the initial stages of preclinical or phase I/II clinical trials, some of the pilot investigations have broaden the potential applications of IVT RNA as the future of medicine. For example, in cancer immunotherapy, Melan-A, tyrosinase, gp100, Mage-A1, Mage-A3, and survivin IVT mRNA were utilized in metastatic melanoma patients in a phase I/II trial (NCT00204607) [82]. In addition, several phase I/II clinical trials using IVT mRNAs for the treatment of HIV infections demonstrated the safety of IVT mRNA vaccines and observed the induced responses of immunogens in CD8+ and CD4+ T cells [83–85]. Detailed IVT RNA clinical trials are well reviewed by Sahin et al. [86].

8 Viral-Based Approach for Gene Therapy

The advantage of viral vectors is their high infection efficiency in a broad spectrum of cells, ranging from prokaryotes to many eukaryotic cells. Therefore, recombinant viral vectors have the potential to package and deliver the transgene to the targeted cells. Viral vectors can be divided into genome-integrating vectors as well as non-integrating vectors, classified by whether the transgene can be continuously expressed in dividing cells [87].

Most RNA viruses with single-stranded RNA (ssRNA) or double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) are not able to integrate their genome into the host chromosome, with the exception of retroviruses. One of the best studied retroviruses is the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) [88]. The first retroviral vectors which were used in human gene therapy trials [19] are derived from the Moloney murine leukemia virus (MLV) [89].

Lentiviruses are a complex subtype of retroviruses which can cause chronic and deadly diseases. Notably, the outstanding feature of lentiviruses is the high efficiency of infection and genomic integration in nondividing and terminally differentiated mammalian cells, including lymphocytes and macrophages. In addition, the ability to transport large genetic payloads as well as their stable long-term transgene expression makes them a very attractive tool for gene delivery [90, 91]. So far, three generations of lentiviral vectors have been developed for transgene modification [92]. First-generation lentiviral vectors originate from a significant portion of the HIV genome, including the gag and pol genes encoding for viral structural proteins and the viral RNA reverse transcriptase, respectively, as well as several additional viral proteins such as the envelope protein (VSV-G) [93]. VSV-G recognizes a ubiquitously expressed receptor such as low-density lipoprotein receptor (LDL-R) [94], which aids in a high transduction efficiency of the lentiviral vector in a wide range of cells [95]. The main improvements that were made to the second and third generations of lentiviral vectors were regarding safety. Second-generation lentiviral vectors were subsequently developed to remove accessory gene factors such as vif, vpr, vpu, and nef. Third-generation vectors split the viral genome into separate plasmids and removed the tat gene to further improve the safety of the vectors [96]. In 2003, the first lentiviral clinical application occurred by delivering a long antisense RNA sequence targeting the HIV-1 envelope gene for anti-HIV therapy [97]. It is important to note that eight years after the study, there was no apparent risk for serious adverse or long-term events occurring in this clinical trial [98].

The Sendai virus (SeV) is a member of the *Respirovirus* genus, a negative sense ssRNA virus from the Paramyxoviridae family. Due to the cytoplasmic gene expression of SeV, the absence of genomic integration is a unique feature of recombinant SeV vectors compared to a retroviral vector [99, 100]. SeV vectors have been used in clinical trials and tested in a live attenuated vaccine [101], in cancer [102], as well as in critical limb ischemia [103] for gene therapy.

A DNA viral vector is an additional virus system that employs double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) or single-stranded DNA (ssDNA) as its genomic materials. Adenoviruses (AdVs) are non-enveloped DNA viruses with a diameter of 70nm, a 36 kb dsDNA, and about 50 viral polypeptides [104]. So far, more than 50 different AdV serotypes have been characterized, and a majority of them can also be observed naturally in humans. In gene therapy, AdV types 2 and 5 were found to be good options for clinical trials due to the fact that they were not already associated with human diseases [105, 106]. In addition, adenoviral vectors have a packaging capacity of up to 8000 base pairs (bps) of foreign DNA, which is sufficient for the delivery of most therapeutic genes. Similar to lentiviruses, recombinant AdVs (rAdV) can also infect dividing and quiescent cells with equal transduction efficiency [107]. Notably, rAdVs can obtain a higher production yield (10^{10}–10^{11} infectious particles/ml) compared to other vector systems such as retroviral vectors [108]. However, rAdVs show no integration into the targeting cell genome, indicating short-term expression particularly in dividing cells. In addition, in vivo applications of adenoviral vectors could lead to cellular immunity and the generation of a humoral response, also reducing the expression or the effect of adenoviral therapy. Furthermore, the generation of neutralizing antibodies of rAdV could strongly reduce their utility, resulting in the difficulties of repetitive treatments [109]. In 1993, the first AdV-mediated gene therapy was performed to transfer cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) cDNA to treat cystic fibrosis in humans. The benefits of AdV treatment were observed, and no virus-associated adverse effect was detected, indicating that adenoviral vectors were effective at transferring genes to most organs in vivo [110]. However, immunogenicity still limits application of the AdVs in clinical trials [111].

In 1965, a number of "satellite viruses" were observed by electron microscopy (EM) from AdVs prepared in the lab [112, 113]. These small DNA viruses (20–25 nm in diameter) were dubbed AAVs due to their ability to replicate in the presence of AdVs [113]. Two years later, AAVs were first isolated from human tissue [114]. AAVs are one kind of *Dependoparvovirus* within the family Parvoviridae, and they have not only been found in humans but also in nonhuman primates. In addition, they are comprised of an icosahedral protein capsid of ~26 nm in diameter and a single-stranded DNA genome of ~4.7 kb [115]. The wild-type AAV capsid is composed of three types of subunits (VP1, VP2, and VP3). Two T-shaped inverted terminal repeats (ITRs) are located at the ends of the viral genome, and the viral replication and packaging signals are flanked between ITRs. Four rep gene-encoded proteins are the source of viral replication, and capsid subunits are alternatively spliced and translated by cap genes through different start codons [116]. The wild-type AAVs also have the ability to integrate into the human AAVS1 genomic locus [117]. In the early 1980s, the secondary structure of the AAV ITR region only allowed for a very limited number of plasmids cloned with AAV sequences [115]. Until 1984, engineered rAAV2 vectors were generated as a useful tool for gene transfer in mammalian cells and had become the foundation of AAV-mediated gene therapy [118]. rAAVs consist of the same capsid sequence and structure as wild-type AAVs. Importantly, removal of viral coding sequences enlarged the packaging capacity of rAAVs and reduced the genomic integration, immunogenicity, and cytotoxicity of AAVs. However, the gene packaging capacity of rAAVs is still under 5 kbs [119]. The best characterized and most widely applied AAV serotype is the naturally occurring AAV2. Notably, AAV9, a clade F AAV serotype isolated from human liver tissues, demonstrates the ability to bypass the blood-brain barrier [120]. Till now, 13 different human or nonhuman primate AAV serotypes have been classified [121]. However, rAAVs are a major type of AAVs which have been utilized in preclinical investigation and clinical trials. Since the early 1990s, clinical trials mediated by rAAV2 and rAAV1 vectors have been tested in several diseases including CF, hemophilia B, Canavan disease, and α1-

antitrypsin (AAT) deficiency [122–125]. These pilot phase I/II trials demonstrated a good gene expression duration of rAAV therapy as well as proved the safety of injection of rAAV.

9 Gene Therapy in CVDs

In the last three decades, several gene therapies have been tested for cardiovascular disorders including coronary or peripheral artery disease and heart failure [126]. After over 100 clinical trials, there has so far been no successful therapeutic effect reported for gene therapy in CVDs. In angiogenesis, therapeutic attempts are focused on the formation of new blood vessels driven by the production of cytokines which have so far been shown to recover some heart function in animal experiments [127]. For heart failure therapy, the modulation of Ca^{2+} in cardiomyocytes has become the main target of interventional therapy. Similar to therapies in angiogenesis, the beneficial effects of gene therapy in heart failure observed in animal studies did not translate to clinical trials in the last two decades [40]. Here, we will summarize the current clinical trials of gene therapy in CVDs.

To induce the formation of new capillaries or blood vessels, cytokines such as VEGF, FGF (basic fibroblast growth factor), and G-CSF (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor) have been tested in clinical trials as a form of gene therapy for CVDs [128, 129]. This technique has been used in over 20 clinical trials using naked plasmid DNA which carries the VEGF gene, injected into the myocardium of patients with severe coronary artery disease (CAD) in the late 1990s and early 2000s [130–135]. These randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled trials failed to show a beneficial effect on either the symptomatic or clinical outcome. One of possible reasons for this is the poor cardiac uptake of the naked DNA plasmid, thus limiting the biological activity in the human heart. Therefore, adenoviral-based cDNA delivery vehicles have also been tested for cardiac gene therapy in clinical trials. For example, AdGVVEGF121.10NH (commercial name: BIOBYPASS, adenoviral vector with a strong CMV enhancer/promoter, and VEGF-A121 cDNA) was used in a series of clinical trials to treat patients with CAD [136]. In preclinical animal studies, myocardium injection of an adeno-vector was able to improve myocardial angiogenesis, increase blood flow, and rescue heart function in the ischemic porcine heart [137–140]. A phase I clinical trial tested in patients with severe CAD also demonstrated that an intramyocardial injection of AdVEGF121 was well tolerated and provided some promising initial findings that showed a trend toward the reduction of myocardial ischemia injury [141, 142]. Interestingly, the Randomized Evaluation of VEGF for Angiogenesis (REVASC) trial reported that AdVEGF121 was associated with significantly improved symptoms and exercise capacity of CAD patients [143]. Unfortunately, other AdVEGF121 trials showed no difference of exercise capacity, time to ischemic threshold, or myocardial perfusion compared to the control patients [144]. Although these completed trials showed no significant beneficial effect in patients, there are still some ongoing clinical studies based on adenoviral vectors, such as three different VEGF-A isoforms in a phase I/II trial (NCT01757223) that had recently begun in 2020 to optimize the therapy.

Another interesting study of gene therapy in CVDs occurred by targeting Ca^{2+} ATPse and SERCA2a, a key factor for Ca^{2+} reuptake by the sarcoplasmic reticulum [145]. Since the early 1970s, the sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+} ATPase was found to be an important molecule for heart function in animal models and was also found to be reduced in different CVDs [146–149]. The idea to restore levels of SERCA2a has been an extremely popular strategy for gene therapeutics in heart failure [150]. In 2007, patients with advanced heart failure were treated with an AAV1 containing the SERCA2a gene to restore protein expression (known as the CUPID trial, calcium upregulation by percutaneous administration of gene therapy in patients with CVDs; NCT00454818) [151, 152]. It was the first phase I clinical trial to use an AAV gene therapy for heart failure and

simultaneously verified the safety and feasibility of the treatment [153]. Unfortunately, the blinded, randomized, placebo-controlled, multicenter study failed to demonstrate positive clinical outcomes. The AAV1- SERCA2a treatment does not improve heart function in patients with heart failure and severely reduced ejection fraction, ischemic and nonischemic etiology (NCT01643330), or left ventricular assist devices (NCT01966887) [154, 155]. Although these current attempts did not show positive therapeutic results, several other approaches are currently ongoing to improve gene therapy in heart failure. For example, a phase I clinical study (NCT04179643) that commenced in 2020 is testing BNP116.sc-CMV.I1c, a chimeric AAV2/AAV8 capsid with a high specificity for cardiac and skeletal muscles with less off-target effects in the liver and lungs [156], in patients with class III heart failure.

10 Future Perspectives of Gene Therapy in CVDs

Critical problems of gene therapy in CVDs involve the insufficient gene transduction into heart tissue or cells [157]. Currently, heart-specific gene delivery technology still limits the application of gene therapy in CVDs. Notably, naked plasmid transfection as well as viral-mediated gene delivery did not cause major safety concerns in most phase I/II trials (summarized above). Transfection of the naked plasmid showed a short-term expression time when compared to the AAV systems which could prolong gene expression [158]. However, the neutralizing antibodies of AAVs reduce the vector transduction efficiency and lead to a big obstacle of AAV application in the clinics [159]. In addition, the high cost of AAV manufacturing for clinical applications is still a challenge for normal patients. Thus, improving cardiac cell specificity, reducing the innate immune response, and reducing production price as well as long-term gene expression and stability are the main goals for the next generation of AAVs used in gene therapy.

11 AAV Engineering for Heart-Specific Therapy

To overcome low specificity in the heart, or more specifically cardiomyocytes, capsid engineering of AAVs tries to improve cell-type tropism. Several AAV serotypes have now been identified since the first AAV was observed, and they have been seen to share similar structures such as genome size and genetic organization. However, the differences are in the amino acid composition of the capsid proteins. Thus, it is possible to obtain chimeric viral particles by AAV engineering through transencapsidation [160]. The capsid reengineering can help to optimize receptor binding and transduction efficiency and more importantly tissue target selectivity of rAAV. Currently, capsid chimera libraries are derived from a variety of AAV serotypes or the random mutation of the capsid region and are a good platform for heart-specific peptide selection [161, 162].

In addition, engineered or random capsid mutagenesis, DNA shuffling, and direct selection are the most commonly used techniques to generate new rAAV variants [163–165]. For example, AAV2i8 and AAV-SASTG, two AAV2 chimeras, achieved a higher cardiac and skeletal muscle transduction efficiency with a lower off-target phenotype seen in the liver [166, 167]. In addition, Pulicherla and colleagues generated engineered liver-detargeted AAV9 vectors which had a similar transduction efficiency to the heart and muscle as wild-type AAV9 but 10- to 25-fold lower infection of the liver [168]. The modification of the AAV capsid could be a solution to improve AAV-mediated gene therapy in CVDs.

12 Successful Viral-Based Gene Therapy in Clinical Trials

While every new gene therapy trial helps advance this technique of repairing the genome, crucial safety concerns have arisen with the development of this treatment option. One of the major benefits of AAVs is their low potential to produce

immunological responses due to the absence of viral protein expression and the extremely limited viral elements present in the vector. The cellular immune response decreases without presentation markers on the surface of cells transduced by the AAV [169]. This is not to say, however, that AAVs cannot produce any immune response. A limitation to using AAVs involves an adaptive humoral response which occurs in an organism when they have been previously infected by an AAV of the same serotype. Neutralizing antibodies (NAbs) have the capacity to neutralize this additional infection from the same AAV serotype in 30–60% of humans [170]. NAbs are capable of limiting this possibly lifesaving gene delivery by blocking AAV transduction into cells of a person who was previously infected. The delivery of alternate serotypes is one possible solution, although some NAbs against one specific serotype have also been seen to neutralize additional serotypes as well [170]. To overcome this obstacle, studies have been performed such as one that simultaneously administered anti-CD20 antibodies in order to reduce the internal titer of NAbs to reduce the neutralization of the added gene therapeutic vectors and to also engineer AAV capsids as was previously discussed above [171].

With many decades of research, gene therapy was eventually successful in clinical trials. In 2017, a study was published where the survival motor neuron 1 (SMN1) gene was delivered to patients born with a mutation or deletion that led to spinal muscular atrophy type 1 (SMA1). SMN proteins are produced primarily through the SMN1 gene, as the SMN2 gene is missing an exon, leading to a reduced protein production from this gene alone. Therefore, having an SMN1 deletion and only copies of SMN2 almost guarantees that a patient will have SMA1 as the SMN2 gene alone produces an insufficient level of protein for neuronal cells. Without the SMN1 gene, motor neurons lose the ability to function, resulting in severe motor disabilities, leading to lifelong ventilation and/or death in 75% of patients before 2 years of age [171–173]. Zolgensma (biologically known as AVXS-101), first approved for use in the USA in 2019, is a gene therapy developed using an AAV9 vector to deliver a healthy copy of the SMN1 gene to motor neurons to hinder disease progression and improve the quality of life of these infants. The study showed improvements in motor function in 11 out of 12 patients in the initial trial with more than half not requiring further ventilation and even two gaining the ability to walk [172]. Interestingly, Zolgensma was not the first FDA-approved drug to treat SMA. In late 2016, an antisense oligonucleotide drug known as Spinraza (nusinersen) was first approved to treat SMA through a multi-dose system approach in patients from the early stages of birth [174]. This treatment option was administered through direct injection into the cerebrospinal fluid four times in the first 64 days of the trial [175]. It was determined at the completion of the study that Spinraza would need to be consistently administered for the duration of the patient's life [173]. It is important to note that the mechanism of action by which this antisense oligonucleotide works is quite different to that of Zolgensma. The aim of Spinraza is to have more full-length SMN proteins expressed in motor neurons by targeting the pre-messenger RNA of the existing copy of SMN2 [175]. Since the therapy only interacts at an RNA level, a continuous treatment plan is required to manage disease progression. Zolgensma, on the other hand, is a direct form of gene replacement therapy that only involves a single administration of a healthy SMN gene via an AAV vector, which can then directly produce full-length SMA proteins without consistent manipulation at the RNA level [173].

Even though the treatment only requires a one-time administration, Zolgensma is currently the most expensive drug on the market, partially due to this single-dose treatment, the cost of developing the drug, and the rarity of the disease itself, highlighting another (in this case, economic) limitation of AAV-based gene therapy [176]. Despite the high costs, this drug is not perfect and can lead to elevated liver enzymes in patients who have taken it, which can cause safety concerns in those with preexisting liver conditions. Other AAV-based therapeutics undergoing clinical trials have also been seen to

cause severe problems, even death, in patients with preexisting liver conditions. The FDA has even halted clinical trials after two patients died while receiving a high dose of AT132 in the Audentes Therapeutics' trial [177]. This AAV8 vector is used to deliver a healthy copy of the myotubularin-1 gene to treat X-linked myotubular myopathy. Since this was the highest dose of AAV gene therapy given to date in a clinical trial and the patients who died as a result also had underlying liver conditions, safety concerns relating to low-dose treatments especially in patients with healthy livers are relatively low. Other trials for AAVs used to treat Duchenne muscular dystrophy have also observed toxicities in patients; however, the knowledge and understanding of gene replacement therapy continues to grow with each trial, especially when complications arise [177]. This was especially true in the case of Jesse Gelsinger who was the first patient to die from an immune reaction to an rAV to treat ornithine transcarbamoylase back in 1999. The severe immune reaction that he experienced that ultimately led to his death was extremely rare as none of the other 4000 patients from other clinical trials experienced the same side effects. The reevaluation that this led to by the FDA to intensely study and determine why and which vectors could be harmful as delivery vehicles has undoubtedly saved lives and ensured safer treatment for all future studies after this tragic loss [178].

13 Novel Therapeutic Target Genes

Current gene therapy candidates in CVDs are mainly focusing on cytokines or calcium-related proteins such as VEGF or SERCA2a. Apart from coding genes which only comprise 1–2% of the human genome [179], noncoding RNA (ncRNA) transcripts (without coding potential) are worth noting as future therapeutic targets. Although the function of most ncRNAs is still unknown, growing evidence has proven that ncRNAs are key modulators in diseases (such as cancer or CVDs) [180]. For exploring a clinical application, numerous independent studies regarding circulating ncRNAs have been reported as biomarkers to predict and monitor the response of CVDs and treatments [181, 182]. Notably, preclinical investigations of ncRNAs are also heading in the direction of potential therapeutic options for CVD patients. For example, a conserved long noncoding RNA (lncRNA) H19 is a powerful ncRNA molecule for the protection of pathological cardiac hypertrophy. Restoration of H19 expression mediated by AAV injection four weeks after induction of chronic left ventricular pressure overload successfully attenuated cardiac hypertrophy in mice. In addition, AAV6-mediated H19 overexpression improves contractility of human engineered heart tissue, highlighting translational potential of H19 [183]. In addition, miRNAs and ncRNAs approximately 20 nt in length have also been evaluated in several preclinical studies for the treatment of CVDs such as miR-181a [184]. Overexpressed miR-181a mediated by AAV9 delivery one week after MI was able to show recovered heart function in mice [185]. Apart from these novel ncRNAs, some traditional protein coding genes were also validated as putative CVD therapeutic targets in preclinical investigations. For example, Tert, a telomerase reverse transcriptase encoding gene, is well known for its role in cellular senescence. Cardiac-specific overexpression of Tert by AAV9 attenuated cardiac dilatation, improved ventricular function, and reduced infarct scarring after an acute MI [186]. Following studies proved that AAV-Tert overexpression protected against cardiac apoptosis and cardiac dysfunction from doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity in mice [187]. These encouraging preclinical studies recognized the potential to utilize ncRNAs as well as protein coding genes as novel therapeutic candidates to treat CVDs.

14 Conclusion

After over 30 years from the first gene therapy clinical trial, no successful application has since been reported in CVDs, indicating that this field is still young and needs further development which

is currently pursued with tremendous efforts both in academia and in the pharmaceutical industry. The improvement of gene delivery platforms and preclinical investigation systems, as well as for novel therapeutic candidates, are supporting the development of next-generation gene therapy in rare genetic disorders as well as CVDs.

Acknowledgments C.B. and T.T. received funding from the German Research Foundation, DFG (SFB/Transregio TRR267). D.C.L. acknowledges the China Scholarship Council for the funding of his PhD study.

Competing Financial Interests TT is a founder and shareholder of the Cardior Pharmaceuticals GmbH. D.C. L.; T.T. and C.B. have filed and licensed patents for noncoding RNAs for the treatment of CVDs.

References

1. Gericke NM, Hagberg M (2007) Definition of historical models of gene function and their relation to students' understanding of genetics. Sci & Educ 16(7):849–881
2. Noller HF (2012) Evolution of protein synthesis from an RNA world. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 4(4): 3681
3. Eddy SR (2001) Non-coding RNA genes and the modern RNA world. Nat Rev Genet 2(12):919–929
4. Human Genomics in Global Health. https://www.who.int/genomics/public/geneticdiseases/en/
5. Huszno J, Kolosza Z, Grzybowska E (2019) BRCA1 mutation in breast cancer patients: analysis of prognostic factors and survival. Oncol Lett 17(2): 1986–1995
6. Cavanagh H, Rogers KM (2015) The role of BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations in prostate, pancreatic and stomach cancers. Hered Cancer Clin Pract 13(1):16
7. Ford D, Easton DF, Bishop DT, Narod SA, Goldgar DE (1994) Risks of cancer in BRCA1-mutation carriers. Lancet 343(8899):692–695
8. Heidelberger C, Chaudhuri NK, Danneberg P, Mooren D, Griesbach L, Duschinsky R, Schnitzer RJ, Pleven E, Scheiner J (1957) Fluorinated pyrimidines, a new class of tumour-inhibitory compounds. Nature 179(4561):663–666
9. Farber S, Diamond LK (1948) Temporary remissions in acute leukemia in children produced by folic acid antagonist, 4-aminopteroyl-glutamic acid. N Engl J Med 238(23):787–793
10. Li MC, Hertz R, Bergenstal DM (1958) Therapy of choriocarcinoma and related trophoblastic tumors with folic acid and purine antagonists. N Engl J Med 259(2):66–74
11. Miles WE (1971) A method of performing abdomino-perineal excision for carcinoma of the rectum and of the terminal portion of the pelvic colon. CA Cancer J Clin 21(6):361–364
12. Sherwood JT, Brock MV (2007) Lung cancer: new surgical approaches. Respirology 12(3):326–332
13. James ND, Caty A, Borre M, Zonnenberg BA, Beuzeboc P, Morris T, Phung D, Dawson NA (2009) Safety and efficacy of the specific endothelin-A receptor antagonist ZD4054 in patients with hormone-resistant prostate cancer and bone metastases who were pain free or mildly symptomatic: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised, phase 2 trial. Eur Urol 55(5):1112–1123
14. Couzin-Frankel J (2013) Breakthrough of the year 2013. Cancer immunotherapy. Science 342(6165): 1432–1433
15. Bulaklak K, Gersbach CA (2020) The once and future gene therapy. Nat Commun 11(1):5820
16. Senechal M (2014) What is the best therapeutic strategy in patients with low flow, low-gradient aortic stenosis, and wide QRS? Eur J Heart Fail 6(6): 598–600
17. Friedmann T, Roblin R (1972) Gene therapy for human genetic disease? Science 175(4025):949–955
18. Cepko CL, Roberts BE, Mulligan RC (1984) Construction and applications of a highly transmissible murine retrovirus shuttle vector. Cell 37(3): 1053–1062
19. Blaese RM, Culver KW, Miller AD, Carter CS, Fleisher T, Clerici M, Shearer G, Chang L, Chiang Y, Tolstoshev P, Greenblatt JJ, Rosenberg SA, Klein H, Berger M, Mullen CA, Ramsey WJ, Muul L, Morgan RA, Anderson WF (1995) T lymphocyte-directed gene therapy for ADA- SCID: initial trial results after 4 years. Science 270(5235): 475–480
20. Ozcan G, Ozpolat B, Coleman RL, Sood AK, Lopez-Berestein G (2015) Preclinical and clinical development of siRNA-based therapeutics. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 87:108–119
21. Wittrup A, Lieberman J (2015) Knocking down disease: a progress report on siRNA therapeutics. Nat Rev Genet 16(9):543–552
22. Song E, Lee SK, Wang J, Ince N, Ouyang N, Min J, Chen J, Shankar P, Lieberman J (2003) RNA interference targeting Fas protects mice from fulminant hepatitis. Nat Med 9(3):347–351
23. Tabernero J, Shapiro GI, LoRusso PM, Cervantes A, Schwartz GK, Weiss GJ, Paz-Ares L, Cho DC, Infante JR, Alsina M, Gounder MM, Falzone R, Harrop J, White AC, Toudjarska I, Bumcrot D, Meyers RE, Hinkle G, Svrzikapa N, Hutabarat RM, Clausen VA, Cehelsky J, Nochur SV, Gamba-Vitalo-C, Vaishnaw AK, Sah DW, Gollob JA, Burris HA (2013) First-in-humans trial of an RNA interference therapeutic targeting VEGF and KSP in cancer patients with liver involvement. Cancer Discov 3(4): 406–417

24. Cideciyan AV, Aleman TS, Boye SL, Schwartz SB, Kaushal S, Roman AJ, Pang JJ, Sumaroka A, Windsor EA, Wilson JM, Flotte TR, Fishman GA, Heon E, Stone EM, Byrne BJ, Jacobson SG, Hauswirth WW (2008) Human gene therapy for RPE65 isomerase deficiency activates the retinoid cycle of vision but with slow rod kinetics. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105(39):15112–15117
25. Hauswirth WW, Aleman TS, Kaushal S, Cideciyan AV, Schwartz SB, Wang L, Conlon TJ, Boye SL, Flotte TR, Byrne BJ, Jacobson SG (2008) Treatment of leber congenital amaurosis due to RPE65 mutations by ocular subretinal injection of adeno-associated virus gene vector: short-term results of a phase I trial. Hum Gene Ther 19(10):979–990
26. Bainbridge JW, Smith AJ, Barker SS, Robbie S, Henderson R, Balaggan K, Viswanathan A, Holder GE, Stockman A, Tyler N, Petersen-Jones S, Bhattacharya SS, Thrasher AJ, Fitzke FW, Carter BJ, Rubin GS, Moore AT, Ali RR (2008) Effect of gene therapy on visual function in Leber's congenital amaurosis. N Engl J Med 358(21):2231–2239
27. Jacobson SG, Cideciyan AV, Ratnakaram R, Heon E, Schwartz SB, Roman AJ, Peden MC, Aleman TS, Boye SL, Sumaroka A, Conlon TJ, Calcedo R, Pang JJ, Erger KE, Olivares MB, Mullins CL, Swider M, Kaushal S, Feuer WJ, Iannaccone A, Fishman GA, Stone EM, Byrne BJ, Hauswirth WW (2012) Gene therapy for leber congenital amaurosis caused by RPE65 mutations: safety and efficacy in 15 children and adults followed up to 3 years. Arch Ophthalmol 130(1):9–24. https://doi.org/10.1001/archophthalmol.2011.298
28. Cideciyan AV, Hauswirth WW, Aleman TS, Kaushal S, Schwartz SB, Boye SL, Windsor EA, Conlon TJ, Sumaroka A, Pang JJ, Roman AJ, Byrne BJ, Jacobson SG (2009) Human RPE65 gene therapy for Leber congenital amaurosis: persistence of early visual improvements and safety at 1 year. Hum Gene Ther 20(9):999–1004
29. Cideciyan AV, Hauswirth WW, Aleman TS, Kaushal S, Schwartz SB, Boye SL, Windsor EA, Conlon TJ, Sumaroka A, Roman AJ, Byrne BJ, Jacobson SG (2009) Vision 1 year after gene therapy for Leber's congenital amaurosis. N Engl J Med 361(7):725–727
30. Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2014) Genome editing. The new frontier of genome engineering with CRISPR-Cas9. Science 346(6213):1258096
31. Fellmann C, Gowen BG, Lin PC, Doudna JA, Corn JE (2017) Cornerstones of CRISPR-Cas in drug discovery and therapy. Nat Rev Drug Discov 16(2):89–100
32. Jensen TI, Axelgaard E, Bak RO (2019) Therapeutic gene editing in haematological disorders with CRISPR/Cas9. Br J Haematol 185(5):821–835
33. Srivastava S, Riddell SR (2015) Engineering CAR-T cells: design concepts. Trends Immunol 36(8):494–502
34. Cyranoski D (2016) Chinese scientists to pioneer first human CRISPR trial. Nature 535(7613):476–477
35. Liu B, Song Y, Liu D (2017) Clinical trials of CAR-T cells in China. J Hematol Oncol 10(1):166
36. Cai B, Guo M, Wang Y, Zhang Y, Yang J, Guo Y, Dai H, Yu C, Sun Q, Qiao J, Hu K, Zuo H, Dong Z, Zhang Z, Feng M, Li B, Sun Y, Liu T, Liu Z, Wang Y, Huang Y, Yao B, Han W, Ai H (2016) Co-infusion of haplo-identical CD19-chimeric antigen receptor T cells and stem cells achieved full donor engraftment in refractory acute lymphoblastic leukemia. J Hematol Oncol 9(1):131
37. Fan D, Li Z, Zhang X, Yang Y, Yuan X, Zhang X, Yang M, Zhang Y, Xiong D (2015) AntiCD3Fv fused to human interleukin-3 deletion variant redirected T cells against human acute myeloid leukemic stem cells. J Hematol Oncol 8:18
38. Nakazawa Y, Matsuda K, Kurata T, Sueki A, Tanaka M, Sakashita K, Imai C, Wilson MH, Koike K (2016) Anti-proliferative effects of T cells expressing a ligand-based chimeric antigen receptor against CD116 on CD34(+) cells of juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia. J Hematol Oncol 9:27
39. Goncalves GAR, Paiva RMA (2017) Gene therapy: advances, challenges and perspectives. Einstein 15(3):369–375
40. Cannata A, Ali H, Sinagra G, Giacca M (2020) Gene therapy for the heart lessons learned and future perspectives. Circ Res 126(10):1394–1414
41. Uddin F, Rudin CM, Sen T (2020) CRISPR gene therapy: applications, limitations, and implications for the future. Front Oncol 10:1387
42. Moreno AM, Palmer N, Aleman F, Chen G, Pla A, Jiang N, Leong Chew W, Law M, Mali P (2019) Immune-orthogonal orthologues of AAV capsids and of Cas9 circumvent the immune response to the administration of gene therapy. Nat Biomed Eng 3(10):806–816
43. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
44. Zhang XH, Tee LY, Wang XG, Huang QS, Yang SH (2015) Off-target effects in CRISPR/Cas9-mediated genome engineering. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 4:e264
45. Ihry RJ, Worringer KA, Salick MR, Frias E, Ho D, Theriault K, Kommineni S, Chen J, Sondey M, Ye C, Randhawa R, Kulkarni T, Yang Z, McAllister G, Russ C, Reece-Hoyes J, Forrester W, Hoffman GR, Dolmetsch R, Kaykas A (2018) p53 inhibits CRISPR-Cas9 engineering in human pluripotent stem cells. Nat Med 24(7):939–946
46. Eid A, Alshareef S, Mahfouz MM (2018) CRISPR base editors: genome editing without double-stranded breaks. Biochem J 475(11):1955–1964
47. Kantor A, McClements ME, MacLaren RE (2020) CRISPR-Cas9 DNA base-editing and prime-editing. Int J Mol Sci 21(17):6240

48. Reardon S (2020) Step aside CRISPR, RNA editing is taking off. Nature 578(7793):24–27
49. Cox DBT, Gootenberg JS, Abudayyeh OO, Franklin B, Kellner MJ, Joung J, Zhang F (2017) RNA editing with CRISPR-Cas13. Science 358(6366):1019–1027
50. Abudayyeh OO, Gootenberg JS, Franklin B, Koob J, Kellner MJ, Ladha A, Joung J, Kirchgatterer P, Cox DBT, Zhang F (2019) A cytosine deaminase for programmable single-base RNA editing. Science 365(6451):382–386
51. Lu Y, Xue J, Deng T, Zhou X, Yu K, Deng L, Huang M, Yi X, Liang M, Wang Y, Shen H, Tong R, Wang W, Li L, Song J, Li J, Su X, Ding Z, Gong Y, Zhu J, Wang Y, Zou B, Zhang Y, Li Y, Zhou L, Liu Y, Yu M, Wang Y, Zhang X, Yin L, Xia X, Zeng Y, Zhou Q, Ying B, Chen C, Wei Y, Li W, Mok T (2020) Safety and feasibility of CRISPR-edited T cells in patients with refractory non-small-cell lung cancer. Nat Med 26(5):732–740
52. Lacey SF, Fraietta JA (2020) First trial of CRISPR-edited T cells in lung cancer. Trends Mol Med 26(8): 713–715
53. Stadtmauer EA, Fraietta JA, Davis MM, Cohen AD, Weber KL, Lancaster E, Mangan PA, Kulikovskaya I, Gupta M, Chen F, Tian L, Gonzalez VE, Xu J, Jung IY, Melenhorst JJ, Plesa G, Shea J, Matlawski T, Cervini A, Gaymon AL, Desjardins S, Lamontagne A, Salas-Mckee J, Fesnak A, Siegel DL, Levine BL, Jadlowsky JK, Young RM, Chew A, Hwang WT, Hexner EO, Carreno BM, Nobles CL, Bushman FD, Parker KR, Qi Y, Satpathy AT, Chang HY, Zhao Y, Lacey SF, June CH (2020) CRISPR-engineered T cells in patients with refractory cancer. Science 367:6481
54. Wu Y, Zeng J, Roscoe BP, Liu P, Yao Q, Lazzarotto CR, Clement K, Cole MA, Luk K, Baricordi C, Shen AH, Ren C, Esrick EB, Manis JP, Dorfman DM, Williams DA, Biffi A, Brugnara C, Biasco L, Brendel C, Pinello L, Tsai SQ, Wolfe SA, Bauer DE (2019) Highly efficient therapeutic gene editing of human hematopoietic stem cells. Nat Med 25(5): 776–783
55. Frangoul H, Altshuler D, Cappellini MD, Chen YS, Domm J, Eustace BK, Foell J, de la Fuente J, Grupp S, Handgretinger R, Ho TW, Kattamis A, Kernytsky A, Lekstrom-Himes J, Li AM, Locatelli F, Mapara MY, de Montalembert M, Rondelli D, Sharma A, Sheth S, Soni S, Steinberg MH, Wall D, Yen A, Corbacioglu S (2021) CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing for sickle cell disease and beta-thalassemia. N Engl J Med 384(3):252–260
56. Henderson H (2021) CRISPR clinical trials: a 2021 update. https://synbiobeta.com/crispr-clinical-trials-a-2021-update/
57. Smith L, Byers JF (2002) Gene therapy in the post-Gelsinger era. JONAS Healthc Law Ethics Regul 4(4):104–110
58. Glover DJ, Lipps HJ, Jans DA (2005) Towards safe, non-viral therapeutic gene expression in humans. Nat Rev Genet 6(4):299–310
59. Kormann MS, Hasenpusch G, Aneja MK, Nica G, Flemmer AW, Herber-Jonat S, Huppmann M, Mays LE, Illenyi M, Schams A, Griese M, Bittmann I, Handgretinger R, Hartl D, Rosenecker J, Rudolph C (2011) Expression of therapeutic proteins after delivery of chemically modified mRNA in mice. Nat Biotechnol 29(2):154–157
60. Napoli C, Lemieux C, Jorgensen R (1990) Introduction of a chimeric chalcone synthase gene into petunia results in reversible co-suppression of homologous genes in trans. Plant Cell 2(4):279–289
61. Fire A, Xu S, Montgomery MK, Kostas SA, Driver SE, Mello CC (1998) Potent and specific genetic interference by double-stranded RNA in Caenorhabditis elegans. Nature 391(6669):806–811
62. Bernstein E, Caudy AA, Hammond SM, Hannon GJ (2001) Role for a bidentate ribonuclease in the initiation step of RNA interference. Nature 409(6818): 363–366
63. Evers MM, Toonen LJ, van Roon-Mom WM (2015) Antisense oligonucleotides in therapy for neurodegenerative disorders. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 87:90–103
64. Rinaldi C, Wood MJA (2018) Antisense oligonucleotides: the next frontier for treatment of neurological disorders. Nat Rev Neurol 14(1):9–21
65. Kaur H, Arora A, Wengel J, Maiti S (2006) Thermodynamic, counterion, and hydration effects for the incorporation of locked nucleic acid nucleotides into DNA duplexes. Biochemistry 45(23):7347–7355
66. Jiang X, Ning Q, Wang J (2013) Angiotensin II induced differentially expressed microRNAs in adult rat cardiac fibroblasts. JPS 63(1):31–38
67. Eskildsen TV, Jeppesen PL, Schneider M, Nossent AY, Sandberg MB, Hansen PB, Jensen CH, Hansen ML, Marcussen N, Rasmussen LM, Bie P, Andersen DC, Sheikh SP (2013) Angiotensin II regulates microRNA-132/-212 in hypertensive rats and humans. Int J Mol Sci 14(6):11190–11207
68. Ucar A, Gupta SK, Fiedler J, Erikci E, Kardasinski M, Batkai S, Dangwal S, Kumarswamy R, Bang C, Holzmann A, Remke J, Caprio M, Jentzsch C, Engelhardt S, Geisendorf S, Glas C, Hofmann TG, Nessling M, Richter K, Schiffer M, Carrier L, Napp LC, Bauersachs J, Chowdhury K, Thum T (2012) The miRNA-212/132 family regulates both cardiac hypertrophy and cardiomyocyte autophagy. Nat Commun 3:1078
69. Foinquinos A, Batkai S, Genschel C, Viereck J, Rump S, Gyongyosi M, Traxler D, Riesenhuber M, Spannbauer A, Lukovic D, Weber N, Zlabinger K, Hasimbegovic E, Winkler J, Fiedler J, Dangwal S, Fischer M, de la Roche J, Wojciechowski D, Kraft T, Garamvolgyi R, Neitzel S, Chatterjee S, Yin X, Bar C, Mayr M, Xiao K, Thum T (2020) Preclinical development of a miR-132 inhibitor for heart failure treatment. Nat Commun 11(1):633

70. Batkai S, Genschel C, Viereck J, Rump S, Bar C, Borchert T, Traxler D, Riesenhuber M, Spannbauer A, Lukovic D, Zlabinger K, Hasimbegovic E, Winkler J, Garamvolgyi R, Neitzel S, Gyongyosi M, Thum T (2021) CDR132L improves systolic and diastolic function in a large animal model of chronic heart failure. Eur Heart J 42(2):192–201
71. Taubel J, Hauke W, Rump S, Viereck J, Batkai S, Poetzsch J, Rode L, Weigt H, Genschel C, Lorch U, Theek C, Levin AA, Bauersachs J, Solomon SD, Thum T (2021) Novel antisense therapy targeting microRNA-132 in patients with heart failure: results of a first-in-human Phase 1b randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Eur Heart J 42(2): 178–188
72. Saw PE, Song EW (2020) siRNA therapeutics: a clinical reality. Sci China Life Sci 63(4):485–500
73. Adams D, Gonzalez-Duarte A, O'Riordan WD, Yang CC, Ueda M, Kristen AV, Tournev I, Schmidt HH, Coelho T, Berk JL, Lin KP, Vita G, Attarian S, Plante-Bordeneuve V, Mezei MM, Campistol JM, Buades J, Brannagan TH, Kim BJ, Oh J, Parman Y, Sekijima Y, Hawkins PN, Solomon SD, Polydefkis M, Dyck PJ, Gandhi PJ, Goyal S, Chen J, Strahs AL, Nochur SV, Sweetser MT, Garg PP, Vaishnaw AK, Gollob JA, Suhr OB (2018) Patisiran, an RNAi therapeutic, for hereditary transthyretin amyloidosis. N Engl J Med 379(1): 11–21
74. Chakraborty C, Sharma AR, Sharma G, Lee SS (2021) Therapeutic advances of miRNAs: a preclinical and clinical update. J Adv Res 28:127–138
75. Wolff JA, Malone RW, Williams P, Chong W, Acsadi G, Jani A, Felgner PL (1990) Direct gene transfer into mouse muscle in vivo. Science 247(4949):1465–1468
76. Jirikowski GF, Sanna PP, Maciejewski-Lenoir D, Bloom FE (1992) Reversal of diabetes insipidus in Brattleboro rats: intrahypothalamic injection of vasopressin mRNA. Science 255(5047):996–998
77. Mandl CW, Aberle JH, Aberle SW, Holzmann H, Allison SL, Heinz FX (1998) In vitro-synthesized infectious RNA as an attenuated live vaccine in a flavivirus model. Nat Med 4(12):1438–1440
78. Zhou WZ, Hoon DS, Huang SK, Fujii S, Hashimoto K, Morishita R, Kaneda Y (1999) RNA melanoma vaccine: induction of antitumor immunity by human glycoprotein 100 mRNA immunization. Hum Gene Ther 10(16):2719–2724
79. Martinon F, Krishnan S, Lenzen G, Magne R, Gomard E, Guillet JG, Levy JP, Meulien P (1993) Induction of virus-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in vivo by liposome-entrapped mRNA. Eur J Immunol 23(7):1719–1722
80. Pokrovskaya ID, Gurevich VV (1994) In vitro transcription: preparative RNA yields in analytical scale reactions. Anal Biochem 220(2):420–423
81. Kariko K (2019) In vitro-transcribed mRNA therapeutics: out of the shadows and into the spotlight. Mol Ther 27(4):691–692
82. Weide B, Pascolo S, Scheel B, Derhovanessian E, Pflugfelder A, Eigentler TK, Pawelec G, Hoerr I, Rammensee HG, Garbe C (2009) Direct injection of protamine-protected mRNA: results of a phase 1/2 vaccination trial in metastatic melanoma patients. J Immunother 32(5):498–507
83. Routy JP, Boulassel MR, Yassine-Diab B, Nicolette C, Healey D, Jain R, Landry C, Yegorov O, Tcherepanova I, Monesmith T, Finke L, Sekaly RP (2010) Immunologic activity and safety of autologous HIV RNA-electroporated dendritic cells in HIV-1 infected patients receiving antiretroviral therapy. Clin Immunol 134(2):140–147
84. Allard SD, De Keersmaecker B, de Goede AL, Verschuren EJ, Koetsveld J, Reedijk ML, Wylock C, De Bel AV, Vandeloo J, Pistoor F, Heirman C, Beyer WE, Eilers PH, Corthals J, Padmos I, Thielemans K, Osterhaus AD, Lacor P, van der Ende ME, Aerts JL, van Baalen CA, Gruters RA (2012) A phase I/IIa immunotherapy trial of HIV-1-infected patients with Tat, Rev and Nef expressing dendritic cells followed by treatment interruption. Clin Immunol 142(3):252–268
85. Van Gulck E, Vlieghe E, Vekemans M, Van Tendeloo VF, Van De Velde A, Smits E, Anguille S, Cools N, Goossens H, Mertens L, De Haes W, Wong J, Florence E, Vanham G, Berneman ZN (2012) mRNA-based dendritic cell vaccination induces potent antiviral T-cell responses in HIV-1-infected patients. AIDS 26(4):1–12
86. Sahin U, Kariko K, Tureci O (2014) mRNA-based therapeutics–developing a new class of drugs. Nat Rev Drug Discov 13(10):759–780
87. Somia N, Verma IM (2000) Gene therapy: trials and tribulations. Nat Rev Genet 1(2):91–99
88. Friedrich BM, Dziuba N, Li G, Endsley MA, Murray JL, Ferguson MR (2011) Host factors mediating HIV-1 replication. Virus Res 161(2):101–114
89. Daly G, Chernajovsky Y (2000) Recent developments in retroviral-mediated gene transduction. Mol Ther 2(5):423–434
90. Cockrell AS, Kafri T (2007) Gene delivery by lentivirus vectors. Mol Biotechnol 36(3):184–204
91. Trono D (2000) Lentiviral vectors: turning a deadly foe into a therapeutic agent. Gene Ther 7(1):20–23
92. Milone MC, O'Doherty U (2018) Clinical use of lentiviral vectors. Leukemia 32(7):1529–1541
93. Vannucci L, Lai M, Chiuppesi F, Ceccherini-Nelli L, Pistello M (2013) Viral vectors: a look back and ahead on gene transfer technology. New Microbiol 36(1):1–22
94. Finkelshtein D, Werman A, Novick D, Barak S, Rubinstein M (2013) LDL receptor and its family members serve as the cellular receptors for vesicular stomatitis virus. Proc Natl Acad Sci 110(18): 7306–7311

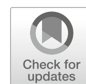
95. Burns JC, Friedmann T, Driever W, Burrascano M, Yee JK (1993) Vesicular stomatitis virus G glycoprotein pseudotyped retroviral vectors: concentration to very high titer and efficient gene transfer into mammalian and nonmammalian cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90(17):8033–8037
96. Dull T, Zufferey R, Kelly M, Mandel RJ, Nguyen M, Trono D, Naldini L (1998) A third-generation lentivirus vector with a conditional packaging system. J Virol 72(11):8463–8471
97. Levine BL, Humeau LM, Boyer J, MacGregor RR, Rebello T, Lu X, Binder GK, Slepushkin V, Lemiale F, Mascola JR, Bushman FD, Dropulic B, June CH (2006) Gene transfer in humans using a conditionally replicating lentiviral vector. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(46):17372–17377
98. McGarrity GJ, Hoyah G, Winemiller A, Andre K, Stein D, Blick G, Greenberg RN, Kinder C, Zolopa A, Binder-Scholl G, Tebas P, June CH, Humeau LM, Rebello T (2013) Patient monitoring and follow-up in lentiviral clinical trials. J Gene Med 15(2):78–82
99. Yamaki Y, Fukushima T, Yoshida N, Nishimura K, Fukuda A, Hisatake K, Aso M, Sakasai T, Kijima-Tanaka J, Miwa Y, Nakanishi M, Sumazaki R, Takada H (2021) Utilization of a novel Sendai virus vector in ex vivo gene therapy for hemophilia A. Int J Hematol 113(4):493–499
100. Park A, Hong P, Won ST, Thibault PA, Vigant F, Oguntuyo KY, Taft JD, Lee B (2016) Sendai virus, an RNA virus with no risk of genomic integration, delivers CRISPR/Cas9 for efficient gene editing. Mol Ther Methods Clin Dev 3:16057
101. Hurwitz JL (2008) Development of recombinant Sendai virus vaccines for prevention of human parainfluenza and respiratory syncytial virus infections. Pediatr Infect Dis J 27(10):126–128
102. Hasegawa Y, Kinoh H, Iwadate Y, Onimaru M, Ueda Y, Harada Y, Saito S, Furuya A, Saegusa T, Morodomi Y, Hasegawa M, Saito S, Aoki I, Saeki N, Yonemitsu Y (2010) Urokinase-targeted fusion by oncolytic Sendai virus eradicates orthotopic glioblastomas by pronounced synergy with interferon-beta gene. Mol Ther 18(10):1778–1786
103. Masaki I, Yonemitsu Y, Yamashita A, Sata S, Tanii M, Komori K, Nakagawa K, Hou X, Nagai Y, Hasegawa M, Sugimachi K, Sueishi K (2002) Angiogenic gene therapy for experimental critical limb ischemia: acceleration of limb loss by overexpression of vascular endothelial growth factor 165 but not of fibroblast growth factor-2. Circ Res 90(9):966–973
104. Graham FL (2000) Adenovirus vectors for high-efficiency gene transfer into mammalian cells. Immunol Today 21(9):426–428
105. Graham FL, Smiley J, Russell WC, Nairn R (1977) Characteristics of a human cell line transformed by DNA from human adenovirus type 5. J Gen Virol 36(1):59–74
106. Fallaux FJ, Kranenburg O, Cramer SJ, Houweling A, Van Ormondt H, Hoeben RC, Van Der Eb AJ (1996) Characterization of 911: a new helper cell line for the titration and propagation of early region 1-deleted adenoviral vectors. Hum Gene Ther 7(2):215–222
107. Kay MA, Glorioso JC, Naldini L (2001) Viral vectors for gene therapy: the art of turning infectious agents into vehicles of therapeutics. Nat Med 7(1):33–40
108. Ritter T, Lehmann M, Volk H-D (2002) Improvements in gene therapy. BioDrugs 16(1):3–10
109. Nemerow GR (2000) Cell receptors involved in adenovirus entry. Virology 274(1):1–4
110. Zabner J, Couture LA, Gregory RJ, Graham SM, Smith AE, Welsh MJ (1993) Adenovirus-mediated gene transfer transiently corrects the chloride transport defect in nasal epithelia of patients with cystic fibrosis. Cell 75(2):207–216
111. Crystal RG (2014) Adenovirus: the first effective in vivo gene delivery vector. Hum Gene Ther 25(1): 3–11
112. Atchison RW, Casto BC, Hammon WM (1965) Adenovirus-associated defective virus particles. Science 149(3685):754–755
113. Hoggan MD, Blacklow NR, Rowe W (1966) Studies of small DNA viruses found in various adenovirus preparations: physical, biological, and immunological characteristics. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 55(6): 1467
114. Blacklow NR, Hoggan MD, Rowe WP (1967) Isolation of adenovirus-associated viruses from man. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 58(4):1410
115. Wang D, Tai PWL, Gao G (2019) Adeno-associated virus vector as a platform for gene therapy delivery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 18(5):358–378
116. Sonntag F, Köther K, Schmidt K, Weghofer M, Raupp C, Nieto K, Kuck A, Gerlach B, Böttcher B, Müller O (2011) The assembly-activating protein promotes capsid assembly of different adeno-associated virus serotypes. J Virol 85(23): 12686–12697
117. Samulski R, Zhu X, Xiao X, Brook J, Housman D, Epstein N, Hunter L (1991) Targeted integration of adeno-associated virus (AAV) into human chromosome 19. EMBO J 10(12):3941–3950
118. Tratschin JD, West MH, Sandbank T, Carter BJ (1984) A human parvovirus, adeno-associated virus, as a eucaryotic vector: transient expression and encapsidation of the procaryotic gene for chloramphenicol acetyltransferase. Mol Cell Biol 4(10): 2072–2081
119. Dong J-Y, Fan P-D, Frizzell RA (1996) Quantitative analysis of the packaging capacity of recombinant adeno-associated virus. Hum Gene Ther 7(17): 2101–2112
120. Gao G, Vandenberghe LH, Alvira MR, Lu Y, Calcedo R, Zhou X, Wilson JM (2004) Clades of adeno-associated viruses are widely disseminated in human tissues. J Virol 78(12):6381–6388

121. Mietzsch M, Broecker F, Reinhardt A, Seeberger PH, Heilbronn R (2014) Differential adeno-associated virus serotype-specific interaction patterns with synthetic heparins and other glycans. J Virol 88(5): 2991–3003
122. Wagner JA, Moran ML, Messner AH, Daifuku R, Conrad CK, Reynolds T, Guggino WB, Moss RB, Carter BJ, Wine JJ, Flotte TR, Gardner P (1998) A phase I/II study of tgAAV-CF for the treatment of chronic sinusitis in patients with cystic fibrosis. Hum Gene Ther 9(6):889–909
123. Kay MA, Manno CS, Ragni MV, Larson PJ, Couto LB, McClelland A, Glader B, Chew AJ, Tai SJ, Herzog RW, Arruda V, Johnson F, Scallan C, Skarsgard E, Flake AW, High KA (2000) Evidence for gene transfer and expression of factor IX in haemophilia B patients treated with an AAV vector. Nat Genet 24(3):257–261
124. McPhee SW, Janson CG, Li C, Samulski RJ, Camp AS, Francis J, Shera D, Lioutermann L, Feely M, Freese A, Leone P (2006) Immune responses to AAV in a phase I study for Canavan disease. J Gene Med 8(5):577–588
125. Flotte TR, Trapnell BC, Humphries M, Carey B, Calcedo R, Rouhani F, Campbell-Thompson M, Yachnis AT, Sandhaus RA, McElvaney NG, Mueller C, Messina LM, Wilson JM, Brantly M, Knop DR, Ye GJ, Chulay JD (2011) Phase 2 clinical trial of a recombinant adeno-associated viral vector expressing alpha1-antitrypsin: interim results. Hum Gene Ther 22(10):1239–1247
126. Nabel EG (1995) Gene therapy for cardiovascular disease. Circulation 91(2):541–548
127. Rincon MY, VandenDriessche T, Chuah MK (2015) Gene therapy for cardiovascular disease: advances in vector development, targeting, and delivery for clinical translation. Cardiovasc Res 108(1):4–20
128. Kukula K, Chojnowska L, Dabrowski M, Witkowski A, Chmielak Z, Skwarek M, Kadziela J, Teresinska A, Malecki M, Janik P, Lewandowski Z, Klopotowski M, Wnuk J, Ruzyllo W (2011) Intramyocardial plasmid-encoding human vascular endothelial growth factor A165/basic fibroblast growth factor therapy using percutaneous transcatheter approach in patients with refractory coronary artery disease (VIF-CAD). Am Heart J 161(3): 581–589
129. Ripa RS, Wang Y, Jorgensen E, Johnsen HE, Hesse B, Kastrup J (2006) Intramyocardial injection of vascular endothelial growth factor-A165 plasmid followed by granulocyte-colony stimulating factor to induce angiogenesis in patients with severe chronic ischaemic heart disease. Eur Heart J 27(15): 1785–1792
130. Losordo DW, Vale PR, Symes JF, Dunnington CH, Esakof DD, Maysky M, Ashare AB, Lathi K, Isner JM (1998) Gene therapy for myocardial angiogenesis: initial clinical results with direct myocardial injection of phVEGF165 as sole therapy for myocardial ischemia. Circulation 98(25):2800–2804
131. Symes JF, Losordo DW, Vale PR, Lathi KG, Esakof DD, Mayskiy M, Isner JM (1999) Gene therapy with vascular endothelial growth factor for inoperable coronary artery disease. Ann Thorac Surg 68(3): 830–836
132. Fortuin FD, Vale P, Losordo DW, Symes J, DeLaria GA, Tyner JJ, Schaer GL, March R, Snell RJ, Henry TD (2003) One-year follow-up of direct myocardial gene transfer of vascular endothelial growth factor-2 using naked plasmid deoxyribonucleic acid by way of thoracotomy in no-option patients. Am J Cardiol 92(4):436–439
133. Reilly JP, Grise MA, Fortuin FD, Vale PR, Schaer GL, Lopez J, Van Camp JR, Henry T, Richenbacher WE, Losordo DW (2005) Long-term (2-year) clinical events following transthoracic intramyocardial gene transfer of VEGF-2 in no-option patients. J Interv Cardiol 18(1):27–31
134. Vale PR, Losordo DW, Milliken CE, Maysky M, Esakof DD, Symes JF, Isner JM (2000) Left ventricular electromechanical mapping to assess efficacy of phVEGF165 gene transfer for therapeutic angiogenesis in chronic myocardial ischemia. Circulation 102(9):965–974
135. Sarkar N, Rück A, Källner G, Hassan S, Blomberg P, Islam K, Van Der Linden J, Lindblom D, Nygren A, Lind B (2001) Effects of intramyocardial injection of phVEGF-A165 as sole therapy in patients with refractory coronary artery disease–12-month follow-up: angiogenic gene therapy. J Intern Med 250(5): 373–381
136. Rosengart TK, Lee LY, Patel SR, Sanborn TA, Parikh M, Bergman GW, Hachamovitch R, Szulc M, Kligfield PD, Okin PM, Hahn RT, Devereux RB, Post MR, Hackett NR, Foster T, Grasso TM, Lesser ML, Isom OW, Crystal RG (1999) Angiogenesis gene therapy: phase I assessment of direct intramyocardial administration of an adenovirus vector expressing VEGF121 cDNA to individuals with clinically significant severe coronary artery disease. Circulation 100(5):468–474
137. Mack CA, Patel SR, Schwarz EA, Zanzonico P, Hahn RT, Ilercil A, Devereux RB, Goldsmith SJ, Christian TF, Sanborn TA (1998) Biologic bypass with the use of adenovirus-mediated gene transfer of the complementary deoxyribonucleic acid for vascular endothelial growth factor 121 improves myocardial perfusion and function in the ischemic porcine heart. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 115(1):168–177
138. Mack CA, Magovern CJ, Budenbender KT, Patel SR, Schwarz EA, Zanzonico P, Ferris B, Sanborn T, Isom OW, Crystal RG (1998) Salvage angiogenesis induced by adenovirus-mediated gene transfer of vascular endothelial growth factor protects against ischemic vascular occlusion. J Vasc Surg 27(4):699–709
139. Magovern CJ, Mack CA, Zhang J, Hahn RT, Wilson K, Isom OW, Crystal RG, Rosengart TK

(1996) Direct in vivo gene transfer to canine myocardium using a replication-deficient adenovirus vector. Ann Thorac Surg 62(2):425–434
140. Magovern CJ, Mack CA, Zhang J, Rosengart TK, Isom OW, Crystal RG (1997) Regional angiogenesis induced in nonischemic tissue by an adenoviral vector expressing vascular endothelial growth factor. Hum Gene Ther 8(2):215–227
141. Rosengart TK, Lee LY, Patel SR, Kligfield PD, Okin PM, Hackett NR, Isom OW, Crystal RG (1999) Six-month assessment of a phase I trial of angiogenic gene therapy for the treatment of coronary artery disease using direct intramyocardial administration of an adenovirus vector expressing the VEGF121 cDNA. Ann Surg 230(4):466
142. Rosengart TK, Lee LY, Patel SR, Sanborn TA, Parikh M, Bergman GW, Hachamovitch R, Szulc M, Kligfield PD, Okin PM (1999) Angiogenesis gene therapy: phase I assessment of direct intramyocardial administration of an adenovirus vector expressing VEGF121 cDNA to individuals with clinically significant severe coronary artery disease. Circulation 100(5):468–474
143. Stewart DJ, Hilton JD, Arnold JM, Gregoire J, Rivard A, Archer SL, Charbonneau F, Cohen E, Curtis M, Buller CE, Mendelsohn FO, Dib N, Page P, Ducas J, Plante S, Sullivan J, Macko J, Rasmussen C, Kessler PD, Rasmussen HS (2006) Angiogenic gene therapy in patients with nonrevascularizable ischemic heart disease: a phase 2 randomized, controlled trial of AdVEGF(121) (AdVEGF121) versus maximum medical treatment. Gene Ther 13(21):1503–1511
144. Kastrup J, Jorgensen E, Fuchs S, Nikol S, Botker HE, Gyongyosi M, Glogar D, Kornowski R (2011) A randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre study of the safety and efficacy of BIOBYPASS (AdGVVEGF121.10NH) gene therapy in patients with refractory advanced coronary artery disease: the NOVA trial. EuroIntervention 6(7): 813–818
145. Periasamy M, Bhupathy P, Babu GJ (2008) Regulation of sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca2+ ATPase pump expression and its relevance to cardiac muscle physiology and pathology. Cardiovasc Res 77(2):265–273
146. England PJ (1975) Correlation between contraction and phosphorylation of the inhibitory subunit of troponin in perfused rat heart. FEBS Lett 50(1):57–60
147. Kranias E, Solaro R (1982) Phosphorylation of troponin I and phospholamban during catecholamine stimulation of rabbit heart. Nature 298(5870): 182–184
148. Lindemann JP, Jones L, Hathaway D, Henry B, Watanabe A (1983) beta-Adrenergic stimulation of phospholamban phosphorylation and Ca2+-ATPase activity in guinea pig ventricles. J Biol Chem 258(1): 464–471
149. Kranias E, Garvey J, Srivastava R, Solaro R (1985) Phosphorylation and functional modifications of sarcoplasmic reticulum and myofibrils in isolated rabbit hearts stimulated with isoprenaline. Biochem J 226(1):113–121
150. Kranias EG, Hajjar RJ (2012) Modulation of cardiac contractility by the phospholamban/SERCA2a regulatome. Circ Res 110(12):1646–1660. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCRESAHA.111.259754
151. Hajjar RJ, Zsebo K, Deckelbaum L, Thompson C, Rudy J, Yaroshinsky A, Ly H, Kawase Y, Wagner K, Borow K (2008) Design of a phase 1/2 trial of intracoronary administration of AAV1/SERCA2a in patients with heart failure. J Card Fail 14(5):355–367
152. Jaski BE, Jessup ML, Mancini DM, Cappola TP, Pauly DF, Greenberg B, Borow K, Dittrich H, Zsebo KM, Hajjar RJ (2009) Calcium upregulation by percutaneous administration of gene therapy in cardiac disease (CUPID Trial), a first-in-human phase 1/2 clinical trial. J Card Fail 15(3):171–181
153. Jessup M, Greenberg B, Mancini D, Cappola T, Pauly DF, Jaski B, Yaroshinsky A, Zsebo KM, Dittrich H, Hajjar RJ (2011) Calcium upregulation by percutaneous administration of gene therapy in cardiac disease (CUPID): a phase 2 trial of intracoronary gene therapy of sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca2+-ATPase in patients with advanced heart failure. Circulation 124(3):304–313
154. Greenberg B, Butler J, Felker GM, Ponikowski P, Voors AA, Desai AS, Barnard D, Bouchard A, Jaski B, Lyon AR (2016) Calcium upregulation by percutaneous administration of gene therapy in patients with cardiac disease (CUPID 2): a randomised, multinational, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 2b trial. Lancet 387(10024): 1178–1186
155. Hulot JS, Salem JE, Redheuil A, Collet JP, Varnous S, Jourdain P, Logeart D, Gandjbakhch E, Bernard C, Hatem SN (2017) Effect of intracoronary administration of AAV1/SERCA2a on ventricular remodelling in patients with advanced systolic heart failure: results from the AGENT-HF randomized phase 2 trial. Eur J Heart Fail 19(11):1534–1541
156. Ishikawa K, Fish KM, Tilemann L, Rapti K, Aguero J, Santos-Gallego CG, Lee A, Karakikes I, Xie C, Akar FG, Shimada YJ, Gwathmey JK, Asokan A, McPhee S, Samulski J, Samulski RJ, Sigg DC, Weber T, Kranias EG, Hajjar RJ (2014) Cardiac I-1c overexpression with reengineered AAV improves cardiac function in swine ischemic heart failure. Mol Ther 22(12):2038–2045
157. Ylä-Herttuala S, Markkanen JE, Rissanen TT (2004) Gene therapy for ischemic cardiovascular diseases: some lessons learned from the first clinical trials. Trends Cardiovasc Med 14(8):295–300
158. Mingozzi F, High KA (2013) Immune responses to AAV vectors: overcoming barriers to successful gene therapy. Blood 122(1):23–36
159. Mingozzi F, Anguela XM, Pavani G, Chen Y, Davidson RJ, Hui DJ, Yazicioglu M, Elkouby L, Hinderer CJ, Faella A, Howard C, Tai A, Podsakoff

GM, Zhou S, Basner-Tschakarjan E, Wright JF, High KA (2013) Overcoming preexisting humoral immunity to AAV using capsid decoys. Sci Transl Med 5:194. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.3005795
160. Zacchigna S, Zentilin L, Giacca M (2014) Adeno-associated virus vectors as therapeutic and investigational tools in the cardiovascular system. Circ Res 114(11):1827–1846
161. Müller OJ, Kaul F, Weitzman MD, Pasqualini R, Arap W, Kleinschmidt JA, Trepel M (2003) Random peptide libraries displayed on adeno-associated virus to select for targeted gene therapy vectors. Nat Biotechnol 21(9):1040–1046
162. Grimm D, Lee JS, Wang L, Desai T, Akache B, Storm TA, Kay MA (2008) In vitro and in vivo gene therapy vector evolution via multispecies interbreeding and retargeting of adeno-associated viruses. J Virol 82(12):5887–5911
163. Koerber JT, Jang J-H, Schaffer DV (2008) DNA shuffling of adeno-associated virus yields functionally diverse viral progeny. Mol Ther 16(10):1703–1709
164. Maersch S, Huber A, Büning H, Hallek M, Perabo L (2010) Optimization of stealth adeno-associated virus vectors by randomization of immunogenic epitopes. Virology 397(1):167–175
165. Yang L, Xiao X (2013) Creation of a cardiotropic adeno-associated virus: the story of viral directed evolution. Virol J 10(1):1–8
166. Piacentino V III, Milano CA, Bolanos M, Schroder J, Messina E, Cockrell AS, Jones E, Krol A, Bursac N, Mao L (2012) X-linked inhibitor of apoptosis protein-mediated attenuation of apoptosis, using a novel cardiac-enhanced adeno-associated viral vector. Hum Gene Ther 23(6):635–646
167. Asokan A, Conway JC, Phillips JL, Li C, Hegge J, Sinnott R, Yadav S, DiPrimio N, Nam H-J, Agbandje-McKenna M (2010) Reengineering a receptor footprint of adeno-associated virus enables selective and systemic gene transfer to muscle. Nat Biotechnol 28(1):79–82
168. Pulicherla N, Shen S, Yadav S, Debbink K, Govindasamy L, Agbandje-McKenna M, Asokan A (2011) Engineering liver-detargeted AAV9 vectors for cardiac and musculoskeletal gene transfer. Mol Ther 19(6):1070–1078
169. Weber T (2021) Anti-AAV antibodies in AAV gene therapy: current challenges and possible solutions. Front Immunol 12:658399
170. Li C, Narkbunnam N, Samulski RJ, Asokan A, Hu G, Jacobson LJ, Manco-Johnson MJ, Monahan PE (2012) Neutralizing antibodies against adeno-associated virus examined prospectively in pediatric patients with hemophilia. Gene Ther 19(3):288–294
171. Bartel M, Schaffer D, Buning H (2011) Enhancing the clinical potential of AAV vectors by capsid engineering to evade pre-existing immunity. Front Microbiol 2:204
172. Al-Zaidy S, Pickard AS, Kotha K, Alfano LN, Lowes L, Paul G, Church K, Lehman K, Sproule DM, Dabbous O, Maru B, Berry K, Arnold WD, Kissel JT, Mendell JR, Shell R (2019) Health outcomes in spinal muscular atrophy type 1 following AVXS-101 gene replacement therapy. Pediatr Pulmonol 54(2):179–185
173. Al-Zaidy SA, Mendell JR (2019) From clinical trials to clinical practice: practical considerations for gene replacement therapy in SMA type 1. Pediatr Neurol 100:3–11
174. FDA approves first drug for spinal muscular atrophy. 2016. https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-approves-first-drug-spinal-muscular-atrophy
175. Finkel RS, Mercuri E, Darras BT, Connolly AM, Kuntz NL, Kirschner J, Chiriboga CA, Saito K, Servais L, Tizzano E, Topaloglu H, Tulinius M, Montes J, Glanzman AM, Bishop K, Zhong ZJ, Gheuens S, Bennett CF, Schneider E, Farwell W (2017) Nusinersen versus sham control in infantile-onset spinal muscular atrophy. N Engl J Med 377(18):1723–1732
176. Keown A (2021) Top 10 most expensive drugs on the market. https://www.biospace.com/article/gene-therapy-zolgensma-tops-goodrx-list-of-10-most-expensive-drugs/
177. Author (2020) High-dose AAV gene therapy deaths. Nat Biotechnol 38(8):910
178. Sibbald B (2001) Death but one unintended consequence of gene-therapy trial. CMAJ 164(11):1612
179. Consortium EP (2012) An integrated encyclopedia of DNA elements in the human genome. Nature 489(7414):57
180. Beermann J, Piccoli MT, Viereck J, Thum T (2016) Non-coding RNAs in development and disease: background, mechanisms, and therapeutic approaches. Physiol Rev 96(4):1297–1325
181. de Gonzalo-Calvo D, Vea A, Bar C, Fiedler J, Couch LS, Brotons C, Llorente-Cortes V, Thum T (2019) Circulating non-coding RNAs in biomarker-guided cardiovascular therapy: a novel tool for personalized medicine? Eur Heart J 40(20):1643–1650
182. Viereck J, Thum T (2017) Circulating noncoding RNAs as biomarkers of cardiovascular disease and injury. Circ Res 120(2):381–399
183. Viereck J, Buhrke A, Foinquinos A, Chatterjee S, Kleeberger JA, Xiao K, Janssen-Peters H, Batkai S, Ramanujam D, Kraft T, Cebotari S, Gueler F, Beyer AM, Schmitz J, Brasen JH, Schmitto JD, Gyongyosi M, Loser A, Hirt MN, Eschenhagen T, Engelhardt S, Bar C, Thum T (2020) Targeting muscle-enriched long non-coding RNA H19 reverses pathological cardiac hypertrophy. Eur Heart J 41(36):3462–3474
184. Lu D, Thum T (2019) RNA-based diagnostic and therapeutic strategies for cardiovascular disease. Nat Rev Cardiol 16(11):661–674

185. Garg A, Foinquinos A, Jung M, Janssen-Peters H, Biss S, Bauersachs J, Gupta SK, Thum T (2020) MiRNA-181a is a novel regulator of aldosterone-mineralocorticoid receptor-mediated cardiac remodelling. Eur J Heart Fail 22(8):1366–1377
186. Bär C, de Jesus BB, Serrano R, Tejera A, Ayuso E, Jimenez V, Formentini I, Bobadilla M, Mizrahi J, de Martino A, Gomez G, Pisano D, Mulero F, Wollert KC, Bosch F, Blasco MA (2014) Telomerase expression confers cardioprotection in the adult mouse heart after acute myocardial infarction. Nat Commun 5(1):5863
187. Chatterjee S, Hofer T, Costa A, Lu D, Batkai S, Gupta SK, Bolesani E, Zweigerdt R, Megias D, Streckfuss-Bömeke K, Brandenberger C, Thum T, Bär C (2021) Telomerase therapy attenuates cardiotoxic effects of doxorubicin. Mol Ther 29(4): 1395–1410



Therapeutics in Metabolic Diseases

Vijayakumar Natesan

Abstract

Metabolic diseases have important effects on the health and healthcare costs of an individual. It adversely affects various body processes. Metabolic diseases are characterized as the accumulation of many conditions that collectively increase a person's risk of atherosclerotic coronary disease, insulin, and diabetes mellitus intolerance, as well as vascular and neurological complications, such as stroke. Rare metabolic disease has also been reported in literatures and clinical research. Understanding the history and causes of the disease, associated symptoms, disease severity, physical and vital evaluations, etc. is recommended to provide or improve some appropriate therapeutic measure. The experience with patients starts with a critical and general presentation to a healthcare provider that may indicate potential conditions such as dyslipidemia, hypertension, and metabolic diseases. The main factors in the treatment and management of metabolic disorders are lifestyle changes. Whenever behavioral changes are not effective or cannot be implemented, pharmacotherapies should be initiated including for most of the rare diseases. Moreover, pharmaceutical molecules are the very commonly used therapies. The prospect of therapy through gene transfer into somatic cells unlocks a new field of treatment and opportunity for people affected by these genetic conditions. Like other medical treatments, many gene therapies can relieve some, though not every indications of a specific disease, which can increase patients' quality of life. Hormone-based therapies are also implemented in the treatment of metabolic diseases. It has been suggested to use herbal extracts with different forms of nano-drug delivery techniques, such as nanobiocomposites, solid lipid nanoparticles, nanoemulsions, green-synthesized gold, zinc oxide, and silver nanoparticles.

Keywords

Metabolic diseases · Rare diseases · Diabetes mellitus · Hypertension · Obesity · Dyslipidemia

1 Background

The cellular-level process of transforming food into energy is called metabolism, and metabolic disorder is any illness or condition that interferes with natural metabolism. Several enzymes are involved in different interdependent metabolic processes to carry out this mechanism. Metabolic disorders impair the cell's ability to conduct substantial biochemical processes involving the

V. Natesan (✉)
Department of Biochemistry and Biotechnology, Faculty of Science, Annamalai University, Annamalainagar, Tamil Nadu, India

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_17

production or transport of amino acids, carbohydrates, or lipids. The cell's ability to execute substantial biochemical processes including the synthesis or transfer of lipids, amino acids, or carbohydrates is compromised by metabolic disorders. Metabolic diseases are defined as an accumulation of several conditions that collectively increase a human's threat of coronary atherosclerotic disease, intolerance of insulin, and diabetes mellitus, as well as vascular and neurological complications, such as stroke [1–3]. Defining the metabolic syndrome has been long debated, and many definitions are present in the literature [4]. Metabolic syndrome can be declared if three or more of the following symptoms prevail: higher circumference of waist, high triglycerides, increased fasting glucose, elevated blood pressure, and low high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C). The criteria for the conditions are presented in Table 1.

There are rare metabolic diseases reported other than the said conditions. They are mostly chronic conditions that could be life-ending. They have no or limited effective therapies. Inherited metabolic diseases are carried over from birth. They could be categorized as single cell(s) or organelle(s) or multiple specific disorders. The former disorder includes symptoms such as allergies and endocrine diseases, and the latter presents with co-morbid conditions with multiple organs and systems. Major rare metabolic diseases are lysosomal, mitochondrial, and protein metabolic disorders. It means that this disease includes metabolic disorders such as complex molecules, energy, and intoxication. In addition to the three major subclasses, carbohydrate metabolic, neurological, hepatic, and vitamin metabolic disorders were also reported [5].

Metabolic diseases have significant impacts on a person's health and healthcare costs. It affects multiple body processes adversely. The increasing incidence of metabolic diseases needs to be understood, as the advancement of the syndrome can be prevented and eventually reversed by the intervention [6–8]. Excess body weight, absence of physical exercise, and hereditary predisposition are the fundamental causes of the metabolic diseases. Over time, the progression of metabolic diseases leads to vascular and autonomic damage [9–11]. Body fat distribution is also important to consider, and the upper body fat plays a dominant role in producing insulin resistance. Abdominal fat can be a greater contributor to insulin intolerance than subcutaneous fat. Nevertheless, obesity and fat accumulation are believed to take part in the progress and advancement of metabolic diseases. High levels of nonesterified fatty acids are expelled from adipose tissue in upper body obesity, allowing lipid to collect in other areas of the body, including the liver and muscle, reinforcing additional insulin resistance.

Microvascular injury is caused by insulin resistance, which may predispose a patient to develop hypertension, vascular resistance, endothelial disease, and inflammation of the vessel surface. The endothelial injury that causes atherosclerotic disease and the production of hypertension will disrupt the body's homeostasis. In addition, many body functions, including elevated vascular resistance and stiffness inducing peripheral vascular dysfunction, systemic cardiac disease consisting of left ventricular hypertrophy, and cardiomyopathy, are significantly impacted by hypertension, which contributes to renal dysfunction [12].

Cumulative consequences of metabolic disease-related endothelial dysfunction and hypertension will also result in ischemic heart disease. Endothelial dysfunction can induce blood thrombogenicity owing to elevated adipokine and plasminogen activator type 1 levels, and hypertension induces vascular resistance from which coronary artery disease can develop. Metabolic disease-associated dyslipidemia can also affect the atherosclerotic mechanism contributing to symptomatic ischemic heart disease [13, 14]. Metabolic diseases could also cause liver damage, by inducing steatosis that can lead to fibrosis, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), hepatocellular carcinoma, and cirrhosis. Histologically, lobular inflammation, hepatocyte ballooning, steatosis, pericellular fibrosis, and Mallory bodies are observed in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. The precise reason of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis

Table 1 Criteria for defining the metabolic diseases [3]

Diseases	Criterion values for declaring the presence of metabolic disease
Circumference of waist	≥40 inches in men; ≥35 inches in women
Triglycerides	>150 mg dl^{-1} or medications for the control of triglycerides
High-density lipoprotein-cholesterol (HDL-C)	<40 mg dl^{-1} in men and <50 mg dl^{-1} in women or medications for the control of HDL-C
Blood pressure	130/85 mmHg or greater or on antihypertensive medications
Fasting glucose	100 mg dl^{-1} or greater or on medications for glucose control

formation is unclear; however, it has been related to metabolic diseases, primarily insulin resistance and proinflammatory status[15].

To provide or develop any effective therapeutic measure, understanding the disease history and causes, related complications, disease severity, physical and vital examinations, etc. are recommended. The experience with patients begins with a critical and general presentation, which may suggest possible disorders like dyslipidemia, hypertension, and metabolic diseases to a healthcare professional. There are genetic conditions that can incline individuals to the progress of metabolic diseases and insulin resistance, but no known genetic community is disposed to metabolic diseases. A patient should then be asked on all other suspected genetic abnormalities. It is therefore important to acquire social and lifestyle records, since there are crucial variables that can greatly influence the progression of metabolic diseases. For metabolic disease diagnosis, a physical examination is necessary since one of the requirements includes waist circumference. In addition, the patient must be tested for physical symptoms of insulin resistance, like acanthosis nigricans, retinopathy, and peripheral neuropathy, if the patient has a disease history. Vascular murmur that may be attributed to atherosclerotic disorder should be diagnosed and treated by a clinician. Xanthomas can be found in dyslipidemia patients. For the identification of metabolic diseases, a detailed physical examination is warranted [16].

The evaluations must be coupled with laboratory research after a detailed historical development of disease and physical examination. Hemoglobin A1C (HbA1c) for resistance to insulin and type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) should be part of the blood tests. To test for an unusually higher levels of triglyceride, lower HDL-C, and elevated low-density lipoprotein levels, a lipid profile must also be tested. A simple metabolic assessment should also be used in the initial assessment to determine renal impairment and evaluate the level of glucose. In order to better examine and help the analysis of metabolic diseases, additional tests such as thyroid analysis, liver panel, uric acid, and C-reactive protein may be suggested. Imaging tests may be requested as required. For example, someone suspected of developing atherosclerotic coronary artery disease should undergo an electrocardiogram to test for symptoms of arrhythmias, infarction, and cardiac ischemia, as well as assess for hypertension with systemic heart diseases. If necessary, cardiac stress evaluations including stress echocardiography and electrocardiogram stress evaluation should be further assessed for patients [17, 18]. The treatments starting from lifestyle modifications, medications, gene therapies, hormone-based treatments, and Phytomedications for metabolic diseases are detailed in this chapter, and Table 2 summarizes the available treatments and disease management.

2 The Lifestyle Changes as Treatment for Metabolic Diseases

Lifestyle changes are key factors in the treatment and controlling of metabolic diseases. Modern treatment incorporates detailed guidelines on food and exercise with behavioral and cognitive techniques. The most successful and healthy interventions to avoid metabolic diseases are lifestyle improvements aimed at improving long-term outcomes, especially in reducing

Table 2 Therapeutics in metabolic diseases: suggested and available treatments with cutoff values

Metabolic disease	Preliminary treatment	Advanced treatment	Management/ control cutoff values
Overweight	Lifestyle changes	Phentermine/topiramate, naltrexone SR or bupropion SR, lorcaserin, orlistat, sibutramine, GLP-1 RA liraglutide, bariatric surgery	Reduction of overall weight to ~10%
High glucose level	Lifestyle changes	Thiazolidinedione, metformin, insulin, dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors, sulfonylurea, SGLT-2 inhibitors, GLP-1RAs	HbA1c less than 6.5%
Dyslipidemia	Lifestyle changes	Cholesteryl ester transfer protein (CETP) inhibitors, Colesevelam (resin), statins, niacin, fibrates	LDL less than 160 mg dl^{-1}
Hypertension	Lifestyle changes	Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor (ACEI), thiazide diuretic, beta-blocker (BB), calcium channel blocker, angiotensin receptor blocker (ARB)	Diastolic between 130 and 140 mmHg Systolic between 80 and 90 mmHg

cardiovascular events [19]. Adapting to healthy behaviors is the most important aspect of metabolic disease treatment and control. Various lifestyle modifications will be addressed below as primary treatment for metabolic diseases-related disorders such as hypertriglyceridemia, central obesity, high blood pressure, hyperglycemia HDL-C deficiency, and diabetes impairment. Reducing the body weight in obese people has been found to strengthen all components of metabolic diseases. The improvement in lifestyle should concentrate in two aspects: (1) nutritional advice to combat obesity and correct overweight and (2) energy consumption advice through physical activity to improve exercising capacity in day-to-day life and in their free time while focusing on improving endurance [20].

Lifestyle changes include selecting a particular dietary plan, encouraging moderate to vigorous exercise, and using methodologies for behavioral transformation. Various nutritional strategies effectively yield weight loss, generally a 5–10% decline of initial body weight, which is linked to enhancement in cardio-metabolic problems. Also, weight recovery progresses over time as dietary conformity weakens. Generally, the capacity of a person to implement the changes adopted through a dietetic strategy will need to be viewed as feasible for long-term commitment and retention of weight loss. Thus, what one person finds to be enticing with a dietary prescription, such as high protein, could be very complicated for somebody else, such as someone who chooses low-fat, vegetarian choices. In general, supplementing the nutritional strategy with physical exercise improves losing weight and, more accurately, predicts preservation of weight loss. The use of behavioral intervention strategies, through concrete implementation plans and transparency, helps increase compliance to a diet and exercise schedule. A study on the impact of lifestyle patterns on coagulation of the blood stated that swings in daily habits such as integrating physical activity, losing weight, complete withdrawal of smoking, consumption of fish, reduced alcohol intake, and optimal rest decrease coagulability, encourage fibrinolysis, and decrease platelet aggregation [21].

2.1 Physical Activity and Exercise

Exercise is an important element of lifestyle changes to prevent diabetes mellitus and related metabolic diseases, particularly when introduced to dietary treatment. Studies suggested active walking and comparable exercise or strenuous exercise for half an hour a day can help reduce hypertension [22]. The frequency of T2DM was decreased by 31%, 46%, and 42% with food, exercise, and both diet and exercise combined, respectively [23]. Exercise causes only short-term impacts on blood pressure, aside from a balanced diet. A meta-analysis of multiple

randomized studies found a decrease in blood pressure of 4 mmHg among participants subjected to a physical activity intervention [24].

2.2 Diet

There are three widely adopted nutritional alternatives: diets that are low carbohydrate, very low-fat diets, and diets with reduced fat. In particular, excessive protein and calcium consumption is seriously harmful to renal function, and an eminent possible threat for early atherosclerosis is excessive saturated fat consumption [25].

Due to the positive impact on insulin, serum glucose, and TG levels, reduced glycemic index and higher content of fiber would be ideal. A daily consumption of carbohydrates should be 60% of the total calories and about 50% for people with high-density lipoprotein or low triglycerides. Whole grain products, fruits, low-fat milk products, and vegetables can make up much of the carbohydrates. Burning 200 kcal a day results in an increase in most people's TG/HDL-C ratio [26]. The mean decrease in blood diastolic and systolic pressure was 1.1 and 1.6 mmHg for a kilogram of weight loss, respectively [27].

Weight reduction of obese and hypertensive individuals was attributed to a rise in insulin sensitivity along with a decrease in the blood pressure [28]. A diet containing rich calcium, magnesium, and potassium (low-fat dairy foods, dry fruits, special nuts, meat, vegetables, whole grains, and fish ["DASH diet"]) has greatly decreased blood pressure. Reduced salt intake (~3.8 g day^{-1}) decreased systolic blood pressure in non-hypertensive patients by 7.1 mmHg and in hypertensive patients by 11.5 mmHg when compared to a higher salt intake (~8.6 g day^{-1}). A high salt intake (sodium chloride) has a negative impact on blood pressure, especially in black and elderly people [29, 30]. Also, high-dose intake with omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids, 3 g, or high of fish oil a day decrease blood pressure [31]. There is very little exposure to the influence of monounsaturated fatty acids on blood pressure and reducing the risk of heart disease [20].

In medical practice, very low-calorie ketogenic diets (VLCKDs) are progressively used for weight control and the treatment of comorbidities related to obesity. VLCKD is reliant on protein-rich foods produced from soy, green peas, whey, and eggs of high nutritional value. VLCKD is thus distinguished by a low content of lipids, mostly obtained from olive oil, that is, ~20 g a day. VLCKD provides adequate medical oversight [32, 33]. In addition, VLCKD patients should be closely and regularly checked to prevent dehydration and vitamin/electrolyte irregularities, which are possibly related to urinary excretion of ketone bodies and inadequate absorption of micronutrients, by physical assessment (heart rate, blood pressure, anthropometric scales, etc.) and laboratory study [34].

For rare medical conditions, specialized foods are suggested. These special foods contain specific nutrients removed or medications included. For example, maple syrup urine disease might be managed with leucine-, isoleucine-, or valine-free foods. Protein- or amino acid-less foods could be suggested for related metabolic disorders such as urea cycle disorders, lysinuric protein intolerance, non-ketoic hyperglycinemia, etc. Similarly, sucrose, fructose, galactose, or sugar-free foods might help galactosemia and glucose transport disorders Osteoporosis-like disorders need vitamin D and calcium-rich foods [35].

2.3 Alcohol and Smoking Cessation

An elevated risk of hypertriglyceridemia, impaired fasting glucose/diabetes mellitus, hypertension, and visceral obesity is correlated with alcohol in excess as per dietary guidelines. There have been suggested pathways by which alcohol intake could favorably affect the risk of metabolic diseases. In order to enhance insulin sensitivity, moderate consumption of alcohol was found to increase HDL-C, improve insulin sensitivity, and lower triglycerides. The correlations found between alcohol and HDL-C,

serum glucose, serum insulin, and triglycerides are compatible with previous studies [36–43].

Smoking is prothrombotic and atherogenic in all cases. As a result, the threat of acute myocardial infarction, sudden heart arrest, stroke, peripheral artery disease, and aortic aneurysm is raised. Even relatively low dosage levels raise the risk of cardiovascular disease and changes in metabolism [44]. The cessation of smoking could also minimize T2DM-induced chronic injury. The positive effect of smoking cessation in recently diagnosed T2DM patients is reported as decrease in microalbuminuria, delineated as a 30–300 μg/mg ratio of albumin to creatinine, and good control of blood pressure [45]. Smoking cessation may relieve smoking and nicotine-induced ailments and can also contribute to weight increase. Post-cessation weight gain is less detrimental than smoking. Persons with obesity who stop smoking have the greatest demand for treatments to alleviate weight gaining [46, 47]. Obese smokers with anxiety, particularly women, need much more efficient weight management and smoking cessation therapy [48].

2.4 Losing Weight

Current research suggests that a moderate weight loss is correlated with a marked decrease in occurrence of T2DM and other metabolic diseases [49, 50]. There is full acceptance that weight loss is related to major changes in metabolic health abnormalities, including blood glucose level, lipid profile, and blood pressure, and even modest weight loss (7% decrease) in 4 weeks, considering the existence of a large BMI, will boost the metabolic profile [51–53]. With the addition of novel procedures, such as integrating dietary changes with pharmacotherapy, the positive findings were obtained [54] using meal substitution [55] establishing higher physical activity [56] and longer medical treatment and [57] boosting ambitious hopes for a successful cure of obesity and metabolic diseases with changes to lifestyles. Biological pressure to recover weight is among the key causes involved in the long-term loss in weight management [58]. The impact of integrating dietary change with pharmacotherapy aimed at reducing biological pressure to recover weight is also reasonable to determine. The results show that this mixed method appears to increase both the quantities of weight loss and weight loss management [54]. The increase in weight loss is also accompanied by significant changes in many metabolic outcomes and cardiovascular disease risk factors [59]. The central function of cognitive mechanisms in success/failure of weight management and loss indicates that in traditional lifestyle change treatments, cognitive processes should be used in helping patients develop a long-term weight management attitude [60–62].

2.5 Stress Control

Long-term exposure to stress at work will directly impact the autonomic nervous system and neuroendocrine function, leading to metabolic disease development. A case-control analysis found that patients with metabolic diseases in the Whitehall II study had increased production of cortisol and normetanephrine and also decreased variations in heart rate [63]. In the Whitehall II study, decreases in cardiac autonomic function were correlated with metabolic diseases in certain populations and poor job control and social alienation among males [64–66].

Continuous mental stress may decrease resilience and bring imbalance in the metabolism. Improved adrenocortical activity will affect the metabolism of hepatic lipoprotein and insulin sensitivity in the target organ [67, 68]. Cortisol is an insulin antagonist, and the amount of cortisol in metabolic diseases is increased [63]. Low levels of HDL-C and glucose resistance are correlated with high baseline cortisol release [69]. Observational and prospective trials showed that the stress at work was correlated with coronary heart diseases [70, 71]. The biological pathways are also uncertain for the cause [72]. Direct neuroendocrine symptoms and secondary effects mediated by detrimental health practices are possible pathophysiological pathways [63, 64, 73].

There is a dose-response link among work stress exposure and metabolic diseases. After considering other risk parameters, workers with persistent job stress have more than twice the chances of the condition than someone without work stress. The research proves that the biological effects of psychosocial stress pathways lead to heart disease in conjugation with daily life stressors. Likewise, diseases like osteoporosis, depression, and high blood pressure are triggered by increased secretion of cortisol [74]. In addition, higher levels of cortisol lead to the progression of the metabolic disease, including visceral obesity, diabetes and dyslipidemia, and cardiovascular comorbidities [75]. Therefore, it is recommended to have work-life balance to prevent and manage metabolic diseases. People working in high stress jobs should take necessary stress management programs like yoga, stress-busting physical activities, hobbies, and recreational work-offs.

3 The Pharmacotherapy of Metabolic Diseases

The stratification of patients fulfilling the metabolic disease criterion must be focused on their risk profile [76]. The suggested sequence of treatment priorities for high-risk patients must be: (1) atherogenic dyslipidemia, (2) arterial hypertension, (3) glucose resistance, and (4) prothrombotic condition. The treatment target series for lower risk patients must be: (1) unusual non-HDL-C and HDL-C (LDL as the target), (2) pre or moderate arterial hypertension, and (3) fasting hyperglycemia diagnosis for glucose intolerance [76]. Two non-pharmacological methods, that is, tobacco withdrawal [77], diet (comprising phytosterols) and exercise [76], and also pharmacological or surgical therapeutic approaches (bariatric surgery) [78], could be intended to accomplish the objectives and to decrease the long-term peril of explicit T2DM and cardiovascular disease.

Various pharmacological measures are also needed to correct the specific threat factors involved in metabolic diseases appropriately. The usage of many pharmaceutical treatments will pose not only clinical but also moral concerns, which can only be resolved by considering the influence of treatment on specific threat factors [79]. Many other pharmacological approaches addressing risk factors have indicated effects in the overall population in relation to cardiovascular diseases and death. In patients with metabolic diseases, although certain pharmacological treatments may have additional advantages by enhancing greater than one of its risk features, possible adverse consequences of other therapies have also been observed [80–86].

3.1 Pharmacotherapy of Dyslipidemia

The impacts of statins are dose-dependent, and LDL cholesterol can be decreased by up to 60% by high-intensity agents like rosuvastatin [87]. Statins are not only beneficial to decreasing the levels of LDL, but they also decrease cardiovascular death and decrease morbidity [84]. A meta-analysis showed that rosuvastatin, atorvastatin, and simvastatin were all able to mildly decrease the level of triglycerides and very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) and raise the HDL-C level [88]. For simvastatin and rosuvastatin, the dose-effect relationship also differs, not for atorvastatin [88].

Ezetimibe effectively restricts the absorption of biliary and dietary sterols, without intruding with liposoluble nutrient absorption. The protein Niemann-Pick C1-Like 1 and the beneficial influence of ezetimibe were also demonstrated in other physiopathological elements of metabolic diseases [89]. In the event of statin resistance, Ezetimibe, bile acid sequestrants, or a mixture have usually been suggested [90, 91]. Resins can also decrease the level of blood glucose in the event of hyperglycemia. In a Cochrane systematic review, a better tolerated resin Colesevelam was shown to support and regulate the glycemic levels when prescribed along with antidiabetic agents [92]. The occurrence of gastrointestinal adverse reactions, the potential impact of rising amounts of triglycerides in

predisposed persons, the high incidence of drug-drug interactions, and the existence of newest agents have restricted its use of bile acid sequestrants.

The proprotein convertase subtilisin/Kexin type 9 (PCSK9) inhibitors are a recent group of agents found to reduce LDL-C. PCSK9 was identified in 2003 with hereditary hypercholesterolemia patients [93], and its ability to cause deterioration of LDL receptors in hepatic cells is a major element in LDL-C level regulation. The linking of PCSK9 to receptors of LDL-C and the lesser levels of LDL cholesterol was blocked by PCSK9 monoclonal antibodies by around 60% [94]. The evolocumab (PCSK9 inhibitor) as an additional to statin therapy has been recently published with proven positive results in cardiovascular disease patients [95]. Nicotinic acid is a typical wide-spectrum hypolipidemic, which reduces LDL cholesterol and triglycerides and raises HDL-C levels most efficiently. It has pleiotropic consequences consistent with adipocyte lipolysis inhibition and reduction of triglyceride and CRP synthesis [96]. The majority of effects have been seen in low to moderate statin dosage trials in conjunction with nicotinic acid.

Cholesteryl ester transfer protein (CETP) inhibitors, fibrates, and statins are the other agents which are shown to improve HDL-C [91]. The impact of HDL-C-directed treatment of cardiovascular disease has not led to a lower number of cardiovascular disease events [91]. Fibrates, a widely used class of lipid-modifying agents, result in a substantial decrease in plasma triglycerides and are usually associated with a moderate decrease in LDL cholesterol and an increase in HDL cholesterol concentrations. Recent investigations indicate that the effects of fibrates are mediated, at least in part, through alterations in transcription of genes encoding for proteins that control lipoprotein metabolism. Fibrates activate specific transcription factors belonging to the nuclear hormone receptor superfamily, termed peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs) [97]. They trigger Apo A-I synthesis as well. These pathways collectively contribute to a reduction in triglycerides, a rise in HDL-C, and a change from small LDL to large LDL cholesterol [98]. In combination with statins, fibrates are more effective, especially in patients with overweight and hyperinsulinemia [98, 99]. Generally, fibrates deter cardiovascular illness, and death is less convincing than statins and requires more validation and clarity to assess their beneficial role [90, 100, 101].

3.2 Pharmacotherapy of Obesity

Five medications, phentermine/topiramate, naltrexone SR/bupropion SR, GLP-1 RA liraglutide, orlistat, and lorcaserin, are presently approved for the treatment of obesity. Orlistat, through hindering pancreatic lipase, induces malabsorption of ingested fat, whereas the primary impact of the other medications is to decrease food consumption by control of appetite [102].

For many decades, the cardiovascular effects of pharmacologically mediated weight loss have been controversial [103]. In recent times, the LEADER (Liraglutide Effect and Intervention in Diabetes: Assessment of Cardiovascular Outcome Results) research program has reported positive effects on cardiovascular disease with liraglutide therapy, and liraglutide was permitted for the treatment of obesity at a higher dose (i.e., 3.0 mg) [104, 105]. It remains to be examined if the positive impact shown in LEADER study may be applied to the higher risk patients with no T2DM. However, 13% of risk reduction in cardiovascular disease shown in the LEADER study, coupled with high effectiveness of several aspects of metabolic diseases, is hopeful [106].

Amphetamines has distinct euphoric behavior and also has prospective for violence and addiction [107]. Phentermine via catecholaminergic pathways has stimulant and sympathomimetic activity [108]. In women, an elevated peril of hemorrhagic stroke has been associated with phenylpropanolamine-based appetite suppressants [109]. Dexfenfluramine and fenfluramine act as suppressants of appetite that interact with serotonin release. Due to related heart valve injury and pulmonary hypertension, these substances were also excluded from market [108, 109]. Sibutramine and orlistat are other

medicinal products currently available. By acting on the central nervous system, sibutramine increases satiety, reduces appetite, and decreases the metabolic rate that accompanies weight loss [110]. Compared with placebo, an overall of 43% of sibutramine patients retained 80% of their original body weight loss. Increased sensitivity of insulin, glycemic regulation, and lipid profile of blood in patients with T2DM were followed by weight loss [111]. As shown by a decrease in the levels of leptin and an increase in the concentration of adiponectin, a positive effect on adipocytokines has been observed.

Orlistat, a pancreatic and gastrointestinal lipase inhibitor, prevents about 30% of dietary fat from being consumed [112]. Orlistat decreases the amount of LDL and cholesterol regardless of body weight loss, reduces progression to T2DM, and contributes to better glycemic regulation in patients with T2DM [113].

Rimonabant, the first medicine to aim the endocannabinoid (CB) pathway through hindering the CB1 receptors, has been developed. Siege of central CB1 receptors decreases appetite, while peripheral receptor blockade is assumed to influence liver and adipose tissue, leading to enhanced metabolism of fat, glucose, and lipid and free of changes in body weight [114]. Rimonabant therapy is related with an additional rise of 8–10% in HDL-C and 10–30% decrease in triglycerides and changes in insulin resistance, glycemic regulation in T2DM, besides cytokines and adipokines like CRP [115–118]. The European Medicines Agency authorized rimonabant as an assistant therapy for diet and exercise for obesity treatment in patients with minimum BMI of 30 kg m^{-2} and BMI of >27 kg m^{-2} in overweight patients with related risk factors like T2DM or dyslipidemia.

Weight-loss surgery (bariatric surgery) is the only alternative option nowadays that successfully addresses morbid obesity when other treatments become unsuccessful. Restricted evidence indicates that surgery is highly potent than traditional management for weight reduction in morbid obesity. Surgery led to higher weight reduction compared to traditional management, with life quality and comorbidity changes. However, the relative safety and efficacy of these surgical techniques is not well established.

3.3 Pharmacotherapy of Diabetes Mellitus

Seven forms of antidiabetic drugs are commonly available for T2DM treatment, that is, thiazolidinedione, metformin, insulin, glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists (GLP-1RAs), sulfonylurea, sodium-glucose co--transporter-2 (SGLT-2) inhibitors, and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors, and metformin is the first-line therapy [119]. Impact of metformin versus intense lifestyle modification in metabolic diseases patients showed a 17% decline in metabolic diseases [50].

As the antidiabetic drug, rosiglitazone has recorded an elevated peril of cardiovascular disease, and all potential antidiabetic drugs had to show cardiovascular security in both pre- and post-approval environments [120]. Subsequently, multiple large clinical trials were performed for T2DM patients [81–83, 85, 121–126]. Although DPP-4 inhibitor has only showed neutral effects with respect to cardiovascular disease [121, 125, 126], certain GLP-1RA and SGLT-2 inhibitors were reported to decrease the hazard of substantial detrimental cardiac effects [81–83, 85].

As SGLT2 inhibitor, empagliflozin reduced cardiac effects [85], and similar cardiovascular advantages with both SGLT-2 inhibitor canagliflozin and GLP-1 RAs, liraglutide and semaglutide, were reported [122]. The clinical trials of the SGLT2 inhibitors have jointly shown a 9–26% risk decrease in the composite result of significant undesirable cardiac effects in T2DM patients [81–83, 85, 122]. In comparison, only neutral findings were seen in the Evaluation of Lixisenatide in Acute Coronary Syndrome (ELIXA) analysis examining GLP-1RA lixisenatide [124]. In addition to enhancing glycemic control and showing possible cardiovascular disease advantages with GLP-1RAs and SGLT-2 inhibitors, control of various metabolic disease parameters, like dyslipidemia,

obesity, and blood pressure, has also increased with these medications [81–83, 85, 122].

3.4 Pharmacotherapy of Hypertension

It is advised to commence first-line therapy with one out of five antihypertensive medications: calcium channel blocker, thiazide diuretic, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor (ACEI), or beta-blocker (BB) angiotensin receptor blocker (ARB) according to the hazard level of specific patients [127]. All of these antihypertensive drugs have shown strong advantages of cardiovascular disease as a first line of therapy in a large population [127]. However, possible improvement of metabolic disorders should be discussed with metabolic disease patients, especially in the treatment of BB or thiazides [86, 128]. The Antihypertensive and lipid-lowering therapy to reduce heart attack (ALLHAT) research found an improvement in the incidence of T2DM in thiazide-cured patients in comparison to other antihypertensive treatments, and a raise in total cholesterol in thiazide-treated patients was also reported after 2 years [129].

A related issue was raised with respect to the developing T2DM for BB [86]. BB therapy was correlated with a 28% rise in advent of T2DM in a longitudinal research [128]. While BB may not be regarded as first-line products in metabolic diseases, the third generation, namely, vasodilator BB, nebivolol, and carvedilol, may also have a different place in treatment. Nebivolol has capacity of increasing nitric oxide and antioxidant properties that may justify its unbiased metabolic effects, a positive impact on sensitivity of insulin and the lipid-reducing prospective [130].

ARBs are antagonists of the AT1 receptor, contributing to vasodilation, decreased aldosterone, and vasopressin production, which eventually lower the blood pressure [131]. In addition, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor (PPAR) gamma activation raised 1.5 more times in human preadipocytes when treated with ARBs irbesartan, losartan, and telmisartan [80]. Earlier, PPAR-gamma agonists were applied to treat both hyperglycemia and hyperlipidemia [80]. The Treat-to-Target Study has repeatedly shown additional metabolic benefits in reducing blood pressure, as administered with ARB irbesartan [131]. The experiments revealed substantial reductions in triglycerides, increases in HDL-C, and decreases in waist circumference and plasma glucose ranges [131]. HDL-C and systemic glucose improvements have been found only in patients with baseline metabolic diseases [131]. In patients with glucose resistance, the advantages of either ACEI or ARB relative to other groups have not been undeniably established [132–134]. Cardiovascular benefits comparable to ACEI or ARB are correlated with dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers and thiazide-like diuretics [132]. Instead, ACEI/ARB is the therapeutic agent of choice in subgroups of T2DM patients, who have proteinuria, diabetic nephropathy, or heart failure [133, 135]. In order to minimize the hazard of cardiovascular events in T2DM patients, bedtime daily dose of antihypertensive medicine tends to be significant [135].

The implementation of a polypill, which offers a fixed drug mixture for AVD protection, has recently been addressed. Statins, ACE antagonists, aspirin, and beta-blockers are applicants for such a pill. It is not acceptable to add beta-blockers to treat patients with metabolic diseases who haven't had AVD, especially in the younger age. Therefore, there appears to be no logical justification for a polypill at the moment, given the heterogeneity and complex pathophysiology of metabolic diseases [20]. The first line of pharmacological therapy is metformin or GLP-1RAs or SGLT-2 inhibitors, statins, GLP-1RA liraglutide, and RAAIs for glucose sensitivity, dyslipidemia, reaching body weight loss, and hypertension, respectively, to minimize the circumference of waist, based on existing evidence on the complications and advantages of the specific agents.

3.5 Therapeutics for Other Rare Metabolic Diseases

The therapeutic methods for metabolic diseases include pharmaceutical molecules, enzyme replacement, antibodies, RNA therapies, and cell and gene therapies. Pharmaceutical drugs or small molecules are common therapeutic approaches for any metabolic syndromes including the rare metabolic diseases. Pharmaceutical molecules are the ones that show the highest number of approvals from regulatory approval [136]. Results from clinical studies showed beneficial effects of lumacaftor and ivacaftor for patients with cystic fibrosis [137]. Lysosomal disorders such as Gaucher disease were successfully decreased by eliglustat like molecules [138]. Antibodies that can act as modulators were also used in the treatments of metabolic diseases. Such examples are monoclonal antibodies like eculizumab for the treatment of hemolytic uremic syndrome and canakinumab for rheumatoid disease [139, 140]. Bispecific antibodies are other line of therapeutics for hemophilic disorders, for example, emicizumab [141]. Protein or enzyme replacement therapies are other strategies in which enzymes are injected as in their original or recombinant protein form. However, very common strategy is to use recombinant enzymes, which are homologues of human types [142]. Though the levels of enzymes required are high, such as 20–40 mg/kg, enzyme replacement therapies are very safe. Oligonucleotide or RNA therapies are recent development such as enzyme replacement therapies. For example, an antisense oligonucleotide was approved by FDA for Huntington disease [143].

4 Gene Therapy

A novel area of treatment and opportunity for people affected by genetic conditions is opened up by the prospect of gene transfer therapy into the somatic cells. Clearly, before effective and complete treatments are made available for several of these illnesses, many technological challenges should be met, and technology must be continuously developed if various conditions are about to be treated. Many gene therapies, like other medical remedies, will relieve some, though not all, effects of a particular condition, which can increase the life quality of patients. Partial enzyme activity replacement in a particular tissue or a group of infected tissues or the cells can delay toxin accumulation in lysosomes, but may not completely inhibit. The development of a long-lasting condition can be inhibited by involvement and can provide very small in the direction of correcting a preexisting degeneration [144].

The lack of certain lysosomal enzymes that destroy specific chemicals, the aggregation of which may induce organ dysfunction, causes many metabolic disorders; some involve mainly visceral organs and other the central nervous system (CNS). Lysosomal defects that induce CNS dysfunction, based on the core deficiency, might need gene transfer into visceral cells, like hepatocytes or hematopoietic cells, or into CNS.

Gene and cell therapies using recombinant viruses were proved efficient in treating hemophilia A and B [145] and spinal muscular disease [146]. However, gene and cell therapies are still at the early stages of research when compared to the other therapies.

5 Natural or Phytomedicines

In metabolic disease treatment, natural-based nanoformulations have demonstrated positive results and should thus be seen as potential candidates instead of or in combination with prescription medications. A new therapeutic solution is nano-sized drug carriers, composed of phytochemicals from traditional drugs blessed with proven pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetic features. Utilizing herbal extracts with various types of nano-drug delivery technologies have been proposed, such as nanobiocomposites, solid lipid nanoparticles, nanoemulsions, and green-synthesized gold, zinc oxide, and silver nanoparticles. The nano-vehicles give specific characteristics, comprising increased drug

bioavailability and solubility, reduced systemic detrimental side effects, prolonged circulating time, and preferential aggregation in the target organ. Various phytochemicals, including berberine (BBR), curcumin, emodin, oleoresin capsicum, gymnemic acid, naringenin, resveratrol, scutellarin, quercetin (QUE), silybin, baicalin, stevioside, and others, have been used in various therapy methods and metabolic disease alleviation. These phytochemicals were inserted into different systems of nanoformulation, including poly (alkyl cyanoacrylate), polyanhydride and polymeric polyesters, and natural polyesters. Solid lipid nanoparticles (SLNs), liposomes, nanostructured lipid carriers, micelles, green-synthesized nanoparticles (NPs), and other associated nanoformulations are also used in lipid-based drug delivery applications [147]. One of the easiest and environmentally safe approaches for green metal NP production is plant extract-mediated production of NPs [148]. Lycopene, polyphenols, omega-3 fatty acids, and phytoestrogens are some of the dietary supplements that help managing osteoporosis, which is a rare disease as mentioned earlier [35].

6 Other Treatments

Pleiotropic metabolic advantages are seen by the gut hormone GLP1, including increased insulin secretion [149–151] and reduced food intake [152–154]. With regulatory clearance, structurally improved GLP1 paralogues or analogues (like dulaglutide, semaglutide, and exenatide) have advanced to include a new alternative in T2DM treatment and obesity [105, 155], with no evident cardiovascular [82] or psychological [156] detrimental results. Around the same time, antagonists of SGLT2 were effectively progressed for T2DM treatment and appear to decrease body weight as well. SGLT2 inhibitors provide major increase in glycemic function by reducing glucose reabsorption in renal proximal tubules, which is followed by reduced weight loss and blood pressure [85, 157]. The pairing of SGLT2 inhibition and GLP1 agonism could hitherto tend to be an interesting combinatorial method for T2DM management [158, 159]. Many other new groups of peptide-small molecule conjugates and single-molecule multi-agonist peptides have been developed that display outstanding preclinical potency. Other groups have arisen of single-molecule multi-agonist peptides and peptide-small molecule conjugates that display outstanding preclinical potency.

7 Perspective

The occurrence of at least three out of five discrete risk factors is characterized as metabolic diseases: increased triglycerides, dyslipidemia, elevated visceral circumference, increased blood pressure, elevated fasting glucose levels, and reduced HDL-C. The development was confirmed as a significant threat for atherosclerosis and diabetes mellitus emergence. In certain aspects of healthcare, metabolic diseases have emerged as a crucial problem. Its occurrence in children and young adults has also been growing substantially. Owing to a shortage of broad randomized clinical trials, recommendations for management were also discussed. The key approaches for remedy of insulin intolerance and atherogenic dyslipidemia existing in persons with the metabolic diseases are lifestyle approaches aimed at reducing calorie consumption, increasing the levels of physical activity, leading a low stress life, and improving diet composition.

Pharmacological treatments should be initiated whenever lifestyle modifications are not successful or cannot be adopted. The sequence of the treatment priorities must be: (1) repair of lipid defects, (2) arterial hypertension, and (3) glucose intolerance in which a wide variety of the pharmaceutical alternatives are open to clinicians. Drugs with pleiotropic consequences should be attempted first in order to maximize the quantity of individual goals and decrease the cost and side effect burdens of the treatment. There’s really no easy, secure, and reliable pharmacological solution to central obesity yet [4].

Some of the rare diseases have been researched, and drugs are approved by the regulatory authorities in the name of orphan drugs. However, the challenges for developing rare disease drugs are funding, conducting the basic and clinical studies, knowledge base such as training to the clinicians and scientists, and discovery of new drugs. Besides, disease-specific challenges still remain as a critical barrier for new drug development for the rare diseases [160].

Efficient and stable medication formulations with pleiotropic consequences, capable of facilitating concurrent progress for at least three distinct components, the metformin-fibrate-angiotensin receptor blocker, are anticipated to be developed in near future. The metformin-fibrate-angiotensin receptor blocker paradigm used in medical practice would be progressed by advent of novel molecules that enhance sensitivity of insulin, suppress appetite, preserve the mass of beta-cells in pancreas, and facilitate better absorption of free fatty acids. For two discrete research studies, there are promises and related obstacles. First is enhancing accessibility to already available molecules. Secondly, drug finding could limit the increased lipolysis correlated with the visceral obesity and thus reduce flow of free fatty acids to the muscles and liver [4]. Gene therapies are still expected to yield the therapeutics measures, and research activities are undergoing.

To test botanicals for the categorical therapy of metabolic diseases, experiments must be segmented in order to quantify variations in disease severity, age, ethnicity, and genetic diversity in sample populations [161]. In order to allow the standardization of therapeutic formulations, the classification of the active constituents within botanicals, coupled with a perception of their protection, effectiveness, and mechanisms involved, is required. It would be necessary to perform well-designed, controlled clinical studies, once standardized arrangements are produced to show the true efficacy of these formulations for prevention and treatment.

Competing Financial Interests The author declares no competing financial interests.

References

1. Alberti K, Eckel RH, Grundy SM, Zimmet PZ, Cleeman JI, Donato KA, Fruchart J-C, James WPT, Loria CM, Smith SC Jr (2009) Harmonizing the metabolic syndrome: a joint interim statement of the international diabetes federation task force on epidemiology and prevention; national heart, lung, and blood institute; American heart association; world heart federation; international atherosclerosis society; and international association for the study of obesity. Circulation 120(16):1640–1645
2. Alberti KG, Zimmet P, Shaw J (2005) The metabolic syndrome—a new worldwide definition. Lancet 366(9491):1059–1062
3. Kassi E, Pervanidou P, Kaltsas G, Chrousos G (2011) Metabolic syndrome: definitions and controversies. BMC Med 9(1):48
4. Rask Larsen J, Dima L, Correll CU, Manu P (2018) The pharmacological management of metabolic syndrome. Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol 11(4): 397–410
5. Putzeist M, Mantel-Teeuwisse AK, Gispen-de Wied CC, Hoes AW, Leufkens HG, de Vrueh RL (2013) Drug development for exceptionally rare metabolic diseases: challenging but not impossible. Orphanet J Rare Dis 8(1):179
6. Burrage E, Marshall KL, Santanam N, Chantler PD (2018) Cerebrovascular dysfunction with stress and depression. Brain Circ 4(2):43
7. Kim J-Y, Yi E-S (2018) Analysis of the relationship between physical activity and metabolic syndrome risk factors in adults with intellectual disabilities. J Exerc Rehabil 14(4):592
8. van der Pal KC, Koopman ADM, Lakerveld J, van der Heijden AA, Elders PJ, Beulens JW, Rutters F (2018) The association between multiple sleep-related characteristics and the metabolic syndrome in the general population: the New Hoorn study. Sleep Med 52:51–57
9. Catharina AS, Modolo R, Ritter AMV, Sabbatini AR, Lopes HF, Moreno Junior H, Faria AP (2018) Metabolic syndrome-related features in controlled and resistant hypertensive subjects. Arq Bras Cardiol 110(6):514–521
10. Cozma A, Sitar-Taut A, Orăşan O, Leucuta D, Alexescu T, Stan A, Negrean V, Sampelean D, Pop D, Zdrenghea D (2018) Determining factors of arterial stiffness in subjects with metabolic syndrome. Metab Syndr Relat Disord 16(9):490–496
11. White LS, Van den Bogaerde J, Kamm M (2018) The gut microbiota: cause and cure of gut diseases. Med J Aust 209(7):312–317
12. De Boer MP, Meijer RI, Wijnstok NJ, Jonk AM, Houben AJ, Stehouwer CD, Smulders YM, Eringa EC, Serne EH (2012) Microvascular dysfunction: a potential mechanism in the pathogenesis of obesity-associated insulin resistance and hypertension. Microcirculation 19(1):5–18

13. Cătoi AF, Pârvu AE, Andreicuț AD, Mironiuc A, Crăciun A, Cătoi C, Pop ID (2018) Metabolically healthy versus unhealthy morbidly obese: chronic inflammation, nitro-oxidative stress, and insulin resistance. Nutrients 10(9):1199
14. He Y, Wu W, Wu S, Zheng H-M, Li P, Sheng H-F, Chen M-X, Chen Z-H, Ji G-Y, Mujagond P (2018) Linking gut microbiota, metabolic syndrome and economic status based on a population-level analysis. Microbiome 6(1):1–11
15. Marra F, Gastaldelli A, Baroni GS, Tell G, Tiribelli C (2008) Molecular basis and mechanisms of progression of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. Trends Mol Med 14(2):72–81
16. Zak A, Zeman M, Slaby A, Vecka M (2014) Xanthomas: clinical and pathophysiological relations. Biomed Pap 158(2):181
17. Chiarelli F, Mohn A (2017) Early diagnosis of metabolic syndrome in children. Lancet Child Adolesc Health 1(2):86–88
18. Klimova B, Kuca K, Maresova P (2018) Global view on Alzheimer's Disease and Diabetes Mellitus: threats, risks and treatment Alzheimer's Disease and Diabetes Mellitus. Curr Alzheimer Res 15(14): 1277–1282
19. Stone GW, Ellis SG, Cox DA, Hermiller J, O'Shaughnessy C, Mann JT, Turco M, Caputo R, Bergin P, Greenberg J (2004) A polymer-based, paclitaxel-eluting stent in patients with coronary artery disease. N Engl J Med 350(3):221–231
20. Byrne CD, Wild SH (2011) The metabolic syndrome. Wiley, Hoboken
21. Lee KW, Lip GYH (2003) Effects of lifestyle on hemostasis, fibrinolysis, and platelet reactivity: a systematic review. Arch Intern Med 163(19):2368–2392
22. Slentz CA, Duscha BD, Johnson JL, Ketchum K, Aiken LB, Samsa GP, Houmard JA, Bales CW, Kraus WE (2004) Effects of the amount of exercise on body weight, body composition, and measures of central obesity: STRRIDE—a randomized controlled study. Arch Intern Med 164(1):31–39
23. Pan X-R, Li G-w, Hu Y-H, Wang J-X, Yang W-Y, An Z-X, Hu Z-X, Xiao J-Z, Cao H-B, Liu P-A (1997) Effects of diet and exercise in preventing NIDDM in people with impaired glucose tolerance: the Da Qing IGT and Diabetes Study. Diabetes Care 20(4): 537–544
24. Whelton SP, Chin A, Xin X, He J (2002) Effect of aerobic exercise on blood pressure: a meta-analysis of randomized, controlled trials. Ann Intern Med 136(7):493–503
25. Bonow RO, Eckel RH (2003) Diet, obesity, and cardiovascular risk. N Engl J Med 348(21): 2057–2133
26. Garg A (1998) High-monounsaturated-fat diets for patients with diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis. Am J Clin Nutr 67(3):577S–582S
27. Staessen J, Bulpitt C, Clement D, De Leeuw P, Fagard R, Fletcher A, Forette F, Leonetti G, Nissinen A, O'Malley K (1989) Relation between mortality and treated blood pressure in elderly patients with hypertension: report of the European Working Party on High Blood Pressure in the Elderly. Br Med J 298(6687):1552–1556
28. Su X-z, Heatwole VM, Wertheimer SP, Guinet F, Herrfeldt JA, Peterson DS, Ravetch JA, Wellems TE (1995) The large diverse gene family var encodes proteins involved in cytoadherence and antigenic variation of Plasmodium falciparum-infected erythrocytes. Cell 82(1):89–100
29. Sacks FM, Svetkey LP, Vollmer WM, Appel LJ, Bray GA, Harsha D, Obarzanek E, Conlin PR, Miller ER, Simons-Morton DG (2001) Effects on blood pressure of reduced dietary sodium and the dietary approaches to stop hypertension (DASH) diet. N Engl J Med 344(1):3–10
30. Whelton PK, Appel LJ, Espeland MA, Applegate WB, Ettinger WH Jr, Kostis JB, Kumanyika S, Lacy CR, Johnson KC, Folmar S (1998) Sodium reduction and weight loss in the treatment of hypertension in older persons: a randomized controlled trial of nonpharmacologic interventions in the elderly (TONE). JAMA 279(11):839–846
31. Appel LJ, Miller ER, Seidler AJ, Whelton PK (1993) Does supplementation of diet with 'fish oil' reduce blood pressure?: a meta-analysis of controlled clinical trials. Arch Intern Med 153(12):1429–1438
32. Abbasi J (2018) Interest in the ketogenic diet grows for weight loss and type 2 diabetes. JAMA 319(3): 215–217
33. Atkinson RLDW, Foreyt JP, Goodwin NJ, Hill JO, Hirsch J et al (1993) Very low-calorie diets. National Task Force on the prevention and treatment of obesity. JAMA 270:967–974
34. Caprio M, Infante M, Moriconi E, Armani A, Fabbri A, Mantovani G, Mariani S, Lubrano C, Poggiogalle E, Migliaccio S (2019) Very-low-calorie ketogenic diet (VLCKD) in the management of metabolic diseases: systematic review and consensus statement from the Italian Society of Endocrinology (SIE). J Endocrinol Investig 42(11):1365–1386
35. Tabatabaei-Malazy O, Larijani B, Abdollahi M (2015) Targeting metabolic disorders by natural products. J Diabetes Metab Disord 14(1):57
36. Bell RA, Mayer-Davis EJ, Martin MA, D'Agostino RB, Haffner SM (2000) Associations between alcohol consumption and insulin sensitivity and cardiovascular disease risk factors: the Insulin Resistance and Atherosclerosis Study. Diabetes Care 23(11): 1630–1636
37. Davies MJ, Baer DJ, Judd JT, Brown ED, Campbell WS, Taylor PR (2002) Effects of moderate alcohol intake on fasting insulin and glucose concentrations and insulin sensitivity in postmenopausal women: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 287(19): 2559–2562
38. Goude D, Fagerberg B, Hulthe J (2002) Alcohol consumption, the metabolic syndrome and insulin

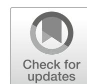
resistance in 58-year-old clinically healthy men (AIR study). Clin Sci 102(3):345–352
39. Kiechl S, Willeit J, Poewe W, Egger G, Oberhollenzer F, Muggeo M, Bonora E (1996) Insulin sensitivity and regular alcohol consumption: large, prospective, cross sectional population study (Bruneck study). BMJ 313(7064):1040–1044
40. Hendriks HF, Veenstra JAN, Van Tol A, Groener JE, Schaafsma G (1998) Moderate doses of alcoholic beverages with dinner and postprandial high density lipoprotein composition. Alcohol Alcohol 33(4): 403–410
41. van Tol A, van der Gaag MS, Scheek LM, van Gent T, Hendriks HFJ (1998) Changes in postprandial lipoproteins of low and high density caused by moderate alcohol consumption with dinner. Atherosclerosis 141:S101–S103
42. Kato I, Kiyohara Y, Kubo M, Tanizaki Y, Arima H, Iwamoto H, Shinohara N, Nakayama K, Fujishima M (2003) Insulin-mediated effects of alcohol intake on serum lipid levels in a general population: the Hisayama Study. J Clin Epidemiol 56(2):196–204
43. Mukamal KJ (2003) Alcohol use and prognosis in patients with coronary heart disease. Prev Cardiol 6(2):93–98
44. Gastaldelli A, Folli F, Maffei S (2010) Impact of tobacco smoking on lipid metabolism, body weight and cardiometabolic risk. Curr Pharm Des 16(23): 2526–2530
45. Voulgari C, Katsilambros N, Tentolouris N (2011) Smoking cessation predicts amelioration of microalbuminuria in newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes mellitus: a 1-year prospective study. Metabolism 60(10):1456–1464
46. Athyros VG, Katsiki N, Doumas M, Karagiannis A, Mikhailidis DP (2013) Effect of tobacco smoking and smoking cessation on plasma lipoproteins and associated major cardiovascular risk factors: a narrative review. Curr Med Res Opin 29(10):1263–1274
47. Lycett D, Munafò M, Johnstone E, Murphy M, Aveyard P (2011) Associations between weight change over 8 years and baseline body mass index in a cohort of continuing and quitting smokers. Addiction 106(1):188–196
48. Levine MD, Bush T, Magnusson B, Cheng Y, Chen X (2013) Smoking-related weight concerns and obesity: differences among normal weight, overweight, and obese smokers using a telephone tobacco quitline. Nicotine Tob Res 15(6):1136–1140
49. Knowler WC, Fowler SE et al (2002) Reduction in the incidence of type 2 diabetes with lifestyle intervention or metformin. N Engl J Med 346(6):393–403
50. Orchard TJ, Temprosa M, Goldberg R, Haffner S, Ratner R, Marcovina S, Fowler S (2005) The effect of metformin and intensive lifestyle intervention on the metabolic syndrome: the Diabetes Prevention Program randomized trial. Ann Intern Med 142(8): 611–619
51. Case CC, Jones PH, Nelson K, O'Brian Smith E, Ballantyne CM (2002) Impact of weight loss on the metabolic syndrome. Diabetes Obes Metab 4(6): 407–414
52. Phelan S, Wadden TA, Berkowitz RI, Sarwer DB, Womble LG, Cato RK, Rothman R (2007) Impact of weight loss on the metabolic syndrome. Int J Obes 31(9):1442–1448
53. Villareal DT, Miller Iii BV, Banks M, Fontana L, Sinacore DR, Klein S (2006) Effect of lifestyle intervention on metabolic coronary heart disease risk factors in obese older adults. Am J Clin Nutr 84(6): 1317–1323
54. Wadden TA, Berkowitz RI, Womble LG, Sarwer DB, Phelan S, Cato RK, Hesson LA, Osei SY, Kaplan R, Stunkard AJ (2005) Randomized trial of lifestyle modification and pharmacotherapy for obesity. N Engl J Med 353(20):2111–2120
55. Heymsfield SB, Van Mierlo CAJ, Van der Knaap HCM, Heo M, Frier HI (2003) Weight management using a meal replacement strategy: meta and pooling analysis from six studies. Int J Obes 27(5):537–549
56. Jeffery RW, Wing RR, Sherwood NE, Tate DF (2003) Physical activity and weight loss: does prescribing higher physical activity goals improve outcome? Am J Clin Nutr 78(4):684–689
57. Perri MG, Sears SF, Clark JE (1993) Strategies for improving maintenance of weight loss: toward a continuous care model of obesity management. Diabetes Care 16(1):200–209
58. Leibel RL, Rosenbaum M, Hirsch J (1995) Changes in energy expenditure resulting from altered body weight. N Engl J Med 332(10):621–628
59. Bray GA, Ryan DH (2007) Drug treatment of the overweight patient. Gastroenterology 132(6): 2239–2252
60. Dalle Grave R, Calugi S, Corica F, Di Domizio S, Marchesini G (2009) Psychological variables associated with weight loss in obese patients seeking treatment at medical centers. J Am Diet Assoc 109(12):2010–2016
61. Dalle Grave R, Calugi S, Molinari E, Petroni ML, Bondi M, Compare A, Marchesini G (2005) Weight loss expectations in obese patients and treatment attrition: an observational multicenter study. Obes Res 13(11):1961–1969
62. Dalle Grave R, Melchionda N, Calugi S, Centis E, Tufano A, Fatati G, Fusco MA, Marchesini G (2005) Continuous care in the treatment of obesity: an observational multicentre study. J Intern Med 258(3): 265–273
63. Brunner EJ, Hemingway H, Walker BR, Page M, Clarke P, Juneja M, Shipley MJ, Kumari M, Andrew R, Seckl JR (2002) Adrenocortical, autonomic, and inflammatory causes of the metabolic syndrome: nested case-control study. Circulation 106(21):2659–2665
64. Hemingway H, Shipley M, Brunner E, Britton A, Malik M, Marmot M (2005) Does autonomic

function link social position to coronary risk? The Whitehall II study. Circulation 111(23):3071–3077
65. Liao D, Evans G, Arnett D, Pankow J, Liese A, Davis CE, Salomma V, Heiss G (1998) Multiple metabolic syndrome is associated with increased arterial stiffness-The ARIC study. Circulation 97(8):138
66. Singh JP, Larson MG, O'Donnell CJ, Wilson PF, Tsuji H, Lloyd-Jones DM, Levy D (2000) Association of hyperglycemia with reduced heart rate variability (The Framingham Heart Study). Am J Cardiol 86(3):309–312
67. Steptoe A, Brunner E, Marmot M (2004) Stress-induced inflammatory responses and risk of the metabolic syndrome: a longitudinal analysis. North Amer Assoc Study Obesity, Cancun, p 76
68. Björntorp P (1991) Visceral fat accumulation: the missing link between psychosocial factors and cardiovascular disease? J Intern Med 230(3):195–201
69. Phillips DIW, Barker DJP, Fall CHD, Seckl JR, Whorwood CB, Wood PJ, Walker BR (1998) Elevated plasma cortisol concentrations: a link between low birth weight and the insulin resistance syndrome? J Clin Endocrinol Metabol 83(3):757–760
70. Marmot MG, Bosma H, Hemingway H, Brunner E, Stansfeld S (1997) Contribution of job control and other risk factors to social variations in coronary heart disease incidence. Lancet 350(9073):235–239
71. Rosengren A, Hawken S, Ôunpuu S, Sliwa K, Zubaid M, Almahmeed WA, Blackett KN, Sitthi-amorn C, Sato H, Yusuf S (2004) Association of psychosocial risk factors with risk of acute myocardial infarction in 11 119 cases and 13 648 controls from 52 countries (the INTERHEART study): case-control study. Lancet 364(9438): 953–962
72. Brunner E, Marmot M (2006) Social organization, stress, and health. Soc Determ Health 2:17–43
73. Vrijkotte TGM, Van Doornen LJP, De Geus EJC (1999) Work stress and metabolic and hemostatic risk factors. Psychosom Med 61(6):796–805
74. Chrousos GP, Gold PW (1998) A healthy body in a healthy mind—and vice versa—the damaging power of "uncontrollable" stress. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol 83(6):1842–1845
75. Björntorp P (1993) Visceral obesity: a "civilization syndrome". Obes Res 1(3):206–222
76. Grundy SM, Cleeman JI, Daniels SR, Donato KA, Eckel RH, Franklin BA, Gordon DJ, Krauss RM, Savage PJ, Smith SC Jr (2005) Diagnosis and management of the metabolic syndrome: an American Heart Association/National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute scientific statement. Circulation 112(17): 2735–2752
77. Sun K, Liu J, Ning G (2012) Active smoking and risk of metabolic syndrome: a meta-analysis of prospective studies. PLoS One 7(10):e47791
78. Batsis JA, Romero-Corral A, Collazo-Clavell ML, Sarr MG, Somers VK, Lopez-Jimenez F (2008) Effect of bariatric surgery on the metabolic syndrome: a population-based, long-term controlled study. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 897–906
79. Rogozea L, Diaconescu DE, Dinu EA, Badea O, Popa D, Andreescu O, LeaŞU FG (2014) Biomedical research ethics - opportunities and ethical challenges. Romanian J Morphol Embryol 55(2):719–722
80. Janke J, Schupp M, Engeli S, Gorzelniak K, Boschmann M, Sauma L, Nystrom FH, Jordan J, Luft FC, Sharma AM (2006) Angiotensin type 1 receptor antagonists induce human in-vitro adipogenesis through peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ activation. J Hypertens 24(9): 1809–1816
81. Marso SP, Bain SC, Consoli A, Eliaschewitz FG, Jódar E, Leiter LA, Lingvay I, Rosenstock J, Seufert J, Warren ML (2016) Semaglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med 375:1834–1844
82. Marso SP, Daniels GH, Brown-Frandsen K, Kristensen P, Mann JFE, Nauck MA, Nissen SE, Pocock S, Poulter NR, Ravn LS (2016) Liraglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med 375(4):311–322
83. Neal B, Perkovic V, Mahaffey KW, De Zeeuw D, Fulcher G, Erondu N, Shaw W, Law G, Desai M, Matthews DR (2017) Canagliflozin and cardiovascular and renal events in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med 377(7):644–657
84. Taylor FC, Huffman M, Ebrahim S (2013) Statin therapy for primary prevention of cardiovascular disease. JAMA 310(22):2451–2452
85. Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin JM, Fitchett D, Bluhmki E, Hantel S, Mattheus M, Devins T, Johansen OE, Woerle HJ (2015) Empagliflozin, cardiovascular outcomes, and mortality in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med 373(22):2117–2128
86. Owen JG, Reisin E (2015) Anti-hypertensive drug treatment of patients with and the metabolic syndrome and obesity: a review of evidence, meta-analysis, post hoc and guidelines publications. Curr Hypertens Rep 17(6):46
87. Giner-Galvañ V, Esteban-Giner MJ, Pallares-Carratala V (2016) Overview of guidelines for the management of dyslipidemia: EU perspectives. Vasc Health Risk Manag 12:357
88. Barter PJ, Brandrup-Wognsen G, Palmer MK, Nicholls SJ (2010) Effect of statins on HDL-C: a complex process unrelated to changes in LDL-C: analysis of the VOYAGER Database. J Lipid Res 51(6):1546–1553
89. Sugizaki T, Watanabe M, Horai Y, Kaneko-Iwasaki-N, Arita E, Miyazaki T, Morimoto K, Honda A, Irie J, Itoh H (2014) The Niemann-Pick C1 like 1 (NPC1L1) inhibitor ezetimibe improves metabolic disease via decreased liver X receptor (LXR) activity in liver of obese male mice. Endocrinology 155(8): 2810–2819
90. Catapano AL, Graham I, De Backer G, Wiklund O, Chapman MJ, Drexel H, Hoes AW, Jennings CS,

Landmesser U, Pedersen TR (2016) 2016 ESC/EAS guidelines for the management of dyslipidaemias: the Task Force for the Management of Dyslipidaemias of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and European Atherosclerosis Society (EAS) developed with the special contribution of the European Association for Cardiovascular Prevention & Rehabilitation (EACPR). Atherosclerosis 253:281–344
91. Chang Y, Robidoux J (2017) Dyslipidemia management update. Curr Opin Pharmacol 33:47–55
92. Ooi CP, Loke SC (2014) Colesevelam for type 2 diabetes mellitus: an abridged Cochrane review. Diabet Med 31(1):2–14
93. Abifadel M, Varret M, Rabès J-P, Allard D, Ouguerram K, Devillers M, Cruaud C, Benjannet S, Wickham L, Erlich D (2003) Mutations in PCSK9 cause autosomal dominant hypercholesterolemia. Nat Genet 34(2):154–156
94. Schmidt AF, Pearce LS, Wilkins JT, Overington JP, Hingorani AD, Casas JP (2017) PCSK9 monoclonal antibodies for the primary and secondary prevention of cardiovascular disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD011748
95. Sabatine MS, Giugliano RP, Keech AC, Honarpour N, Wiviott SD, Murphy SA, Kuder JF, Wang H, Liu T, Wasserman SM (2017) Evolocumab and clinical outcomes in patients with cardiovascular disease. N Engl J Med 376(18):1713–1722
96. Lukasova M, Hanson J, Tunaru S, Offermanns S (2011) Nicotinic acid (niacin): new lipid-independent mechanisms of action and therapeutic potentials. Trends Pharmacol Sci 32(12):700–707
97. Staels B, Dallongeville J, Auwerx J, Schoonjans K, Leitersdorf E, Fruchart J-C (1998) Mechanism of action of fibrates on lipid and lipoprotein metabolism. Circulation 98(19):2088–2093. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.cir.98.19.2088
98. Kraja T, Straka R, Ordovas J, Borecki I, Arnett D (2010) Fenofibrate and metabolic syndrome. Endocrine 10(2):138–148
99. Keech ASR, Barter P et al (2005) Effects of long-term fenofibrate therapy on cardiovascular events in 9795 people with type 2 diabetes mellitus (the FIELD study): randomised controlled trial. Lancet 366(9500):1849–1861
100. Ip C-k, Jin D-m, Gao J-j, Meng Z, Meng J, Tan Z, Wang J-f, Geng D-f (2015) Effects of add-on lipid-modifying therapy on top of background statin treatment on major cardiovascular events: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Int J Cardiol 191:138–148
101. Keene D, Price C, Shun-Shin MJ, Francis DP (2014) Effect on cardiovascular risk of high density lipoprotein targeted drug treatments niacin, fibrates, and CETP inhibitors: meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials including 117 411 patients. BMJ 349:4379
102. Patel D (2015) Pharmacotherapy for the management of obesity. Metabolism 64(11):1376–1385
103. Wang ZJ, Zhou YJ, Galper BZ, Gao F, Yeh RW, Mauri L (2015) Association of body mass index with mortality and cardiovascular events for patients with coronary artery disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Heart 101(20):1631–1638
104. Nuffer WA, Trujillo JM (2015) Liraglutide: a new option for the treatment of obesity. Pharmacotherapy 35(10):926–934
105. Pi-Sunyer X, Astrup A, Fujioka K, Greenway F, Halpern A, Krempf M, Lau DCW, Le Roux CW, Violante Ortiz R, Jensen CB (2015) A randomized, controlled trial of 3.0 mg of liraglutide in weight management. N Engl J Med 373(1):11–22
106. Jakob T, Nordmann AJ, Schandelmaier S, Ferreira-González I, Briel M (2016) Fibrates for primary prevention of cardiovascular disease events. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD009753
107. Silverstone T (1992) Appetite suppressants. Drugs 43(6):820–836
108. Gardin JM, Schumacher D, Constantine G, Davis KD, Leung C, Reid CL (2000) Valvular abnormalities and cardiovascular status following exposure to dexfenfluramine or phentermine/fenfluramine. JAMA 283(13):1703–1709
109. Kernan WN, Viscoli CM, Brass LM, Broderick JP, Brott T, Feldmann E, Morgenstern LB, Wilterdink JL, Horwitz RI (2000) Phenylpropanolamine and the risk of hemorrhagic stroke. N Engl J Med 343(25):1826–1832
110. Finer N (2002) Sibutramine: its mode of action and efficacy. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord 26:29–33
111. McNulty SJ, Ur E, Williams G (2003) A randomized trial of sibutramine in the management of obese type 2 diabetic patients treated with metformin. Diabetes Care 26(1):125–131
112. Padwal R, Li SK, Lau DCW (2003) Long-term pharmacotherapy for overweight and obesity: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Int J Obes 27(12):1437–1446
113. Thearle M, Aronne LJ (2003) Obesity and pharmacologic therapy. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am 32(4):1005–1024
114. Black SC (2004) Cannabinoid receptor antagonists and obesity. Curr Opin Investig Drugs 5(4):389–394
115. Despres JP, Golay A, Sjöström L (2005) Effect of rimonabant on body weight and the metabolic syndrome in overweight patients. N Engl J Med 353:2121–2134
116. Scheen AJ, Finer N, Hollander P, Jensen MD, Van Gaal LF (2006) Efficacy and tolerability of rimonabant in overweight or obese patients with type 2 diabetes: a randomised controlled study. Lancet 368(9548):1660–1672
117. Van Gaal LF, Rissanen AM, Scheen AJ, Ziegler O, Rössner S (2005) Effects of the cannabinoid-1 receptor blocker rimonabant on weight reduction and cardiovascular risk factors in overweight patients: 1-year experience from the RIO-Europe study. Lancet 365(9468):1389–1397

118. Pi-Sunyer FX, Aronne LJ, Heshmati HM, Devin J, Rosenstock J (2006) Effect of rimonabant, a cannabinoid-1 receptor blocker, on weight and cardiometabolic risk factors in overweight or obese patients: RIO-North America: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 295(7):761–775
119. American Diabetes (2016) Approaches to glycemic treatment. Diabetes Care 39(1):52–59
120. Nissen SE, Wolski K (2007) Effect of rosiglitazone on the risk of myocardial infarction and death from cardiovascular causes. N Engl J Med 356(24): 2457–2471
121. Green JB, Bethel MA, Armstrong PW, Buse JB, Engel SS, Garg J, Josse R, Kaufman KD, Koglin J, Korn S (2015) Effect of sitagliptin on cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med 373(3): 232–242
122. Holman RR, Bethel MA, Mentz RJ, Thompson VP, Lokhnygina Y, Buse JB, Chan JC, Choi J, Gustavson SM, Iqbal N (2017) Effects of once-weekly exenatide on cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med 377(13):1228–1239
123. Perreault L, Færch K, Gregg EW (2017) Can cardiovascular epidemiology and clinical trials close the risk management gap between diabetes and prediabetes? Curr Diab Rep 17(9):77
124. Pfeffer MA, Claggett B, Diaz R, Dickstein K, Gerstein HC, Køber LV, Lawson FC, Ping L, Wei X, Lewis EF (2015) Lixisenatide in patients with type 2 diabetes and acute coronary syndrome. N Engl J Med 373(23):2247–2257
125. Scirica BM, Bhatt DL, Braunwald E, Steg PG, Davidson J, Hirshberg B, Ohman P, Frederich R, Wiviott SD, Hoffman EB (2013) Saxagliptin and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med 369(14):1317–1326
126. White WB, Cannon CP, Heller SR, Nissen SE, Bergenstal RM, Bakris GL, Perez AT, Fleck PR, Mehta CR, Kupfer S (2013) Alogliptin after acute coronary syndrome in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med 369:1327–1335
127. Wright JM, Musini VM, Gill R (2018) First-line drugs for hypertension. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD001841
128. Gress TW, Nieto FJ, Shahar E, Wofford MR, Brancati FL (2000) Hypertension and antihypertensive therapy as risk factors for type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med 342(13):905–912
129. Furberg CD, Wright JT, Davis BR, Cutler JA, Alderman M, Black H, Cushman W, Grimm R, Haywood LJ, Leenen F (2002) Major outcomes in high-risk hypertensive patients randomized to angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor or calcium channel blocker vs diuretic: the Antihypertensive and Lipid-Lowering Treatment to Prevent Heart Attack Trial (ALLHAT). J Am Med Assoc 288(23): 2981–2997
130. Fergus IV, Connell KL, Ferdinand KC (2015) A comparison of vasodilating and non-vasodilating beta-blockers and their effects on cardiometabolic risk. Curr Cardiol Rep 17(6):38
131. Kintscher U, Bramlage P, Paar WD, Thoenes M, Unger T (2007) Irbesartan for the treatment of hypertension in patients with the metabolic syndrome: a sub analysis of the treat to target post authorization survey. Prospective observational, two armed study in 14,200 patients. Cardiovasc Diabetol 6(1):12
132. Bangalore S, Fakheri R, Toklu B, Messerli FH (2016) Diabetes mellitus as a compelling indication for use of renin angiotensin system blockers: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. BMJ 352:438
133. Palmer SC, Mavridis D, Navarese E, Craig JC, Tonelli M, Salanti G, Wiebe N, Ruospo M, Wheeler DC, Strippoli GFM (2015) Comparative efficacy and safety of blood pressure-lowering agents in adults with diabetes and kidney disease: a network meta-analysis. Lancet 385(9982):2047–2056
134. Remonti LR, Dias S, Leitão CB, Kramer CK, Klassman LP, Welton NJ, Ades AE, Gross JL (2016) Classes of antihypertensive agents and mortality in hypertensive patients with type 2 diabetes—network meta-analysis of randomized trials. J Diabetes Complicat 30(6):1192–1200
135. Garber AJ, Abrahamson MJ, Barzilay JI, Blonde L, Bloomgarden ZT, Bush MA, Dagogo-Jack S, DeFronzo RA, Einhorn D, Fonseca VA (2017) Consensus statement by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology on the comprehensive type 2 diabetes management algorithm–2017 executive summary. Endocr Pract 23(2):207–238
136. Tambuyzer E, Vandendriessche B, Austin CP, Brooks PJ, Larsson K, Needleman KIM, Valentine J, Davies K, Groft SC, Preti R (2020) Therapies for rare diseases: therapeutic modalities, progress and challenges ahead. Nat Rev Drug Discov 19(2):93–111
137. Van Goor F, Hadida S, Grootenhuis PD, Burton B, Stack JH, Straley KS, Decker CJ, Miller M, McCartney J, Olson ER (2011) Correction of the F508del-CFTR protein processing defect in vitro by the investigational drug VX-809. Proc Natl Acad Sci 108(46):18843–18848
138. Platt FM (2018) Emptying the stores: lysosomal diseases and therapeutic strategies. Nat Rev Drug Discov 17(2):133
139. Fleischmann RM, Schechtman J, Bennett R, Handel ML, Burmester GR, Tesser J, Modafferi D, Poulakos J, Sun G (2003) Anakinra, a recombinant human interleukin-1 receptor antagonist (r-metHuIL-1ra), in patients with rheumatoid arthritis: a large, international, multicenter, placebo-controlled trial. Arthritis Rheum 48(4):927–934
140. De Benedetti F, Gattorno M, Anton J, Ben-Chetrit E, Frenkel J, Hoffman HM, Koné-Paut I, Lachmann HJ, Ozen S, Simon A (2018) Canakinumab for the

treatment of autoinflammatory recurrent fever syndromes. N Engl J Med 378(20):1908–1919
141. Mahlangu J, Oldenburg J, Paz-Priel I, Negrier C, Niggli M, Mancuso ME, Schmitt C, Jiménez-Yuste V, Kempton C, Dhalluin C (2018) Emicizumab prophylaxis in patients who have hemophilia A without inhibitors. N Engl J Med 379(9): 811–822
142. LiverTox (2016) Clinical and research information on drug-induced liver injury. National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases, Bethesda
143. van Roon-Mom WMC, Roos RAC, de Bot ST (2018) Dose-dependent lowering of mutant Huntingtin using antisense oligonucleotides in Huntington disease patients. Nucl Acid Ther 28(2):59–62
144. Kay MA, Woo SLC (1994) Gene therapy for metabolic diseases. ILAR J 36(3-4):47–53
145. Chapin JC, Monahan PE (2018) Gene therapy for hemophilia: progress to date. BioDrugs 32(1):9–25
146. Mendell JR, Al-Zaidy S, Shell R, Arnold WD, Rodino-Klapac LR, Prior TW, Lowes L, Alfano L, Berry K, Church K (2017) Single-dose gene-replacement therapy for spinal muscular atrophy. N Engl J Med 377(18):1713–1722
147. Taghipour YD, Hajialyani M, Naseri R, Hesari M, Mohammadi P, Stefanucci A, Mollica A, Farzaei MH, Abdollahi M (2019) Nanoformulations of natural products for management of metabolic syndrome. Int J Nanomedicine 14:5303
148. Khan ZUH, Khan A, Chen Y, Shah NS, Muhammad N, Khan AU, Tahir K, Khan FU, Murtaza B, Hassan SU (2017) Biomedical applications of green synthesized nobel metal nanoparticles. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 173: 150–164
149. Holst JJ, Ørskov C, Vagn Nielsen O, Schwartz TW (1987) Truncated glucagon-like peptide I, an insulin-releasing hormone from the distal gut. FEBS Lett 211(2):169–174
150. Kreymann B, Ghatei MA, Williams G, Bloom SR (1987) Glucagon-like peptide-1 7-36: a physiological incretin in man. Lancet 330(8571):1300–1304
151. Mojsov S, Weir GC, Habener JF (1987) Insulinotropin: glucagon-like peptide I (7-37) co-encoded in the glucagon gene is a potent stimulator of insulin release in the perfused rat pancreas. J Clin Invest 79(2):616–619
152. Flint A, Raben A, Astrup A, Holst JJ (1998) Glucagon-like peptide 1 promotes satiety and suppresses energy intake in humans. J Clin Invest 101(3):515–520
153. Tang-Christensen M, Larsen PJ, Goke R, Fink-Jensen A, Jessop DS, Moller M, Sheikh SP (1996) Central administration of GLP-1-(7-36) amide inhibits food and water intake in rats. Am J Physiol 271(4):848–856
154. Turton MD, O'Shea D, Gunn I, Beak SA, Edwards CMB, Meeran K, Choi SJ, Taylor GM, Heath MM, Lambert PD (1996) A role for glucagon-like peptide-1 in the central regulation of feeding. Nature 379(6560):69–72
155. Le Roux CW, Astrup A, Fujioka K, Greenway F, Lau DCW, Van Gaal L, Ortiz RV, Wilding JPH, Skjøth TV, Manning LS (2017) 3 years of liraglutide versus placebo for type 2 diabetes risk reduction and weight management in individuals with prediabetes: a randomised, double-blind trial. Lancet 389(10077): 1399–1409
156. O'Neil PM, Aroda VR, Astrup A, Kushner R, Lau DCW, Wadden TA, Brett J, Cancino AP, Wilding JPH (2017) Neuropsychiatric safety with liraglutide 3.0 mg for weight management: results from randomized controlled phase 2 and 3a trials. Diabetes Obes Metab 19(11):1529–1536
157. Mazidi M, Rezaie P, Gao HK, Kengne AP (2017) Effect of sodium-glucose cotransport-2 inhibitors on blood pressure in people with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis of 43 randomized control trials with 22,528 patients. J Am Heart Assoc 6(6):e004007
158. Frías JP, Guja C, Hardy E, Ahmed A, Dong F, Öhman P, Jabbour SA (2016) Exenatide once weekly plus dapagliflozin once daily versus exenatide or dapagliflozin alone in patients with type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled with metformin monotherapy (DURATION-8): a 28 week, multicentre, double-blind, phase 3, randomised controlled trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 4(12):1004–1016
159. Ludvik B, Frías JP, Tinahones FJ, Wainstein J, Jiang H, Robertson KE, García-Pérez L-E, Woodward DB, Milicevic Z (2018) Dulaglutide as add-on therapy to SGLT2 inhibitors in patients with inadequately controlled type 2 diabetes (AWARD-10): a 24-week, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 6(5): 370–381
160. Wästfelt M, Fadeel B, Henter JI (2006) A journey of hope: lessons learned from studies on rare diseases and orphan drugs. J Intern Med 260(1):1–10
161. Graf BL, Raskin I, Cefalu WT, Ribnicky DM (2010) Plant-derived therapeutics for the treatment of metabolic syndrome. Curr Opin Investig Drugs 11(10): 1107



Gene Editing and Human iPSCs in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases

Sebastiano Giallongo, Oriana Lo Re, Igor Resnick, Marco Raffaele, and Manlio Vinciguerra

S. Giallongo · M. Raffaele
Epigenetics, Metabolism and Aging Unit, Center for Translational Medicine, International Clinical Research Center, St'Anne University Hospital, Brno, Czech Republic

O. Lo Re
Epigenetics, Metabolism and Aging Unit, Center for Translational Medicine, International Clinical Research Center, St'Anne University Hospital, Brno, Czech Republic

Department of Stem Cell Biology and Transplantology, Research Institute of the Medical University – Varna, Varna, Bulgaria

I. Resnick
Department of Stem Cell Biology and Transplantology, Research Institute of the Medical University – Varna, Varna, Bulgaria

Department of Hematology, Bone Marrow Transplantation and Cell Therapy of St. Marina University Hospital, Varna, Bulgaria

M. Vinciguerra (✉)
Epigenetics, Metabolism and Aging Unit, Center for Translational Medicine, International Clinical Research Center, St'Anne University Hospital, Brno, Czech Republic

Department of Stem Cell Biology and Transplantology, Research Institute of the Medical University – Varna, Varna, Bulgaria

Liverpool Centre for Cardiovascular Science (LCCS), Liverpool John Moores University (LJMU), Liverpool, United Kingdom
e-mail: manlio.vinciguerra@fnusa.cz; manlio.vinciguerra@mu-varna.bg

Abstract

The incidence and the burden of cardiovascular disease (CVD), coronary heart disease (CHD), type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), and the metabolic syndrome are greatly increasing in our societies. Together, they account for 31% of all deaths worldwide. This chapter focuses on the role of two revolutionary discoveries that are changing the future of medicine, induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) and CRISPR/Cas9 technology, in the study, and the cure of cardiovascular and metabolic diseases.

We summarize the state-of-the-art knowledge about the possibility of editing iPSC genome for therapeutic applications without hampering their pluripotency and differentiation, using CRISPR/Cas technology, in the field of cardiovascular and metabolic diseases.

Keywords

Cardiovascular · Gene editing · Metabolism · Epigenetics · Induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSC)

1 Background

The first two decades of the twenty-first century witnessed two revolutionary discoveries that were destined to change the future of medicine in the

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_18

years to come: induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) and CRISPR/Cas9 technology.

In 2006, Yamanaka and Takahashi showed that stem cells with properties similar to embryonic stem cells (ESCs) could be produced from mouse fibroblasts by concomitant introduction of four genes [1]. The two Japanese scientists named these cells induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs). In 2007, they successfully extended this approach to human fibroblasts, generating human iPSCs [2]. Few days later, James Thomson's lab also reported the generation of human iPSC using a different combination of transcription factors [3]. Shinya Yamanaka was awarded the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine in 2012. Obviously, iPSC technology was established on the basis of numerous past findings. Three major research field led to the generation of iPSC. The first field was reprogramming by nuclear transfer, shown by Sir John B. Gurdon [4], who eventually was also awarded the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine in 2012. The second field was the one culminating in the birth of Dolly, the first mammal generated by somatic cloning of epithelial cells, by Ian Wilmut and colleagues [5]. Finally, the third field was developed by Takashi Tada's group that in 2001 showed that ESCs also contain reprogramming factors [6].

Clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR) is a family of DNA sequences found in bacteria and archaea [7]. Actually, these sequences derive from DNA chunks of bacteriophages that had previously infected these unicellular organisms. Bacteria use CRISPR to detect and annihilate DNA from similar bacteriophages that might infect them. CRISPR sequences are thus fundamental players in the antiviral defense system of prokaryotes [7, 8].

In turn, the CRISPR/CRISPR-associated system (Cas) is a complex prokaryotic immune system that guarantees resistance to extraneous genetic elements and gives a form of unicellular acquired immunity [7, 9]. From this editing process, a wide variety of applications in the fields of basic biological research, biotechnology, and medical therapies was developed [10]. For this contribution to science, the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 2020 was awarded to Emmanuelle Charpentier and Jennifer Doudna.

Naturally, the possibility of editing iPSC genome (the previous approaches were time and labor consuming and low editing efficiency) for therapeutic applications without hampering their pluripotency and differentiation, using CRISPR/Cas technology, attracted the attention and the efforts of biomedical researchers worldwide. While the research fields of both iPSC and CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome editing quickly evolve, this chapter sets its high goal in critically summarizing the state-of-the-art knowledge on gene editing and human iPSCs, in particular for their applications in cardiovascular and metabolic diseases, which together account for 31% of all death worldwide (https://www.who.int/health-topics/cardiovascular-diseases/#tab=tab_1).

2 CRISPR/Cas9

In common with other CRISPR/Cas technologies, CRISPR/Cas9 is a technique that takes advantage of the prokaryote evolution that gave rise to an efficient system to fight viruses and plasmids, developing a so called RNA-mediated adaptive immunity [11, 12]. CRISPR sequences are present in ~50% of known bacteria and in ~90% of known archaea [13]. Most applications emerged after the discovery of the type II-A CRISPR/Cas9 system of *Streptococcus pyogenes*. In this bacteria, CRISPR/Cas9 protein possesses a dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease, which uses a tracrRNA:crRNA duplex [14] to direct DNA cleavage. The CRISPR locus presents CRISPR repeat-spacer arrays, which are transcribed into CRISPR RNA (crRNA) and trans-activating CRISPR RNA (tracrRNA), and a set of CRISPR-associated (cas) genes, located next to the CRISPR loci, which are an operon that encode Cas proteins with endonuclease activity.

Cas9 is a protein with two helicase domains HNH [15] and RuvC-like [16], essential to avoid the virus invasion [17].

The steps of the immune defense through a CRISPR/Cas9 mechanism are as follows:

acquisition and integration of the foreign DNA, RNA maturation, and interference.

In the first step, CRISPR recognizes the host DNA and integrates it into the spacer loci, thanks to a specific sequence (20 nucleotides) called PAM (protospacer) [18]. In the second step, the RNA polymerase transcribes the precursor crRNAs (pre-crRNA); subsequently, an endonuclease cleaves the RNA precursor in order to generate the active form of CRISPR RNA, and in the last step, a complex of proteins and crRNAs recognizes the foreign RNA or DNA and degrades it [18].

In nature, there exist three types of CRISPR Cas system with reference to the type of DNA/RNA degradation, the third and last stem of the process. The difference between those three is in the multiprotein involvement complex: in the type I, Cas3 helicase recognizes a complex of ribonucleoproteins with the crRNA, through sequence-driven degradation of the foreign DNA. In the type II, Cas9 forms a complex with tracrRNA-sgRNA (single-guide RNA), which is sufficient to generate the crRNA and to degrade the foreign DNA thanks to the RNA guide (gRNA) [19]. In the type III, the protein CRISPR requires Cas5, Cas6, and Cas7 also called repeat-associated mysterious proteins (RAMP) [20] containing RNA recognition motif (RRM) domain that do not recognize the PAM sequences: for this reason, type III is not very specific even though the process is followed by the degradation of the foreign RNA host [21].

Taking advantage of this extraordinary natural mechanism of CRISPR/Cas9, the field of gene editing in eukaryotic cells changed dramatically. In fact, several protocols were developed with the aim of creating therapeutic approaches, in particular exploiting the type II CRISPR/Cas9, in order to achieve site-specific DNA modifications into the DNA, in the sequence(s) of interest.

In this respect, the CRISPR-Cas9 type II from *Streptococcus pyogenes* was modified in order to generate the system tracrRNA:crRNA in one single RNA guide, containing 20 nucleotides that recognize the target DNA sequence at the 5′ end and at the 3′ end the sequence guide that recognizes Cas9. Upon generation of this system, the sgRNA can recruit Cas9 along the DNA target site [22]. In the last step of the process, when sgRNA guides Cas9 to the target sequence, it generates double-stranded break (DSB) that eventually is repaired by the endogenous DNA damage repair (DDR) mechanisms of nonhomologous end joining (NHEJ) pathway or the homology-directed repair (HDR) pathway [23]. In this, thus it is possible to introduce or modify or knock out the specific sequence or gene(s); for this reason, nowadays, CRISPR/Cas9 became one of the most useful techniques for molecular biologists. However, the CRISPR/Cas9 technique still needs to be ameliorated in terms of specificity, due to PAM sequences that are necessary for the genome-targeting scope, low efficiency, and limitations due to the off-target effects [23].

3 CRISPR Cas9 and Cardiometabolic Diseases: Lessons from Animal Models

Cardiovascular diseases (CVD) and metabolic diseases, such as diabetes, are still major health problems with increasing global prevalence (https://www.who.int/health-topics/cardiovascular-diseases/#tab=tab_1; https://www.who.int/health-topics/diabetes#tab=tab_1), and a remaining hurdle is to gain a deeper knowledge of the mechanisms behind the development of both common and less common causes of cardiometabolic mortality and morbidity. The use of animal models has contributed to provide new approaches to improve the diagnostic and the treatment of cardiometabolic diseases [24, 25]. Although hampered by several technical challenges, somatic genome editing may also be useful to study/treat a variety of cardiometabolic disorders in small laboratory animals such as mice. Here, we review few selected studies applying CRISPR/Cas9 technology to model and study CVD and diabetes in animal models, in order to illustrate the potential of this methodology. Patients affected by Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD), a severe type of muscular dystrophy, generally present with some degree of cardiomyopathy in adult age. In a mouse model of DMD,

El Refaey et al. [26] demonstrated that systemic administration of *Staphylococcus aureus* Cas9 and gRNA in an AAV vector led to restoration of the defective DMD reading frame and thus dystrophin expression. Ultimately, this led to improvements in cardiac myofiber architecture and papillary muscle contractility, with a decrease in fibrosis. With a similar approach, Amoasii et al. [27] demonstrated an augmented expression of dystrophin—both in the heart and in the skeletal muscle—in a DMD canine model after intravenous treatment with an AAV9 vector that contained Cas9 and gRNA. Another CVD subfield where CRISPR/Cas9 found its applications is nonischemic cardiomyopathy. For instance, phospholamban (PLN) regulates intracellular calcium concentrations through its inhibitory actions on sarcoplasmic reticulum calcium−adenosine triphosphatase (SERCA2). PLN mutations can cause dilated nonischemic cardiomyopathy [28]. Kaneko et al. [29] corrected this defect in the germline using genome editing via CRISPR/Cas9 to silence the PLN gene in a mouse model of severe heart failure. Compared with control mice displaying heart failure, PLN-deficient mice survived longer and had improved cardiovascular performance [29].

Regarding curing diabetes, Chung et al. combined CRISPR/Cas9 interference with a targeted nonviral gene delivery system to treat obesity-induced type 2 diabetes [30]. Fatty acid-binding protein 4 (FABP4) acts as a novel adipokine, and elevated FABP4 concentration is associated with obesity, diabetes, and atherosclerosis [31]. Targeted delivery of the CRISPR interference system against FABP4 to white adipocytes induced an effective silencing of FABP4, resulting in reduction of body weight, inflammation, and in restoration of nutrient homeostasis in obese mice [30]. Srifa et al. have shown that Cas9-AAV6-engineered human mesenchymal stromal cells were able to ameliorate skin wound healing in diabetic rodents [32]. In a complementary and mirroring fashion, CRISPR/Cas9 technology has been used successfully to generate novel mice models of atherosclerosis, autoimmunity, and diabetes, more faithfully recapitulating the respective human conditions [33–36]. The RNA-guided DNA recognition platform included in the CRISPR/Cas9 technology could thus provide a simple and safe approach to regress CVD and metabolic disease in animal models and, in the end, also has a significant potential to improve symptoms and clinical outcome in patients. A major breakthrough occurred in the field of hematological disorders, such as in transfusion-dependent β-thalassemia (TDT) and in sickle cell disease (SCD), two severe monogenic diseases, potentially life-threatening. Autologous transplantation of CD34+ hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells modified with CRISPR/Cas9 to address the respective genetic disorder(s) led to beneficial effects in two patients, in a pilot study privately funded by CRISPR Therapeutics and Vertex Pharmaceuticals [37]. However, in general, additional studies are warranted to evaluate long-term safety and efficacy of CRISPR/Cas9 in animals of bigger size, before larger publicly/privately funded clinical trials could take place in cardiac and/or diabetic patients.

4 Human iPSC and Their Potential for the Modeling of Cardiometabolic Diseases

iPSCs provide an unparalleled tool to study human pathophysiology down to the cellular level. They also have the great potential to be leveraged in the field of precision medicine and, in particular, for personalized drug screening. What are the applications of iPSC for the research and treatment of cardiometabolic diseases? In 2018, the American Heart Association (AHA, on behalf of the American Heart Association Council on Functional Genomics and Translational Biology; Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young; and Council on Cardiovascular and Stroke Nursing) issued an official and excellent scientific statement that comprehensively described the use of iPSC for cardiovascular disease modeling and for precision medicine, highlighting the scientific and clinical relevance of the field [38]. Undoubtedly, cardiovascular disease modeling represents the most realistic and productive use of iPSCs to date. iPSCs have

the same genetic landscape of the individual from which they originate; therefore, they are ideal to study illnesses with strong underlying genetic cause. Simultaneously, this genetic cause is “cleansed” by possible environmental/epigenetic influences that accumulate during the lifetime and can be studied separately, simply because iPSCs are reprogrammed into a basal pluripotent state. However, the use of iPSCs as regenerative therapy in cardiometabolic diseases is still in its infancy. The CVD disease types where iPSC has proven useful to uncover the relationship between genotype and phenotype include dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM) (target genes TTN, TNNT2, LMNA, PLN, DES), Duchenne muscular dystrophy (target gene DMD), Barth syndrome (target gene TAZ), hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) (target gene MYH7), arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia (target gene PKP2), left ventricular noncompaction (target genes TBX20, GATA4), long-QT syndrome type 1 and Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome (target gene KCNQ1), long-QT syndrome type 2 (target gene KCNH2), long-QT syndrome type 3 (target gene SCN5A), Timothy syndrome (target gene CACNA1C), catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia type 1 (target gene RYR2), catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia type 2 (target gene CASQ2), Brugada syndrome (target gene SCN5A), calcific aortic valve (target gene NOTCH1), Williams-Beuren syndrome (target gene ELN), familial pulmonary hypertension (target gene BMPR2), familial hypercholesterolemia (target genes LDLR, PCSK9), familial hypobetalipoproteinemia (target gene PCSK9), Tangier disease (target gene ABCA1), and dyslipidemia (target gene SORT1) (reviewed in [38]. Among these, we will discuss briefly two example studies revolving around the most common applications of iPSC to model CVD: cardiomyopathies and rhythm disorders. DCM is the most common type of cardiomyopathy; cases of familial DCM represent ~30–50% of the total number of cases of DCM in the general population. DCM patients have ventricular dysfunction and heart failure. One of the most commonly mutated gene products in familial DCM patients is TTN (titin), which encodes a component of the sarcomere [39]. Hinson et al. and Schick et al. generated iPSCs from DCM patients harboring either truncating or missense mutations in TTN: when differentiated into cardiomyocytes, these iPSCs displayed sarcomere insufficiency, impaired cell growth, abnormal cell signaling activation, and impairments in the excitation-contraction-coupling system [40, 41]. iPSC-based models are extensively studied also in order to model arrhythmic syndromes, in particular the long-QT syndromes (LQTS), characterized by delayed repolarization of the heart after contraction, which manifests as an increased QT interval on the electrocardiogram and can provoke ventricular arrhythmias and even death [42]. Mutations in 15+ genes have been linked to LQTS, typically affecting the function of ion channels (potassium, calcium, etc.) in cardiomyocytes [43]. There exist three types of congenital LQTS, where arrhythmia is triggered by distinct stimuli [44]. LQTS1, the most common, is triggered by exercise; LQTS2 is triggered by emotional stress and auditory stimuli; LQTS3 happens during sleep. Remarkably, both LQTS1 and LQTS2 have been modeled with iPSCs derived from cardiomyocytes in which mutant genes were inserted with zinc finger nuclease genome editing to target the adeno-associated virus integration site 1 (AAVS1) locus located on chromosome 19 [45]: in this fashion, it is not even necessary to recruit patients with a given mutation in order to study their LQTS.

The metabolic disease types where iPSC has proven useful to uncover the relationship between genotype and phenotype include type 1 and 2 diabetes (T1D and T2D). In diabetic patients, pancreatic insulin-producing cells do not function properly (type 1), or peripheral tissues do not respond properly to the insulin produced by the pancreas (type 2). As seen for CVD, in diabetes as well patient-specific, iPSCs could be promising, as cells derived from the “self” allow autologous transplantation. In a recent study, iPSCs were generated from patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes and compared them with iPSCs from a nondiabetic control [46]. To induce differentiation of human iPSCs into insulin-producing cells,

the gene expression of the master transcription factor pancreatic and duodenal homeobox 1 (PDX-1), necessary for pancreatic development including β-cell maturation, was induced using an ad hoc adenovirus. Insulin-producing cells deriving from type 1/type 2 diabetes-specific iPSCs began to express pancreatic islet-specific markers such as PDX-1 itself, the transcription factors MafA and Beta2/NeuroD, and insulin, as it was observed in iPSCs generated from a healthy individual [46]. All these iPSC cell lines, from type 1/type 2 diabetes or from healthy controls, displayed similar capacity in glucose-stimulated insulin secretion [46]. This study, and others (reviewed in [47]), paves the way for autologous transplantation employing patient-specific iPSCs in diabetic patients, which will be described in the next chapters. It is thought of foremost importance to fully characterize the gene expression patterns of patient-derived iPSCs before considering clinical applications. Whole-transcriptome RNA sequencing of human iPSC lines from three independent donors, at baseline and at subsequent stages of in vitro islet differentiation, identified key transcriptional regulators of the differentiation process, suggesting that the susceptibility to develop type 2 diabetes could be at least in part mediated via modulation of pancreatic islet development [48]. Accordingly, developmental plasticity and cell identity switch have been recently identified as a valid regenerative strategy for human pancreas aiming at the treatment of diabetes [49].

In some of the studies discussed above, iPSCs were engineered to model cardiometabolic diseases using genome editing technologies other than CRISPR/Cas9. A historical overview of the technological progress of the different tools used for gene editing of human iPSCs, before the recent advent CRISPR/Cas9, will be illustrated in the following section.

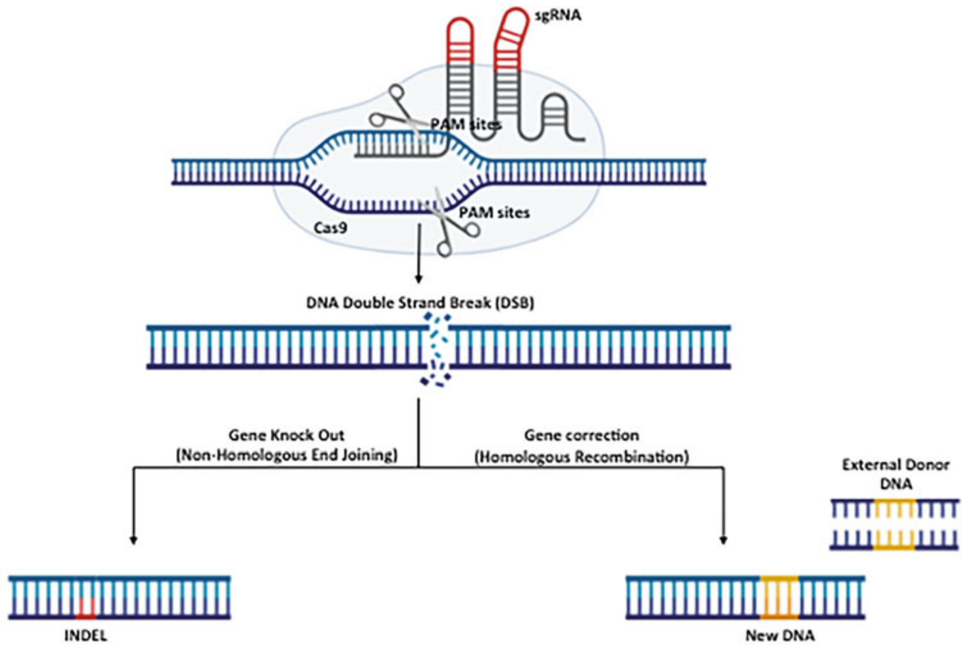
5 Gene Editing in Human iPSC

Before CRISPR/Cas9 development, the first generation of genome editing was based on "targeted gene replacement," a family of techniques aiming to create a localized sequence change triggering null mutations [50]. DNA recombination was achieved triggering DNA double-strand breaks (DDSB) through an endonuclease, eventually repaired by HDR using the designed DNA sequence as template [50]. In 1996, Jasin and colleagues first investigated gene targeting using the megaendonuclease I-SceI [51]. This protein is encoded by *SceI*, a member of the homing endonuclease family [52]. Gene targeting was achieved through the insertion of I-SceI 18-bp recognition sequence inside the target gene. The technique showed a low yield (3–5%) and high risk of unspecific cut discouraging further studies [53]. In 1999, Chandrasegaran and colleagues first introduced zinc-finger nucleases (ZFN) [54]. The most common Cys_2-Hys_2 ZFN is made of 30 amino acids, arranged in a highly conserved ββα configuration. Amino acids on the N-terminal domain, composing the α-helix, are responsible for the recognition of 3-bp in the DNA sequence, while the C-terminal domain is designed to host FokI Type IIS restriction endonuclease cleavage domain [54]. Interestingly, the linker domain of ZFN was designed to induce the dimerization of the protein after recognition of target sequence. As a result, two domains of FokI are placed in a high-density context, triggering its endonuclease activity [55]. Moreover, the introduction of multiple ZFN systems allowed recognition of 18-bp sequences with 25% of yield [52, 56]. ZFN technology found several applications in the hiPSC study. Soldner et al. introduced specific mutations in healthy hiPSC mimicking Parkinson's disease (PD) phenotype [57]. Moreover, ZFN were also employed to study SOD1 mutations in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) and to generate Alzheimer's disease (AD) neuron model differentiating hiPSC where specific mutations were introduced [58, 59]. Despite the step forward, ZFN DNA binding domain showed higher affinity for G-rich regions, causing the nonrecognition of several three-base nucleotides and off-target effects. Moreover, high level of expertise in protein engineering was required for their generation [52]. For this reason, in 2007, Botch and colleagues introduced a technology based on

phytopathogenic bacteria of the genus *Xanthomonas* [60]. These bacteria elicit their pathogenicity translocating effector proteins via type III secretion system. Among them, transcription activator-like effectors (TALE) are a family of proteins in charge for host cell reprogramming [60]. These proteins are composed by a nuclear localization, an acid transcriptional activating and a central domain provided of repeat variable di-residues (RVD) responsible for DNA recognition. Boch and colleagues provided the first hint for the development of artificial TALE reporting the RVD code for the recognition of specific DNA base pair. Moreover, they showed that each target base pair must be preceded by a thymine to bind TALE proteins [60]. In order to link their targeting features to the endonuclease activity needed for targeting gene replacement, TALE DNA binding region was coupled to FokI domain. As for ZFN, dimerization of TALE-nuclease (TALEN) following the recognition of vicinal sites triggered FokI activity [61]. Compared to ZFN, TALEN showed several improvements including a decreased cytotoxicity with a less expensive production [62]. For these reasons, TALEN were studied in hiPSC context for generation of several blood disease models [63–65]. Moreover, familiar AD neuron models carrying a prensilin-1 mutation were generated from hiPSC models using TALEN, providing a reliable cell model to further investigate this disease [66]. However, off-target effects and requirement of a thymine at the beginning of the target site restricted TALEN application, pushed for the development of techniques like CRISPR/Cas [67].

6 CRISPR Cas9 and Gene Editing in Human iPSC

In the last decade, CRISPR/Cas9 technology potential was applied to the genome editing of human iPSCs, allowing to make important progress in human disease investigation. Two main approaches have driven the research: the generation of isogenic controls by correcting the mutated gene in diseased iPSCs and the generation of mutated iPSCs lines by knocking out the normal wild type gene in healthy iPSCs (Fig. 1). Both alternatives have opened to the possibility to focus on the pathologies caused by a specific mutation rather than the individual's genetic background, with the great advantages to obtain model of rare diseases in which there are difficulties in obtaining patient biopsies. For example, Horii and colleagues have created a model of immunodeficiency, centromeric region instability and facial anomalies syndrome (ICF), a rare autosomal recessive disorder caused by mutations in DNA methyltransferase 3B (DNMT3B), using CRISPR-Cas9 and gRNA directed to DNMT3B by knocking out (KO) the mutated gene [68]. The KO cells exhibited hypomethylation of satellite two repeats compared to wild-type iPSCs, demonstrating the same effect on methylation patterns observed in ICF patients [68] (1). With a similar approach, Shinkuma's group created a model of dominant dystrophic epidermolysis bullosa (DDEB), an inherited skin disorder characterized by blisters and skin fragility [69, 70]. These researchers created a premature stop codon by NHEJ knocking out the mutated allele of the collagen alpha-1(VII) chain (COL7A1) gene [71], with high specificity for the mutated allele, leaving the normal allele untouched [69]. The genetic modification did not affect the differentiation capacity of the iPSCs into fibroblasts and keratinocytes as well as the COL7 patterns (Fig. 1). The introduction of CRISPR/Cas9 allowed to investigate diseases in which the causative mutation disrupts proper reprogramming of mutated fibroblasts to iPSCs, such as the mutations in Fanconi anemia (FA) genes, in ataxia-telangiectasia mutated (ATM) gene, and ALK2-encoding gene [72–74]. The constitutive activation of BMP type I receptor in patients with activin receptor-like kinase 2 (ALK-2) mutations induces heterotopic ossification [75]. Several studies reported attempts to produce iPSCs from mutated ALK-2 fibroblasts without success or eventually obtaining cells that lost their pluripotency completely [75]. Kim and co-workers corrected the mutation through HDR, using a single-strand oligodeoxynucleotide (ssODN) carrying



Application in iPSC	
Deleted sequence	Reference
DNMT3B	Horii et al., 2013
COL7A1	Shinkuma et al., 2016
CGG repeats in FMR1	Park et al., 2015

Application in iPSC	
Corrected sequence	Reference
ALK-2	Kim et al., 2016

Fig. 1 Schematic overview of CRISPR/Cas9-driven gene knockout (nonhomologous end joining, NHEJ) or gene correction (homologous recombination) and their respective applications in the iPSC field

two-point mutations: the correction of the mutated base and a silent mutation in the PAM sequence, in order to avoid gRNA-mediated cut of the donor DNA. They obtained iPSCs with a corrected ALK-2 gene and a restored mineralization process in the cells [76] (Fig. 1). Other studies used CRISPR-Cas9 to restore normal function in iPSCs generated from stromal cells of patients with rare diseases, like what made by Park and co-workers through the deletion of CGG repeats in fragile X mental retardation 1 (FMR1) gene to cure Fragile X syndrome [77] (Fig. 1). These findings support the tremendous promise to apply CRISPR-Cas9 and human iPSCs to regenerative medicine, through the correction of mutated iPSCs generated from the patients and their reintroduction after differentiation, without the risk of immune rejection. In the following two sections, we will discuss some of the main findings obtained using these new technologies to the fields of cardiovascular and metabolic diseases.

6.1 CRISPR Cas9 and Gene Editing in Human iPSC: Impact on Cardiovascular Research and Therapy

Human pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes (hPSC-CM) have emerged as a powerful system to model CVDs as they can recapitulate pathological phenotypes, provide insight into molecular mechanisms, and identify new targets for therapy. Genome editing tools, specially CRISPR/Cas9, allow to evaluate the

causal role of genetic variants in this physiologically relevant cell system. Together, these technologies have vastly advanced our ability to study CVDs creating various models of cardiomyopathy such as Barth syndrome, Fabry disease, and HCM, among others (Table 1). For instance, in 2014, Wang et al. have used patient-derived hiPSCs, CRISPR/Cas9, and tissue engineering in order to replicate the pathophysiology of Barth syndrome cardiomyopathy in tissue constructs. Moreover, using the same model, the authors demonstrated to rescue the phenotype by gene replacement and small molecule treatments [78]. In another study, Mosqueira et al. created 11 isogenic variant models of an HCM-causing mutation in the MYH gene in three independent hiPSC lines, by using CRISPR/Cas9, and subsequently differentiated them into cardiomyocytes for molecular and functional evaluation [79]. These cardiomyocytes reproduced the key cellular features of HCM, characterized by hypertrophy, excessive multi-nucleation, and sarcomeric disarray. Furthermore, they showed an impaired Ca^{2+} functionality with energy depletion, altered abnormalities handling, arrhythmias, and hypo-contractility. The pharmacological rescue of arrhythmias was shown to be achievable. Furthermore, novel long noncoding RNAs (lncRNAs) and possible gene modifiers were identified using these models, proposing new therapeutic approaches for HCM [79].

Genome editing has also contributed to enhance our knowledge about less common cardiomyopathies such as arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy (ARVC) and left ventricular non-compaction cardiomyopathy (LVNC) [81, 82]. CRISPR/Cas9 technology was used to recapitulate the ARVC phenotype characterized by mutations of sodium voltage-gated channel alpha subunit 5 (SCN5A) gene coding for the sodium channels Nav1.5 [81]. In this study, it was observed a reduced sodium current in the mutant model as well as decreased Nav1.5 and N-cadherin clusters at junctional sites, suggesting Nav1.5 as part of a functional complex that involve cell adhesion molecules. These findings provided an alternative explanation to the mechanisms by which SCN5A mutations cause ARVC. In 2016, Kodo et al. generated a LVNC phenotype in induced cardiomyocytes (iCMs) carrying a mutation in the cardiac T-box family transcription factor TBX20 gene. The study identified the LVNC-associated reduced proliferation as a consequence of an impaired TGF-β signaling activation [82].

The use of hiPSCs has brought various advantages also in the DMD therapy research. For example, CRISPR can be used to generate the patient mutations directly in control hiPSC lines, providing unprecedented versatility in facing the great number of DMD mutations. Moreover, iCM models have showed to recapitulate more faithfully the physiology of the human heart [93, 94].

Indeed, iCMs generated from DMD patient hiPSCs were able to reproduce the disease phenotype model quite well, showing significantly greater cell areas, longer resting sarcomere lengths, and a reduced capacity to respond to environmental stimuli compared to control iCMs [95]. One of the earliest studies that used CRISPR treatment on DMD iCMs was carried on by Young's group in 2016 [83]. In this study, multiple hiPSC cell lines were derived from the fibroblasts of patients with deletions in either DMD exons 46–51 or 46–47, or with DMD exon 50 duplication. Young's group, after nucleofecting plasmids containing SpCas9 and gRNAs against DMD introns 44 and 55 into DMD-hiPSCs, differentiated these cells into iCMs, showing a skipping of exons 45–55 and the consequent dystrophin rescue. It was estimated that skipping exons 45–55 could help to treat about 66% of all DMD patients affected by deletion mutations [96]. In 2017, also Kyrychenko's team investigated the effect of multiple exons deletion on DMD hiPSC models, deleting DMD exons 3–9, exons 6–9, or exons 7–11 using CRISPR/SpCas9 [84]. The authors found that deleting exons 3–9 rescued the dystrophin production and also improved Ca2+ kinetics and synchronicity in Ca2+ activity in iCMs. In this case, it was estimated that approximately 7% of DMD patients could benefit by exons 3–9 deletion [96].

Table 1 CRISPR/cas9 and genome editing in hiPSC models for cardiac and metabolic diseases

Disease	Gene mutation	Model phenotype	Genome editing method	Outcome	References
Barth syndrome	TAZ frameshift (c.517delG) and missense (c.328T>C)	Impaired cardiolipin biogenesis and mitochondrial function	cas9-mediated editing	TAZ deficiency in BTHS caused markedly increased ROS production	[78]
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM)	c.C9123T-MYH7 (p. R453C-β-myosin heavy chain (MHC)]	Sarcomeric disarray and hypo-contractility, but increased metabolic demands	CRISPR/ Cas9	Generation of HCM human model	[79]
Fabry disease	GLA gene knockout	Enlarged cellular size, increased expression of cardiac hypertrophy genes and Gb3 accumulation	CRISPR/ Cas9	Impaired cytoskeleton dynamics, extracellular vesicle secretion and autophagy process	[80]
Arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia/ cardiomyopathy (ARVD/C)	[p.Arg1898His (c.5693G > A)] *SCN5A* mutation	Prolonged QRS duration	CRISPR/ Cas9	Nav1.5-dependent impairment of sodium current and adhesion protein structure	[81]
Left ventricular non-compaction (LVNC)	Y317* (c. 951C>A) and T262M (c. 785C>T) mutation on the TBX20 gene	Impaired cardiomyocyte differentiation and proliferation	CRISPR/ Cas9, TALEN	Proliferation defect as a consequence of TGF-β signaling abnormal activation	[82]
Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD)	Exons 46–51 or 46–47 deletion, or with DMD exon 50 duplication	Muscle membrane fragility and leakage of creatine kinase	CRISPR/ Cas9	Deletion of exons 45–55 restores dystrophin protein function	[83]
	Exons 8–9 deletion	Muscle membrane fragility and leakage of creatine kinase	CRISPR/ Cas9	Deletion of DMD exons 3–9 restores cardiomyocyte functionality	[84]
Neonatal diabetes mellitus	STAT3 K392R missense mutation	Premature endocrine differentiation	CRISPR/ Cas9	STAT3 mutation activate NEUROG3. Its correction reversed disease phenotype	[85]
Pancreatic agenesis	4 bp duplication in exon 2 of GATA6	Generation of truncated GATA6 protein and decreased cell differentiation to definitive endoderm	CRISPR/ Cas9	GATA6 is essential in endoderm and pancreatic development	[86]
Permanent neonatal diabetes mellitus (PNDM)	Homozygous ATG > ATA mutation at codon 1 of the insulin gene	Lack of C-peptide-positive cells, no insulin production	CRISPR/ Cas9	Insulin gene correction led to rescue the insulin production	[87]
Alpha-1 antitrypsin AAT deficiency (AATD)	Point mutation in the A1AT gene (the Z allele; Glu342Lys)	Mutant polymeric A1AT within the endoplasmic reticulum of hepatocytes	ZFN, piggyBac	Gene correction results in normal monomeric A1AT secretion	[88]

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Disease	Gene mutation	Model phenotype	Genome editing method	Outcome	References
	α1-antitrypsin (AAT) Z mutation (rs28929474, G>A)	Mutant polymeric A1AT within the endoplasmic reticulum of hepatocytes	CRISPR/Cas9, TALEN	High specificity of CRISPR/Cas9 in gene correction compared to TALEN	[89]
Familial hypercholesterolemia (FH)	g.10891 C>T (c.97C->T, p. Q12X) mutation in LDLR gene	Absence of LDLR expression with elevated levels of LDL-c	CRISPR/Cas9	Insertion of LDLR expression cassette at the AAVS1 genomic site restore LDLR phenotype and function	[90]
Propionic acidemia (PA)	p. Gly407Argfs*14 mutation in PCCB gene	Toxic accumulation of propionyl-CoA and derived metabolites	CRISPR/Cas9	Generation of isogenic control (UAMi-006) from a PA iPSC line	[91]
Primary hyperoxaluria type 1 (PH1)	c.731 T > C mutation (p.I244T) in exon 7 of the AGXT gene	Lack of AGT activity leading insoluble calcium-oxalate crystals formation	CRISPR/Cas9	Integration of an AGXT minigene into the AAVS1 safe harbor locus corrected hepatocytes functionality	[92]

In addition to these valuable findings, genome editing and iPSC had also been used to further our understanding of inherited and drug-induced cardiotoxicity and the essential processes underlying the cardiomyopathy pathophysiology such as cardiomyocyte differentiation and cardiac remodeling [97–100].

6.2 CRISPR Cas9 and Gene Editing in Human iPSC: Impact on Metabolic Disease Research and Therapy

The use of the new genetic editing tools on human iPSCs represents a powerful option also to investigate molecular mechanisms underlying diabetes and liver metabolic disorders, especially for hereditary forms. In the last years, substantial progress in our understanding of hiPSC differentiation toward pancreatic β-cells has been made. Despite these advances, obtaining a pure β-like cell population is still a challenge, because the process of hiPSC differentiation results in a heterogeneous cell population contaminated with other endocrine cell types. Up to the present, hiPSC lines have been generated from several patient populations with diabetes, including those with T1D, T2D, cystic fibrosis-associated diabetes, and other monogenic diabetes such as maturity onset diabetes of the young (MODY), Wolfram syndrome, and mitochondrial diabetes [101].

At the base of most of these diabetes types, there are dominantly inherited mutations in genes involved in β-cell normal functions [102]. A major advantage of generating diabetic iPSC models is represented by the possibility to provide personalized therapeutics and autologous transplantation. In fact, like allogenic donor islet transplantations, current allogenic SC-β replacement therapies, based on edited hESC, would require to administrate immunosuppressor drugs life-long to the patient, unless the cells are incorporated and protected in a macroencapsulation vessel [103, 104]. Despite the use of CRISPR/cas9 editing on diabetes patient-derivated iPSCs is still in its infancy, some

important progresses have been made (Table 1). The main approach is to correct the diabetes causative point mutation in patient-derived iPSC.

The generation of the isogenic cell lines allows to keep the original genetic background of the diabetic patient and to investigate the role of the mutation faithfully. For example, genome editing of h-iPSC was used to assess the mechanism of signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) mutation in a rare case of neonatal diabetes, uncovering its involvement on premature differentiation of multipotent pancreatic progenitors [85]. A similar approach was applied to correct the GATA-binding factor 6 (GATA6) mutation in iPSC from a patient with pancreatic agenesis, revealing the essential function of ß-GATA6 in pancreatic development and cell function [86].

Moreover, Ma et al., after the identification in a patient with permanent neonatal diabetes mellitus (PNDM), a rare form of monogenic diabetes characterized by neonatal hyperinsulinism, of a homozygous ATG > ATA mutation at codon 1 of the insulin gene, have reverted the mutation to wild-type ATG using CRISPR/Cas9 and differentiated both mutant and corrected cells to pancreatic endocrine cells. The followed transplant of endocrine cells derived from the corrected patient stem cells in a diabetic mice models has shown to produce detectable levels of insulin that allowed for the sustenance of normoglycemia [87].

A number of metabolic conditions involve the liver and can cause chronic liver disease, leading to cirrhosis and liver cancer. Today, it is possible to generate human iPSC-derived hepatocyte-like cell (HLC) models, which recapitulate the hepatic functionality in vivo [105–108]. Among various inherited liver metabolic disorders, alpha-1 antitrypsin AAT deficiency (AATD) and familial hypercholesterolemia (FH) have been the most actively studied. AATD is a disease caused by mutations in the AAT gene that lead to develop severe liver diseases, including liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma [109]. The mutation promotes spontaneous Z alpha-1 antitrypsin (Z-AAT) polymerization and retention of the Z-AAT polymers in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) of hepatocytes, with consequent protein overload and liver damage [110]. In 2010, Rashid et al. for the first time generated human iPSC from a patient with AATD and then differentiated these cells into HLCs (AATD-iPS-HLCs) [111]. Gene editing experiments using ZFN or TALEN on these models were conducted to correct the point mutation (Glu342Lys) in the AAT locus that is responsible for Z-AAT production, achieving a different efficacy (4 and 25–33% for ZFN and TALEN, respectively [88, 111, 112]. The corrected AATD-iPS-HLCs showed a proper secretion of normal monomeric AAT in the culture supernatant [112]. Smith et al. later reported the gene correction of AATD-iPS cells using CRISPR/Cas9 system, obtaining a high specificity and efficiency that allowed them to conduct allele-specific gene targeting of point mutations in patient-specific iPSCs [89].

FH is an autosomal dominant hypercholesterolemia due to mutations in the low-density lipoprotein receptor gene (LDLR) or genes related with it. The disease is characterized by an increased levels of serum low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-c) with consequent xanthoma formation and early cardiovascular disease [113, 114]. The iPSCs generated from FH patient (FH-iPSC) displayed the disease phenotype. FH-iPSCs were genetically corrected using homologous recombination mediated by the CRISPR/Cas9 system integrating a correction cassette at the AAVS1 locus that resulted in restoration of LDLR expression and LDL-c uptake in the differentiated FH-iPSC-HLCs [90]. Recently, other studies were conducted on different inherited metabolic disease such as propionic acidemia, caused by mutations in the propionyl-CoA carboxylase alpha (PCCA) and propionyl-CoA carboxylase beta (PCCB) genes [91]; primary hyperoxaluria type 1 (PH1) caused by a deficiency of the peroxisomal enzyme alanine-glyoxylate aminotransferase (AGT) [92]; and abetalipoproteinemia, caused by MTTP gene mutation [115], confirming the usefulness and versatility of CRISPR/cas9 tool applied to human iPSC and marking the way toward future discoveries.

7 Gene Editing, iPSC, and Clinical Trials

As already mentioned, the combination of iPSC and CRISPR/Cas9 technologies represent a valid tool to model diseases in vitro and in vivo. This section will describe paradigms of the applications of these technologies in preclinical setting, which may lay the foundation for targeted clinical trials, which are currently missing.

Jacków et al. recently proposed a protocol using iPSCs combined with CRISPR/Cas9 techniques as a strategy for the long-lasting treatment of dystrophic recessive epidermolysis bullosa (RDEB), a rare genetic skin fragility disorder due to the COL7A1 gene mutation that encodes for type VII collagen, which in turn is important for stabilizing dermal–epidermal adhesion at the basement membrane zone [116, 117].

Using primary fibroblasts isolated from the foreskin of healthy individuals and also the dermis of two patients with RDEB, the authors obtained iPSCs introducing a vector encoding the four classic Yamanaka's reprogramming factors (Oct4, Sox2, Klf4, and c-Myc) [117], in this way generating RDEB patient-specific iPSCs. Second, they generated CRISPR/Cas9-mediated HDR, using high-fidelity Cas9 (SpyFiCas9) nucleases with no detectable genome-wide off-target effects, to repair the COL7A1 mutation in iPSCs in order to restore C7 expression. With the combination of the two techniques mentioned above, the authors were able to achieve the COL7A1correction in vitro and in vivo, with restoration of skin integrity and type VII collagen after grafting them onto nude mice. These findings are promising to translate this treatment into the clinic [117], However, to this aim, hurdles need to be overcome. On one hand, the iPSCs reprogramming can cause genetic instability [118]; on the other hand, developing xeno-free (without animal products) culture systems of iPSCs is less risky compared to undefined animal-derived components that could introduce variability on the cultures, complicating their therapeutic application in patients.

Inherited retinal dystrophies (IRDs) are a group of neurodegenerative disorders, which was discovered for the first time by Cornelius Franz Donders in 1857 that involves the retina, causing color blindness, tunnel vision, and subsequent progression to complete blindness [119]. In particular, Usher syndrome (USH) belongs to the spectrum of IRD disorders and is characterized by retinal degeneration, retinitis pigmentosa (RP), and hearing loss [119].

USH is caused predominantly by USH2A mutations in exon 13; the first attempts using canonical gene therapy method to treat this disease failed [119]. Applying CRISPR/Cas9 technology to iPSCs obtained from patients with USH in vitro, it was possible to correct the USH2A mutations in exon 13, without any off-target mutagenesis in the corrected iPSCs, which also retained pluripotency and genetic stability [120]. The goal of the latter approach is to develop a strategy for future autologous cell therapy of patents and eventually into clinical trial program.

Another interesting work from Zhanhui Ou et al. reported the combination of iPSC and CRISPR/Cas9 techniques to treat β-thalassemia disease. β-thalassemia is a blood genetic disorder caused by a small deletion in the beta globin HBB gene [121], which causes lack of oxygen in the body, anemia due to shortage of blood cell that in turn causes pale skin, weakness, and fatigue [122]. Generating iPSCs from the somatic cells of β-thalassemia patients, it was possible to obtain hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs), with homologous recombination-based gene correction, which recovers the production of HBB in vitro and with improvement of hemoglobin by CRISPR/Cas9 (HB) production in vivo in immune-deficient mice [123, 124]. The correction was confirmed using markers in BM cell from transplantation and the non-transplantation sides of the mice, and also at protein level, it was confirmed by the presence of HBB protein in the peripheral blood of the mice. This study confirmed that achievement of the genetic correction of β-thalassemia iPSC mutation allows the production of HBB

after hematopoietic differentiation in vivo, highlighting a safe gene therapy strategy of combining iPSCs and CRISPR/Cas9 technology to treat β-thalassemia [121], which can be proposed in the future in a clinical trial study.

Separately, CRISPR/Cas9 is used in preclinical therapy studies for diseases such as Duchenne muscular dystrophy [125], β-thalassemia [126], or Alzheimer's disease [127], and although so far no therapy based on iPSCs has found its way into routine clinical use, as of 2020, a comprehensive and well-conducted meta-analysis using stringent inclusion/exclusion procedure identified 131 studies that could be classified as clinical trials involving iPSCs—77% of them being observational and ~23% being interventional [128]. Only a limited number of trials were focusing on the actual transplantation of iPSCs into patients.

Therefore, despite the potential of the powerful combination of iPSC and CRISPR/Cas9 techniques, this system needs to be ameliorated, and it remained to be verified whether we may ultimately overcome the challenges associated with their clinical use, opening the doors to this fascinating personalized curative medicine to treat several diseases.

8 Limitations and Challenges of iPSC and Editing Technologies

When first described by Yamanaka in 2006, iPSCs represented a giant breakthrough for development of personalized medicine. Fifteen years later, many challenges are still on the table, discouraging iPSC clinical applications [129]. The main bottleneck is represented by iPSCs' tumorigenic potential (Fig. 2). Undifferentiated or immature cells still present in the final iPSC-derived cell product together with still active reprogramming factors and genetic mutations occurred during cell reprogramming may lead to tumor outcome once iPSCs are transplanted [130, 131]. Improved differentiation and purification protocols represent the best strategy to remove potentially harmful iPSCs. Clinically relevant cells can be sorted on the basis of their cell surface antigens, using magnetic or flow

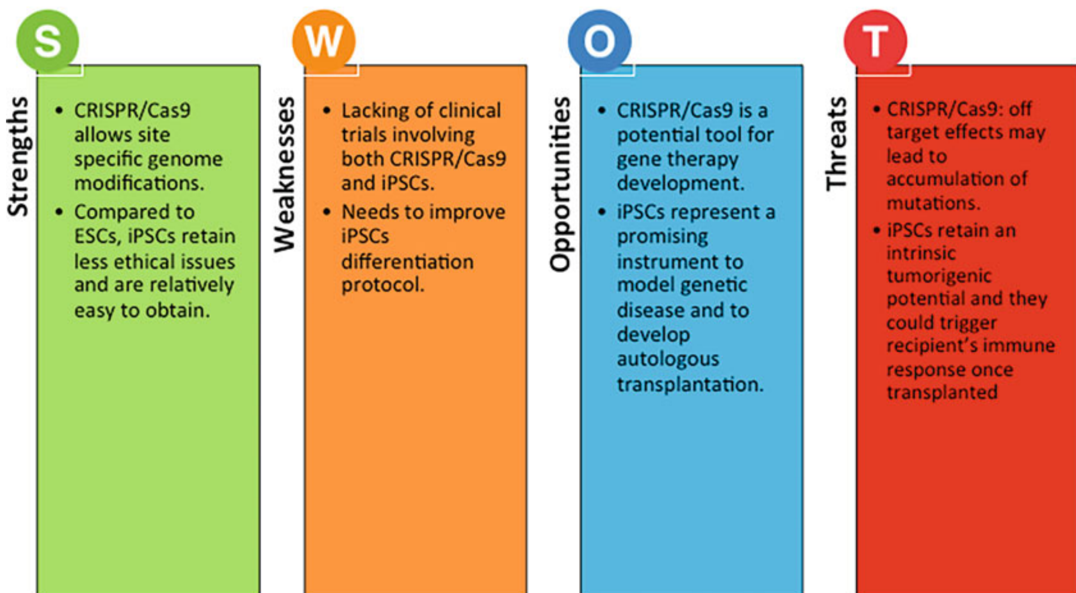


Fig. 2 SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, threats) analysis for the utilization of CRISPR/Cas9 within the iPSC technology and clinical applications

cytometry-based methods [129]. However, some cells do not have any specific cell surface marker facilitating their identification. To overcome this problem, Miki and colleagues developed a microRNA-based method (microRNA-switch) for isolation of human iPSC-derived cells. Other strategies are also based on high-throughput screening methods. For this purpose, latest "omics" approaches are critically required, along with analysis of cell survival, integration, behavior, metabolism, and undesired effects [132].

Moreover, fully differentiated cells have a low proliferation rate and an expected lifespan, and therefore, they are eliminated once transplanted. For this reason, iPSCs are preferentially differentiated into progenitor or tissue stem cells, which are able to continuously differentiate [132]. However, optimization of differentiation protocols to obtain human fully is required (Fig. 2). Neural differentiation, for instance, takes usually up to 6 weeks, requiring few more months for functional maturation depending on the neuronal subtype [133]. In 2014, Du and colleagues reported boosting of human fibroblast differentiation into human-induced hepatocytes through the overexpression of the hepatic fate conversion factors, hepatocyte nuclear factor 1 alpha (HNF1A), hepatocyte nuclear factor 4 alpha (HNF4A), and hepatocyte nuclear factor 6 (HNF6), together with the maturation factors, activating transcription factor 5 (ATF5), prospero homeobox protein 1 (PROX1), and CCAAT/enhancer-binding protein alpha (CEBPA) [134]. Similarly, iPSC differentiation can be improved by overexpression of cell lineage-specific factors. For instance, Inamura et al. reported an increased differentiation of iPSCs into hepatocytes after hematopoietically expressed homeobox (HEX) delivery through an adenoviral vector, in combination with overexpression of P450 cytochrome [135]. Interestingly, both HEX and P450 are factors involved in the early stages of hepatic development and liver metabolism, respectively [135]. Alternative strategies focused on transcription factor sequential delivery. Takayama and colleagues first induced the differentiation of iPSC in endoderm cells overexpressing SRY-box 17 (SOX17) or Forkhead Box A2 (FOXA2). SOX17 and FOXA2-derived endoderm cells were in turn efficiently differentiated into hepatocytes overexpressing HEX or HNF1α [136]. As for hepatocytes, several protocols have been established to efficiently differentiate iPSCs into neurons. Pluripotent cells are first differentiated into neural progenitors by embryo body formation or dual SMAD inhibition [137]. Overexpression of three transcription factors, BRN2, ASCL1, and MYT1L, triggers the expression of the neuronal markers β-III-tubulin and MAP2 already in 8 days [138]. Other transcription factors, like ASCL1 and NEUROG2, were tested, showing an improved percentage of differentiated neuronal cells [139, 140]. Further studies focused on protocols optimization to obtain neuronal subtypes. Sun and colleagues recently showed that GABAergic neuron maturation can be improved by overexpressing the four transcription factors: Achaete-scute homolog 1 (ASCL1), distal-less homeobox 2 (DLX2), homeobox protein Nkx-2.1 (NKX2.1), and LIM homeobox 6 (LHX6) [141]. Interestingly, ASCL1 has been also described to contribute to the differentiation of iPSCs into dopaminergic neurons when co-expressed with nuclear receptor-related 1 protein (NURR1) and LIM homeobox transcription factor 1 alpha (LMX1A) [142]. Similarly, motor neuron differentiation is ameliorated by overexpression of neurogenin-2, ISL LIM homeobox 1 (ISL1) and LIM homeobox 3 (LHX3) [143].

The transient overexpression of the cardiac progenitor marker ISL1 has been reported to improve both mouse and human ESC differentiation in myocardial cells. ISL1 is in turn activating the production of cardiomyocyte markers such as actin alpha cardiac muscle 1 (ACTC1), myosin light chain 2V (MLC2V), and myosin heavy chain 7 (MYH7) [144, 145]. A further improvement has been made with mouse ESCs overexpressing the three cardiogenic transcription factors, GATA4, myocyte enhancer factor 2C (MEF2C), and TBX5, and achieving a cardiomyocyte derivation efficiency of 60% [146]. Despite the encouraging data coming

from ESC differentiation, it looks like transcription factor-dependent differentiation is not yet enough good to produce high functional cardiomyocytes. For this reason, combination of new transcription factors, also in combination with small molecules improving cell differentiation, needs to be tested.

As shortly described, a significant issue encountered in ESC clinical application is represented by the allogenic immune rejection triggered after transplantation. To overcome this problem, imposition of an immunosuppressive regimen is required [147]. However, the treatment turns to be toxic for the patients, improving the chance of tumor outcome [148]. iPSC-derived cells, as consequence of their autologous origin, were though to provide a useful strategy to avoid immune rejection and immunosuppression [147]. However, results appear to be controversial. As showed by Kruse and colleagues, iPSCs are encoding for the natural killer (NK) membrane receptor NKG2D, triggering recipient's NK-mediated immune response [149]. Using a C57/BL6 mice model, Zhao and colleagues proved that differentiated cells derived from isogenic iPSCs (B6 iPSCs) were able to trigger the autologous immune system response once transplanted [150]. The effect was a consequence of mis-regulated immunogenic proteins like the tumor antigen Hormad1, triggering T-cell-mediated immune response [150]. Moreover, using a humanized mouse model (Hu-mice), reconstituted with a fully functional human immune system, Zhao and co-workers investigated the differences among autologous human iPSC-derived smooth muscle cells (SMCs), appearing to be highly immunogenic, and autologous human iPSC-derived retinal pigment epithelial (RPE) cells, which are immune tolerated even in non-ocular sites [151]. Gene expression analysis showed an upregulation of the immunogenic proteins Zg16 and Hormad1 in iPSC-derived SMCs when compared with iPSC-derived RPE [151]. Abnormal expression of immunogenic proteins can be explained by an epigenetic signature inherited by iPSCs from parental cells, which can be cell line specific as showed in iPSC-derived SMCs and RPE, resulting in a different expression of antigens like Zg16 and Hormad1. In addition, several mutations and chromosomal translocation detected in iPSCs may lead to new immunogenic determinants driving recipient's immune response [152]. The lack of immunogenicity of iPSC-derived RPE has been also showed in humans, with the first patient treated using autologous iPSC-derived RPE cells against macular degeneration in 2014 [153].

Of note, new strategies aiming to improve iPSC-derived cell immune tolerance excluding the imposition of an immunosuppression regime have been investigated. Pearl and colleagues showed that iPSC-derived cell engraftment in mice was improved after short-term treatment with calcineurin inhibitor Tacrolimus, aiming to inhibition of CD34+ T-cell-mediated immune response [147]. However, immune tolerance in humans must be evaluated, since, compared to mice, up to 50% of T cells show a memory phenotype. In this context, Hu-mice may work as reliable model to study iPSC engraftment in a human immunocompetent context [152].

From the CRISPR/Cas9 point of view, the most important concern is represented by target specificity, mostly determined by the 20nt sequence of the gRNA (Fig. 2) [132]. Off-target effect could lead to lethal genetic mutations improving iPSC tumorigenicity or host immune response. In this context, gRNA design can be optimized through algorithmically based in silico predictive models aiming to detect and quantify off-target effects and generally referred as bias and unbiased methods [154]. Bias method goal is the gRNA sequence optimization through algorithms developed on databases where authors identified CRISPR/Cas9 off-target effects under specific conditions. Bias algorithms have been further categorized as conventional algorithm and scoring-based algorithm [154]. In conventional algorithms, gRNA sequence is aligned to the target genome, and off-target effects are visualized as sequence homology. In scoring-based algorithms, most appropriate gRNA sequence is retrieved through a given scores,

and it is ranked based on identified off-target sequences [154, 155]. In addition, a percentage of GC contents between 40% and 60% and a length up to 17 bp improve the stability of the gRNA:DNA duplex. Duplex stability can be also improved through 2′-O-methyl-3′-phosphonoacetate incorporation into the gRNA ribose-phosphate backbone or including a hairpin structure at the 5′-end of the gRNA sequence [154].

Together with bias methods, unbiased strategies aim to detect unintended cleavages in vitro and in vivo, mapping the Cas9 cleavage sites within a genome with a high-throughput sequencing methods [154]. Of note, a critical point to improve CRISPR/Cas9 efficiency is represented by replacement of the broadly used *Streptococcus pyogenes* Cas9 with both engineered and orthologous alternative isoforms showing higher selectivity.

Wienert et al. recently introduced a new method named discovery of in situ Cas off-targets and verification by sequencing (discover-Seq) [156]. Discovery-seq prevents the application of oligodeoxynucleotides avoiding any cytotoxic effect, turning to be an efficient tool to map Cas9-related off-target effects also in iPSCs. Off-target analysis is based on a Chip-Seq mapping the MRE11 sites, a DNA-repair factor, which has been showed to be tightly associated with Cas9 cleavage sites [156]. However, further studies are needed to develop an ultra-precise CRISPR/Cas9 and to finally see its applications either in iPSC technology or in genetic disease treatment.

9 Perspective

Although there are still many issues to solve, we wish to emphasize that considerable and exponential progress has been made during the last ~15 years since iPSCs were first generated. With further refinement of iPSC technology using CRISPR/Cas9, it may not be long before doctors will use this resource to better understand or even to treat cardiometabolic and other diseases.

Acknowledgments This work of the authors is funded by the European Regional Development Fund-Project MAGNET (No. CZ.02.1.01/0.0/0.0/15_003/0000492) and by the European Commission Horizon 2020 Framework Program (Project 856871-TRANSTEM).

Competing Financial Interests The authors do not have competing financial interests, or conflict of interests.

References

1. Takahashi K, Yamanaka S (2006) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from mouse embryonic and adult fibroblast cultures by defined factors. Cell 126(4): 663–676
2. Takahashi K, Tanabe K, Ohnuki M, Narita M, Ichisaka T, Tomoda K, Yamanaka S (2007) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from adult human fibroblasts by defined factors. Cell 131(5):861–872
3. Yu J, Vodyanik MA, Smuga-Otto K, Antosiewicz-Bourget J, Frane JL, Tian S, Nie J, Jonsdottir GA, Ruotti V, Stewart R, Slukvin II, Thomson JA (2007) Induced pluripotent stem cell lines derived from human somatic cells. Science 318(5858):1917–1920
4. Gurdon JB (1962) The developmental capacity of nuclei taken from intestinal epithelium cells of feeding tadpoles. J Embryol Exp Morphol 10:622–640
5. Wilmut I, Schnieke AE, McWhir J, Kind AJ, Campbell KH (1997) Viable offspring derived from fetal and adult mammalian cells. Nature 385(6619): 810–813
6. Tada M, Takahama Y, Abe K, Nakatsuji N, Tada T (2001) Nuclear reprogramming of somatic cells by in vitro hybridization with ES cells. Curr Biol 11(19): 1553–1558
7. Barrangou R (2015) The roles of CRISPR-Cas systems in adaptive immunity and beyond. Curr Opin Immunol 32:36–41
8. Horvath P, Barrangou R (2010) CRISPR/Cas, the immune system of bacteria and archaea. Science 327(5962):167–170
9. Marraffini LA, Sontheimer EJ (2008) CRISPR interference limits horizontal gene transfer in staphylococci by targeting DNA. Science 322(5909):1843–1845
10. Hsu PD, Lander ES, Zhang F (2014) Development and applications of CRISPR-Cas9 for genome engineering. Cell 157(6):1262–1278
11. Barrangou R, Marraffini LA (2014) CRISPR-Cas systems: prokaryotes upgrade to adaptive immunity. Mol Cell 54(2):234–244
12. Szczepankowska A (2012) Role of CRISPR/cas system in the development of bacteriophage resistance. Adv Virus Res 82:289–338
13. Hille F, Richter H, Wong SP, Bratovic M, Ressel S, Charpentier E (2018) The biology of CRISPR-Cas: backward and forward. Cell 172(6):1239–1259

14. Deltcheva E, Chylinski K, Sharma CM, Gonzales K, Chao Y, Pirzada ZA, Eckert MR, Vogel J, Charpentier E (2011) CRISPR RNA maturation by trans-encoded small RNA and host factor RNase III. Nature 471(7340):602–607
15. Bolotin A, Quinquis B, Sorokin A, Ehrlich SD (2005) Clustered regularly interspaced short palindrome repeats (CRISPRs) have spacers of extrachromosomal origin. Microbiology 151(8):2551–2561
16. Makarova KS, Grishin NV, Shabalina SA, Wolf YI, Koonin EV (2006) A putative RNA-interference-based immune system in prokaryotes: computational analysis of the predicted enzymatic machinery, functional analogies with eukaryotic RNAi, and hypothetical mechanisms of action. Biol Direct 1:7
17. Barrangou R, Fremaux C, Deveau H, Richards M, Boyaval P, Moineau S, Romero DA, Horvath P (2007) CRISPR provides acquired resistance against viruses in prokaryotes. Science 315(5819): 1709–1712
18. Deveau H, Barrangou R, Garneau JE, Labonte J, Fremaux C, Boyaval P, Romero DA, Horvath P, Moineau S (2008) Phage response to CRISPR-encoded resistance in Streptococcus thermophilus. J Bacteriol 190(4):1390–1400
19. Garneau JE, Dupuis ME, Villion M, Romero DA, Barrangou R, Boyaval P, Fremaux C, Horvath P, Magadan AH, Moineau S (2010) The CRISPR/Cas bacterial immune system cleaves bacteriophage and plasmid DNA. Nature 468(7320):67–71
20. Makarova KS, Aravind L, Wolf YI, Koonin EV (2011) Unification of Cas protein families and a simple scenario for the origin and evolution of CRISPR-Cas systems. Biol Direct 6:38
21. Bhaya D, Davison M, Barrangou R (2011) CRISPR-Cas systems in bacteria and archaea: versatile small RNAs for adaptive defense and regulation. Annu Rev Genet 45:273–297
22. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
23. Xu Y, Li Z (2020) CRISPR-Cas systems: overview, innovations and applications in human disease research and gene therapy. Comput Struct Biotechnol J 18:2401–2415
24. Zaragoza C, Gomez-Guerrero C, Martin-Ventura JL, Blanco-Colio L, Lavin B, Mallavia B, Tarin C, Mas S, Ortiz A, Egido J (2011) Animal models of cardiovascular diseases. J Biomed Biotechnol 2011: 497841
25. King AJ (2012) The use of animal models in diabetes research. Br J Pharmacol 166(3):877–894
26. El Refaey M, Xu L, Gao Y, Canan BD, Adesanya TMA, Warner SC, Akagi K, Symer DE, Mohler PJ, Ma J, Janssen PML, Han R (2017) In vivo genome editing restores dystrophin expression and cardiac function in dystrophic mice. Circ Res 121(8): 923–929
27. Amoasii L, Hildyard JCW, Li H, Sanchez-Ortiz E, Mireault A, Caballero D, Harron R, Stathopoulou TR, Massey C, Shelton JM, Bassel-Duby R, Piercy RJ, Olson EN (2018) Gene editing restores dystrophin expression in a canine model of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Science 362(6410):86–91
28. Schmitt JP, Kamisago M, Asahi M, Li GH, Ahmad F, Mende U, Kranias EG, MacLennan DH, Seidman JG, Seidman CE (2003) Dilated cardiomyopathy and heart failure caused by a mutation in phospholamban. Science 299(5611):1410–1413
29. Kaneko M, Hashikami K, Yamamoto S, Matsumoto H, Nishimoto T (2016) Phospholamban ablation using CRISPR/Cas9 system improves mortality in a murine heart failure model. PLoS One 11(12):e0168486
30. Chung JY, Ain QU, Song Y, Yong SB, Kim YH (2019) Targeted delivery of CRISPR interference system against Fabp4 to white adipocytes ameliorates obesity, inflammation, hepatic steatosis, and insulin resistance. Genome Res 29(9):1442–1452
31. Furuhashi M, Tuncman G, Gorgun CZ, Makowski L, Atsumi G, Vaillancourt E, Kono K, Babaev VR, Fazio S, Linton MF, Sulsky R, Robl JA, Parker RA et al (2007) Treatment of diabetes and atherosclerosis by inhibiting fatty-acid-binding protein aP2. Nature 447(7147):959–965
32. Srifa W, Kosaric N, Amorin A, Jadi O, Park Y, Mantri S, Camarena J, Gurtner GC, Porteus M (2020) Cas9-AAV6-engineered human mesenchymal stromal cells improved cutaneous wound healing in diabetic mice. Nat Commun 11(1):2470
33. Wang X, Huang R, Zhang L, Li S, Luo J, Gu Y, Chen Z, Zheng Q, Chao T, Zheng W, Qi X, Wang L, Wen Y et al (2018) A severe atherosclerosis mouse model on the resistant NOD background disease. Models Mech 11(10):33852
34. Lin X, Pelletier S, Gingras S, Rigaud S, Maine CJ, Marquardt K, Dai YD, Sauer K, Rodriguez AR, Martin G, Kupriyanov S, Jiang L, Yu L et al (2016) CRISPR-Cas9-mediated modification of the NOD mouse genome with Ptpn22R619W mutation increases autoimmune diabetes. Diabetes 65(8): 2134–2138
35. Lee H, Yoon DE, Kim K (2020) Genome editing methods in animal models. Anim Cells Syst 24(1): 8–16
36. Roh JI, Lee J, Park SU, Kang YS, Lee J, Oh AR, Choi DJ, Cha JY, Lee HW (2018) CRISPR-Cas9-mediated generation of obese and diabetic mouse models. Exp Anim 67(2):229–237
37. Frangoul H, Altshuler D, Cappellini MD, Chen YS, Domm J, Eustace BK, Foell J, de la Fuente J, Grupp S, Handgretinger R, Ho TW, Kattamis A, Kernytsky A et al (2020) CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing for sickle cell disease and beta-thalassemia. N Engl J Med 384:252–260
38. Musunuru K, Sheikh F, Gupta RM, Houser SR, Maher KO, Milan DJ, Terzic A, Wu JC (2018)

Induced pluripotent stem cells for cardiovascular disease modeling and precision medicine: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation 11(1):e000043
39. Herman DS, Lam L, Taylor MR, Wang L, Teekakirikul P, Christodoulou D, Conner L, DePalma SR, McDonough B, Sparks E, Teodorescu DL, Cirino AL, Banner NR et al (2012) Truncations of titin causing dilated cardiomyopathy. N Engl J Med 366(7):619–628
40. Hinson JT, Chopra A, Nafissi N, Polacheck WJ, Benson CC, Swist S, Gorham J, Yang L, Schafer S, Sheng CC, Haghighi A, Homsy J, Hubner N et al (2015) Heart disease. Titin mutations in iPS cells define sarcomere insufficiency as a cause of dilated cardiomyopathy. Science 349(6251):982–986
41. Staff PO (2018) Correction: functional abnormalities in induced pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes generated from titin-mutated patients with dilated cardiomyopathy. PLoS One 13(11): e0207548
42. Levine E, Rosero SZ, Budzikowski AS, Moss AJ, Zareba W, Daubert JP (2008) Congenital long QT syndrome: considerations for primary care physicians. Cleve Clin J Med 75(8):591–600
43. Alders M, Bikker H, Christiaans I (1993) Long QT syndrome. In: Adam MP, Ardinger HH, Pagon RA, Wallace SE, Bean LJH, Stephens K, Amemiya A (eds) GeneReviews. University of Washington, Seattle
44. Schwartz PJ, Stramba-Badiale M, Crotti L, Pedrazzini M, Besana A, Bosi G, Gabbarini F, Goulene K, Insolia R, Mannarino S, Mosca F, Nespoli L, Rimini A et al (2009) Prevalence of the congenital long-QT syndrome. Circulation 120(18): 1761–1767
45. Wang Y, Liang P, Lan F, Wu H, Lisowski L, Gu M, Hu S, Kay MA, Urnov FD, Shinnawi R, Gold JD, Gepstein L, Wu JC (2014) Genome editing of isogenic human induced pluripotent stem cells recapitulates long QT phenotype for drug testing. J Am Coll Cardiol 64(5):451–459
46. Kim MJ, Lee EY, You YH, Yang HK, Yoon KH, Kim JW (2020) Generation of iPSC-derived insulin-producing cells from patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes compared with healthy control. Stem Cell Res 48:101958
47. Balboa D, Saarimaki-Vire J, Otonkoski T (2019) Concise review: human pluripotent stem cells for the modeling of pancreatic beta-cell. Pathol Stem Cells 37(1):33–41
48. Perez-Alcantara M, Honore C, Wesolowska-Andersen A, Gloyn AL, McCarthy MI, Hansson M, Beer NL, van de Bunt M (2018) Patterns of differential gene expression in a cellular model of human islet development, and relationship to type 2 diabetes predisposition. Diabetologia 61(7):1614–1622
49. Furuyama K, Chera S, van Gurp L, Oropeza D, Ghila L, Damond N, Vethe H, Paulo JA, Joosten AM, Berney T, Bosco D, Dorrell C, Grompe M et al (2019) Diabetes relief in mice by glucose-sensing insulin-secreting human alpha-cells. Nature 567(7746):43–48
50. Carroll D (2011) Genome engineering with zinc-finger nucleases. Genetics 188(4):773–782
51. Jasin M (1996) Genetic manipulation of genomes with rare-cutting endonucleases. Trends Genet 12(6):224–228
52. Porteus MH, Carroll D (2005) Gene targeting using zinc finger nucleases. Nat Biotechnol 23(8):967–973
53. Porteus MH, Baltimore D (2003) Chimeric nucleases stimulate gene targeting in human cells. Science 300(5620):763
54. Chandrasegaran S, Smith J (1999) Chimeric restriction enzymes: what is next? Biol Chem 380(7): 841–848
55. Bibikova M, Carroll D, Segal DJ, Trautman JK, Smith J, Kim YG, Chandrasegaran S (2001) Stimulation of homologous recombination through targeted cleavage by chimeric nucleases. Mol Cell Biol 21(1): 289–297
56. Miller JC, Holmes MC, Wang J, Guschin DY, Lee YL, Rupniewski I, Beausejour CM, Waite AJ, Wang NS, Kim KA, Gregory PD, Pabo CO, Rebar EJ (2007) An improved zinc-finger nuclease architecture for highly specific genome editing. Nat Biotechnol 25(7):778–785
57. Soldner F, Laganiere J, Cheng AW, Hockemeyer D, Gao Q, Alagappan R, Khurana V, Golbe LI, Myers RH, Lindquist S, Zhang L, Guschin D, Fong LK et al (2011) Generation of isogenic pluripotent stem cells differing exclusively at two early onset Parkinson point mutations. Cell 146(2):318–331
58. Kiskinis E, Sandoe J, Williams LA, Boulting GL, Moccia R, Wainger BJ, Han S, Peng T, Thams S, Mikkilineni S, Mellin C, Merkle FT, Davis-Dusenbery BN et al (2014) Pathways disrupted in human ALS motor neurons identified through genetic correction of mutant SOD1. Cell Stem Cell 14(6): 781–795
59. Arendt T, Stieler JT, Holzer M (2016) Tau and tauopathies. Brain Res Bull 126(3):238–292
60. Boch J, Scholze H, Schornack S, Landgraf A, Hahn S, Kay S, Lahaye T, Nickstadt A, Bonas U (2009) Breaking the code of DNA binding specificity of TAL-type III effectors. Science 326(5959): 1509–1512
61. Christian M, Cermak T, Doyle EL, Schmidt C, Zhang F, Hummel A, Bogdanove AJ, Voytas DF (2010) Targeting DNA double-strand breaks with TAL effector nucleases. Genetics 186(2):757–761
62. Kim Y, Kweon J, Kim A, Chon JK, Yoo JY, Kim HJ, Kim S, Lee C, Jeong E, Chung E, Kim D, Lee MS, Go EM et al (2013) A library of TAL effector nucleases spanning the human genome. Nat Biotechnol 31(3):251–258
63. Sun N, Zhao H (2014) Seamless correction of the sickle cell disease mutation of the HBB gene in

human induced pluripotent stem cells using TALENs. Biotechnol Bioeng 111(5):1048–1053
64. Iizuka H, Kagoya Y, Kataoka K, Yoshimi A, Miyauchi M, Taoka K, Kumano K, Yamamoto T, Hotta A, Arai S, Kurokawa M (2015) Targeted gene correction of RUNX1 in induced pluripotent stem cells derived from familial platelet disorder with propensity to myeloid malignancy restores normal megakaryopoiesis. Exp Hematol 43(10):849–857
65. Park CY, Kim J, Kweon J, Son JS, Lee JS, Yoo JE, Cho SR, Kim JH, Kim JS, Kim DW (2014) Targeted inversion and reversion of the blood coagulation factor 8 gene in human iPS cells using TALENs. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111(25):9253–9258
66. Woodruff G, Young JE, Martinez FJ, Buen F, Gore A, Kinaga J, Li Z, Yuan SH, Zhang K, Goldstein LS (2013) The presenilin-1 DeltaE9 mutation results in reduced gamma-secretase activity, but not total loss of PS1 function, in isogenic human stem cells. Cell Rep 5(4):974–985
67. Brookhouser N, Raman S, Potts C, Brafman DA (2017) May I cut in? Gene editing approaches in human induced pluripotent stem cells. Cell 6(1):5
68. Horii T, Tamura D, Morita S, Kimura M, Hatada I (2013) Generation of an ICF syndrome model by efficient genome editing of human induced pluripotent stem cells using the CRISPR system. Int J Mol Sci 14(10):19774–19781
69. Fine JD, Eady RA, Bauer EA, Bauer JW, Bruckner-Tuderman L, Heagerty A, Hintner H, Hovnanian A, Jonkman MF, Leigh I, McGrath JA, Mellerio JE, Murrell DF et al (2008) The classification of inherited epidermolysis bullosa (EB): report of the Third international consensus meeting on diagnosis and classification of EB. J Am Acad Dermatol 58(6):931–950
70. Shinkuma S, McMillan JR, Shimizu H (2011) Ultrastructure and molecular pathogenesis of epidermolysis bullosa. Clin Dermatol 29(4):412–419
71. Shinkuma S, Guo Z, Christiano AM (2016) Site-specific genome editing for correction of induced pluripotent stem cells derived from dominant dystrophic epidermolysis bullosa. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113(20):5676–5681
72. Nayler S, Gatei M, Kozlov S, Gatti R, Mar JC, Wells CA, Lavin M, Wolvetang E (2012) Induced pluripotent stem cells from ataxia-telangiectasia recapitulate the cellular phenotype. Stem Cells Transl Med 1(7):523–535
73. Hamasaki M, Hashizume Y, Yamada Y, Katayama T, Hohjoh H, Fusaki N, Nakashima Y, Furuya H, Haga N, Takami Y, Era T (2012) Pathogenic mutation of ALK2 inhibits induced pluripotent stem cell reprogramming and maintenance: mechanisms of reprogramming and strategy for drug identification. Stem Cells 30(11):2437–2449
74. Raya A, Rodriguez-Piza I, Guenechea G, Vassena R, Navarro S, Barrero MJ, Consiglio A, Castella M, Rio P, Sleep E, Gonzalez F, Tiscornia G, Garreta E et al (2009) Disease-corrected haematopoietic progenitors from Fanconi anaemia induced pluripotent stem cells. Nature 460(7251):53–59
75. Shore EM, Xu M, Feldman GJ, Fenstermacher DA, Cho TJ, Choi IH, Connor JM, Delai P, Glaser DL, LeMerrer M, Morhart R, Rogers JG, Smith R et al (2006) A recurrent mutation in the BMP type I receptor ACVR1 causes inherited and sporadic fibrodysplasia ossificans progressiva. Nat Genet 38(5):525–527
76. Kim BY, Jeong S, Lee SY, Lee SM, Gweon EJ, Ahn H, Kim J, Chung SK (2016) Concurrent progress of reprogramming and gene correction to overcome therapeutic limitation of mutant ALK2-iPSC. Exp Mol Med 48(6):e237
77. Park CY, Halevy T, Lee DR, Sung JJ, Lee JS, Yanuka O, Benvenisty N, Kim DW (2015) Reversion of FMR1 methylation and silencing by editing the triplet repeats in fragile X iPSC-derived neurons. Cell Rep 13(2):234–241
78. Wang G, McCain ML, Yang L, He A, Pasqualini FS, Agarwal A, Yuan H, Jiang D, Zhang D, Zangi L, Geva J, Roberts AE, Ma Q et al (2014) Modeling the mitochondrial cardiomyopathy of Barth syndrome with induced pluripotent stem cell and heart-on-chip technologies. Nat Med 20(6):616–623
79. Mosqueira D, Mannhardt I, Bhagwan JR, Lis-Slimak K, Katili P, Scott E, Hassan M, Prondzynski M, Harmer SC, Tinker A, Smith JGW, Carrier L, Williams PM et al (2018) CRISPR/Cas9 editing in human pluripotent stem cell-cardiomyocytes highlights arrhythmias, hypocontractility, and energy depletion as potential therapeutic targets for hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Eur Heart J 39(43):3879–3892
80. Song HY, Chien CS, Yarmishyn AA, Chou SJ, Yang YP, Wang ML, Wang CY, Leu HB, Yu WC, Chang YL, Chiou SH (2019) Generation of GLA-knockout human embryonic stem cell lines to model autophagic dysfunction and exosome secretion in fabry disease-associated hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Cell 8:4
81. Te Riele AS, Agullo-Pascual E, James CA, Leo-Macias A, Cerrone M, Zhang M, Lin X, Lin B, Sobreira NL, Amat-Alarcon N, Marsman RF, Murray B, Tichnell C et al (2017) Multilevel analyses of SCN5A mutations in arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia/cardiomyopathy suggest non-canonical mechanisms for disease pathogenesis. Cardiovasc Res 113(1):102–111
82. Kodo K, Ong SG, Jahanbani F, Termglinchan V, Hirono K, InanlooRahatloo K, Ebert AD, Shukla P, Abilez OJ, Churko JM, Karakikes I, Jung G, Ichida F et al (2016) iPSC-derived cardiomyocytes reveal abnormal TGF-beta signalling in left ventricular non-compaction cardiomyopathy. Nat Cell Biol 18(10):1031–1042
83. Young CS, Hicks MR, Ermolova NV, Nakano H, Jan M, Younesi S, Karumbayaram S, Kumagai-Cresse C, Wang D, Zack JA, Kohn DB, Nakano A,

Nelson SF et al (2016) A single CRISPR-Cas9 deletion strategy that targets the majority of DMD patients restores dystrophin function in hiPSC-derived muscle cells. Cell Stem Cell 18(4):533–540
84. Kyrychenko V, Kyrychenko S, Tiburcy M, Shelton JM, Long C, Schneider JW, Zimmermann WH, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2017) Functional correction of dystrophin actin binding domain mutations by genome editing. JCI Insight 2:18
85. Saarimaki-Vire J, Balboa D, Russell MA, Saarikettu J, Kinnunen M, Keskitalo S, Malhi A, Valensisi C, Andrus C, Eurola S, Grym H, Ustinov J, Wartiovaara K et al (2017) An activating STAT3 mutation causes neonatal diabetes through premature induction of pancreatic differentiation. Cell Rep 19(2):281–294
86. Tiyaboonchai A, Cardenas-Diaz FL, Ying L, Maguire JA, Sim X, Jobaliya C, Gagne AL, Kishore S, Stanescu DE, Hughes N, De Leon DD, French DL, Gadue P (2017) GATA6 plays an important role in the induction of human definitive endoderm, development of the pancreas, and functionality of pancreatic beta cells. Stem Cell Rep 8(3):589–604
87. Ma S, Viola R, Sui L, Cherubini V, Barbetti F, Egli D (2018) Beta cell replacement after gene editing of a neonatal diabetes-causing mutation at the insulin locus. Stem Cell Rep 11(6):1407–1415
88. Yusa K, Rashid ST, Strick-Marchand H, Varela I, Liu PQ, Paschon DE, Miranda E, Ordonez A, Hannan NR, Rouhani FJ, Darche S, Alexander G, Marciniak SJ et al (2011) Targeted gene correction of alpha1-antitrypsin deficiency in induced pluripotent stem cells. Nature 478(7369):391–394
89. Smith C, Abalde-Atristain L, He C, Brodsky BR, Braunstein EM, Chaudhari P, Jang YY, Cheng L, Ye Z (2015) Efficient and allele-specific genome editing of disease loci in human iPSCs. Mol Ther 23(3):570–577
90. Caron J, Pene V, Tolosa L, Villaret M, Luce E, Fourrier A, Heslan JM, Saheb S, Bruckert E, Gomez-Lechon MJ, Nguyen TH, Rosenberg AR, Weber A et al (2019) Low-density lipoprotein receptor-deficient hepatocytes differentiated from induced pluripotent stem cells allow familial hypercholesterolemia modeling, CRISPR/Cas-mediated genetic correction, and productive hepatitis C virus infection. Stem Cell Res Ther 10(1):221
91. Fulgencio-Covian A, Alvarez M, Pepers BA, Lopez-Marquez A, Ugarte M, Perez B, van Roon-Mom WMC, Desviat LR, Richard E (2020) Generation of a gene-corrected human isogenic line (UAMi006-A) from propionic acidemia patient iPSC with an homozygous mutation in the PCCB gene using CRISPR/Cas9 technology. Stem Cell Res 49:102055
92. Esteve J, Blouin JM, Lalanne M, Azzi-Martin L, Dubus P, Bidet A, Harambat J, Llanas B, Moranvillier I, Bedel A, Moreau-Gaudry F, Richard E (2019) Targeted gene therapy in human-induced pluripotent stem cells from a patient with primary hyperoxaluria type 1 using CRISPR/Cas9 technology. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 517(4):677–683
93. Kalra S, Montanaro F, Denning C (2016) Can human pluripotent stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes advance understanding of muscular dystrophies? J Neuromusc Dis 3(3):309–332
94. Piga D, Salani S, Magri F, Brusa R, Mauri E, Comi GP, Bresolin N, Corti S (2019) Human induced pluripotent stem cell models for the study and treatment of Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophies. Ther Adv Neurol Disord 12:1756286419833478
95. Macadangdang J, Guan X, Smith AS, Lucero R, Czerniecki S, Childers MK, Mack DL, Kim DH (2015) Nanopatterned human iPSC-based model of a dystrophin-null cardiomyopathic phenotype. Cell Mol Bioeng 8(3):320–332
96. Echigoya Y, Lim KRQ, Nakamura A, Yokota T (2018) Multiple exon skipping in the Duchenne muscular dystrophy hot spots: prospects and challenges. J Personal Med 8(4):41
97. Guo Y, VanDusen NJ, Zhang L, Gu W, Sethi I, Guatimosim S, Ma Q, Jardin BD, Ai Y, Zhang D, Chen B, Guo A, Yuan GC et al (2017) Analysis of cardiac myocyte maturation using CASAAV, a platform for rapid dissection of cardiac myocyte gene function in vivo. Circ Res 120(12):1874–1888
98. Zhu X, Fang J, Jiang DS, Zhang P, Zhao GN, Zhu X, Yang L, Wei X, Li H (2015) Exacerbating pressure overload-induced cardiac hypertrophy: novel role of adaptor molecule SRC homology 2-B3. Hypertension 66(3):571–581
99. Zhang M, D'Aniello C, Verkerk AO, Wrobel E, Frank S, Ward-van Oostwaard D, Piccini I, Freund C, Rao J, Seebohm G, Atsma DE, Schulze-Bahr E, Mummery CL et al (2014) Recessive cardiac phenotypes in induced pluripotent stem cell models of Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome: disease mechanisms and pharmacological rescue. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111(50):5383–5392
100. Christidi E, Huang HM, Brunham LR (2018) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated genome editing in human stem cell-derived cardiomyocytes: applications for cardiovascular disease modelling and cardiotoxicity screening. Drug Discov Today Technol 28:13–21
101. Teo AK, Wagers AJ, Kulkarni RN (2013) New opportunities: harnessing induced pluripotency for discovery in diabetes and metabolism. Cell Metab 18(6):775–791
102. Teo AK, Windmueller R, Johansson BB, Dirice E, Njolstad PR, Tjora E, Raeder H, Kulkarni RN (2013) Derivation of human induced pluripotent stem cells from patients with maturity onset diabetes of the young. J Biol Chem 288(8):5353–5356
103. Desai T, Shea LD (2017) Advances in islet encapsulation technologies. Nat Rev Drug Discov 16(5):338–350

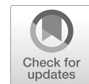
104. Vaithilingam V, Bal S, Tuch BE (2017) Encapsulated islet transplantation: where do we stand? Rev Diabet Stud 14(1):51–78
105. Hay DC, Zhao D, Fletcher J, Hewitt ZA, McLean D, Urruticoechea-Uriguen A, Black JR, Elcombe C, Ross JA, Wolf R, Cui W (2008) Efficient differentiation of hepatocytes from human embryonic stem cells exhibiting markers recapitulating liver development in vivo. Stem Cells 26(4):894–902
106. Si-Tayeb K, Noto FK, Nagaoka M, Li J, Battle MA, Duris C, North PE, Dalton S, Duncan SA (2010) Highly efficient generation of human hepatocyte-like cells from induced pluripotent stem cells. Hepatology 51(1):297–305
107. Baxter M, Withey S, Harrison S, Segeritz CP, Zhang F, Atkinson-Dell R, Rowe C, Gerrard DT, Sison-Young R, Jenkins R, Henry J, Berry AA, Mohamet L et al (2015) Phenotypic and functional analyses show stem cell-derived hepatocyte-like cells better mimic fetal rather than adult hepatocytes. J Hepatol 62(3):581–589
108. Takayama K, Morisaki Y, Kuno S, Nagamoto Y, Harada K, Furukawa N, Ohtaka M, Nishimura K, Imagawa K, Sakurai F, Tachibana M, Sumazaki R, Noguchi E et al (2014) Prediction of interindividual differences in hepatic functions and drug sensitivity by using human iPS-derived hepatocytes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111(47):16772–16777
109. Perlmutter DH (2006) Pathogenesis of chronic liver injury and hepatocellular carcinoma in alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency. Pediatr Res 60(2):233–238
110. Eriksson S, Hagerstrand I (1974) Cirrhosis and malignant hepatoma in alpha 1-antitrypsin deficiency. Acta Med Scand 195(6):451–458
111. Rashid ST, Corbineau S, Hannan N, Marciniak SJ, Miranda E, Alexander G, Huang-Doran I, Griffin J, Ahrlund-Richter L, Skepper J, Semple R, Weber A, Lomas DA et al (2010) Modeling inherited metabolic disorders of the liver using human induced pluripotent stem cells. J Clin Investig 120(9):3127–3136
112. Cayo MA, Cai J, DeLaForest A, Noto FK, Nagaoka M, Clark BS, Collery RF, Si-Tayeb K, Duncan SA (2012) JD induced pluripotent stem cell-derived hepatocytes faithfully recapitulate the pathophysiology of familial hypercholesterolemia. Hepatology 56(6):2163–2171
113. Rader DJ, Cohen J, Hobbs HH (2003) Monogenic hypercholesterolemia: new insights in pathogenesis and treatment. J Clin Investig 111(12):1795–1803
114. Harada-Shiba M, Arai H, Ishigaki Y, Ishibashi S, Okamura T, Ogura M, Dobashi K, Nohara A, Bujo H, Miyauchi K, Yamashita S, Yokote K (2018) Guidelines for diagnosis and treatment of familial hypercholesterolemia 2017. J Atheroscler Thromb 25(8):751–770
115. Liu Y, Conlon DM, Bi X, Slovik KJ, Shi J, Edelstein HI, Millar JS, Javaheri A, Cuchel M, Pashos EE, Iqbal J, Hussain MM, Hegele RA et al (2017) Lack of MTTP activity in pluripotent stem cell-derived hepatocytes and cardiomyocytes abolishes apoB secretion and increases cell stress. Cell Rep 19(7): 1456–1466
116. Hovnanian A, Rochat A, Bodemer C, Petit E, Rivers CA, Prost C, Fraitag S, Christiano AM, Uitto J, Lathrop M, Barrandon Y, de Prost Y (1997) Characterization of 18 new mutations in COL7A1 in recessive dystrophic epidermolysis bullosa provides evidence for distinct molecular mechanisms underlying defective anchoring fibril formation. Am J Med Genet 61(3):599–610
117. Jackow J, Guo Z, Hansen C, Abaci HE, Doucet YS, Shin JU, Hayashi R, DeLorenzo D, Kabata Y, Shinkuma S, Salas-Alanis JC, Christiano AM (2019) CRISPR/Cas9-based targeted genome editing for correction of recessive dystrophic epidermolysis bullosa using iPS cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 116(52):26846–26852
118. Laurent LC, Ulitsky I, Slavin I, Tran H, Schork A, Morey R, Lynch C, Harness JV, Lee S, Barrero MJ, Ku S, Martynova M, Semechkin R et al (2011) Dynamic changes in the copy number of pluripotency and cell proliferation genes in human ESCs and iPSCs during reprogramming and time in culture. Cell Stem Cell 8(1):106–118
119. Nash BM, Wright DC, Grigg JR, Bennetts B, Jamieson RV (2015) Retinal dystrophies, genomic applications in diagnosis and prospects for therapy. Transl Pediatr 4(2):139–163
120. Sanjurjo-Soriano C, Erkilic N, Baux D, Mamaeva D, Hamel CP, Meunier I, Roux AF, Kalatzis V (2020) Genome editing in patient iPSCs corrects the most prevalent USH2A mutations and reveals intriguing mutant mRNA expression profiles molecular therapy. Methods Clin Dev 17:156–173
121. Ou Z, Niu X, He W, Chen Y, Song B, Xian Y, Fan D, Tang D, Sun X (2016) The combination of CRISPR/Cas9 and iPSC technologies in the gene therapy of human beta-thalassemia in mice. Sci Rep 6:32463
122. Galanello R, Origa R (2010) Beta-thalassemia. Orphanet J Rare Dis 5:11
123. Song B, Fan Y, He W, Zhu D, Niu X, Wang D, Ou Z, Luo M, Sun X (2015) Improved hematopoietic differentiation efficiency of gene-corrected beta-thalassemia induced pluripotent stem cells by CRISPR/Cas9 system. Stem Cells Dev 24(9):1053–1065
124. Hanna J, Wernig M, Markoulaki S, Sun CW, Meissner A, Cassady JP, Beard C, Brambrink T, Wu LC, Townes TM, Jaenisch R (2007) Treatment of sickle cell anemia mouse model with iPS cells generated from autologous skin. Science 318(5858): 1920–1923
125. Wu SS, Li QC, Yin CQ, Xue W, Song CQ (2020) Advances in CRISPR/Cas-based gene therapy in human genetic diseases. Theranostics 10(10): 4374–4382
126. Xu S, Luk K, Yao Q, Shen AH, Zeng J, Wu Y, Luo HY, Brendel C, Pinello L, Chui DHK, Wolfe SA, Bauer DE (2019) Editing aberrant splice sites

efficiently restores beta-globin expression in beta-thalassemia. Blood 133(21):2255–2262
127. Roux LN, Petit I, Domart R, Concordet JP, Qu J, Zhou H, Joliot A, Ferrigno O, Aberdam D (2018) Modeling of aniridia-related keratopathy by CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing of human limbal epithelial cells and rescue by recombinant PAX6 protein. Stem Cells 36(9):1421–1429
128. Deinsberger J, Reisinger D, Weber B (2020) Global trends in clinical trials involving pluripotent stem cells: a systematic multi-database analysis. NPJ Regen Med 5:15
129. Doss MX, Sachinidis A (2019) Current challenges of iPSC-based disease modeling and therapeutic implications. Cell 8:5
130. Yamanaka S (2020) Pluripotent stem cell-based cell therapy-promise and challenges cell. Stem Cells 27(4):523–531
131. Giallongo S, Rehakova D, Raffaele M, Lo Re O, Koutna I, Vinciguerra M (2021) Redox and epigenetics in human pluripotent stem cells differentiation. Antioxid Redox Signal 34(4):335–349
132. Hotta A, Yamanaka S (2015) From genomics to gene therapy: induced pluripotent stem cells meet genome editing. Annu Rev Genet 49:47–70
133. Tao Y, Zhang SC (2016) Neural subtype specification from human pluripotent stem cells. Stem Cells 19(5):573–586
134. Du Y, Wang J, Jia J, Song N, Xiang C, Xu J, Hou Z, Su X, Liu B, Jiang T, Zhao D, Sun Y, Shu J et al (2014) Human hepatocytes with drug metabolic function induced from fibroblasts by lineage reprogramming. Stem Cells 14(3):394–403
135. Inamura M, Kawabata K, Takayama K, Tashiro K, Sakurai F, Katayama K, Toyoda M, Akutsu H, Miyagawa Y, Okita H, Kiyokawa N, Umezawa A, Hayakawa T et al (2011) Efficient generation of hepatoblasts from human ES cells and iPS cells by transient overexpression of homeobox gene HEX. Mol Ther 19(2):400–407
136. Takayama K, Inamura M, Kawabata K, Katayama K, Higuchi M, Tashiro K, Nonaka A, Sakurai F, Hayakawa T, Furue MK, Mizuguchi H (2012) Efficient generation of functional hepatocytes from human embryonic stem cells and induced pluripotent stem cells by HNF4alpha transduction. Mol Ther 20(1):127–137
137. Chambers SM, Fasano CA, Papapetrou EP, Tomishima M, Sadelain M, Studer L (2009) Highly efficient neural conversion of human ES and iPS cells by dual inhibition of SMAD signaling. Nat Biotechnol 27(3):275–280
138. Pang ZP, Yang N, Vierbuchen T, Ostermeier A, Fuentes DR, Yang TQ, Citri A, Sebastiano V, Marro S, Sudhof TC, Wernig M (2011) Induction of human neuronal cells by defined transcription factors. Nature 476(7359):220–223
139. Chanda S, Ang CE, Davila J, Pak C, Mall M, Lee QY, Ahlenius H, Jung SW, Sudhof TC, Wernig M (2014) Generation of induced neuronal cells by the single reprogramming factor ASCL1. Stem Cell Rep 3(2):282–296
140. Yamamizu K, Piao Y, Sharov AA, Zsiros V, Yu H, Nakazawa K, Schlessinger D, Ko MS (2013) Identification of transcription factors for lineage-specific ESC differentiation. Stem Cell Rep 1(6):545–559
141. Sun AX, Yuan Q, Tan S, Xiao Y, Wang D, Khoo AT, Sani L, Tran HD, Kim P, Chiew YS, Lee KJ, Yen YC, Ng HH et al (2016) Direct induction and functional maturation of forebrain GABAergic neurons from human pluripotent stem cells. Cell Rep 16(7):1942–1953
142. Theka I, Caiazzo M, Dvoretskova E, Leo D, Ungaro F, Curreli S, Manago F, Dell'Anno MT, Pezzoli G, Gainetdinov RR, Dityatev A, Broccoli V (2013) Rapid generation of functional dopaminergic neurons from human induced pluripotent stem cells through a single-step procedure using cell lineage transcription factors. Stem Cells Transl Med 2(6):473–479
143. Hester ME, Murtha MJ, Song S, Rao M, Miranda CJ, Meyer K, Tian J, Boulting G, Schaffer DV, Zhu MX, Pfaff SL, Gage FH, Kaspar BK (2011) Rapid and efficient generation of functional motor neurons from human pluripotent stem cells using gene delivered transcription factor codes. Mol Ther 19(10):1905–1912
144. Kwon C, Qian L, Cheng P, Nigam V, Arnold J, Srivastava D (2009) A regulatory pathway involving Notch1/beta-catenin/Isl1 determines cardiac progenitor cell fate. Nat Cell Biol 11(8):951–957
145. Fonoudi H, Yeganeh M, Fattahi F, Ghazizadeh Z, Rassouli H, Alikhani M, Mojarad BA, Baharvand H, Salekdeh GH, Aghdami N (2013) ISL1 protein transduction promotes cardiomyocyte differentiation from human embryonic stem cells. PLoS One 8(1):e55577
146. Bai F, Ho Lim C, Jia J, Santostefano K, Simmons C, Kasahara H, Wu W, Terada N, Jin S (2015) Directed differentiation of embryonic stem cells into cardiomyocytes by bacterial injection of defined transcription factors. Sci Rep 5:15014
147. Pearl JI, Lee AS, Leveson-Gower DB, Sun N, Ghosh Z, Lan F, Ransohoff J, Negrin RS, Davis MM, Wu JC (2011) Short-term immunosuppression promotes engraftment of embryonic and induced pluripotent stem cells. Cell Stem Cell 8(3):309–317
148. Vallabhajosyula P, Hirakata A, Shimizu A, Okumi M, Tchipashvili V, Hong H, Yamada K, Sachs DH (2013) Assessing the effect of immunosuppression on engraftment of pancreatic islets. Transplantation 96(4):372–378
149. Kruse V, Hamann C, Monecke S, Cyganek L, Elsner L, Hubscher D, Walter L, Streckfuss-Bomeke-K, Guan K, Dressel R (2015) Human induced pluripotent stem cells are targets for allogeneic and autologous natural killer (NK) cells and killing is partly mediated by the activating NK receptor DNAM-1. PLoS One 10(5):e0125544

150. Zhao T, Zhang ZN, Rong Z, Xu Y (2011) Immunogenicity of induced pluripotent stem cells. Nature 474(7350):212–215
151. Zhao T, Zhang ZN, Westenskow PD, Todorova D, Hu Z, Lin T, Rong Z, Kim J, He J, Wang M, Clegg DO, Yang YG, Zhang K et al (2015) Humanized mice reveal differential immunogenicity of cells derived from autologous induced pluripotent stem cells. Cell Stem Cell 17(3):353–359
152. Liu X, Li W, Fu X, Xu Y (2017) The immunogenicity and immune tolerance of pluripotent stem cell derivatives. Front Immunol 8:645
153. Takagi S, Mandai M, Gocho K, Hirami Y, Yamamoto M, Fujihara M, Sugita S, Kurimoto Y, Takahashi M (2019) Evaluation of transplanted autologous induced pluripotent stem cell-derived retinal pigment epithelium in exudative age-related macular degeneration ophthalmology. Retina 3(10):850–859
154. Naeem M, Majeed S, Hoque MZ, Ahmad I (2020) Latest developed strategies to minimize the off-target effects in CRISPR-Cas-mediated. Genome Editing Cells 9:7
155. Liu G, Zhang Y, Zhang T (2020) Computational approaches for effective CRISPR guide RNA design and evaluation. Comput Struct Biotechnol J 18:35–44
156. Wienert B, Wyman SK, Richardson CD, Yeh CD, Akcakaya P, Porritt MJ, Morlock M, Vu JT, Kazane KR, Watry HL, Judge LM, Conklin BR, Maresca M et al (2019) Unbiased detection of CRISPR off-targets in vivo using DISCOVER-Seq. Science 364(6437):286–289

Part VI

Future Prospects



Prospective Advances in Genome Editing Investigation

Gaetano Isola

Abstract

Genomic editing technology has been developed since 2010 through the use of some techniques, such as the clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeat (CRISPR) DNA sequences/CRISPR-associated (Cas) type-9 method, or through genetic manipulation tools derived from host response systems from some microbes (e.g., bacteria) against plasmids and viruses. The introduction of the CRISPR/Cas9 method as a genome-editing instrument represented an important step in the advancement of the genome-editing method thanks to the ease and effectiveness of use as well as the great adaptability to different biomedical areas. This paragraph will discuss all conceived technologies and new perspectives that can be applied in treating some associated genetic disorders, such as cardiovascular diseases, metabolic diseases, inflammatory diseases, and tumors by means of reversible and modulating control of gene expression epigenetics using genetic editing techniques.

Keywords

CRISPR/Cas9 · Genome editing · Cardiovascular diseases · Metabolic diseases · Oral diseases · Inflammatory diseases · Cancer · Epigenetic

1 Advances in Genome Editing Investigation

The advent of new generations of sequencing technologies and DNA microarrays has provided both clinicians and researchers with fundamental tools, which are useful for genetic polymorphism research [1]. At present, millions of types of structural variant single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) have been identified in various systemic diseases, with increasingly innovative methods of investigation [2].

In this research area, the ability to accurately and quickly genotype patients affected by certain pathologies has allowed researchers to identify the different genetic loci involved in the etiology of various complex diseases through genome-wide association methods [3, 4].

Specifically, genomic editing technology has been developed since 2010 through the clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeat (CRISPR) DNA sequences/CRISPR-associated (Cas) type-9 method, or through genetic manipulation tools derived from host response systems from some microbes (e.g., bacteria) against

G. Isola (✉)
Department of General Surgery and Surgical-Medical Specialties, School of Dentistry, University of Catania, Catania, Italy
e-mail: gaetano.isola@unict.it

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_19

plasmids and viruses. However, in 1950, Muller [5] and Auerbach [1] demonstrated that the rate of mutagenesis at gene level could be improved or reduced by radiation or biochemical treatment. Subsequently, specific studies alternated between inserting transposons inserted into the body with the main function of altering some genomic sequences sites, including genomes 1 and 2.

The genome-editing technique involves the use of methods designed to generate double-stranded DNA breaks in specific chosen in genomic sequence positions. The breaking of the double strand allows activating a specific cellular DNA repair mechanism and, consequently, improves the efficiency of genomic alternation at different orders. In doing so, the induced genomic alteration can no longer occur randomly and rarely but with a well-defined frequency of about 1 in 10 sequences. This method, therefore, has begun to make it possible to assume a possible human genome changing or replacing for therapeutic targets [6].

The double-strand break obtained by genomic editing can determine different types of gene modifications, mainly related to the two usual methods, which it happens in cell restorations through the different filament breaks (Fig. 1) [7, 8].

The double-strand break technique is centered through extremely programmable nucleases that, through double-stranded breaks, cause variations in specific genome portion of interest, which are subsequently restored by well-defined cell-repair methods.

Such methods are nonhomologous end junction (NHEJ) and homology-directed repair (HDR) (Fig. 1). The repair allows the development of gene insertions, deletions, or replacements in a specific well-defined portion in order to correct or replace gene dysfunction [9, 10].

In the NHEJ technique, the free ends of the DNA molecule generated through specific double-strand breakdown are then assembled [10] through a predefined repair process, which can be used in all types of cell jambs. However, NHEJ has been shown to be a repair process with several imperfections that sometimes evolve into the insertion or semi-random deletion of some "Indel" type base pairs in the DNA. Once inserted in the encrypting portion of a specific gene, the indel determined a frameshift mutations or in-frame gene deletions. Once inserted in the specific gene sequence, the indel will represent frameshift mutations or in-frame deletions. This process will mix some portions of the amino acid sequence or the early truncation of some genomic protein products, which can finally lead to the addition or removal of some target protein amino acid portions [11].

However, suppose the modification of the genome is used in order to produce two double-stranded chromosome disruptions; in that case, the DNA segment that is inserted between the interruption created can be misplaced if the free ends at the margins are conjuncted. This mechanism determines the portion, the entire gene, or even more gene removal of a specific chromosomal region.

Therefore, unlike NHEJ, which can cause unpredictable consequences (even there are large deletions that also extend to other genes besides the affected one), the HDR mechanism is high specific repair workflow that determines to carry out gene mutation corrections, which are characteristics of some diseases. However, as the HDR technique is limited to exclusive parts of the cell cycle, the HDR method also has some disadvantages. One is represented by a less efficient editing, which occurs when increasing cells are involved [12, 13]. Secondly, HDR is a technique that does not develop in nonproliferating cells. This makes it significantly limiting in cardiovascular diseases, that is, when it should be used on postnatal cardiomyocytes and other typical types of cells affected by cardiovascular disease. Finally, mediated HDR editing requires a highly customized repair model that is difficult to orchestrate.

Therefore, the HDR method limits make the interruption or deletion of genes obtained by the NHEJ technique more practicable in the correction of mutations or gene insertion when it is not possible to practice HDR, with important repercussions in the therapeutic application of genome editing.

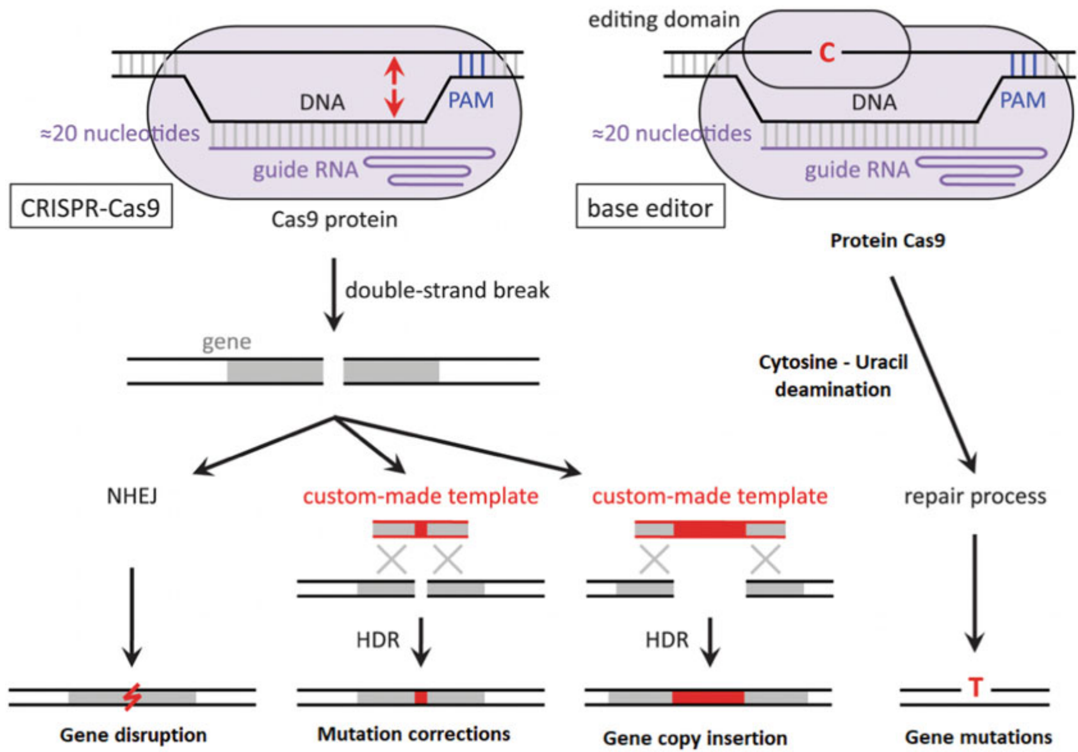


Fig. 1 Genome editing against cardiovascular disease. Left side, the CRISPR-Cas9 is a specific technique to a certain portion of the protospacer-adjacent DNA genome (PAM) and from the protospacer sequence in the guide RNA. The fracture of the genomic portion is subsequently repaired through some portions called nonhomologous junction (NHEJ) or direct homology repair (HDR). Right side, the basic editor does not determine a specific double-stranded fragmentation, but a conversion of one or more cytosine bases into a uracil base takes place, which is subsequently replaced with a thymine base. This process finally determines a complementary change on the opposite side of the chain of guanine-adenine sites [7]

2 CRISPR/Cas9 Editing Properties and Limits

The introduction of the CRISPR/Cas9 method as a genome-editing technique [14, 15] represented an important step in the advancement of the genome-editing method thanks to the ease and effectiveness of use as well as the great adaptability to different biomedical areas. CRISPR/Cas9 systems are implemented through adaptive immune mechanisms capable of correcting intrinsic errors in the DNA that are the basis of various diseases. Genome editing mainly includes techniques such as modifiable nucleases, which are zinc finger nucleases [16], effector nucleases similar to the transcription activator [17] meganuclease [18], and, finally, the CRISPR/Cas9 system that is implemented through short palindromic repeats at regular intervals associated with the CRISPR locus [19].

The CRISP/Cas9 method considers that, following the viral infection, the contact of a bacterial cell to external DNA sequences in its cytoplasm determines a specific actions in its host immune system that starts to aggregate foreign DNA sequences into its bacterial genome. These sequences are then expressed and translated as ribonucleic acid (RNA) portions, which bind the Cas9 proteins. Then, the host immune system recognizes the foreign sequences through RNA molecules and, through Cas9 or similar

proteins, neutralizes these DNA sequences through cleavage [20].

The CRISPR/Cas9 system is composed by both RNA portion and a protein. Specifically, the Cas9 protein scans and unwinds double-stranded DNA, recognizes and binds specific DNA and RNA sequences, and produces a double-stranded DNA breakdown. In the CRISPR-Cas9, a long component comprises hundreds of nucleotides and a combination of two RNA portions used in CRISPR-Cas9 systems of a bacterial nature. The modification induced by the CRISPR/Cas9 sequence relays a different RNA binding complex in some DNA portions that host complementary sequences to the protospacer sequence motif (PAM) [21].

Compared to other techniques, CRISPR/Cas9 allows it to be revised to a wide range of use, just in order to determine a protein RNA-DNA protein complex (dCas9 protein), which, combined with an RNA director, can be customized in a specific DNA binding domain that can be linked to other portions (Fig. 2) [22], which sometimes can allow specific double-stranded breakdown in some target genome sites that could lead to unexpected results [23, 24].

Furthermore, it is sometimes hard to determine cell production that contains alleles with HDR-mediated modification while the heterozygous alleles or some other cells that had alleles with more specific HDR-mediated homozygous changes. This possibility is highly limiting in situations where there is a need of beneficial intervention in order to correct a single mutation [25].

However, the CRISPR/Cas9 system represents a highly specific and reference tool for the treatment of various pathologies with genetic-based dysfunctions and for the study of these forms of diseases on both human and animal models. More specifically, the therapy carried out through genomic editing can determine the restoration of the correct gene function or compensate for some gene mutations. If the gene mutation cannot be repaired because of a specific genomic environment, a pseudogene would be triggered to exchange the mutated genetic factor [26].

Given the rapid progression of therapeutic tools through genome editing techniques, different preliminary systems were developed, which could give good possibility to overcome the current limits in various forms of human pathologies.

The following paragraphs will address the newly conceived technologies that can be applied in treating some associated genetic disorders, such as cardiovascular diseases, metabolic diseases, inflammatory diseases, and tumors by means of reversible and modulating control of gene expression epigenetics using genetic editing techniques.

3 Advances in Genome Editing Investigation in Cardiovascular Disease Applications

In recent years, research on cardiovascular diseases (CVD) linked to genetic disorders is going to renew in a strong revolution through the use of CRISPR/Cas9 or other editing genome techniques. The CRISPR/Cas9 is the most common genome editing platform that comprises an RNA-driven nuclease (Cas9), which determines double-stranded DNA breakdown in CRISPR/Cas9 that determines small indel gene mutations or insertions of some DNA fragments in some cardiovascular forms of diseases [27, 28].

Specifically, the fusion of Cas9 with other protein fractions allows better directing of enzymatic mechanisms in some genome portions, including transcriptional or repressor proteins, chromatin modifying, and reverse transcriptase in cardiovascular disease models [29, 30].

Actually, several pieces of evidence have shown that genomic variants represent the etiology of different forms of cardiomyopathies. These genomic variants pose a problematic therapeutic challenge for both physicians and patients. In fact, the pathogenicity's determination should include a careful analysis in the specific genomic context of that pathology and evaluate the genomic interactions with reference to the environmental context, also predicting the presence of patient-derived pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs). The iPSCs can be distinguished into a multitude

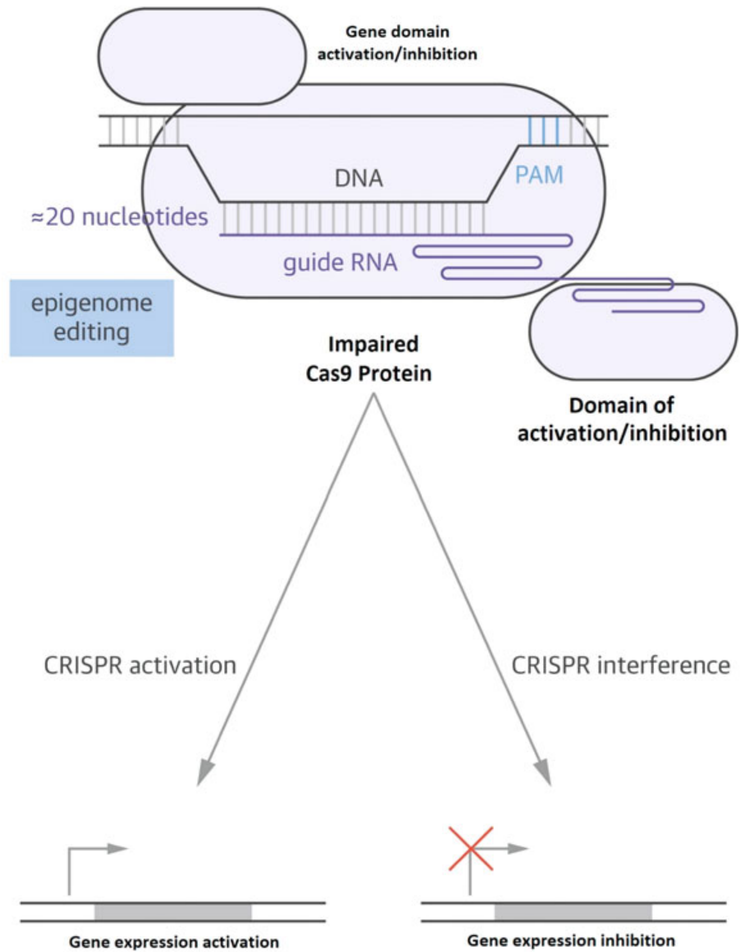


Fig. 2 Cas9 (dCas9) technique that can determine gene transcriptional inhibition or activation without altering the DNA sequence [22]

of type of cells involved in CVD, as macrophages or cardiomyocytes. In this regard, Ma et al. [31] found iPSCs in healthy subjects using a genetic variant of the gene MYL3 encoding the specific light chain of myosin 3, which is an important sarcomeric protein underlying a cardiovascular disorder.

In fact, it has been shown that MYL3 gene mutations are related to some forms of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy in a highly damaging and disabling condition [32]. In this pathology, CRISPR/Cas9 editing system was applied to produce different isoforms of iPSC with some specific and corrected homozygous alleles in wild form that were distinguished in cardiomyocytes (iPSC-CM) [31].

CRISPR/Cas9 editing using iPSC is a system applied in the analysis of gene interactions. A group of authors [33] have shown that tropomyosin1 (TPM1) and vinculin (VCL) gene interaction had an influence on the grades of dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM) cases. In these forms, the pathogenicity and mutations associated with TPM1 and VCL that significantly influenced the altered contractility cardiomyocytes and their organization into sarcomeres were determined by techniques using cells generated from human iPSCs of the same patient and through the CRISPR/Cas9 genome (hESC) [34]. Similarly, other studies have shown that, through iPSC analysis methods, there were some forms of cardiomyopathy associated with Duchenne muscular dystrophy [35].

Moreover, important enhancements have been performed with gene editing for the study of the cardiovascular system, specifically in the autosomal dominant disorders in which this technique represents an exclusive chance for the destruction of the allele-specific gene.

Pathologies directly related to cardiac disorders have also been demonstrated to be the correct target for genome editing. Some authors have shown that in animal models affected by transgenic cardiomyopathy, Cas9 was shown to specifically determine the ablation of the expression of some genes at myocardial level [36]. Specifically, it has been highlighted that the CRISPR/Cas9 deletion inhibits the Mhy6 gene (gene coding for some cardiac alpha-myosin heavy chains), causing, after 10 days post-birth, a dilation of the atria and ventricles, thinning of the walls of the ventricle, cardiac dilatation, and heart failure [36]. However, other studies have revealed that administering some adeno-associated virus (AAV) forms of gRNA that targeted Sav1 and Tbx20 determined slight growth in the hypertrophy of the heart and some associated biomarkers [37]. Moreover, the use of AAV9 to deliver gRNAs targeted to the protein that encodes JPH2 (Junctophilin 2-protein binding T tubule membranes to the sarcoplasmic reticulum) occasioned in ventricular dilation and hypertrophy and failure and finally in death in some neonatal mice [38].

Genome editing has also been shown to be useful in cases of familial Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome, a condition that determines a paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia. Usually, this pathology can cause severe progressive heart failure or sudden cardiac death from ventricular tachyarrhythmia if patients are not treated promptly by surgical ablation [39]. However, in this regard, in a mice WPW model that contain PRKAG2 gene mutation [39], it was shown that the AAV9-Cas9 editing technique and gRNA leveling the 1589A>G sequence resulted in a clear improvement of the pathology, also having a key part in the H530R PRKAG2-WPW syndrome in the prevention of cell death [39]. Surprisingly, the use of genome-editing techniques has shown to improve and restore the expression of proteins associated with cardiomyocytes in most of the models analyzed, together with an improvement in the physiological muscle tissue histology [40].

The abovementioned evidence has underlined the CRISPR/Cas9 to be very useful for obtaining modifications in the long-term run for otherwise genetic diseases that are difficult to be approached. On the basis of the aforementioned studies and despite the evidence presented above, they are still preliminary, and it can be defined that the genome-editing technique is useful for analyzing and early avoiding unwanted mutations in cardiovascular diseases, with highly promising results in the coming years.

4 Advances in Genome Editing Investigation in Metabolic Disease Application

Diabetes mellitus and metabolic syndromes are highly prevalent chronic diseases worldwide and cause important systemic impairments if not well treated. There are specific genetic mutations and complex gene-environment interactions based on the etiopathogenesis of metabolic diseases. In this regard, in recent years, there is increasingly more evidence regarding the human stem cells associated to specific genetic modeling and genome-editing techniques.

Specifically, there are some techniques associated with specific genome editing such as conventional homologous recombination (HR), zinc finger nuclease (ZFN), effector nucleases similar to the activator of transcription (TALEN), or the CRISPR/Cas system [41] that have been demonstrated, in several preclinical models, as highly useful techniques associated with hPSCs as donor cells in order to create mutations in hPSCs.

The first studies in this regard compared the usefulness of using ZFN, enzymes containing DNA binding domains fused to a DNA cleavage domain (usually derived from a bacterial enzyme IIS FokI located in the C-terminal portion) [42]. These DNA binding domains are capable of recognizing specific base pairs that enable

homing to target DNA surveyed by DNA cleavage [43, 44]. However, for DNA cleavage to occur, there is a need of ZFN pairs that bind the opposite strands of DNA in a specific region while stimulating an endogenous DNA repair mechanism [16] that, associated to homologous donors, could lead to a target allele substitution.

Following the ZFN uses, effecter nucleases similar to transcription activators (TALEN) has been discovered from bacterial proteins of xanthomonas that contains amino acid domains of tandem repeats capable of having specific DNA targets. The TALEN represent amino acid variables 12 and 13, which determine the strong bond with DNA. If well applied, TALEN can be customized for targeted use or to DNA through DNA cleavage domain fusion with which TALE-like nucleases (TALEN) are generated [45].

Compared to the ZFN method, TALENs are simpler to design and prototype, with greater cell specificity associated with fewer side effects [46, 47]. However, the CRISPR/Cas9 method has been shown to be better compared to ZFN and TALEN since it is based on the RNA that positions itself in DNA, unlike TALEN and ZFN that depend on the use of customized DNA target proteins. Furthermore, the CRISPR/Cas9 technique has been shown to be technically more suitable and easier to use in precisely cutting the target DNA [48].

Advancement in techniques has led to the development of the CRISPR method, an organized model with repetitions ranging from 24 to 48 base pairs. These sequences would be followed by reverse-oriented DNA sequences. After the phage attack, the bacterium responds by first transcribing the spacer and then the palindromic DNA into a long RNA-like molecule. In turn, this molecule is then split by RNase III, involving Cas9 and transactivating CRISPR RNA (tracrRNA), which carries short space derived RNA (CRISPR RNA; crRNA) into the cell [49]. The CRISPR/Cas systems currently in use come from bacteria such as *Streptococcus thermophilus*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Neisseria meningitides*, and *Treponema denticola*.

There are several risk variants with specific alleles associated with type II diabetes or with states of impaired fasting hyperglycemia (HOMA-B and HOMA-IR) (Table 1) [44, 50].

However, even if the overall impact of gene variant was demonstrated in less than 10% of type II diabetes cases, understanding the genetic variant mechanisms could have significant consequences for treatments of diabetes or metabolic diseases [51]. In this regard, hPSCs' impact associated with genome modification methods, such as the transcription factor 7 gene similar to 2 (TCF7L2), could lead to highly innovative results. In this regard, TCF7L2 has been considered for the survival and function of pancreatic beta cells [52], especially in the more aggressive variants of type II diabetes [53]. It has been demonstrated that, through its epigenetic variants, TCF7L2 can influence the therapeutic response to sulfonylureas [54] and precisely modulate the function of pancreatic islets [55].

However, the currently evident mechanisms appear to possess great potential for preventive therapy of type II diabetes through hPSC and genome editing. Therefore, in the next few years, certain developments will allow extrapolating results deriving from these studies that can be applied to routine clinical practice, especially on gene variants associated with type II diabetes and different forms of familial metabolic disease on a strictly genetic basis.

5 Advances in Genome Editing Investigation in Inflammatory Disease, Oral Diseases, Malformations and Cancer

In recent years, a growing body of evidence has shown an important role of genomics and metagenomics in the genesis of various inflammatory and neoplastic diseases, associated with a number of studies that are increasingly trying to find mediators for early disease diagnosis. Since saliva is an accessible and easy to collect medium, several studies have highlighted how a saliva sample, which can be regularly obtained during a routine medical or dental visit, could be useful in obtaining early biomarkers of meta-genomic

Table 1 Some genetic causes of metabolic syndromes

Disease	Genes
Forms of diabetes	
Genes associated with type 1 diabetes	Variants or single-nucleotide polymorphisms
HLA DR-DQ, HLA-B, HLA-A, INS	
PTPN22	R620W, 1858C/T
IL2RA/CD25	rs706778, rs3118470, rs41295061, rs35285258
CTLA4	A17T
IFIH1/MDA5	rs1990760
CLEC16A/KIAA0350	rs2903692, rs725613, rs17673553
ERBB3	rs2271189, rs11171747, rs2292399
PTPN2	rs2542151, rs1893217
UBASH3A/STS2	T946A
IL18	rs1946519, rs1946518, rs187238
RANTES	rs4251719, rs2306630, rs2107538
Genes involved with type 2 diabetes	Variants or single-nucleotide polymorphisms
TCF7L2 (strongest)	rs7903146, rs7901695, rs12255372, rs10885409, rs12573128
PPARG	Pro12Ala (P12A)/rs1801282
KCNJ11	Glu23Lys (E23K)/rs5219, C42R
HHEX/IDE	rs1111875, rs7923837, rs5015480, rs7923837
SLC30A8	Arg325Trp/rs13266634, rs3802177, rs2466293
CDKAL1	rs7756992, rs7754840, rs10946398, rs9465871, rs4712523, rs4712524, rs6931514
IGF2BP2	rs4402960, rs1470579, rs6769511
CDKN2A/B	rs10811661, rs1412829
ABCC8	Ala1369Ser (A1369S)/rs757110, Y356C
MTNR1B/ADCY5	rs10830963, rs1387153, rs2877716, rs1374645, rs2166706, rs10930963
KCNQ1	rs2237892, rs2237895, rs2237897, rs231362, rs2283228, rs163182, rs2299620
GCKR	P446L, rs780094, rs1260326
GCK	rs1799884, -30G/A polymorphism in promoter, rs4607517
HNF1A	G319S, rs7957197
ADAMTS9	rs4607103
G6PC2	rs560887, rs552976
JAZF1	rs864745
CDC123/CAMK1D	rs12779790, rs10906115
IRS1	rs2943641
WFS1	rs4689388, rs1801214
DUSP9	rs5945326
Genes involved with metabolic syndrome and obesity	Variants or single-nucleotide polymorphisms
GNPDA2	rs10938397
LYPLAL1/SLC30A10	rs4846567, rs2605100, rs11118316
HMGCR	rs7703051, rs12654264, rs3846663, rs3846662
PTP-1B/PTPN1	rs718049, rs2282146, rs1885177, 1484insG, P303P, P387L
CD36	rs1049673, rs3211931, rs3211938, rs1194197, rs1761667
SFRS10-ETV5-DGKG	rs7647305
MSRA/TNKS	rs545854
NPC1	rs1805081
MAP2K5/SKOR1	rs2241423

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Disease	Genes
Forms of diabetes	
NRXN3	rs10146997, rs11624704
PCSK1	rs6235, rs1799904
GRB14	rs13389219
VEGFA	rs6905288, rs9472138
INPPL1/SHIP2	rs2276047, rs9886, rs2276048
AHSG	rs2077119, rs4917
GHRL	rs696217, rs26802
NISCH/STAB1	rs6784615
LEPR	rs1137101
ADAMTS9	rs13060013
NUDT3	rs206936
GPR120	R270H
KLF9	rs11142387
LRP1B	rs2890652

diseases. Moreover, it has also been shown that even the human microbiome can significantly affect systemic health [56], by influencing environmental and innate factors and conditioning the genomic importance of an individual through a meta-genomic approach. For these reasons, large-scale health and dental education should be increasingly stimulated, in order to be able to prepare in the future large-scale genome editing screening, accompanied by other noninvasive salivary-type genetic analyzes.

Genome-editing approaches through CRISPR/Cas-associated nuclease systems are currently one of the most recent approaches in the field of genomics [23, 57] for the treatment of different pathologies with a personalized or precision approach. In this regard, the treatment of various forms of inflammatory diseases and cancer through a personalized approach using targeted pharmacotherapies with genetic testing is currently the last evidence on the genomic applications. The therapeutic occasion for several inflammatory or cancer diseases (especially oral cancer) is enormous and includes the improvement of treatment strategies, tissue engineering, and interventions related to metagenomic lesions of microbiome origin [58].

For the craniofacial district, genome procedures have been recently developed; however, the evidence is limited due to the few studies present in the literature.

Caries and periodontitis are the extremely common infectious diseases of the oral facial district and the human body, mainly due to dysbiosis of the oral microbiome associated with bacterial plaque. In this regard, CRISPR loci have been associated with most human oral microbiota [59]. A group of authors [60] have reported that the CRISPR system of an oral bacteria responsible for caries, the *Streptococcus mutans (S. mutans)*, may play an important part in bacterial/antibiotic resistance prevention through gene resistance. This important discovery carries out the scientific community's interest to exploit *S. mutans* antibiotic resistance by targeting its CRISPR system. In this regard, studies evaluating CRISPR loci in the oral biofilm of periodontitis and healthy patients found a strict correlation between altered CRISPR components and oral bacteria [61]. It can be hypothesized that the CRISPR system may be closely linked to the delicate balance of the oral microbiome and may be one of the main targets, in the future, for modulation of the oral microbiome against periodontal disease and other inflammatory-based diseases. Alternatively, it could be hypothesized to use CRISPR in patients with infectious-based pathology in order to improve the host's inflammatory response and modulate it accordingly.

Furthermore, epigenetic anomalies have become a presumed source of various cancer forms and craniofacial anomalies [62, 63]. In this regard, oral and head and neck cancer are one of the most common malignancies, with an incidence nearly of 70,000 cases in the United States in 2020 [64]. With an epigenetic origin, head and neck cancer could greatly benefit from CRIPSR/Cas9 techniques. Specifically, Cas9 epigenetic alterations could be applied in order to analyze transcriptional regulations in some forms of disease and early cancer and could be also extended in some other forms of oral and craniofacial pathologies.

Preliminary studies in this area corroborate the involvement of LDB1 and fibronectin in regulating tumor cells' invasiveness [65, 66] by identifying new therapeutic targets such as MUL1-HSPA5 and p75NTR [67–69]. It can be concluded that even for various forms of cancers, CRISPR has been shown to provide greater therapeutic possibilities.

6 Future Directions

In recent years, several more innovative and versatile genome-editing systems have been analyzed and are still under development in the field of genome editing, with the possibility of introducing certain variations in the subject stem cells to define specific therapeutic effects. Cell phenotyping of genome-modified stem cell-derived will represent a highly innovative frontier in gene-editing therapies.

It was already reassured evidence of the therapeutic role of genome editing to treat various systemic diseases, such as hypercholesterolemia, hypertriglyceridemia, ventricular tachycardia, metabolic diseases, and Duchenne muscular dystrophy and various malformations and pathologies of the craniofacial district, as well as in some forms of cancers. However, among the different in vitro and animal models, one of the most reliable seems to be represented by the CRISPR/Cas system, which can be adapted according to the specific editing enzyme, the design, the type of target cell.

At present, the genome-editing technique has shown to be very promising in various in vitro or animal models, but, in the coming years, it will be a tool of wide use in the routine clinical setting for the treatment of various pathologies with a precise and customized approach.

Acknowledgments The present chapter was supported by the funds of the Department of General Surgery and Surgical-Medical Specialties, School of Dentistry, University of Catania, Italy.

Competing Financial Interests The authors declare no competing financial interests.

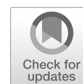
References

1. Auerbach C, Robson JM (1947) Tests of chemical substances for mutagenic action. Proc R Soc 62:284–291
2. Rothstein RJ (1983) One-step gene disruption in yeast. Methods Enzymol 101:202–211
3. Smithies O, Gregg RG, Boggs SS, Koralewski MA, Kucherlapati RS (1985) Insertion of DNA sequences into the human chromosomal beta-globin locus by homologous recombination. Nature 317(6034): 230–234
4. Scherer S, Davis RW (1979) Replacement of chromosome segments with altered DNA sequences constructed in vitro. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 76(10):4951–4955
5. Muller HJ (1927) Artificial transmutation of the gene. Science 66(1699):84–87
6. Carroll D (2017) Genome editing: past, present, and future. Yale J Biol Med 90(4):653–659
7. Chadwick AC, Musunuru K (2018) CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing for treatment of atherogenic dyslipidemia. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 38(1): 12–18
8. West SC (2003) Molecular views of recombination proteins and their control. Nat Rev 4(6):435–445
9. Sander JD, Joung JK (2014) CRISPR-Cas systems for editing, regulating and targeting genomes. Nat Biotechnol 32(4):347–355
10. Cox DB, Platt RJ, Zhang F (2015) Therapeutic genome editing: prospects and challenges. Nat Med 21(2):121–131
11. Rodriguez-Rodriguez DR, Ramirez-Solis R, Garza-Elizondo MA, Garza-Rodriguez ML, Barrera-Saldana HA (2019) Genome editing: a perspective on the application of CRISPR/Cas9 to study human diseases. Int J Mol Med 43(4):1559–1574
12. Singh V, Braddick D, Dhar PK (2017) Exploring the potential of genome editing CRISPR-Cas9 technology. Gene 599:1–18

13. Makarova KS, Wolf YI, Alkhnbashi OS, Costa F, Shah SA, Saunders SJ, Barrangou R, Brouns SJ, Charpentier E, Haft DH, Horvath P, Moineau S, Mojica FJ, Terns RM, Terns MP, White MF, Yakunin AF, Garrett RA, van der Oost J, Backofen R, Koonin EV (2015) An updated evolutionary classification of CRISPR-Cas systems. Nat Rev 13(11):722–736
14. Makarova KS, Aravind L, Grishin NV, Rogozin IB, Koonin EV (2002) A DNA repair system specific for thermophilic Archaea and bacteria predicted by genomic context analysis. Nucleic Acids Res 30(2): 482–496
15. DeBoy RT, Mongodin EF, Emerson JB, Nelson KE (2006) Chromosome evolution in the thermotogales: large-scale inversions and strain diversification of CRISPR sequences. J Bacteriol 188(7):2364–2374
16. Urnov FD, Rebar EJ, Holmes MC, Zhang HS, Gregory PD (2010) Genome editing with engineered zinc finger nucleases. Nat Rev 11(9):636–646
17. Miller JC, Tan S, Qiao G, Barlow KA, Wang J, Xia DF, Meng X, Paschon DE, Leung E, Hinkley SJ, Dulay GP, Hua KL, Ankoudinova I, Cost GJ, Urnov FD, Zhang HS, Holmes MC, Zhang L, Gregory PD, Rebar EJ (2011) A TALE nuclease architecture for efficient genome editing. Nat Biotechnol 29(2): 143–148
18. Epinat JC, Arnould S, Chames P, Rochaix P, Desfontaines D, Puzin C, Patin A, Zanghellini A, Paques F, Lacroix E (2003) A novel engineered meganuclease induces homologous recombination in yeast and mammalian cells. Nucleic Acids Res 31(11): 2952–2962
19. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
20. Hartmann O, Reissland M, Maier CR, Fischer T, Prieto-Garcia C, Baluapuri A, Schwarz J, Schmitz W, Garrido-Rodriguez M, Pahor N, Davies CC, Bassermann F, Orian A, Wolf E, Schulze A, Calzado MA, Rosenfeldt MT, Diefenbacher ME (2021) Implementation of CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing to generate murine lung cancer models that depict the mutational landscape of human disease. Front Cell Dev Biol 9:641618
21. Gupta R, Gupta D, Ahmed KT, Dey D, Singh R, Swarnakar S, Ravichandiran V, Roy S, Ghosh D (2021) Modification of Cas9, gRNA and PAM: key to further regulate genome editing and its applications. Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci 178:85–98
22. Musunuru K (2017) Genome editing: the recent history and perspective in cardiovascular diseases. J Am Coll Cardiol 70(22):2808–2821
23. Cong L, Ran FA, Cox D, Lin S, Barretto R, Habib N, Hsu PD, Wu X, Jiang W, Marraffini LA, Zhang F (2013) Multiplex genome engineering using CRISPR/Cas systems. Science 339(6121):819–823
24. Price AA, Sampson TR, Ratner HK, Grakoui A, Weiss DS (2015) Cas9-mediated targeting of viral RNA in eukaryotic cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112(19): 6164–6169
25. Kaur K, Gupta AK, Rajput A, Kumar M (2016) Ge-CRISPR - an integrated pipeline for the prediction and analysis of sgRNAs genome editing efficiency for CRISPR/Cas system. Sci Rep 6:30870
26. Merling RK, Kuhns DB, Sweeney CL, Wu X, Burkett S, Chu J, Lee J, Koontz S, Di Pasquale G, Afione SA, Chiorini JA, Kang EM, Choi U, De Ravin SS, Malech HL (2017) Gene-edited pseudogene resurrection corrects p47(phox)-deficient chronic granulomatous disease. Blood Adv 1(4):270–278
27. Kleinstiver BP, Prew MS, Tsai SQ, Topkar VV, Nguyen NT, Zheng Z, Gonzales AP, Li Z, Peterson RT, Yeh JR, Aryee MJ, Joung JK (2015) Engineered CRISPR-Cas9 nucleases with altered PAM specificities. Nature 523(7561):481–485
28. Slaymaker IM, Gao L, Zetsche B, Scott DA, Yan WX, Zhang F (2016) Rationally engineered Cas9 nucleases with improved specificity. Science 351(6268):84–88
29. Adli M (2018) The CRISPR tool kit for genome editing and beyond. Nat Commun 9(1):1911
30. Pickar-Oliver A, Gersbach CA (2019) The next generation of CRISPR-Cas technologies and applications. Mol Cell Biol 20(8):490–507
31. Ma N, Zhang JZ, Itzhaki I, Zhang SL, Chen HD, Haddad F, Kitani T, Wilson KD, Tian L, Shrestha R, Wu HD, Lam CK, Sayed N, Wu JC (2018) Determining the pathogenicity of a genomic variant of uncertain significance using CRISPR/Cas9 and human-induced pluripotent stem cells. Circulation 138(23):2666–2681
32. Andersen PS, Hedley PL, Page SP, Syrris P, Moolman-Smook JC, McKenna WJ, Elliott PM, Christiansen M (2012) A novel myosin essential light chain mutation causes hypertrophic cardiomyopathy with late onset and low expressivity. Biochem Res Int 2012:685108
33. Carreras A, Pane LS, Nitsch R, Madeyski-Bengtson K, Porritt M, Akcakaya P, Taheri-Ghahfarokhi A, Ericson E, Bjursell M, Perez-Alcazar M, Seeliger F, Althage M, Knoll R, Hicks R, Mayr LM, Perkins R, Linden D, Boren J, Bohlooly YM, Maresca M (2019) In vivo genome and base editing of a human PCSK9 knock-in hypercholesterolemic mouse model. BMC Biol 17(1):4
34. Deacon DC, Happe CL, Chen C, Tedeschi N, Manso AM, Li T, Dalton ND, Peng Q, Farah EN, Gu Y, Tenerelli KP, Tran VD, Chen J, Peterson KL, Schork NJ, Adler ED, Engler AJ, Ross RS, Chi NC (2019) Combinatorial interactions of genetic variants in human cardiomyopathy. Nat Biomed Eng 3(2): 147–157
35. Long C, Li H, Tiburcy M, Rodriguez-Caycedo C, Kyrychenko V, Zhou H, Zhang Y, Min YL, Shelton JM, Mammen PPA, Liaw NY, Zimmermann WH, Bassel-Duby R, Schneider JW, Olson EN (2018) Correction of diverse muscular dystrophy mutations in human engineered heart muscle by single-site genome editing. Sci Adv 4(1):9004

36. Carroll KJ, Makarewich CA, McAnally J, Anderson DM, Zentilin L, Liu N, Giacca M, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2016) A mouse model for adult cardiac-specific gene deletion with CRISPR/Cas9. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113(2):338–343
37. Johansen AK, Molenaar B, Versteeg D, Leitoguinho AR, Demkes C, Spanjaard B, de Ruiter H, Akbari Moqadam F, Kooijman L, Zentilin L, Giacca M, van Rooij E (2017) Postnatal cardiac gene editing using CRISPR/Cas9 with AAV9-mediated delivery of short guide RNAs results in mosaic gene disruption. Circ Res 121(10):1168–1181
38. Guo Y, VanDusen NJ, Zhang L, Gu W, Sethi I, Guatimosim S, Ma Q, Jardin BD, Ai Y, Zhang D, Chen B, Guo A, Yuan GC, Song LS, Pu WT (2017) Analysis of cardiac myocyte maturation using CASAAV, a platform for rapid dissection of cardiac myocyte gene function in vivo. Circ Res 120(12): 1874–1888
39. Xie C, Zhang YP, Song L, Luo J, Qi W, Hu J, Lu D, Yang Z, Zhang J, Xiao J, Zhou B, Du JL, Jing N, Liu Y, Wang Y, Li BL, Song BL, Yan Y (2016) Genome editing with CRISPR/Cas9 in postnatal mice corrects PRKAG2 cardiac syndrome. Cell Res 26(10): 1099–1111
40. Amoasii L, Hildyard JCW, Li H, Sanchez-Ortiz E, Mireault A, Caballero D, Harron R, Stathopoulou TR, Massey C, Shelton JM, Bassel-Duby R, Piercy RJ, Olson EN (2018) Gene editing restores dystrophin expression in a canine model of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Science 362(6410):86–91
41. Gaj T, Gersbach CA, Barbas CF (2013) ZFN, TALEN, and CRISPR/Cas-based methods for genome engineering. Trends Biotechnol 31(7):397–405
42. Kim YG, Cha J, Chandrasegaran S (1996) Hybrid restriction enzymes: zinc finger fusions to Fok I cleavage domain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93(3): 1156–1160
43. Porteus MH, Carroll D (2005) Gene targeting using zinc finger nucleases. Nat Biotechnol 23(8):967–973
44. Teo AK, Gupta MK, Doria A, Kulkarni RN (2015) Dissecting diabetes/metabolic disease mechanisms using pluripotent stem cells and genome editing tools. Mol Metabol 4(9):593–604
45. Joung JK, Sander JD (2013) TALENs: a widely applicable technology for targeted genome editing. Mol Cell Biol 14(1):49–55
46. Reyon D, Khayter C, Regan MR, Joung JK, Sander JD (2012) Engineering designer transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs) by REAL or REAL-fast assembly. Curr Protoc Mol Biol 12:12–15
47. Mussolino C, Morbitzer R, Lutge F, Dannemann N, Lahaye T, Cathomen T (2011) A novel TALE nuclease scaffold enables high genome editing activity in combination with low toxicity. Nucleic Acids Res 39(21):9283–9293
48. Ding Q, Regan SN, Xia Y, Oostrom LA, Cowan CA, Musunuru K (2013) Enhanced efficiency of human pluripotent stem cell genome editing through replacing TALENs with CRISPRs. Cell Stem Cell 12(4): 393–394
49. Deltcheva E, Chylinski K, Sharma CM, Gonzales K, Chao Y, Pirzada ZA, Eckert MR, Vogel J, Charpentier E (2011) CRISPR RNA maturation by trans-encoded small RNA and host factor RNase III. Nature 471(7340):602–607
50. Drong AW, Lindgren CM, McCarthy MI (2012) The genetic and epigenetic basis of type 2 diabetes and obesity. Clin Pharmacol Ther 92(6):707–715
51. Travers ME, McCarthy MI (2011) Type 2 diabetes and obesity: genomics and the clinic. Hum Genet 130(1): 41–58
52. Shu L, Sauter NS, Schulthess FT, Matveyenko AV, Oberholzer J, Maedler K (2008) Transcription factor 7-like 2 regulates beta-cell survival and function in human pancreatic islets. Diabetes 57(3):645–653
53. Grant SF, Thorleifsson G, Reynisdottir I, Benediktsson R, Manolescu A, Sainz J, Helgason A, Stefansson H, Emilsson V, Helgadottir A, Styrkarsdottir U, Magnusson KP, Walters GB, Palsdottir E, Jonsdottir T, Gudmundsdottir T, Gylfason A, Saemundsdottir J, Wilensky RL, Reilly MP, Rader DJ, Bagger Y, Christiansen C, Gudnason V, Sigurdsson G, Thorsteinsdottir U, Gulcher JR, Kong A, Stefansson K (2006) Variant of transcription factor 7-like 2 (TCF7L2) gene confers risk of type 2 diabetes. Nat Genet 38(3):320–323
54. Pearson ER, Donnelly LA, Kimber C, Whitley A, Doney AS, McCarthy MI, Hattersley AT, Morris AD, Palmer CN (2007) Variation in TCF7L2 influences therapeutic response to sulfonylureas: a GoDARTs study. Diabetes 56(8):2178–2182
55. Lyssenko V, Lupi R, Marchetti P, Del Guerra S, Orho-Melander M, Almgren P, Sjögren M, Ling C, Eriksson KF, Lethagen AL, Mancarella R, Berglund G, Tuomi T, Nilsson P, Del Prato S, Groop L (2007) Mechanisms by which common variants in the TCF7L2 gene increase risk of type 2 diabetes. J Clin Invest 117(8):2155–2163
56. Cho I, Blaser MJ (2012) Applications of next-generation sequencing the human microbiome: at the interface of health and disease. Nat Rev Genet 13(4): 260–270
57. Allen F, Crepaldi L, Alsinet C, Strong AJ, Kleshchevnikov V, De Angeli P, Palenikova P, Khodak A, Kiselev V, Kosicki M, Bassett AR, Harding H, Galanty Y, Munoz-Martinez F, Metzakopian E, Jackson SP, Parts L (2018) Predicting the mutations generated by repair of Cas9-induced double-strand breaks. Nat Biotechnol. https://doi.org/10.1038/nbt.4317
58. Yu N, Yang J, Mishina Y, Giannobile WV (2019) Genome editing: a new horizon for oral and craniofacial research. J Dent Res 98(1):36–45
59. Rho M, Wu YW, Tang H, Doak TG, Ye Y (2012) Diverse CRISPRs evolving in human microbiomes. PLoS Genet 8(6):e1002441

60. Serbanescu MA, Cordova M, Krastel K, Flick R, Beloglazova N, Latos A, Yakunin AF, Senadheera DB, Cvitkovitch DG (2015) Role of the Streptococcus mutans CRISPR-Cas systems in immunity and cell physiology. J Bacteriol 197(4):749–761
61. Zhou H, Zhao H, Zheng J, Gao Y, Zhang Y, Zhao F, Wang J (2015) CRISPRs provide broad and robust protection to oral microbial flora of gingival health against bacteriophage challenge. Protein Cell 6(7): 541–545
62. Barros SP, Offenbacher S (2014) Modifiable risk factors in periodontal disease: epigenetic regulation of gene expression in the inflammatory response. Periodontology 64(1):95–110
63. Castilho RM, Squarize CH, Almeida LO (2017) Epigenetic modifications and head and neck cancer: implications for tumor progression and resistance to therapy. Int J Mol Sci 18(7):1506
64. Viale PH (2020) The American Cancer Society's facts & figures: 2020 edition. J Adv Pract Oncol 11(2): 135–136
65. Wang HC, Yang Y, Xu SY, Peng J, Jiang JH, Li CY (2015) The CRISPR/Cas system inhibited the pro-oncogenic effects of alternatively spliced fibronectin extra domain A via editing the genome in salivary adenoid cystic carcinoma cells. Oral Dis 21(5): 608–618
66. Simonik EA, Cai Y, Kimmelshue KN, Brantley-Sieders DM, Loomans HA, Andl CD, Westlake GM, Youngblood VM, Chen J, Yarbrough WG, Brown BT, Nagarajan L, Brandt SJ (2016) LIM-only protein 4 (LMO4) and LIM domain binding protein 1 (LDB1) promote growth and metastasis of human head and neck cancer (LMO4 and LDB1 in head and neck cancer). PLoS One 11(10):e0164804
67. Huang P, Tong D, Sun J, Li Q, Zhang F (2017) Generation and characterization of a human oral squamous carcinoma cell line SCC-9 with CRISPR/Cas9-mediated deletion of the p75 neurotrophin receptor. Arch Oral Biol 82:223–232
68. Isola G, Polizzi A, Alibrandi A, Williams RC, Leonardi R (2020) Independent impact of periodontitis and cardiovascular disease on elevated soluble urokinase-type plasminogen activator receptor (suPAR) levels. J Periodontol 91:896–906
69. Kim SY, Kim HJ, Kim HJ, Kim DH, Han JH, Byeon HK, Lee K, Kim CH (2018) HSPA5 negatively regulates lysosomal activity through ubiquitination of MUL1 in head and neck cancer. Autophagy 14(3): 385–403



Enabling Precision Medicine with CRISPR-Cas Genome Editing Technology: A Translational Perspective

Nazma F. Ilahibaks, Maike J. Hulsbos, Zhiyong Lei, Pieter Vader, and Joost P. G. Sluijter

Abstract

Genome editing technologies, particularly CRISPR-Cas (clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR) associated nucleases), are redefining the boundaries of therapeutic gene therapy. CRISPR-Cas is a robust, straightforward, and programmable genome editing tool capable of mediating site-specific DNA modifications. The rapid advancements from discovery to clinical adaptation have expanded the therapeutic landscape to treat genetically defined diseases. Together with the technical developments in human DNA and RNA sequencing, CRISPR-directed gene therapy enables a new era to realize precision medicine where pathogenic mutations underlying monogenic disorders can potentially be corrected. Also, protective or therapeutic genomic alterations can be introduced as preventative or curative therapy. Despite its high therapeutic potential, CRISPR-Cas´ clinical translation is still in its infancy and is highly dependent on its efficiency, specificity in gene corrections, and cell-specific delivery. Therefore, this chapter focuses on the challenges and opportunities the CRISPR-Cas toolbox offers together with delivery vehicles to realize its use for therapeutic gene editing. Furthermore, we discuss the obstacles the CRISPR-Cas system faces for successful clinical translation and summarize its current clinical progress.

Keywords

CRISPR · Genome editing · Gene therapy · Precision medicine · Translational medicine

1 Introduction

Many therapies are directed toward symptomatic treatment and are aimed to delay disease progression, such as corticosteroids for Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD), or digoxin for heart failure [1, 2]. Gene therapy aims to treat or prevent human disease by correcting, removing, or

N. F. Ilahibaks · M. J. Hulsbos
Laboratory of Experimental Cardiology, Department of Cardiology, University Medical Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Z. Lei · P. Vader
Laboratory of Experimental Cardiology, Department of Cardiology, University Medical Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands

CDL Research, University Medical Center Utrecht, Utrecht, The Netherlands

J. P. G. Sluijter (✉)
Laboratory of Experimental Cardiology, Department of Cardiology, University Medical Center, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Experimental Cardiology Laboratory, Cardiology, Division Heart and Lung, Circulatory Health Laboratory, Regenerative Medicine Center, University Medical Center Utrecht, University Utrecht, Utrecht, The Netherlands
e-mail: J.Sluijter@umcutrecht.nl

© The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2023

J. Xiao (ed.), *Genome Editing in Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1396, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-5642-3_20

replacing pathogenic DNA or RNA [3]. The clinical implementation of gene therapy offers new therapeutic possibilities for patients suffering from hereditary diseases with limited therapy options or who do not benefit from current therapies to delay disease progression. Gene therapy originates from viral plasmids encoded with exogenous DNA to be randomly integrated into the host genome, evoking transient or longtime expression. Unfortunately, the use of viral vectors for gene therapy is paired with the risk of adverse immunogenicity and insertional mutagenesis [4]. Therefore, programmable genome editing tools are being investigated and clinically translated, including meganucleases [5], zinc-finger nucleases (ZFNs) [6], transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs) [7], and CRISPR-Cas9 [8]. Meganucleases, ZFNs, and TALENs operate via protein-DNA interactions to recognize the target DNA sequence and require protein engineering for each new target, limiting more general tool developments. Moreover, difficulties associated with targeting specificity, requiring complex cloning and protein engineering strategies, have hampered their broad adaptation and application [9]. In contrast, CRISPR-Cas9-mediated genome editing is a highly versatile tool as it operates via RNA-mediated DNA target recognition. Hence, CRISPR-Cas9 can be easily programmed to target new sites or multiple sites simultaneously, that is, multiplexing, via the design of complementary RNA(s), enabling the development of more generic tools [10, 11].

CRISPR-Cas9 is part of the microbial adaptive immune system and the first nuclease of the CRISPR-Cas system to successfully mediate genome editing in eukaryotic cells [8, 10]. The CRISPR RNA (ctRNA) enables the recognition of the target gene via a ~20 nt spacer sequence, and the transactivating CRISPR RNA (tracrRNA) facilitates ctRNA maturation and Cas9 recruitment [11]. Hybridization of ctRNA and tracrRNA forms a synthetic single-guide RNA (sgRNA), enabling site-specific DNA recognition followed by a protospacer adjacent motif (PAM) via Watson-Crick base pairing. Upon complex formation of sgRNA and Cas9, a ribonucleotide protein (RNP) complex is formed whereby sgRNA recognition of target sequence and PAM engages Cas9 nucleolytic activity causing a double-strand break (DSB). The Cas9-mediated DSB is repaired by either nonhomologous end-joining (NHEJ) or homology-directed repair (HR). In NHEJ, the DSB leads to direct rejoining of the lesion, ultimately disrupting the gene via small deletion or insertion mutations (indels), potentially causing exon skipping or a frameshift [12]. Concerning HR, a DSB in the presence of a DNA donor template can lead to insertion and correction of the gene [11–16]. Both repair pathways can be applied for therapeutic purposes by correcting disease-causing mutations or by introducing a therapeutic mutation to rescue the phenotype [17].

Over the years, the CRISPR-Cas toolbox has expanded with the discovery and engineering of CRISPR-associated nucleases and repair pathways. Their application has advanced into (pre)clinical models for inborn genetic diseases, such as DMD [18–22], hereditary tyrosinemia [23], as well as acquired diseases including cancer [24], infectious diseases [25], atherosclerosis [26–28], and other cardiovascular disorders [29, 30]. Despite rapid advancements in the use of CRISPR-Cas technology as gene therapy, its trajectory is paved with safety and efficacy considerations for successful clinical translation. The endeavor to translate safe and effective CRISPR-Cas as gene therapy requires a multitude of choices, including which gene editing nuclease to employ, what type of genomic edit is required, what type of delivery vehicle is appropriate, and which available preclinical models adequately recapitulate the disease. This multitude of considerations regarding safety and efficacy per step makes the CRISPR-Cas translation pathway an intricate process. In this review, we discuss the CRISPR-Cas translation trajectory by giving an overview of available Cas nucleases capable to introduce a genomic modification or correction. We assess the choices in the CRISPR-Cas payload to enable efficient genome editing together with a compatible delivery vehicle. Next, we highlight the challenges associated with the CRISPR-Cas system for its clinical translation, including off-target mutagenesis, editing

efficiency, immunogenicity, and preclinical models. Finally, we give an overview of CRISPR-Cas adoption in the clinic and assess the obstacles to overcome in the realization of precision medicine with CRISPR-Cas gene therapy.

2 CRISPR-Cas Toolbox for Genome Manipulation

Advancements in CRISPR-Cas engineering and discoveries of natural variants have expanded the genome editing manipulation toolbox [31]. The native programmability makes CRISPR-Cas systems a powerful tool for therapeutic gene editing. CRISPR-Cas systems are classified into Class I and II based on their effector nucleases required in the interference process underlying the prokaryotic adaptive defense system [32]. These two classes are subclassified into types based on the catalytic Cas nuclease and their respective mechanism of action. Class I systems contain multi-subunit effector nuclease complexes, including type I, III, and IV CRISPR systems. In contrast, Class II CRISPR systems require a single effector nuclease and include type II, V, and VI [33]. Class I CRISPR systems' application is limited by the current lack of knowledge and the need for multi-subunit nucleases to mediate genome editing [34]. Conversely, class II systems are widely investigated as a single nuclease enables straightforward genome editing. We therefore reviewed the class II Cas nucleases with respective DNA repair mechanisms. Type II Cas9 and type V Cas12 variants cleave DNA, while type VI Cas13 endonuclease activity is directed toward RNA.

2.1 Cas9 Nuclease

CRISPR-Cas possibilities for genome editing emerged from applying the type II Cas9 from the *Streptococcus pyogenes* to mediate targeted genome cleavage in mammalian cells [8, 10] (see Fig. 1a). Since then, different rationally engineered Cas9 nucleases or natural orthologs have been investigated for DSB genome editing in mammalian cells, which are summarized in Table 1. The Cas9 nuclease consists of two catalytic domains, RuvC and a higher eukaryote and prokaryote nucleotide-binding (HNH) domain. Cas9 mediates DNA cleavage upon sgRNA target recognition of the DNA strand, following a small PAM (NGG) sequence. The post-cleavage activity catalyzes a 5'-blunt end at the target site leading to a DSB [34, 62]. The DSB triggers endogenous DNA repair systems to rejoin the lesions via NHEJ, causing gene disruption or HR-mediated gene insertion in the presence of an exogenous present DNA template. These repair mechanisms serve as therapeutic editing strategies, such as disrupting the *PCSK9* gene as cholesterol-lowering therapy [49, 63] or correcting *Fah* mutation for hereditary tyrosinemia [64, 65]. Furthermore, CRISPR-Cas9 can be harnessed for multiplex editing to remove numerous pathogenic mutations in parallel, particularly helpful for treating DMD [20, 22, 66] or Leber congenital amaurosis type 10 (LCA10) [67]. By introducing a mutation in the RuvC and HNH domains, CRISPR-Cas9 has been repurposed as a DNA binding domain to mediate transcriptional interference for gene repression via CRISPRi or activation via CRISPRa, see Fig. 2a, b [68, 69]. Alternatively, base editors are made by catalytically inactivating Cas nuclease via a D10A mutation creating nickase (nCas) or together with H840A forming "dead" Cas (dCas) fused to a deaminase. Base editors enable RNA-mediated recognition and base editing of single-strand DNA (ssDNA), where they can install a point mutation without a DSB, see Fig. 2c. This feature makes base editors a valuable expansion of the CRISPR toolbox since point mutations account for more than half of pathogenic human genetic variants [70]. Base editors are classified in cytosine base editors (CBE) or adenosine base editors (ABE) mediating C→T or G→A conversion or A→G, and T→C transition mutation, respectively [71–73]. Unfortunately, base editors cannot correct eight transversion mutations, that is, C→A, C→G, G→C, G→T, A→C, A→T, T→A, thereby leaving certain indel mutations

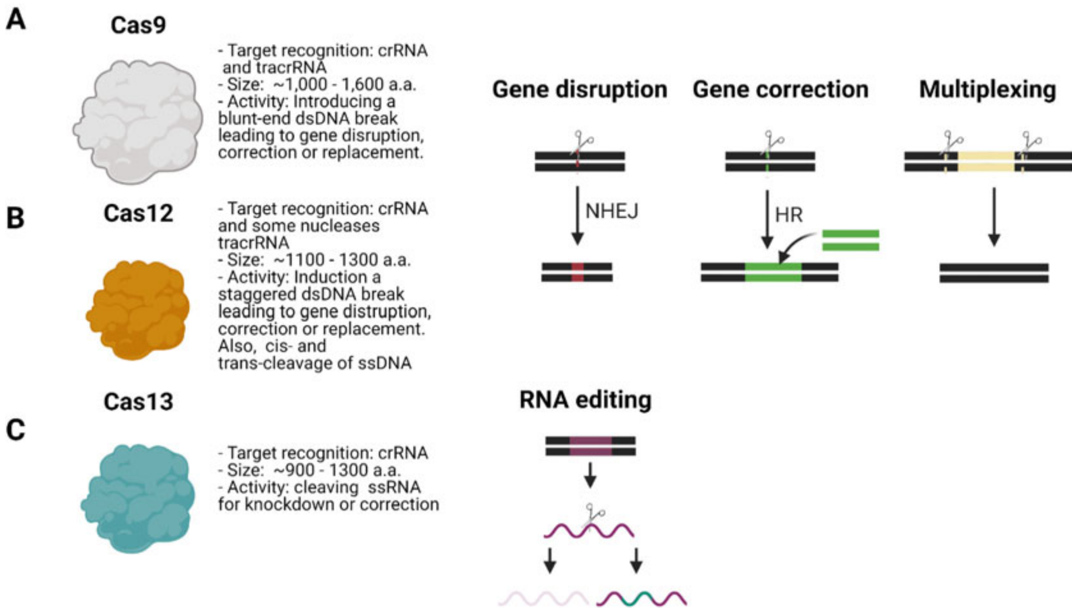


Fig. 1 Overview of Class II CRISPR-associated nucleases and respective modes of genome editing The CRISPR-associated nucleases (**a**) Cas9 and (**b**) Cas12 rely on RNA-guided recognition of a specific genomic target site to introduce a DSB. The DSB triggers DNA repair, leading to gene disruption via NHEJ, gene correction by HR in the presence of donor DNA or gene replacement in the presence of multiple sgRNA's. CRISPR-associated nuclease (**c**) Cas13 relies on crRNA for ssRNA target recognition and enables RNA deletion or correction

unchanged. For this reason, reverse transcriptase was fused to nCas to create prime editors, which courts all possible base-pair conversion together with a prime editing guide RNA (pegRNA). The pegRNA is responsible for DNA target recognition, hybridization with the ssDNA to engage reverse transcription to incorporate information of pegRNA the target site, see Fig. 2d [70, 74].

2.2 Cas12 Nucleases

Cas12 nucleases represent type V CRISPR systems and consist of a single RuvC-like nuclease domain that catalyzes dsDNA and ssDNA cleavage, see Fig. 1b. In contrast to Cas9 nucleases, most Cas12 nucleases only require crRNA to mediate a DSB upstream from the "TTN" PAM sequence, resulting in a 5′ staggered end cut [75]. The most well-known variant is Cas12a, formally known as Cpf1, which can target dsDNA and ssDNA complementary to a ~42–44 nt crRNA [76]. Cas12a-mediated germline genome editing has successfully corrected DMD mutations in *mdx* mice [77]. Also, Cas12a mediates genome editing with a higher specificity than Cas9, which is advantageous for enabling safe gene therapy [39]. The shorter crRNA streamlines gRNA design for delivery and improves multiplex opportunities [78]. Alternatively, Cas12b, also known as C2c1, requires tracrRNA like Cas9 but shows a higher on-target specificity [79, 80]. Interestingly, the Cas12b and Cas12i variants predominantly nick dsDNA [81, 82]. All Cas12 orthologs applied for mammalian genome editing mediating a DSB have been summarized in Table 2.

2.3 Cas13 Nucleases

Type VI is represented by Cas13 nucleases and consists of two HEPN domains. These HEPN

Table 1 Type II Cas9 natural and engineered nucleases investigated for mammalian genome editing by introducing a DSB

Nuclease	Name	Species	Substrate	WT, variants, mutants	sgRNA component (s)	PAM sequence (N = A/T/C/G; V = A/C/G; D = A/G/T; Y = T/C; R = A/G)	Protein size (amino acids)	Reference
Cas9	SpCas9	*Streptococcus pyogenes*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGG	1368	[8, 10, 35]
			dsDNA	VQR	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGAN	1368	[36]
			dsDNA	EQR	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGAG	1368	[36]
			dsDNA	VRER	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGC, NGCG	1368	[36]
			dsDNA	Sniper-Cas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGG	1368	[37]
			dsDNA	eSpCas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGG	1368	[38]
			dsDNA	SpCas9-HF1	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGG	1368	[39]
			dsDNA	SpCas9-NG	crRNA, tracrRNA	NG	1368	[40]
			dsDNA	xCas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NG, GAA and GAT	1368	[41]
			dsDNA	HeFSpCas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGG	1368	[42]
			dsDNA	HiFi Cas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGG	1368	[43]
			dsDNA	HypaCas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGG	1368	[44]
			dsDNA	evoCas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGG	1368	[45]
			dsDNA	SpG	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGN	1368	[46]
			dsDNA	SpRY	crRNA, tracrRNA	NRN, NGN	1368	[46]
	SauriCas9	*Staphylococcus auricularis*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNGG	1061	[47]
			dsDNA	eSa-SauriCas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNGG	1061	[47]

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Nuclease	Name	Species	Substrate	WT, variants, mutants	sgRNA component (s)	PAM sequence (N = A/T/C/G; V = A/C/G; D = A/G/T; Y = T/C; R = A/G)	Protein size (amino acids)	Reference
			dsDNA	SauriCas9-KKH	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNRG	1061	[47]
	SmacCas9	*Streptococcus macacae*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NAA	1338	[48]
			dsDNA	iSpy Cas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NAA	1338	[48]
	SaCas9	*Staphylococcus aureus*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNGRRT, NNGRR	1053	[49]
			dsDNA	eSaCas9	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNGRRT, NNGRR	1053	[38]
			dsDNA	KHH	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNNRRT	1053	[50]
	ScCas9	*Streptococcus canis*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNG	1375	[51]
			dsDNA	Cas9-Sc++	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNG	1375	[52]
	CjCas9	*Campylobacter jejuni*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNNNRYAC	984	[53]
	FnCas9	*Francisella novicida*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGG	1629	[54, 55]
			dsDNA	RHA	crRNA, tracrRNA	YG	1629	[55]
	Nm1Cas9	*Neisseria meningitidis*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNNNGATT	1082	[56]
	Nm2Cas9	*Neisseria meningitidis*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNNNCC	1082	[57]
	St1Cas9	*Streptococcus thermophilus*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NGGNG, NNAGAAW	1121	[36, 58]
	St3Cas9	*Streptococcus thermophilus*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNAGAAW, NGGNG	1409	[58]
	BlatCas9	*Brevibacillus laterosporus*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	NNNNCND, NNNNCNAA	1092	[59, 60]
	GeoCas9	*Geobacillus stearothermophilus*	dsDNA	WT	crRNA, tracrRNA	CRAA	1087	[61]

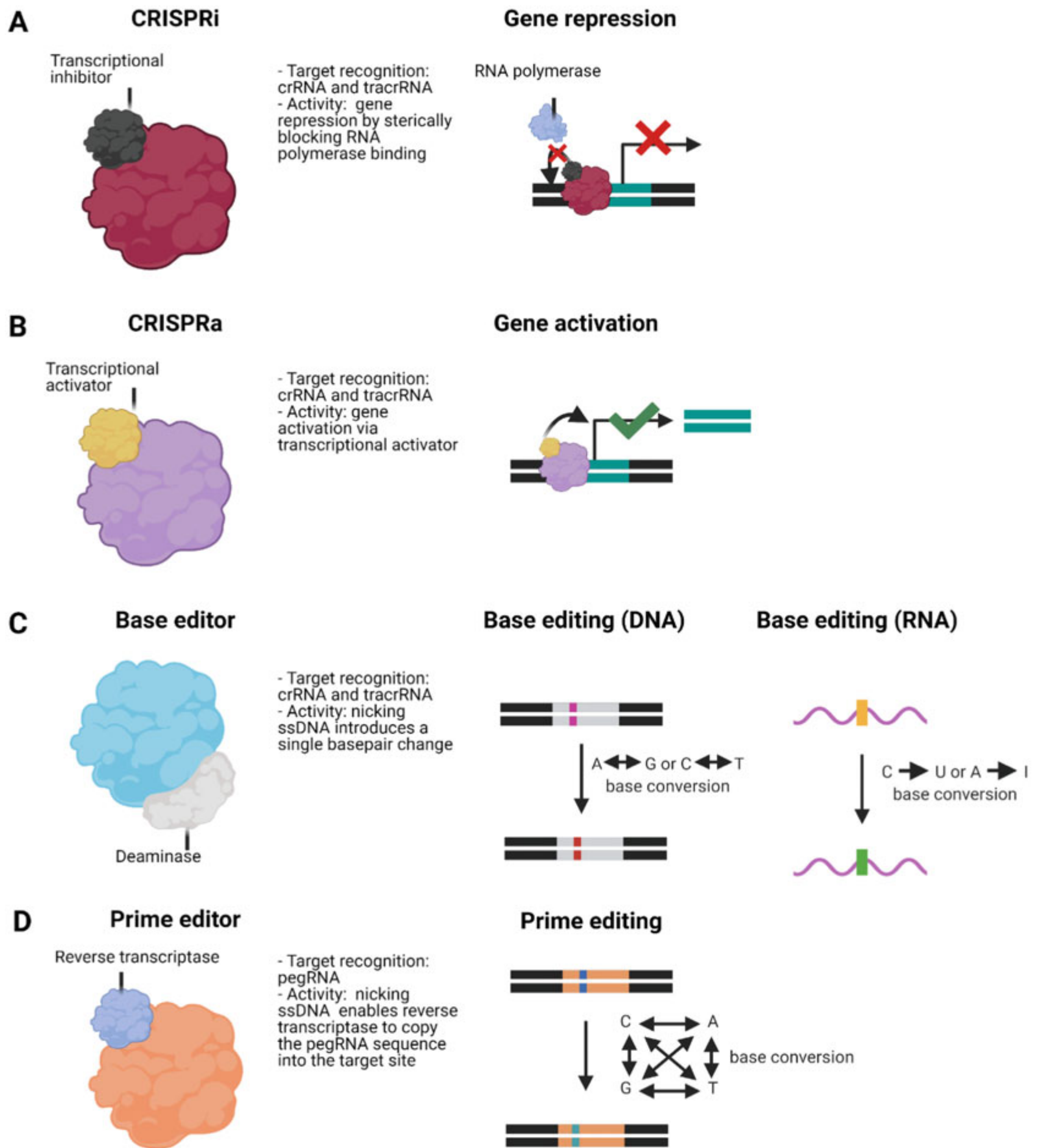


Fig. 2 Overview of rationally engineered CRISPR-Cas nucleases for genome editing. New modification of CRISPR-Cas nucleases have expanded the opportunities or genomic manipulation. Transcriptional control of gene expression can be modulated via (**a**) CRISPRi leading to gene repression or (**b**) CRISPRa leading to gene activation. (**c**) Base editors are able to nick DNA or RNA fostering a A·G or C·T base conversion in DNA and A·I or C·U conversion in ssRNA (**d**) Prime editors can nick DNA, leading to all possible base-pair conversion depending on the pegRNA

domains display RNase activity leading to exclusive RNA cleavage, see Fig. 1c. Cas13 requires a ~60–66 nt crRNA carrying a ~28–30 nt spacer sequence complementary site to the RNA target region [93]. The emerging variants in this type for RNA interference are Cas13a (C2c2) and Cas13b

Table 2 Type V Cas12 nucleases investigated for mammalian genome editing by introducing a DSB

Nuclease	Name	Species	Substrate	WT, variants, mutants	sgRNA component(s)	PAM sequence (N = A/T/C/G; V = A/C/G; D = A/G/T; Y = T/C; R = A/G)	Protein size (amino acids)	Reference
Cas12a	LbCas12a (Cpf1)	*Lachnospiraceae bacterium*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTN, TTTN, TTTV, CTTV, TCTV, TTCV	1228	[75, 83, 84]
	FnCas12a (FnCpf1)	*Francisella novicida*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTN, TTTN, TTTV	1300	[75, 85]
	AsCas12a (AsCpf1)	*Acidaminococcus* sp. *BV3L6*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTN, TTTN, TTTV, NTTV, TCTV, TTCV	1353	[75, 83, 84, 86]
			ssDNA, dsDNA	AsCas12-RVR	crRNA	TATV	1353	[87]
			ssDNA, dsDNA	AsCas12-RR	crRNA	TYCV	1353	[87]
	ArCas12a	*Agathobacter rectalis strain 2789STDY5834884*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTN	–	[88]
	BsCas12a	*Butyrivibrio* sp. *NC3005*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTN, TTTV	1236	[88, 89]
	Mb2Csa12a (Mb2Cpf1)	*Moraxella bovoculi AAX08_00205*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTTV	–	[89]
	Mb3Cas12a (Mb3Cpf1)	*Moraxella bovoculi AAX11_00205*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTTV, TTN	–	[89]
	PrCas12a	*Prevotella ruminicola strain BPI-34*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTN, TTTN	1252	[88]
	HkCas12a	*Helcococcus kunzii ATCC 51366*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTN, TTTN	1310	[88]
	PxCas12a	*Pseudobutyrivibrio xylanivorans strain DSM 10317*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA	TTN, TTTN	1207	[88]
Cas12b	BhCas12b (C2c1)	*Bacillus hisashii*	ssDNA, dsDNA	BhCas12b v4 mutant	crRNA tracrRNA	TTTN, GTTN, ATTN	1108	[82]
	AacCas12b (AacC2c1)	*Alicyclobacillus acidoterrestris*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA tracrRNA	TTC	1129	[90]
	AaCas12b	*Alicyclobacillus acidiphilus*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA tracrRNA	TTN		[80]

	AkCas12b	*Alicyclobacillus kakegawensis NBRC 103104*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA tracrRNA	TTTN		[80]
Cas12d	Cas12d (CasY)		ssDNA, dsDNA		Short-complementarity untranslated RNA (scoutRNA), crRNA	TR		[91]
Cas12e	DpbCas12e (DpbCasX)	*Deltaproteobacteria*	ssDNA, dsDNA	WT	crRNA tracrRNA	TTCN	980	[92]

(C2c6), which can be used for knockdown or correction of disease-relevant transcripts in mammalian cells [94, 95]. By solely mediating RNA knockdown, these nucleases could be a safer approach to gene therapy as they only inactivate RNA pathogenic transcript without altering the DNA. The Cas13 variants investigated for mammalian RNA interference have been summarized in Table 3.

Collectively, these CRISPR-Cas variants have expanded the possibilities of CRISPR-Cas-mediated therapeutic genome editing. Yet, the specificity and delivery per variant remain to be determined for its future clinical application.

3 CRISPR-Cas Payloads and Delivery

Even though the CRISPR-Cas toolbox offers diverse therapeutic options to modulate gene expression, the simultaneous intracellular delivery of the different CRISPR-Cas components remains a significant barrier for its application in human patients [101]. The success of intracellular delivery of multiple CRISPR-Cas components is determined by the CRISPR-Cas payload and delivery vehicle's efficacy and safety. CRISPR-Cas components can be delivered through a plasmid, messenger RNA (mRNA)-sgRNA, or as a ribonucleotide protein (RNP) complex directly. Various physical, viral, and nonviral drug delivery systems have been investigated to facilitate CRISPR-Cas intracellular delivery, see Fig. 3 [15]. Each CRISPR-Cas payload and delivery strategy has its own inherent (dis)advantages, which will be discussed in the following sections.

3.1 CRISPR-Cas Payloads

To achieve genome editing with CRISPR-Cas, the intracellular introduction of the Cas-sgRNA-encoded plasmid, mRNA encoding Cas with complementary sgRNA, or CRISPR-Cas RNP is essential. Plasmid-based Cas-sgRNA is considered cost-effective because it can be manufactured in a standard laboratory setting. Compared to mRNA and RNP delivery, plasmid-based delivery results in a longer expression time in cells and later onset of genome editing due to transcription and translation steps [102]. However, this prolonged expression increases the risk of off-target activity. An advantage of plasmid delivery is that multiple components, including Cas (~4600 bp), sgRNA (~100 bp), and exogenous DNA for HR, can be integrated into one plasmid. This simultaneous integration potentially increases genome editing efficiency since all components can be packed and delivered simultaneously to the target cell. However, this approach results in a large plasmid (~10 kb), reducing encapsulation efficiency in delivery vehicles [103–106]. Furthermore, plasmid delivery requires nuclear entry and translation and is accompanied by the risk of host genome integration, immune response, and off-target effects resulting from prolonged expression [15].

Direct Cas mRNA-sgRNA delivery enables rapid genome editing compared to plasmid-based delivery because there is no need for transcription [101]. Furthermore, the transient expression associated with Cas mRNA reduces the chance of off-target activity and leads to the faster onset of genome editing. Also, mRNA-based delivery enables efficient transgene expression together with low cytotoxicity in (primary) cell lines [107]. Even though the transient exposure reduced the toxicity and off-target effects, it may compromise gene editing efficiency. Despite RNA-based payload having many advantages over plasmid-based delivery, it has a poor stability character and is prone to RNase degradation [101, 108]. Hence, RNA modifications are being investigated to enhance their stability after intracellular delivery [109].

CRISPR-Cas RNP delivery does not require cell-driven expression, thereby enabling faster and more efficient on-site genome editing than plasmid and mRNA delivery. Furthermore, CRISPR-Cas RNP delivery has the most transient exposure of all payloads in cells, resulting in minimal off-target activity [110]. Also, RNP delivery is associated with low toxicity and immunogenicity [111]. CRISPR-Cas RNP delivery disadvantages are its high cost and intrinsic

Table 3 Type VI Cas13 nucleases investigated for mammalian RNA interference

Nuclease	Name	Species	Substrate	WT, variants, mutants	sgRNA component (s)	PAM sequence (N = A/T/C/G; V = A/C/G; D = A/G/T; Y = T/C; R = A/G)	Protein size (amino acids)	Reference
Cas13a	LshCas13a (C2c2)	*Leptotrichia shahii*	ssRNA	WT	crRNA	N.A.	1389	[96, 97]
	LwaCas13	*Leptotrichia wadei*	ssRNA	WT	crRNA	N.A.	1182	[96, 98–100]
	LbaCas13	*Lachnospiraceae bacterium NK4A179*	ssRNA	WT	crRNA	N.A.	1437	[99, 100]
Cas13b	PspCas13b	*Prevotella* sp. *P5-125*	ssRNA	WT	crRNA	N.A.	–	[95, 99, 100]
	PsmCas13b	*Prevotella* sp. *MA2016*	ssRNA	WT	crRNA	N.A.	–	[99, 100]
	CcaCas13b	*Capnocytophaga canimorsus*	ssRNA	WT	crRNA	N.A.	–	[99, 100]

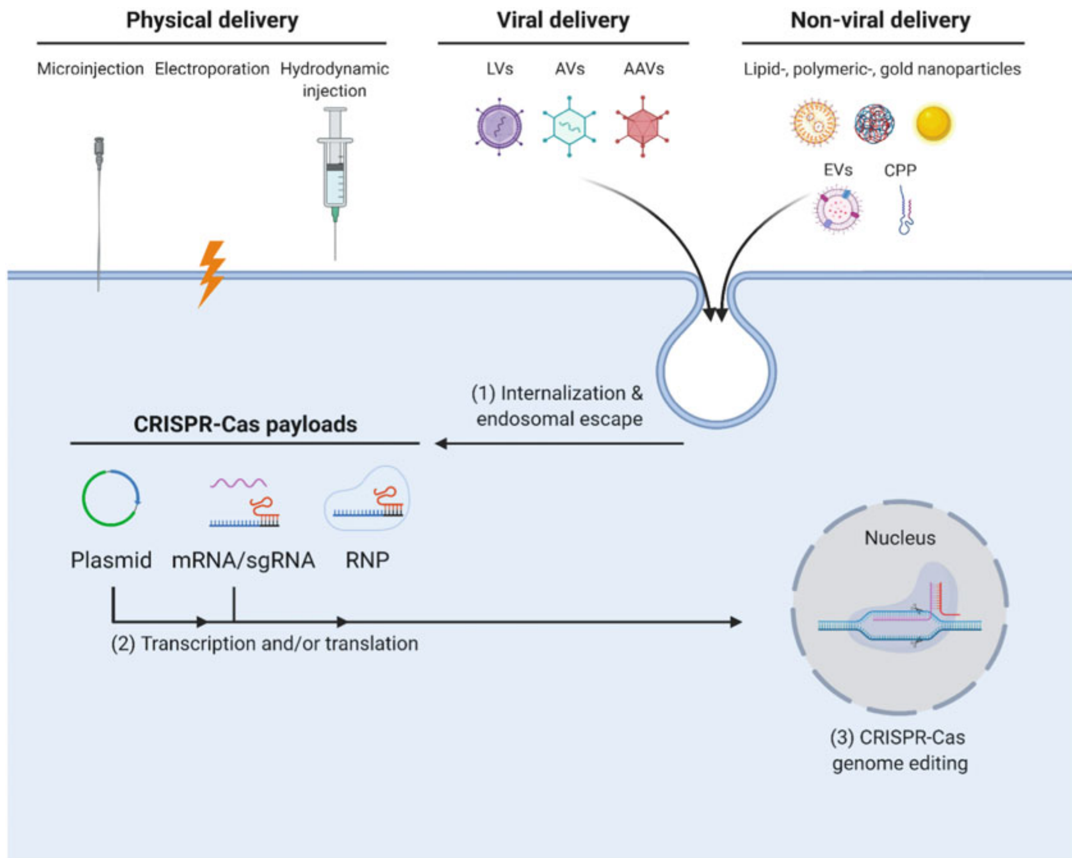


Fig. 3 Overview of CRISPR-Cas delivery methods and payloads. Physical delivery methods directly introduce CRISPR-Cas payloads intracellularly. Conversely, viral and non-viral delivery methods need to be taken up by the cell and escape the endosome for releasing their CRISPR-Cas payload intracellularly. Depending on the payload, transcription and/or translation is required to enable genome editing in the nucleus

physicochemical properties of the RNP, including the Cas protein's relatively large size, instability, and low cell permeability.

In short, each CRISPR-Cas payload has their own inherent benefits and drawbacks to mediate genome editing through persistent or transient expression. Even so, the payload must be successfully introduced intracellularly via delivery vehicles for a functional CRISPR-Cas RNP complex to mediate site-specific genome editing. To that end, the delivery vehicle's ability to promote efficient uptake and endosomal escape in target cells is crucial for effective CRISPR-Cas genome editing [112].

3.2 CRISPR-Cas Delivery Vehicles

CRISPR-Cas delivery methods can be classified into three categories: viral, nonviral, and physical delivery methods. For viral delivery, adeno-associated viruses (AAVs), lentiviruses (LVs), and adenoviruses (AVs) have been investigated [113]. Among these, AAVs are the most investigated vehicle for CRISPR-Cas in vivo delivery. AAVs have low immunogenicity and high transduction efficiency and are nonintegrating into the genome, and their tropism enables tissue-targeted delivery. AAV's limitation is its limited packing size (±4.5 kb) making

it challenging to deliver all CRISPR-Cas components simultaneously. Therefore, a dual AAV system with one carrying Cas9 and the other sgRNA together with exogenous DNA for HR are used [114]. Alternatively, smaller Cas9 orthologs like SaCas9 (±3.15 kb) can be loaded into AAV vectors. However, this requires the design of new sgRNA as SaCas9 operates via different PAM sequences [49]. Despite AAVs' promising features, their production is expensive, and they carry the risk for genome integrations [115], carcinogenesis, and eliciting an immune response [15].

Alternatively, nonviral delivery methods may address the constraints associated with viral delivery [116, 117]. CRISPR-Cas nonviral delivery methods include physical methods and nanoparticle delivery for CRISPR-Cas plasmid, mRNA/sgRNA, or RNP delivery. Physical methods include electroporation [118], microinjection [119], and hydrodynamic injection [120]. Electroporation entails electric pulses for transient opening up the cell membrane allowing cargo into the cells. Despite being highly efficient, the electrical current induces cell death and remains more suitable for ex vivo therapy, as is the case for hematologic diseases [121]. Microinjection employs a microscope to guide a needle for the manual injection of CRISPR-Cas through the cell membrane. The laborious nature, technical difficulties, and need for microscopy-guided injection per cell make it an inefficient delivery method for human application. Alternatively, hydrodynamic injection rapidly introduces nucleic acid solutions in vivo in relatively large volumes, that is, volumes of 8–10% of the bodyweight [122, 123]. Unfortunately, hydrodynamic injection promotes high blood pressure, brief cardiac dysfunction, liver expansion in vivo, and even hepatoxicity in patients [123, 124]. Despite the efficiency of physical methods, their application remains to be invasive and laborious or have safety concerns to be successfully adopted for direct CRISPR-Cas delivery in patients.

In contrast, nanoparticle delivery may overcome the limitations of viral and physical methods, particularly concerning their safety for clinical translation and packaging size [125, 126]. Synthetic nanoparticle delivery systems Cas9-sgRNA plasmid delivery include inorganic [127], lipid-based [125, 126, 128, 129], and polymer-based delivery systems [125, 130–133]. For nucleotide delivery, both polymer- and lipid-based vectors have been widely investigated in vivo and in clinical trials [125, 126]. Lipid and polymer nanoparticles are compatible with all CRISPR-Cas payloads. However, their organ-specific delivery efficiency is still poor. Moreover, upon delivery to the target cells, the lipid or polymeric nanoparticle needs to escape from the endosome to release its cargo intracellularly. Henceforth, there is ongoing research to determine the optimal polymers [134] or lipids [135], inclusion of targeting moieties to promote these nanoparticles uptake and enhance endosomal escape. Alternatively, the use of extracellular vesicles (EVs), that is, cell-derived nanovesicles carrying biomolecules used for endogenous cell-to-cell communication, has been proposed as a drug delivery platform because of their intrinsic nature to carry biomolecules to target cells. Hence, EVs pseudotyped with the vesicular stromatic virus glycoprotein have been demonstrated to be highly efficient for CRISPR-Cas RNP delivery [136, 137]. Yet, EV clinical translation still awaits overcoming challenges related to manufacturing, scalability, standardization of production, purification, and quality controls. Finally, other CRISPR-Cas RNP delivery methods such as gold nanoparticles [14, 138], induced transduction by osmocytosis and propanebetaine (iTOP) [139], and transmembrane internalization assisted by membrane filtration (TRIAMF) [140] are potential alternatives and are claimed to be highly efficient. Alternatively, for RNP delivery, spherical DNA structures called nanoclews [134] and cell-penetrating peptides (CPP) [141] have controllable architecture, desirable size, and safety profiles. However, gold nanoparticles, iTOP, and TRIAMF are not suitable for in vivo application due to potential toxicity, requiring high salt concentration of Cas solubility or reliance on membrane filtration, respectively [101, 140]. Moreover, DNA

Table 4 Overview of clinical trials using the CRISPR-Cas9 system

Disease	Phase	Target gene	Delivery method	Intervention/treatment	CRISPR-Cas9 strategy	ClinicalTrials.gov identifier
Metastatic lung cancer	I	PD-1	Electroporation	Autologous PD-1 KO T-cells	Ex vivo	NCT02793856
Esophageal cancer	N.A.	PD-1	Not disclosed	Autologous PD-1 KO T-cells	Ex vivo	NCT03081715
Advanced hepatocellular carcinoma	I	PD-1	Not disclosed	Transcatheter arterial chemoembolization combined with autologous PD-1 KO T-cells	Ex vivo	NCT04417764
Mesothelin positive solid tumors	I	PD-1, TCR	Electroporation	PD-1 and TCR KO CAR-T cells	Ex vivo	NCT03545815
Mesothelin positive solid tumors	I	PD-1	Electroporation	Autologous PD-1 KO T-cells	Ex vivo	NCT03747965
Relapsed or refractory renal carcinoma	I	TCR, β2m, CD70	Electroporation	CTX130: Allogeneic CD70-specific CAR-T cells	Ex vivo	NCT04438083
Relapsed or refractory T- or B-cell malignancies	I	TCR, β2m, CD70	Electroporation	CTX130: Allogeneic CD70-specific CAR-T cells	Ex vivo	NCT04502446
Relapsed or refractory B-cell malignancies	I	TCR, β2m, CD19	Not disclosed	CTX110: Allogenic CD19-specific CAR-T cells	Ex vivo	NCT04035434
Acute lymphocytic leukemia and lymphoma	I	HPK1	Electroporation	XYF19 CAR-T cell: CD19-specific CAR-T cells carrying CRISPR-Cas9 encoded lentiviral vector for endogenous HPK1 KO	Ex vivo	NCT04037566
Refractory or relapsed leukemia and lymphoma	I, II	TCR, CD19, CD20 or CD22	Not disclosed	Allogenic CD19, CD20 or CD22-specific CAR-T Cell	Ex vivo	NCT03398967
Metastatic gastrointestinal cancers	I, II	CISH	Not disclosed	Autologous neoantigen-specific TILs	Ex vivo	NCT04426669
Relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma	I	TRAC, MCH 1, BCMA		CTX120: Allogeneic BCMA-specific CAR-T cell		NCT04244656
β-Thalassemia	I, II	BCL11A KO to restore fetal hemoglobin expression	Electroporation	Autologous CRISPR-Cas9 Modified CD34+ human hematopoietic/ progenitor stem cells	Ex vivo	NCT03655678
β-Thalassemia	I	HBB	Not disclosed	Autologous HBB corrected inducible hematopoietic stem cells	Ex vivo	NCT03728322
Sickle cell disease	I,II	BCL11A KO to restore fetal hemoglobin expression	Electroporation	Autologous CRISPR-Cas9 modified CD34+ human hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells	Ex vivo	NCT03745287

(continued)

Table 4 (continued)

Disease	Phase	Target gene	Delivery method	Intervention/treatment	CRISPR-Cas9 strategy	ClinicalTrials.gov identifier
Sickle cell disease	I,II	BCL11A KO to restore fetal hemoglobin expression	Not disclosed	Autologous CRISPR-Cas9 modified CD34+ human hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells		NCT04774536
Epstein-Barr virus associated malignancies	I,II	PD-1	Electroporation	Autologous PD-1 KO T-cells	Ex vivo	NCT03044743
Human immunodeficiency virus	N.A.	CCR5	Not disclosed	Autologous CCR5 Modified CD34+ hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells	Ex vivo	NCT03164135
Kabuki syndrome 1	N.A.	KMT2D	Not disclosed	Autologous KMT2D KO mesenchymal stem cells	Ex vivo	NCT03855631
Leber congenital amaurosis 10	1	CEP290	Subretinal injection in the eye	EDIT-101: AAV5 mediated delivery of CRISPR-Cas9 to correct disease-causing mutations in CEP290 gene	In vivo	NCT03872479
Human papillomavirus-related malignancy	1	E6, E7	Cervical epithelium	TALEN or CRISPR-Cas9 mediated KO of E6 and E7 oncogene	In vivo	NCT03057912

BCMA B-cell maturation antigen, *CISH* cytokine-induced SH2 protein, *KO* knockout, *TRAC* TCR alpha constant, *MHC 1* major histocompatibility complex 1

nanoclews and CCP are burdened with poor stability and the need for chemical RNP anchoring.

To conclude, each CRISPR-Cas payload in combination with delivery method has its own advantage and disadvantage, which need to be carefully considered, as they both affect the safety and efficacy for CRISPR-Cas' clinical development.

4 CRISPR-Cas: Challenges for Clinical Implementation

Despite the significant developments in the therapeutic application of CRISPR-Cas system, its clinical translation into gene therapy still faces safety and efficacy concerns. Here, we review the obstacles associated with the successful translation of CRISPR-Cas as gene therapy, including off-target mutagenesis, genome editing efficiency, immunogenicity, and preclinical models.

4.1 Off-Target Mutagenesis

CRISPR-Cas efficacy is determined by the sgRNA specificity to mediate on-target DNA cleavage without binding to comparable genomic sequences leading to off-target mutagenesis. As sgRNA has a high mismatch tolerance, it enables Cas nucleases to cleave alternative sites comparable to the target sequence [142]. Consequently, researchers have engineered Cas9 to enhance on-target specificity [39, 44] and improve gRNA design to reduce off-target activity [143, 144]. Furthermore, genome-wide sequencing tools have been develop to detect CRISPR-Cas' on- and off-target activity, such as BLISS, HTGTS, GUIDE- and DIG-seq [145–148]. It should be noted that these off-target prediction tools have been investigated referencing the standard human genome. Henceforth, its predictive nature cannot take interindividual genetic variations into account. In essence, sgRNA should display a

high on-target activity and consider natural human genetic variations to minimize CRISPR-Cas' off-target mutagenesis for precise genome editing [106, 149, 150].

4.2 Genome Editing Efficiency

The broad application of CRISPR-Cas as gene therapy is dependent on its efficiency to mediate genetic modifications and ability to target the whole genome. The genome editing efficiency is dependent on the DNA repair pathway. Precise CRISPR-Cas9 HR has a lower editing efficiency than NHEJ as it is only active in the S/G2 phase of the cell cycle. Fortunately, HR editing efficiency can be improved via different Cas nucleases [151], using ssDNA donor template and through suppressing NHEJ [152]. Nonetheless, high HR efficiency is required for therapeutic genome editing to correct disease-causing mutations, warranting more research into this area.

As Cas9 is the most common investigated CRISPR-Cas system for gene therapy, it is limited to act at endogenous target sites bearing a "NGG" PAM sequence thereby constraining the targetable genomic loci. To overcome this restriction, efforts have focused on rationally engineering Cas nucleases and discovery of natural variants in order to expand the PAM flexibility of the CRISPR-Cas system [41]. In effect, CRISPR-Cas application has increased to mediate precision genome editing at more targetable genomic sites.

4.3 Immunogenicity

Immunogenicity and preexisting antibodies against the CRISPR-Cas system are two critical risk factors for CRISPR-Cas' clinical translation. As CRISPR-Cas nucleases have a bacterial origin, they are recognized by the host immune system evoking an immune response [153]. Furthermore, delivery vehicles could elicit an immune response, which reduces the safety and efficacy of the CRISPR-Cas therapy.

Also, preexisting antibodies toward Cas9 orthologs in humans challenge CRISPR-Cas therapeutic translation [154–157]. As result, the systematic administration of Cas RNP complexes are potentially being neutralized, and the anti-Cas T cells may recognize Cas-associated peptides and destroy target cells harboring CRISPR-Cas [158]. Furthermore, in vivo studies showed that cytotoxic T cells neutralized and annihilated AAV-mediated CRISPR-Cas genome editing [159, 160]. Therefore, CRISPR-Cas interactions with the immune systems require more research and may be overcome by transient transgene expression, immunosuppression, or engineering of Cas proteins [158, 161]. Additionally, the humoral and cellular response should be closely monitored in current and future clinical trials to assess the treatment's safety and efficacy.

4.4 Preclinical Studies

Adequate preclinical models are required to successfully determine the efficacy, toxicity, and safety profile of CRISPR-Cas-based therapies. Selecting animal models, which accurately recapitulate the pathology of interest, is fundamental to obtain clinically relevant insights. Therefore, many mouse models harboring genetic mutations underlying human hereditary disorders have been tested to assess CRISPR-Cas-mediated genome editing efficiency. However, many genetically engineered rodent models do not entirely capture the progression of the pathophysiology [158]. For example, *mdx* mice used for studying DMD show mild disease progression and relatively smaller lifespan reduction than human clinical symptoms. Conversely, the DMD canine and pig model are characterized with severe disease progression, cardiomyopathy, and premature death, which resembles the phenotype of DMD more accurately [18, 162, 163]. Consequently, studying CRISPR-Cas-based therapy in larger preclinical models will enable more relevant extrapolation of the results to humans.

Furthermore, testing CRISPR-Cas efficiency in preclinical studies needs to consider genetic discrepancies. Each preclinical study with

different animal models requires surrogate RNA compatible with its genome sequence. However, it remains questionable how representative surrogate sgRNA is for assessing therapeutic efficacy and dosage for human applications [158]. The complete extent to which preclinical studies have investigated CRISPR-Cas therapeutic potential cannot be covered in this review; therefore, we refer to [164].

5 CRISPR-Cas in the Clinic

Although CRISPR-Cas clinical development is still in its infancy, ongoing clinical trials are already investigating the therapeutic potential of CRISPR-associated nuclease Cas9. In this section, we summarize the progress and challenges of the CRISPR-Cas9 system per clinical application, which can be broadly categorized in ex vivo and in vivo *strategies*.

5.1 Ex Vivo Strategies

With ex vivo strategies, somatic or inducible pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) from the patients are being isolated. Subsequently, these cells are edited with CRISPR-Cas9 and expanded, and the successfully engineered cells are transplanted back in patients for therapeutic purposes [165]. The advantage of ex vivo administration is the ability to select correctly CRISPR-Cas-modified cells for transplantation back into the patient. However, the extensive cell culture expansion required for ex vivo administration may lead to undesirable genomic alterations. Especially iPSCs are prone to errors in reprogramming and expansion regarding copy number variations and accumulative mutations [166–168]. There remains a safety concern using these cells, even though researcher has increased their genetic stability through 3D culture organoid cultures [169]. Furthermore, ex vivo approaches require more steps compared to in vivo approaches.

Currently, ex vivo CRISPR-Cas therapies are mainly investigated for the treatment of β-thalassemia [121], sickle cell disease [170], cancer immunotherapy [171], and conferring resistance for viral infections [172, 173], see Table 4. At present, CRISPR-Cas9 ex vivo therapy for treating β-thalassemia and sickle cell disease involves knocking down the BCL11a transcription factor leading to restoration in fetal hemoglobin expression in autologous hematopoietic stem cells [174]. Furthermore, conferring resistance to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection is being investigated by knocking out the co-receptor CCR5 in CD34+ hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells [173]. Finally, CRISPR-Cas9 ex vivo therapy is mainly applied in immuno-oncology by modifying chimeric antigen receptor T-lymphocytes (CAR-T), using tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) or knocking out the programmed death-1 (PD-1) in autologous T cells. Also, new studies focus on the knocking-out T cell receptor (TCR) and β2-macroglobulin (β2m) in CAR-T to improve safety and allow the use of allogenic T cells [171]. These clinical studies will provide pieces of evidence on the safety and efficacy to facilitate site-specific genome editing and catalyze CRISPR-Cas9 clinical translation.

5.2 In vivo Strategies

In vivo administration entails a systematic or local injection of CRISPR-Cas elements to exert genome editing at the desired target site. Many monogenic diseases require in situ genome editing, which is realized via CRISPR-Cas in vivo delivery to the desired cell type in need of genetic repair. A major challenge of in vivo administration remains tissue-specific delivery of all CRISPR-Cas components [175]. Consequently, current clinical trials employing CRISPR-Cas in vivo administration have targeted accessible organs, including the eye and cervix.

The first clinical trial using in vivo delivery of CRISPR-Cas9 is directed to treat LCA10, a hereditary monogenic retinal dystrophy disorder. The delivery is realized by AAV5 carrying plasmid-encoded with Cas9 and two sgRNAs

and is administrated via sub-retinal injection to correct the pathological mutations in the CEP290 gene [67]. To treat cervical cancer, a polymer-based suppository carrying plasmid-encoded CRISPR-Cas9 is administrated via the vagina to treat human papillomavirus-related malignancy by removing E6 and E7 oncogene [176, 177].

6 Conclusion

The rapid advancements in CRISPR-Cas engineering, together with an increasing number of preclinical investigations and clinical trials, enable new therapeutic opportunities for various pathologies in the future. Currently, CRISPR Therapeutics received FDA market-approval for their ex vivo CRISPR/Cas9 edited CAR-T therapy (CTX110™) to treat relapsed or refractory CD19+ B-cell malignancies. For in vivo applications, CRISPR-Cas clinical adaptation as gene therapy may well lead to market approval in the next five to ten years [31]. Even though this is a promising prognosis, CRISPR-Cas as gene therapy still has a long road ahead with many challenges to overcome. These challenges include the realization of precision genome editing, overcoming immunogenicity, and eliminating off-target mutagenesis. Furthermore, adequate preclinical models and clinical trials are needed to establish the safety and efficacy profile of CRISPR-Cas-based gene therapy. Here, a difference in genomic DNA effectivity and therapeutic benefit might be key to distinguish.

Moreover, tissue-specific delivery and high gene-editing efficiency are other challenges to overcome for CRISPR-Cas in vivo applications [175]. Hence, extensive research is focused on developing robust and effective delivery systems for CRISPR-Cas delivery into various tissues. Also, advancements in CRISPR-Cas nucleases to increase their fidelity, reduce off-target effects, and increase sgRNA specificity can promote gene-editing productivity [39, 178]. Altogether, advancements in delivery systems and CRISPR-Cas nucleases enable the creation of novel CRISPR-Cas systems for therapeutic intervention with better safety and efficacy profiles.

Furthermore, the CRISPR-Cas translational pathway faces numerous issues regarding societal and ethical concerns. From a social perspective, genome editing is costly and raises the concern to only be accessible to wealthy individuals in the future. Consequently, this increases the existing disparities in access to health care [179]. Ethical concerns were raised when He Jiankui triggered international controversy for creating the first genome edited human babies carrying modified CCR5 gene to promote genetic resistance to HIV infection. Consequently, a global moratorium was called in place with legislation banning all clinical uses related to human germline editing [180]. Moreover, germline genome editing raised ethical concerns on the implications of transferring unwanted mutations to next generations, including but not limited to potential side effects after birth, concerns about breeding (eugenics), and informed consent. Hence, strict regulation and international consensus should be established to regulate germline gene therapy and prevent "designer babies" and nonessential therapies.

In short, CRISPR-Cas gene therapy has a profound opportunity to improve healthcare outcomes. Yet, expediting its clinical development requires the efforts of scientists, clinicians, the pharmaceutical industry, bioethicists, healthcare economists, and regulatory officials to safeguard the realization of safe, effective, and affordable CRISPR-Cas-based gene therapies [31, 158].

Acknowledgments This work was supported by the Project EVICARE (No. 725229) of the European Research Council (ERC) to J.P.G.S, co-funded by the Project SMARTCARE-II of the BioMedicalMaterials institute to JPGS, the ZonMw-TAS program (No. 116002016) to J.P.G.S./Z.L., PPS grant (No. 2018B014) to J.P.G.S./P.V/Z.L, the Dutch Ministry of Economic Affairs, Agriculture and Innovation and the Netherlands CardioVascular Research Initiative (CVON): the Dutch Heart Foundation to J.P.G.S, Dutch Federations of University Medical Centers, the Netherlands Organization for Health Research and Development, and the Royal Netherlands Academy of Sciences. We thank Marieke Roefs for her comments and suggestions to improve this review. The figures were created with BioRender.com.

References

1. Matthews E, Brassington R, Kuntzer T, Jichi F, Manzur AY (2016) Corticosteroids for the treatment of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD003725
2. Eichhorn EJ, Gheorghiade M (2002) Digoxin. Prog Cardiovasc Dis 44(4):251–266
3. Uddin F, Rudin CM, Sen T (2020) CRISPR gene therapy: applications, limitations, and implications for the future. Front Oncol 10:1387
4. Goswami R, Subramanian G, Silayeva L, Newkirk I, Doctor D, Chawla K, Chattopadhyay S, Chandra D, Chilukuri N, Betapudi V (2019) Gene therapy leaves a vicious cycle. Front Oncol 9:297
5. Stoddard BL (2011) Homing endonucleases: from microbial genetic invaders to reagents for targeted DNA modification. Structure 19(1):7–15
6. Urnov FD, Rebar EJ, Holmes MC, Zhang HS, Gregory PD (2010) Genome editing with engineered zinc finger nucleases. Nat Rev Genet 11(9):636–646
7. Bogdanove AJ, Voytas DF (2011) TAL effectors: customizable proteins for DNA targeting. Science 333(6051):1843–1846
8. Mali P, Yang L, Esvelt KM, Aach J, Guell M, DiCarlo JE, Norville JE, Church GM (2013) RNA-guided human genome engineering via Cas9. Science 339(6121):823–826
9. Adli M (2018) The CRISPR tool kit for genome editing and beyond. Nat Commun 9(1):1–13
10. Cong L, Ran FA, Cox D, Lin S, Barretto R, Habib N, Hsu PD, Wu X, Jiang W, Marraffini LA, Zhang F (2013) Multiplex genome engineering using CRISPR/Cas systems. Science 339(6121):819–823
11. Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2014) The new frontier of genome engineering with CRISPR-Cas9. Science 346:6213
12. Cox DBT, Platt RJ, Zhang F (2015) Therapeutic genome editing: prospects and challenges. Nat Med 21(2):121–131
13. Oude Blenke E, Evers MJW, Mastrobattista E, van der Oost J (2016) CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing: delivery aspects and therapeutic potential. J Control Release 244:139–148
14. Lee K, Conboy M, Park HM, Jiang F, Kim HJ, Dewitt MA, Mackley VA, Chang K, Rao A, Skinner C (2017) Nanoparticle delivery of Cas9 ribonucleoprotein and donor DNA in vivo induces homology-directed DNA repair. Nat Biomed Eng 1:889
15. Li L, He Z-Y, Wei X-W, Gao G-P, Wei Y-Q (2015) Challenges in CRISPR/CAS9 delivery: potential roles of nonviral vectors. Hum Gene Ther 26 (7):452–462
16. Hsu PD, Lander ES, Zhang F (2014) Development and applications of CRISPR-Cas9 for genome engineering. Cell 157(6):1262–1278
17. Xiao-Jie L, Hui-Ying X, Zun-Ping K, Jin-Lian C, Li-Juan J (2015) CRISPR-Cas9: a new and promising player in gene therapy. J Med Genet 52(5):289–296
18. Amoasii L, Hildyard JCW, Li H, Sanchez-Ortiz E, Mireault A, Caballero D, Harron R, Stathopoulou TR, Massey C, Shelton JM, Bassel-Duby R, Piercy RJ, Olson EN (2018) Gene editing restores dystrophin expression in a canine model of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Science 362(6410):86–91
19. Min Y-L, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2019) CRISPR correction of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Annu Rev Med 70:239–255
20. Long C, Amoasii L, Mireault AA, McAnally JR, Li H, Sanchez-Ortiz E, Bhattacharyya S, Shelton JM, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2016) Postnatal genome editing partially restores dystrophin expression in a mouse model of muscular dystrophy. Science 351 (6271):400–403
21. Bengtsson NE, Hall JK, Odom GL, Phelps MP, Andrus CR, Hawkins RD, Hauschka SD, Chamberlain JR, Chamberlain JS (2017) Muscle-specific CRISPR/Cas9 dystrophin gene editing ameliorates pathophysiology in a mouse model for Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Nat Commun 8(1):1–10
22. Nelson CE, Hakim CH, Ousterout DG, Thakore PI, Moreb EA, Rivera RMC, Madhavan S, Pan X, Ran FA, Yan WX (2016) In vivo genome editing improves muscle function in a mouse model of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Science 351 (6271):403–407
23. Shao Y, Wang L, Guo N, Wang S, Yang L, Li Y, Wang M, Yin S, Han H, Zeng L, Zhang L, Hui L, Ding Q, Zhang J, Geng H, Liu M, Li D (2018) Cas9-nickase–mediated genome editing corrects hereditary tyrosinemia in rats. J Biol Chem 293(18):6883–6892
24. Rupp LJ, Schumann K, Roybal KT, Gate RE, Ye CJ, Lim WA, Marson A (2017) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated PD-1 disruption enhances anti-tumor efficacy of human chimeric antigen receptor T cells. Sci Rep 7 (1):1–10
25. Mancuso P, Chen C, Kaminski R, Gordon J, Liao S, Robinson JA, Smith MD, Liu H, Sariyer IK, Sariyer R, Peterson TA, Donadoni M, Williams JB, Siddiqui S, Bunnell BA, Ling B, MacLean AG, Burdo TH, Khalili K (2020) CRISPR based editing of SIV proviral DNA in ART treated non-human primates. Nat Commun 11(1):1–11
26. Chadwick AC, Wang X, Musunuru K (2017) In vivo base editing of PCSK9 (proprotein convertase subtilisin/Kexin type 9) as a therapeutic alternative to genome editing. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 37 (9):1741–1747
27. Chadwick AC, Evitt NH, Lv W, Musunuru K (2018) Reduced blood lipid levels with in vivo CRISPR-Cas9 base editing of ANGPTL3. Circulation 137 (9):975–977
28. Ding Q, Strong A, Patel KM, Ng SL, Gosis BS, Regan SN, Cowan CA, Rader DJ, Musunuru K (2014) Permanent alteration of PCSK9 with in vivo CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing. Circ Res 115(5):488–492

29. Xie C, Zhang YP, Song L, Luo J, Qi W, Hu J, Lu D, Yang Z, Zhang J, Xiao J, Zhou B, Du JL, Jing N, Liu Y, Wang Y, Li BL, Song BL, Yan Y (2016) Genome editing with CRISPR/Cas9 in postnatal mice corrects PRKAG2 cardiac syndrome. Cell Res 26(10):1099–1111
30. Zeng Y, Li J, Li G, Huang S, Yu W, Zhang Y, Chen D, Chen J, Liu J, Huang X (2018) Correction of the Marfan syndrome pathogenic FBN1 mutation by base editing in human cells and heterozygous embryos. Mol Ther 26(11):2631–2637
31. Doudna JA (2020) The promise and challenge of therapeutic genome editing. Nature 578(7794):229–236
32. Mohanraju P, Makarova KS, Zetsche B, Zhang F, Koonin EV, Van der Oost J (2016) Diverse evolutionary roots and mechanistic variations of the CRISPR-Cas systems. Science 353:6299
33. Shmakov S, Smargon A, Scott D, Cox D, Pyzocha N, Yan W, Abudayyeh OO, Gootenberg JS, Makarova KS, Wolf YI, Severinov K, Zhang F, Koonin EV (2017) Diversity and evolution of class 2 CRISPR-Cas systems. Nat Rev Microbiol 15(3):169–182
34. Bin MS, Kim DY, Ko JH, Kim YS (2019) Recent advances in the CRISPR genome editing tool set. Exp Mol Med 51(11):1–11
35. Jinek M, Chylinski K, Fonfara I, Hauer M, Doudna JA, Charpentier E (2012) A programmable dual-RNA–guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. Science 337(6096):816–821
36. Kleinstiver BP, Prew MS, Tsai SQ, Topkar VV, Nguyen NT, Zheng Z, Gonzales APW, Li Z, Peterson RT, Yeh JRJ, Aryee MJ, Joung JK (2015) Engineered CRISPR-Cas9 nucleases with altered PAM specificities. Nature 523(7561):481–485
37. Lee JK, Jeong E, Lee J, Jung M, Shin E, Kim Y, Lee K, Jung I, Kim D, Kim S, Kim JS (2018) Directed evolution of CRISPR-Cas9 to increase its specificity. Nat Commun 9(1):1–10
38. Slaymaker IM, Gao L, Zetsche B, Scott DA, Yan WX, Zhang F (2016) Rationally engineered Cas9 nucleases with improved specificity. Science 351 (6268):84–88
39. Kleinstiver BP, Pattanayak V, Prew MS, Tsai SQ, Nguyen NT, Zheng Z, Joung JK (2016) High-fidelity CRISPR-Cas9 nucleases with no detectable genome-wide off-target effects. Nature 529(7587):490–495
40. Nishimasu H, Shi X, Ishiguro S, Gao L, Hirano S, Okazaki S, Noda T, Abudayyeh OO, Gootenberg JS, Mori H (2018) Engineered CRISPR-Cas9 nuclease with expanded targeting space. Science 361 (6408):1259–1262
41. Hu JH, Miller SM, Geurts MH, Tang W, Chen L, Sun N, Zeina CM, Gao X, Rees HA, Lin Z, Liu DR (2018) Evolved Cas9 variants with broad PAM compatibility and high DNA specificity. Nature 556 (7699):57–63
42. Kulcsár PI, Tálas A, Huszár K, Ligeti Z, Tóth E, Weinhardt N, Fodor E, Welker E (2017) Crossing enhanced and high fidelity SpCas9 nucleases to optimize specificity and cleavage. Enome Biol 18(1):1–17
43. Vakulskas CA, Dever DP, Rettig GR, Turk R, Jacobi AM, Collingwood MA, Bode NM, McNeill MS, Yan S, Camarena J (2018) A high-fidelity Cas9 mutant delivered as a ribonucleoprotein complex enables efficient gene editing in human hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells. Nat Med 24(8):1216–1122
44. Chen JS, Dagdas YS, Kleinstiver BP, Welch MM, Sousa AA, Harrington LB, Sternberg SH, Joung JK, Yildiz A, Doudna JA (2017) Enhanced proofreading governs CRISPR-Cas9 targeting accuracy. Nature 550(7676):407–410
45. Casini A, Olivieri M, Petris G, Montagna C, Reginato G, Maule G, Lorenzin F, Prandi D, Romanel A, Demichelis F, Inga A, Cereseto A (2018) A highly specific SpCas9 variant is identified by in vivo screening in yeast. Nat Biotechnol 36(3):265
46. Walton RT, Christie KA, Whittaker MN, Kleinstiver BP (2020) Unconstrained genome targeting with near-PAMless engineered CRISPR-Cas9 variants. Science 368(6488):290–296
47. Hu Z, Wang S, Zhang C, Gao N, Li M, Wang D, Wang D, Liu D, Liu H, Ong SG, Wang H, Wang Y (2020) A compact cas9 ortholog from staphylococcus auricularis (sauricas9) expands the DNA targeting scope. PLoS Biol 18(3):e3000686
48. Jakimo N, Chatterjee P, Nip L, Jacobson JM (2018) A Cas9 with complete PAM recognition for adenine dinucleotides. BioRxiv:429654
49. Ran FA, Cong L, Yan WX, Scott DA, Gootenberg JS, Kriz AJ, Zetsche B, Shalem O, Wu X, Makarova KS, Koonin EV, Sharp PA, Zhang F (2015) In vivo genome editing using Staphylococcus aureus Cas9. Nature 520(7546):186–191
50. Kleinstiver BP, Prew MS, Tsai SQ, Nguyen NT, Topkar VV, Zheng Z, Joung JK (2015) Broadening the targeting range of Staphylococcus aureus CRISPR-Cas9 by modifying PAM recognition. Nat Biotechnol 33(12):1293–1298
51. Chatterjee P, Jakimo N, Jacobson JM (2018) Minimal PAM specificity of a highly similar SpCas9 ortholog. Sci Adv 4(10):766
52. Chatterjee P, Jakimo N, Lee J, Amrani N, Rodríguez T, Koseki SRT, Tysinger E, Qing R, Hao S, Sontheimer EJ, Jacobson J (2020) An engineered ScCas9 with broad PAM range and high specificity and activity. Nat Biotechnol 38(10):1154–1158
53. Kim E, Koo T, Park SW, Kim D, Kim K, Cho HY, Song DW, Lee KJ, Jung MH, Kim S, Kim JH, Kim JH, Kim JS (2017) In vivo genome editing with a small Cas9 orthologue derived from Campylobacter jejuni. Nat Commun 8(1):1–12
54. Acharya S, Mishra A, Paul D, Ansari AH, Azhar M, Kumar M, Rauthan R, Sharma N, Aich M, Sinha D (2019) Francisella novicida Cas9 interrogates genomic DNA with very high specificity and can be used

for mammalian genome editing. Proc Natl Acad Sci 116(42):20959–20968
55. Hirano H, Gootenberg JS, Horii T, Abudayyeh OO, Kimura M, Hsu PD, Nakane T, Ishitani R, Hatada I, Zhang F, Nishimasu H, Nureki O (2016) Structure and Engineering of Francisella novicida Cas9. Cell 164(5):950–961
56. Hou Z, Zhang Y, Propson NE, Howden SE, Chu LF, Sontheimer EJ, Thomson JA (2013) Efficient genome engineering in human pluripotent stem cells using Cas9 from Neisseria meningitidis. Proc Natl Acad Sci 110(39):15644–15649
57. Edraki A, Mir A, Ibraheim R, Gainetdinov I, Yoon Y, Song CQ, Cao Y, Gallant J, Xue W, Rivera-Pérez JA, Sontheimer EJ (2019) A compact, high-accuracy Cas9 with a dinucleotide PAM for in vivo genome editing. Mol Cell 73(4):714–726
58. Müller M, Lee CM, Gasiunas G, Davis TH, Cradick TJ, Siksnys V, Bao G, Cathomen T, Mussolino C (2016) Streptococcus thermophilus CRISPR-Cas9 systems enable specific editing of the human genome. Mol Ther 24(3):636–644
59. Karvelis T, Gasiunas G, Young J, Bigelyte G, Silanskas A, Cigan M, Siksnys V (2015) Rapid characterization of CRISPR-Cas9 protospacer adjacent motif sequence elements. Genome Biol 16(1):1–13
60. Gao N, Zhang C, Hu Z, Li M, Wei J, Wang Y, Liu H (2020) Characterization of Brevibacillus laterosporus Cas9 (BlatCas9) for mammalian genome editing. Front Cell Dev Biol 8:1131
61. Harrington LB, Paez-Espino D, Staahl BT, Chen JS, Ma E, Kyrpides NC, Doudna JA (2017) A thermostable Cas9 with increased lifetime in human plasma. Nat Commun 8(1):1–8
62. Zuo Z, Liu J (2016) Cas9-catalyzed DNA cleavage generates staggered ends: evidence from molecular dynamics simulations. Sci Rep 6(1):1–9
63. Ding Q, Strong A, Patel KM, Ng S-L, Gosis BS, Regan SN, Rader DJ, Musunuru K (2014) Permanent alteration of PCSK9 with in vivo CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing. Circ Res 115(5):488–492
64. Yin H, Xue W, Chen S, Bogorad RL, Benedetti E, Grompe M, Koteliansky V, Sharp PA, Jacks T, Anderson DG (2014) Genome editing with Cas9 in adult mice corrects a disease mutation and phenotype. Nat Biotechnol 32(6):551–553
65. Yin H, Song C-Q, Dorkin JR, Zhu LJ, Li Y, Wu Q, Park A, Yang J, Suresh S, Bizhanova A (2016) Therapeutic genome editing by combined viral and non-viral delivery of CRISPR system components in vivo. Nat Biotechnol 34(3):328–333
66. Tabebordbar M, Zhu K, Cheng JKW, Chew WL, Widrick JJ, Yan WX, Maesner C, Wu EY, Xiao R, Ran FA (2016) In vivo gene editing in dystrophic mouse muscle and muscle stem cells. Science 351 (6271):407–411
67. Maeder ML, Stefanidakis M, Wilson CJ, Baral R, Barrera LA, Bounoutas GS, Bumcrot D, Chao H, Ciulla DM, DaSilva JA (2019) Development of a gene-editing approach to restore vision loss in Leber congenital amaurosis type 10. Nat Med 25(2):229–233
68. Qi LS, Larson MH, Gilbert LA, Doudna JA, Weissman JS, Arkin AP, Lim WA (2013) Repurposing CRISPR as an RNA-γuided platform for sequence-specific control of gene expression. Cell 152(5):1173–1183
69. Bikard D, Jiang W, Samai P, Hochschild A, Zhang F, Marraffini LA (2013) Programmable repression and activation of bacterial gene expression using an engineered CRISPR-Cas system. Nucleic Acids Res 41(15):7429–7437
70. Wang D, Zhang F, Gao G (2020) CRISPR-based therapeutic genome editing: strategies and in vivo delivery by AAV vectors. Cell 181(1):136–150
71. Komor AC, Kim YB, Packer MS, Zuris JA, Liu DR (2016) Programmable editing of a target base in genomic DNA without double-stranded DNA cleavage. Nature 533(7603):420–424
72. Rees HA, Liu DR (2018) Base editing: precision chemistry on the genome and transcriptome of living cells. Nat Rev Genet 19(12):770–788
73. Gaudelli NM, Komor AC, Rees HA, Packer MS, Badran AH, Bryson DI, Liu DR (2017) Programmable base editing of T to G C in genomic DNA without DNA cleavage. Nature 551(7681):464–471
74. Anzalone AV, Randolph PB, Davis JR, Sousa AA, Koblan LW, Levy JM, Chen PJ, Wilson C, Newby GA, Raguram A (2019) Search-and-replace genome editing without double-strand breaks or donor DNA. Nature 576(7785):149–157
75. Zetsche B, Gootenberg JS, Abudayyeh OO, Slaymaker IM, Makarova KS, Essletzbichler P, Volz SE, Joung J, Van Der Oost J, Regev A, Koonin EV, Zhang F (2015) Cpf1 Is a single RNA-guided endonuclease of a class 2 CRISPR-Cas system. Cell 163(3):759–771
76. Liu Y, Han J, Chen Z, Wu H, Dong H, Nie G (2017) Engineering cell signaling using tunable CRISPR–Cpf1-based transcription factors. Nat Commun 8 (1):1–8
77. Zhang Y, Long C, Li H, McAnally JR, Baskin KK, Shelton JM, Bassel-Duby R, Olson EN (2017) CRISPR-Cpf1 correction of muscular dystrophy mutations in human cardiomyocytes and mice. Sci Adv 3(4):e1602814
78. Zetsche B, Heidenreich M, Mohanraju P, Fedorova I, Kneppers J, DeGennaro EM, Winblad N, Choudhury SR, Abudayyeh OO, Gootenberg JS (2017) Multiplex gene editing by CRISPR–Cpf1 using a single crRNA array. Nat Biotechnol 35(1):31–34
79. Strecker J, Ladha A, Gardner Z, Schmid-Burgk JL, Makarova KS, Koonin EV, Zhang F (2019) RNA-guided DNA insertion with CRISPR-associated transposases. Science 365(6448):48–53
80. Teng F, Cui T, Feng G, Guo L, Xu K, Gao Q, Li T, Li J, Zhou Q, Li W (2018) Repurposing CRISPR-

Cas12b for mammalian genome engineering. Cell Dis 4(1):1–15

81. Shmakov S, Abudayyeh OO, Makarova KS, Wolf YI, Gootenberg JS, Semenova E, Minakhin L, Joung J, Konermann S, Severinov K (2015) Discovery and functional characterization of diverse class 2 CRISPR-Cas systems. Mol Cell 60(3):385–397
82. Strecker J, Jones S, Koopal B, Schmid-Burgk J, Zetsche B, Gao L, Makarova KS, Koonin EV, Zhang F (2019) Engineering of CRISPR-Cas12b for human genome editing. Nat Commun 10(1):1–8
83. Yamano T, Zetsche B, Ishitani R, Zhang F, Nishimasu H, Nureki O (2017) Structural basis for the canonical and non-canonical PAM recognition by CRISPR-Cpf1. Mol Cell 67(4):633–645
84. Kim HK, Song M, Lee J, Menon AV, Jung S, Kang Y-M, Choi JW, Woo E, Koh HC, Nam J-W (2017) In vivo high-throughput profiling of CRISPR-Cpf1 activity. Nat Methods 14(2):153–159
85. Tu M, Lin L, Cheng Y, He X, Sun H, Xie H, Fu J, Liu C, Li J, Chen D, Xi H, Xue D, Liu Q, Zhao J, Gao C, Song Z, Qu J, Gu F (2017) A “new lease of life”: FnCpf1 possesses DNA cleavage activity for genome editing in human cells. Nucleic Acids Res 45 (19):11295–11304
86. Li P, Zhang L, Li Z, Xu C, Du X, Wu S (2019) Cas12a mediates efficient and precise endogenous gene tagging via MITI: microhomology-dependent targeted integrations. Cell Mol Life Sci 2019:1–10
87. Gao L, Cox DBT, Yan WX, Manteiga JC, Schneider MW, Yamano T, Nishimasu H, Nureki O, Crosetto N, Zhang F (2017) Engineered Cpf1 variants with altered PAM specificities. Nat Biotechnol 35(8):789–792
88. Teng F, Li J, Cui T, Xu K, Guo L, Gao Q, Feng G, Chen C, Han D, Zhou Q, Li W (2019) Enhanced mammalian genome editing by new Cas12a orthologs with optimized crRNA scaffolds. Genome Biol 20(1):1–6
89. Zetsche B, Strecker J, Abudayyeh OO, Gootenberg JS, Scott DA, Zhang F (2019) A survey of genome editing activity for 16 Cas12a orthologs. Keio J Med 69(3):59–65
90. Yang H, Gao P, Rajashankar KR, Patel DJ (2016) PAM-dependent target DNA recognition and cleavage by C2c1 CRISPR-Cas endonuclease. Cell 167 (7):1814–1828
91. Harrington LB, Ma E, Chen JS, Witte IP, Gertz D, Paez-Espino D, Al-Shayeb B, Kyrpides NC, Burstein D, Banfield JF, Doudna JA (2020) A scoutRNA is required for some type V CRISPR-Cas systems. Mol Cell 79(3):416–424
92. Liu J-J, Orlova N, Oakes BL, Ma E, Spinner HB, Baney KLM, Chuck J, Tan D, Knott GJ, Harrington LB (2019) CasX enzymes comprise a distinct family of RNA-guided genome editors. Nature 566 (7743):218–223
93. Huynh N, Depner N, Larson R, King-Jones K (2020) A versatile toolkit for CRISPR-Cas13-based RNA manipulation in Drosophila. Genome Biol 21(1):1–29
94. Shmakov SA, Sitnik V, Makarova KS, Wolf YI, Severinov KV, Koonin EV (2017) The CRISPR spacer space is dominated by sequences from species-specific mobilomes. MBio 8:5
95. Cox DBT, Gootenberg JS, Abudayyeh OO, Franklin B, Kellner MJ, Joung J, Zhang F (2017) RNA editing with CRISPR-Cas13. Science 358(6366):1019–1027
96. Abudayyeh OO, Gootenberg JS, Essletzbichler P, Han S, Joung J, Belanto JJ, Verdine V, Cox DBT, Kellner MJ, Regev A, Lander ES, Voytas DF, Ting AY, Zhang F (2017) RNA targeting with CRISPR-Cas13. Nature 550(7675):280–284
97. Abudayyeh OO, Gootenberg JS, Konermann S, Joung J, Slaymaker IM, Cox DBT, Shmakov S, Makarova KS, Semenova E, Minakhin L, Severinov K, Regev A, Lander ES, Koonin EV, Zhang F (2016) C2c2 is a single-component programmable RNA-guided RNA-targeting CRISPR effector. Science 353:6299
98. Lin P, Qin S, Pu Q, Wang Z, Wu Q, Gao P, Schettler J, Guo K, Li R, Li G (2020) CRISPR-Cas13 inhibitors block RNA editing in bacteria and mammalian cells. Mol Cell 78(5):850–861
99. Gootenberg JS, Abudayyeh OO, Kellner MJ, Joung J, Collins JJ, Zhang F (2018) Multiplexed and portable nucleic acid detection platform with Cas13, Cas12a, and Csm6. Science 360(6387):439–444
100. Kellner MJ, Koob JG, Gootenberg JS, Abudayyeh OO, Zhang F (2019) SHERLOCK: nucleic acid detection with CRISPR nucleases. Nat Protoc 14 (10):2986–3012
101. Liu C, Zhang L, Liu H, Cheng K (2017) Delivery strategies of the CRISPR-Cas9 gene-editing system for therapeutic applications. J Control Release 266:17–26
102. Yip BH (2020) Recent advances in CRISPR/Cas9 delivery strategies. Biomol Ther 10(6):839
103. Mout R, Ray M, Lee Y-W, Scaletti F, Rotello VM (2017) In vivo delivery of CRISPR/Cas9 for therapeutic gene editing: progress and challenges. Bioconjug Chem 28(4):880–884
104. Li L, Hu S, Chen X (2018) Non-viral delivery systems for CRISPR/Cas9-based genome editing: challenges and opportunities. Biomaterials 171:207–218
105. Cullis PR, Hope MJ (2017) Lipid nanoparticle systems for enabling gene therapies. Mol Ther 25 (7):1467–1475
106. Rosenblum D, Gutkin A, Dammes N, Peer D (2020) Progress and challenges towards CRISPR/Cas clinical translation. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 154-155:176–186
107. Li L, Natarajan P, Allen C, Peshwa MV (2014) CGMP-compliant, clinical scale, non-viral platform for efficient gene editing using CRISPR/Cas9. Cytotherapy 16(4):S37

108. Boo SH, Kim YK (2020) The emerging role of RNA modifications in the regulation of mRNA stability. Exp Mol Med 52(3):400–408
109. Hendel A, Bak RO, Clark JT, Kennedy AB, Ryan DE, Roy S, Steinfeld I, Lunstad BD, Kaiser RJ, Wilkens AB, Bacchetta R, Tsalenko A, Dellinger D, Bruhn L, Porteus MH (2015) Chemically modified guide RNAs enhance CRISPR-Cas genome editing in human primary cells. Nat Biotechnol 33(9):3290
110. Liang X, Potter J, Kumar S, Zou Y, Quintanilla R, Sridharan M, Carte J, Chen W, Roark N, Ranganathan S, Ravinder N, Chesnut JD (2015) Rapid and highly efficient mammalian cell engineering via Cas9 protein transfection. J Biotechnol 208:44–53
111. Kim S, Kim D, Cho SW, Kim J, Kim JS (2014) Highly efficient RNA-guided genome editing in human cells via delivery of purified Cas9 ribonucleoproteins. Genome Res 24(6):1012–1019
112. Zhang S, Shen J, Li D, Cheng Y (2021) Strategies in the delivery of Cas9 ribonucleoprotein for CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing. Theranostics 11(2):614–648
113. Xu CL, Ruan MZC, Mahajan VB, Tsang SH (2019) Viral delivery systems for CRISPR. Viruses 11(1):28
114. Yang Y, Wang L, Bell P, McMenamin D, He Z, White J, Yu H, Xu C, Morizono H, Musunuru K (2016) A dual AAV system enables the Cas9-mediated correction of a metabolic liver disease in newborn mice. Nat Biotechnol 34(3):334–338
115. Nakai H, Montini E, Fuess S, Storm TA, Grompe M, Kay MA (2003) AAV serotype 2 vectors preferentially integrate into active genes in mice. Nat Genet 34(3):297–302
116. Liu J, Chang J, Jiang Y, Meng X, Sun T, Mao L, Xu Q, Wang M (2019) Fast and efficient CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing in vivo enabled by bioreducible lipid and messenger RNA nanoparticles. Adv Mater 31 (33):1902575
117. Timin AS, Muslimov AR, Lepik KV, Epifanovskaya OS, Shakirova AI, Mock U, Riecken K, Okilova MV, Sergeev VS, Afanasyev BV (2018) Efficient gene editing via non-viral delivery of CRISPR–Cas9 system using polymeric and hybrid microcarriers. Nanomedicine 14(1):97–108
118. Wells DJ (2004) Gene therapy progress and prospects: electroporation and other physical methods. Gene Ther 11(18):1363–1369
119. Horii T, Arai Y, Yamazaki M, Morita S, Kimura M, Itoh M, Abe Y, Hatada I (2014) Validation of microinjection methods for generating knockout mice by CRISPR/Cas-mediated genome engineering. Sci Rep 4(1):1–6
120. Niola F, Dagnæs-Hansen F, Frödin M (2019) In vivo editing of the adult mouse liver using CRISPR/Cas9 and hydrodynamic tail vein injection. In: CRISPR gene editing. Humana Press, New York, pp 329–341
121. Dever DP, Bak RO, Reinisch A, Camarena J, Washington G, Nicolas CE, Pavel-Dinu M, Saxena N, Wilkens AB, Mantri S (2016) CRISPR/Cas9 β-globin gene targeting in human haematopoietic stem cells. Nature 539(7629):384–389
122. Liu F, Song YK, Liu D (1999) Hydrodynamics-based transfection in animals by systemic administration of plasmid DNA. Gene Ther 6(7):1258–1266
123. Suda T, Liu D (2007) Hydrodynamic gene delivery: its principles and applications. Mol Ther 15 (12):2063–2069
124. Khorsandi SE, Bachellier P, Weber JC, Greget M, Jaeck D, Zacharoulis D, Rountas C, Helmy S, Helmy A, Al-Waracky M (2008) Minimally invasive and selective hydrodynamic gene therapy of liver segments in the pig and human. Cancer Gene Ther 15(4):225–230
125. Yin H, Kanasty RL, Eltoukhy AA, Vegas AJ, Dorkin JR, Anderson DG (2014) Non-viral vectors for gene-based therapy. Nat Rev Genet 15(8):541–555
126. Wang H-X, Song Z, Lao Y-H, Xu X, Gong J, Cheng D, Chakraborty S, Park JS, Li M, Huang D, Yin L, Cheng J, Leong KW (2018) Nonviral gene editing via CRISPR/Cas9 delivery by membrane-disruptive and endosomolytic helical polypeptide. Proc Natl Acad Sci 115(19):4903–4908
127. Sokolova V, Epple M (2008) Inorganic nanoparticles as carriers of nucleic acids into cells. Angew Chem Int Ed 47(8):1382–1395
128. Li W, Szoka FC (2007) Lipid-based nanoparticles for nucleic acid delivery. Pharm Res 24(3):438–449
129. Mintzer MA, Simanek EE (2008) Nonviral vectors for gene delivery. Chem Rev 109(2):259–302
130. Pack DW, Hoffman AS, Pun S, Stayton PS (2005) Design and development of polymers for gene delivery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 4(7):581–593
131. Lee CC, MacKay JA, Fréchet JMJ, Szoka FC (2005) Designing dendrimers for biological applications. Nat Biotechnol 23(12):1517–1526
132. Thomas M, Klibanov AM (2003) Non-viral gene therapy: polycation-mediated DNA delivery. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 62(1):27–34
133. Yang Q, Fang J, Lei Z, Sluijter JPG, Schiffelers R (2020) Repairing the heart: State-of the art delivery strategies for biological therapeutics. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 160:1–18
134. Sun W, Ji W, Hall JM, Hu Q, Wang C, Beisel CL, Gu Z (2015) Self-assembled DNA nanoclews for the efficient delivery of CRISPR–Cas9 for genome editing. Angew Chem 127(41):12197–12201
135. Wang M, Zuris JA, Meng F, Rees H, Sun S, Deng P, Han Y, Gao X, Pouli D, Wu Q, Georgakoudi I, Liu DR, Xu Q (2016) Efficient delivery of genome-editing proteins using bioreducible lipid nanoparticles. Proc Natl Acad Sci 113(11):2868–2873
136. Montagna C, Petris G, Casini A, Maule G, Franceschini GM, Zanella I, Conti L, Arnoldi F, Burrone OR, Zentilin L (2018) VSV-G-enveloped vesicles for traceless delivery of CRISPR-Cas9. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 12:453–462

137. Campbell LA, Coke LM, Richie CT, Fortuno LV, Park AY, Harvey BK (2018) Gesicle-mediated delivery of CRISPR/Cas9 ribonucleoprotein complex for inactivating the HIV provirus. Mol Ther 27(1):1–13
138. Mout R, Ray M, Yesilbag Tonga G, Lee Y-W, Tay T, Sasaki K, Rotello VM (2017) Direct cytosolic delivery of CRISPR/Cas9-ribonucleoprotein for efficient gene editing. ACS Nano 11(3):2452–2458
139. D'Astolfo DS, Pagliero RJ, Pras A, Karthaus WR, Clevers H, Prasad V, Lebbink RJ, Rehmann H, Geijsen N (2015) Efficient intracellular delivery of native proteins. Cell 161(3):674–690
140. Wilbie D, Walther J, Mastrobattista E (2019) Delivery aspects of CRISPR/Cas for in vivo genome editing. Acc Chem Res 52(6):1555–1564
141. Axford DS, Morris DP, McMurry JL (2017) Cell penetrating peptide-mediated nuclear delivery of Cas9 to enhance the utility of CRISPR/Cas genome editing. FASEB J 31:909–904
142. Tsai SQ, Joung JK (2016) Defining and improving the genome-wide specificities of CRISPR–Cas9 nucleases. Nat Rev Genet 17(5):300–312
143. Fu Y, Sander JD, Reyon D, Cascio VM, Joung JK (2014) Improving CRISPR-Cas nuclease specificity using truncated guide RNAs. Nat Biotechnol 32 (3):279–284
144. Liang X, Potter J, Kumar S, Ravinder N, Chesnut JD (2017) Enhanced CRISPR/Cas9-mediated precise genome editing by improved design and delivery of gRNA, Cas9 nuclease, and donor DNA. J Biotechnol 241:136–146
145. Yan WX, Mirzazadeh R, Garnerone S, Scott D, Schneider MW, Kallas T, Custodio J, Wernersson E, Li Y, Gao L, Federova Y, Zetsche B, Zhang F, Bienko M, Crosetto N (2017) BLISS is a versatile and quantitative method for genome-wide profiling of DNA double-strand breaks. Nat Commun 8(1):1–9
146. Hu J, Meyers RM, Dong J, Panchakshari RA, Alt FW, Frock RL (2016) Detecting DNA double-stranded breaks in mammalian genomes by linear amplification-mediated high-throughput genome-wide translocation sequencing. Nat Protoc 11(5):853
147. Tsai SQ, Zheng Z, Nguyen NT, Liebers M, Topkar VV, Thapar V, Wyvekens N, Khayter C, Iafrate AJ, Le LP, Aryee MJ, Joung JK (2015) GUIDE-seq enables genome-wide profiling of off-target cleavage by CRISPR-Cas nucleases. Nat Biotechnol 33 (2):187–197
148. Kim D, Kim J-S (2018) DIG-seq: a genome-wide CRISPR off-target profiling method using chromatin DNA. Genome Res 28(12):1894–1900
149. Scott DA, Zhang F (2017) Implications of human genetic variation in CRISPR-based therapeutic genome editing. Nat Med 23(9):1095
150. Hossain MA (2021) CRISPR-Cas9: a fascinating journey from bacterial immune system to human gene editing. Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci 178:63–83
151. Richardson CD, Ray GJ, DeWitt MA, Curie GL, Corn JE (2016) Enhancing homology-directed genome editing by catalytically active and inactive CRISPR-Cas9 using asymmetric donor DNA. Nat Biotechnol 34(3):339–344
152. Chu VT, Weber T, Wefers B, Wurst W, Sander S, Rajewsky K, Kühn R (2015) Increasing the efficiency of homology-directed repair for CRISPR-Cas9-induced precise gene editing in mammalian cells. Nat Biotechnol 33(3):543–548
153. Mehta A, Merkel OM (2020) Immunogenicity of Cas9 protein. J Pharm Sci 109(1):62–67
154. Wagner DL, Amini L, Wendering DJ, Burkhardt LM, Akyüz L, Reinke P, Volk HD, Schmueck-Henneresse M (2019) High prevalence of Streptococcus pyogenes Cas9-reactive T cells within the adult human population. Nat Med 25(2):242–248
155. Crudele JM, Chamberlain JS (2018) Cas9 immunity creates challenges for CRISPR gene editing therapies. Nat Commun 9(1):1–3
156. Simhadri VL, McGill J, McMahon S, Wang J, Jiang H, Sauna ZE (2018) Prevalence of pre-existing antibodies to CRISPR-associated nuclease Cas9 in the USA population. Mol Ther Methods Clin Dev 10:105–112
157. Charlesworth CT, Deshpande PS, Dever DP, Camarena J, Lemgart VT, Cromer MK, Vakulskas CA, Collingwood MA, Zhang L, Bode NM, Behlke MA, Dejene B, Cieniewicz B, Romano R, Lesch BJ, Gomez-Ospina N, Mantri S, Pavel-Dinu M, Weinberg KI, Porteus MH (2019) Identification of preexisting adaptive immunity to Cas9 proteins in humans. Nat Med 25(2):249–254
158. Tay LS, Palmer N, Panwala R, Chew WL, Mali P (2020) Translating CRISPR-Cas therapeutics: approaches and challenges. CRISPR J 3(4):253–275
159. Moreno AM, Palmer N, Alemán F, Chen G, Pla A, Jiang N, Leong Chew W, Law M, Mali P (2019) Immune-orthogonal orthologues of AAV capsids and of Cas9 circumvent the immune response to the administration of gene therapy. Nat Biomed Eng 3 (10):806–816
160. Li A, Tanner MR, Lee CM, Hurley AE, De Giorgi M, Jarrett KE, Davis TH, Doerfler AM, Bao G, Beeton C, Lagor WR (2020) AAV-CRISPR gene editing is negated by pre-existing immunity to Cas9. Mol Ther 28(6):1432–1441
161. Ferdosi SR, Ewaisha R, Moghadam F, Krishna S, Park JG, Ebrahimkhani MR, Kiani S, Anderson KS (2019) Multifunctional CRISPR-Cas9 with engineered immunosilenced human T cell epitopes. Nat Commun 10(1):1–10
162. Moretti A, Fonteyne L, Giesert F, Hoppmann P, Meier AB, Bozoglu T, Baehr A, Schneider CM, Sinnecker D, Klett K, Fröhlich T, Rahman FA, Haufe T, Sun S, Jurisch V, Kessler B, Hinkel R, Dirschinger R, Martens E, Jilek C, Graf A, Krebs S, Santamaria G, Kurome M, Zakhartchenko V, Campbell B, Voelse K, Wolf A, Ziegler T, Reichert S, Lee S, Flenkenthaler F, Dorn T, Jeremias I, Blum H, Dendorfer A, Schnieke A, Krause S, Walter MC,

Klymiuk N, Laugwitz KL, Wolf E, Wurst W, Kupatt C (2020) Somatic gene editing ameliorates skeletal and cardiac muscle failure in pig and human models of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Nat Med 26 (2):207–214
163. McGreevy JW, Hakim CH, McIntosh MA, Duan D (2015) Animal models of Duchenne muscular dystrophy: from basic mechanisms to gene therapy. Dis Model Mech 8(3):195–213
164. Sharma G, Sharma AR, Bhattacharya M, Lee S-S, Chakraborty C (2021) CRISPR-Cas9: a preclinical and clinical perspective for the treatment of human diseases. Mol Ther 29:571–586
165. Gregory-Evans K, Emran Bashar A, Tan M (2012) Ex vivo gene therapy and vision. Curr Gene Ther 12 (2):103–115
166. Ji J, Ng SH, Sharma V, Neculai D, Hussein S, Sam M, Trinh Q, Church GM, Mcpherson JD, Nagy A (2012) Elevated coding mutation rate during the reprogramming of human somatic cells into induced pluripotent stem cells. Stem Cells 30(3):435–440
167. Gore A, Li Z, Fung H-L, Young JE, Agarwal S, Antosiewicz-Bourget J, Canto I, Giorgetti A, Israel MA, Kiskinis E (2011) Somatic coding mutations in human induced pluripotent stem cells. Nature 471 (7336):63–67
168. Savić N, Schwank G (2016) Advances in therapeutic CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing. Transl Res 168:15–21
169. Huch M, Gehart H, Van Boxtel R, Hamer K, Blokzijl F, Verstegen MMA, Ellis E, Van Wenum M, Fuchs SA, de Ligt J (2015) Long-term culture of genome-stable bipotent stem cells from adult human liver. Cell 160(2):299–312
170. Hoban MD, Lumaquin D, Kuo CY, Romero Z, Long J, Ho M, Young CS, Mojadidi M, Fitz-Gibbon S, Cooper AR, Lill GR, Urbinati F, Campo-Fernandez B, Bjurstrom CF, Pellegrini M, Hollis RP, Kohn DB (2016) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated correction of the sickle mutation in human CD34+ cells. Mol Ther 24 (9):1561–1569
171. Depil S, Duchateau P, Grupp SA, Mufti G, Poirot L (2020) 'Off-the-shelf' allogeneic CAR T cells: development and challenges. Nat Rev Drug Discov 19 (3):185–199
172. Lin S-R, Yang H-C, Kuo Y-T, Liu C-J, Yang T-Y, Sung K-C, Lin Y-Y, Wang H-Y, Wang C-C, Shen Y-C (2014) The CRISPR/Cas9 system facilitates clearance of the intrahepatic HBV templates in vivo. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 3:e186
173. Xu L, Yang H, Gao Y, Chen Z, Xie L, Liu Y, Liu Y, Wang X, Li H, Lai W (2017) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated CCR5 ablation in human hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells confers HIV-1 resistance in vivo. Mol Ther 25(8):1782–1789
174. Hossain MA, Bungert J (2017) Genome editing for sickle cell disease: a little BCL11A goes a long way. Mol Ther 25(3):561–562
175. Xu C-F, Chen G-J, Luo Y-L, Zhang Y, Zhao G, Lu Z-D, Czarna A, Gu Z, Wang J (2021) Rational designs of in vivo CRISPR-Cas delivery systems. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 168:3–29
176. Lao Y, Li M, Gao MA, Shao D, Chi C, Huang D, Chakraborty S, Ho T, Jiang W, Wang H (2018) HPV oncogene manipulation using nonvirally delivered CRISPR/Cas9 or Natronobacterium gregoryi argonaute. Adv Sci 5(7):1700540
177. Ren C, Li X, Mao L, Xiong J, Gao C, Shen H, Wang L, Zhu D, Ding W, Wang H (2019) An effective and biocompatible polyethylenimine based vaginal suppository for gene delivery. Nanomedicine 20:101994
178. Nakamura M, Bodily JM, Beglin M, Kyo S, Inoue M, Laimins LA (2009) Hypoxia-specific stabilization of HIF-1alpha by human papillomaviruses. Virology 387(2):442–448
179. German DM, Mitalipov S, Mishra A, Kaul S (2019) Therapeutic genome editing in cardiovascular diseases. JACC 4(1):122–131
180. Lander ES, Baylis F, Zhang F, Charpentier E, Berg P, Bourgain C, Friedrich B, Joung JK, Li J, Liu D (2019) Adopt a moratorium on heritable genome editing. Nature 567(7747):165–168